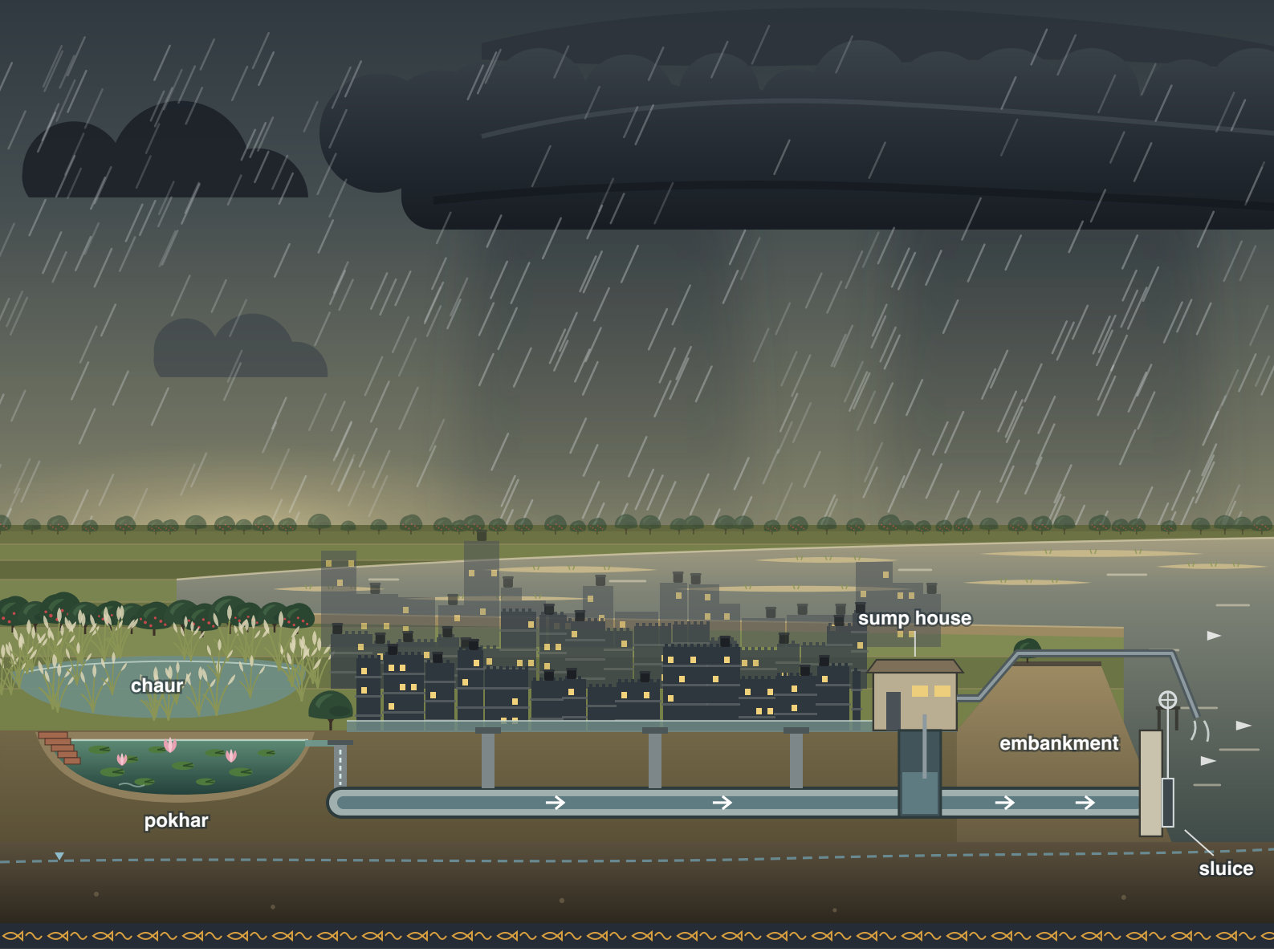
BIHAR

Stormwater Design Manual

Standards for the planning, design, construction, operation and maintenance of stormwater systems



Preserve | Retain | Detain | Convey | Maintain

Draft v1.0

November 2026

Prepared by

Neer.

About this draft

Status. This is Draft v1.0 of the *Bihar Stormwater Design Manual*. It was prepared by Neer as a proposed stormwater design standard for Bihar.

Not adopted. This Manual has not been adopted, notified or endorsed by the Government of Bihar or by any of its departments, local bodies or agencies. In particular, it has not been adopted, notified or endorsed by the Urban Development and Housing Department (UDHD), the Water Resources Department (WRD), the Bihar Urban Infrastructure Development Corporation (BUIDCO), the Patna Metropolitan Area Authority (PMAA), any Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad, Nagar Panchayat or other local body, or any other agency. Where it names a body, such as the Minor Water Resources Department, the Revenue and Land Reforms Department, the Rural Development Department, the Environment, Forest and Climate Change Department, the Bihar State Wetland Authority, the Bihar State Pollution Control Board (BSPCB), the Bihar State Disaster Management Authority (BSDMA), the Bihar Industrial Area Development Authority (BIADA), WRD's Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC), the Patna Municipal Corporation (PMC) or a district administration, it describes the role that body would have if the Manual were adopted. It does not say the body has agreed to that role.

No legal force. Until a competent authority adopts it, with or without changes, this Manual has no legal force. The building byelaws, master plans, drainage schemes and approval conditions in force continue to apply.

Names. Some places and rivers have more than one name or spelling in statutes, sources and on IMD and CWC stations:

- Purnia is also spelt Purnea, the form of IMD's observatory and of older sources; Munger was formerly Monghyr, Danapur Dinapur, and Chhapra is written Chapra for the IMD station. The CWC Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(f) writes Darbangha for Darbhanga. Older sources name the former Shahbad district, now Bhojpur, Buxar, Rohtas and Kaimur, and their "Bihar" includes districts now in Jharkhand;
- IMD has two observatories in Patna with long records: **Patna (A)**, the airport observatory, called Patna (A) in this Manual, whose series is used for statistics; and the older Patna observatory in the city, whose highest day is quoted as a historical maximum. Patna also has an automatic weather station at Anisabad;
- **Gandhi Ghat** and **Dighaghat** are CWC gauges on the Ganga in Patna, and **Sripalpur** is the CWC gauge on the Punpun; the names refer to the gauges;
- the Kosi is also written Koshi; the Burhi Gandak Budhi Gandak; the Sone Son; and Kabartal Kanwar Tal or Kabar Tal. Gogabil is also written Gogabeel, the form its community reserve notification uses.

This Manual uses the first form and keeps the others where a title, a source or a station uses them. Some names of bodies need a word of explanation:

- a **Nagar Nigam** is a Municipal Corporation, a **Nagar Parishad** a Municipal Council and a **Nagar Panchayat** the smallest class of municipality, all under the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007. All three are urban local bodies (ULBs). Under that Act, public drains and public tanks vest in the Municipality;
- a **sump house** is the term used in Patna for a **drainage pumping station (DPS)**: a sump and pumps that lift the water of a city's drains into the river when the river is high and the outfall sluices are shut. This Manual uses the two terms for the same thing;
- **BUIDCO** is the Bihar Urban Infrastructure Development Corporation Limited, a company of UDHD that builds storm water drainage and sewerage schemes. The **Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad** (the Bihar State Water and Sewerage Board), which formerly ran Patna's sump houses, was merged into BUIDCO, with its assets, projects and staff, by the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018);
- **PMAA** is the Patna Metropolitan Area Authority, constituted under section 11 of the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, which prepares the Patna Master Plan 2031;

- **WRD** (Jal Sansadhan Vibhag) holds the rivers, embankments, canals and flood works and notifies the floodplain zones of embanked rivers. Its **FMISC** issues the daily flood bulletin, generally from 15 June to 15 October;
- the **Minor Water Resources Department** (Laghu Jal Sansadhan Vibhag), written Minor WRD where space is short, holds minor irrigation, including the *ahar* and *pyne* systems of south Bihar, and is the State groundwater agency named in this Manual;
- an **anchal** is a circle, the revenue subdivision of a district under a Circle Officer, to whom the courts often send disputes over public land and ponds under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956; and
- **Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali** (the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan) is a State campaign, launched in 2019, in which fifteen departments take part with the Rural Development Department as the nodal department, to free public water bodies of encroachment and restore them. No statute or notified scheme for it was found.

Some abbreviations have more than one meaning:

- AMC is the antecedent moisture condition in Chapters 2 and 3; this Manual does not use it for any municipal body;
- HFL is the highest flood level recorded at a gauge, as CWC and WRD use it. It is not a design level, and sources sometimes give different values for the same gauge;
- PMC is the Patna Municipal Corporation, not a project management consultant;
- WRD is the Water Resources Department; the Minor Water Resources Department is a separate department;
- UDHD is also written UD&HD; and
- SWD is a storm water drain.

The sense is clear from the context. Hindi, Bhojpuri, Maithili and Magahi terms used in the text, such as *pokhar* (पोखर; also *pokhra* and *talab*, a pond or tank that holds rainwater), *ahar* (आहर, a reservoir that stores rain and flood water for irrigation), *pyne* (पैन, also *pain* or *payeen*, the channel that feeds or draws from an ahar), *chaur* (चौर, a low depression in the floodplain where rainwater stands for months), *maun* (an oxbow lake, the local name the Ramsar information sheet for Kabartal records), *tal* (ताल, a large shallow lake or seasonally waterlogged low land, as in the Mokama tal), *diara* (दियारा, also *diyara*, the sandy alluvial land of a river's active floodplain and its islands), *nala* (natural drain or large storm drain), *nali* (small street drain), *bandh* or *tatbandh* (बाँध, तटबंध, an embankment) and *jaljamav* (जलजमाव, waterlogging), are explained where they first appear.

Use with care. Clauses and values may change after review. Designers remain responsible for their designs and for checking the data they use. Neer accepts no liability for decisions made on the basis of this draft.

Disclosure. Neer publishes the India Flood Atlas, a national map of modelled 1% AEP flood depth. Clause 6.11.3 names it as one example of a regional map that an Approving Authority may adopt for floor levels. The Manual does not require the Atlas; any map adopted under Clause 7.3.4 may be used.

Comments. Comments and corrections are welcome at info@neer.ai.

Preface

Bihar's cities flood for three reasons. Patna showed the first in September 2019, when four days of rain, less than a 50-year day on the CWC maps, fell on drains that had not been cleaned and sump houses that did not run; it showed the second in August 1975, when the Sone and the Ganga crossed into the city and stood in it for days, and in September 2026 the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported above the highest level it had reached, in 2016; and the third shows in a drainage system whose drains, sump houses and ponds are split among PMC, BUIDCO and WRD, and whose nalas carry the city's sewage.

1. **Monsoon storms on flat land, with no design storm and drains that fail.** No design return period, design storm or rainfall intensity–duration–frequency (IDF) relationship has been published for the drains of any city in Bihar, and no analysis of short-duration rainfall has been published for any station in the State. The land is very flat: the Bihar catchment worked as an example in the CWC flood estimation report for the Middle Ganga Plains, on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli railway, falls about 5 cm in a kilometre. Patna's drainage system "was laid about 200 years ago and is in bad condition", the Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG) found. From 26 to 29 September 2019 Patna received between about 211 and 226 mm of rain, as reported; Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh stood knee- to waist-deep for days, and the National Disaster Response Force (NDRF) rescued more than 4,000 people. About 38 of the city's 39 sump houses were reported not to be working, and the State's inquiry was reported to have found that pumps were not started on time and drains were not cleaned. On 18 October 2019 the Patna High Court directed the State to report which sump houses had been working and what was done after the weather forecast. Patna (A)'s highest day, 273.5 mm on 20 September 1967, was larger than those four days together, and the records elsewhere are far larger: 498.9 mm at Dinapur on 25 June 1897, 520.0 mm at Motihari on 25 August 2005, 436.0 mm at Muzaffarpur on 26 September 2007 and 580.0 mm at Majarganj in Sitamarhi district on 11 August 1987, up to about twice the 50-year day on the CWC maps. Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh have been reported to waterlog every monsoon since the 1970s; roofs, roads and paving now send more water to the drains, and faster.
2. **Rivers lock the outfalls.** Patna is surrounded on three sides by rivers, the Ganga to the north, the Sone to the west and the Punpun to the south, and its drains reach them through sluices and pumps. When the rivers rise the sluices on the Ganga and the Punpun are closed and the drains are pumped; a Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 counted 56 permanent and 28 temporary drainage pumping stations, without making clear whether for Patna or the State. In August 1975 the waters of the Sone and the Ganga crossed the Patna Canal into the city, and ground floors stood under water for five to seven days, as reported; the Ganga's highest level at Dighaghat, 52.52 m, dates from that flood. At Gandhi Ghat the Ganga's danger level is 48.60 m and its highest recorded level 50.52 m, reached in August 2016; on 5 and 6 September 2026 it was reported at 50.53–50.57 m, above that record, though CWC's bulletin of 31 October 2026 still lists 50.52 m. On the Punpun at Sripalpur the highest level, 53.91 m in 1976, stands 3.31 m above the danger level, and the Punpun's backwater shuts the outfalls of south Patna. North Bihar's rivers run between embankments: WRD counts about 3,800 km of them, 3,606 km in north Bihar, and classes 68.80 lakh ha of the State's 94.16 lakh ha, about 73%, as flood-prone. On 18 August 2008 the Kosi breached its eastern afflux embankment at Kusaha, in Nepal, and turned across north Bihar; about three million people were reported homeless. In August 2017 floods in north Bihar were reported to have killed 514 people in 19 districts. The Burhi Gandak at Muzaffarpur, the Bagmati at Hayaghat in Darbhanga district and the Mahananda at Purnia have all stood 1.8–3.2 m above their danger levels at their recorded highs, and about half of the highest levels that CWC lists for its gauges in north Bihar were set after 2015.
3. **Drains, sump houses and ponds split among agencies, with sewage in the nalas.** The Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 vests public drains in the Municipality. But the sump houses and trunk drains that the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad ran passed to BUIDCO when a law of 2018 merged the Parshad into it, and PMC stated in a counter-affidavit of May 2025, as quoted, that the drainage system is "not directly under" it; no order dividing Patna's drains between PMC and BUIDCO was found. The rivers, embankments and floodplains are held by WRD; *ahars* and *pynes* by the Minor Water Resources Department; the restoration of ponds by the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign; notified wetlands by the Bihar State Wetland Authority; and industrial areas by BIADA. In practice the nalas also carry

sewage. The Bihar State Pollution Control Board identified 19 drains in Patna discharging 628.5 million litres a day (MLD) to the Ganga and the Punpun, against six sewage treatment plants (STPs) of 350 MLD sanctioned, and sewers served about a fifth of the city, the CAG found. On 5 March 2025 the National Green Tribunal (NGT), quoting its joint committee in a case on Patna's sewage, recorded that steps should be taken to keep storm water separate from sewage, and that BUIDCO should plan the diversion of sewage to the nearest STP. In Darbhanga, a petition before the NGT alleges that new storm drains have been connected to the sewers.

Behind all three lies lost storage. The *pokhars*, *ahars*, *chaurs* and *tals* that once held rain are protected mainly by campaign and by encroachment law. The Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 bar building within 9 m of a tank's highest water mark, but the draft that would replace them has no such buffer, and the Municipal Act still lets a Municipality order a tank or pond filled up if it appears injurious to health. The State reports that Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali has freed 28,685 ponds, *ahars*, *pynes* and wells of encroachment and restored 26,381 ponds; other counts differ, and the State was reported to have lost more than 100,000 ponds in three decades. In Darbhanga the NGT directed in March 2023 that encroachments around three ponds be removed within three months; in November 2024 the petitioners told the Tribunal that no work had been done. In north Bihar, Kabartal in Begusarai, designated a Ramsar site on 21 July 2020, is the largest of 18 connected wetlands that the monsoon floods to a depth of up to 1.5 m; in the south, about 1,062 km² of the Mokama group of tals is waterlogged each monsoon and drains slowly to the Ganga, as reported.

Design for Bihar therefore has to cover a monsoon that comes early in the east and late in the west, on a plain that the rivers hold for weeks. The monsoon normally reaches Purnia by 13 June, Patna and Gaya by 16 June and Chhapra by 18 June, and withdraws between 6 and 10 October; June to September brings about 86% of the year's rain. Annual normals run from about 858 mm at Arwal and Jehanabad to 2,215 mm at Kishanganj, and 985 mm at Patna. May is already wet in the north-east (a May normal of 166.5 mm in Kishanganj district), and large days have fallen before the onset: 271.8 mm at Motihari on 29 May 2006, and 214.6 mm at Sabour on 22 April 1971. Heavy rain continues to the withdrawal: Buchaha in Muzaffarpur district recorded 458.2 mm on 4 October 1961. Of the 113 storms and depressions that affected Bihar from 1891 to 2010, 43 came in September, more than in any other month. WRD's daily flood bulletin runs from 15 June to 15 October.

National guidance sizes public drains but does not control the runoff that new building adds. This Manual makes stormwater a **condition of development approval**. Every development above a modest size must:

- hold frequent rainfall on site;
- release the large storms no faster than the undeveloped land did, or slower where catchments already flood; and
- show that its outfall still works when the river or the receiving nala is high and the sluice or flap gate is shut, or when the pumps that serve it are running at full capacity.

The Manual also sets how public drains, roads, nalas, pokhars, chaurs and other water bodies, gated and pumped outfalls and basin-wide master plans are designed, so that private sites and public works aim at the same standard.

The Manual draws on leading stormwater standards from India and abroad. Each is adapted to Bihar's south-west monsoon from mid-June to early October and the intense storms that come with it; the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun, the Gandak, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati, the Kosi and the Mahananda, their embankments and the sluiced and pumped outfalls of the cities on their banks; the diara and the chaurs of the floodplain, the sands of the Kosi, the shallow water table of the north Bihar plain, the arsenic in the aquifers of the Ganga belt and the fluoride in the south, the tal lands, and the hard rock and thin soils of the plateau fringe; the pokhars and the ahar-pyne systems; and cities whose dense old cores, new colonies and basements turn ordinary storms into floods.

1. **National base.** The CPHEEO *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems* (2019). This Manual builds on it and sets higher standards where it allows a State to do so. IRC road-drainage codes and the NDMA urban flood guidelines are also used.
2. **Overall structure.** Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 (Version 2025.01), the most recent comprehensive regional standard. It supplies the preserve, retain, detain, convey and maintain sequence and the required retention volume.

3. **Design rainfall.** The CWC *Flood Estimation Reports* for the three subzones that cover Bihar, 1(f) Middle Ganga Plains north of the Ganga, 1(d) Sone south of the Ganga and west of the Kiul, and 1(g) Lower Ganga Plains in the south-east, as the interim source. No published analysis of short-duration rainfall for a station in the State was found; a report of the National Institute of Hydrology (NIH) on short-interval rainfall in the Punpun basin is known but could not be obtained for this Manual. Frequency analysis of hourly rainfall by NIH, Roorkee, for comparison only.
4. **Monsoon practice.** The PUB Singapore *Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage* (7th ed., 2025), for the fixed-coefficient route for small sites and drainage reserves. Malaysia's MSMA 2 (2012), for monsoon design storms and simplified on-site detention.
5. **Runoff reduction and treatment.** The Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016), for runoff reduction and downstream analysis. CIRIA C753 *The SuDS Manual* (2015), for the treatment train. The Mile High Flood District criteria manual, for outlet and storage design.
6. **Local rules.** The Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012; the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014, with the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 that would replace them; the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007; the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006; the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017; the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956; the Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997; the Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026; WRD's order of 6 March 2025 on the floodplain zoning of embanked rivers; the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016; the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017; and the orders of the Patna High Court and the NGT on drains, sewage and ponds. This Manual follows them or, where disclosed, makes them stricter. The Byelaws 2014 were issued by UDHD Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014 (as printed in their official Hindi text); only their bye-laws on restrictions, site requirements, plantation, basements and rainwater harvesting and their zoning table were read. The Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act was searched rather than read section by section, and the Irrigation Act was read only in extracts.

Why this Manual is needed

India has no uniform stormwater design standard. The CPHEEO *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems* (2019) is the country's first manual dedicated to storm water drainage, but it is advisory. The Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs lists it among advisory guidelines and treats urban flooding as a matter for State Governments and urban local bodies. None of the national rules or State building rules reviewed for this Manual makes runoff control a condition of building approval, and neither does the Model Building Bye-Laws 2016.

The national documents leave key values open, or give different answers.

- **Return periods.** CPHEEO recommends 5 years for drains in Class I cities and 2 years elsewhere, and lets a State committee adopt higher values. A 2023 CPHEEO presentation shows a different table. IRC:SP:50-2013 suggests 1–2 years for urban road drains; IRC:SP:42-2014 suggests 25 years. An engineer designing a drain in Bihar can cite 1, 2, 5 or 25 years, depending on the code chosen.
- **Detention.** CPHEEO describes limiting peak outflow to pre-development rates as general practice. It uses no "shall" and names no storm frequencies.
- **Climate.** The NDMA Urban Flooding Guidelines (2010) call for detention and retention facilities and for rainfall curves adjusted for climate change, but give no sizing rule or return period.
- **Design rainfall.** No national document gives design rainfall that a designer can apply directly to a given town. Each project chooses its own source. IMD's 2022 national set of rainfall intensity curves has no panel for any station in Bihar, and the range it gives for the Gangetic plain puts the largest 3-hour depth below the largest 1-hour depth. The CWC reports for the State's three subzones date from 1985 to 1994, and their short-storm ratios change at the Ganga: in Patna, on the south bank, the ratios of subzone 1(d) give a 50-year hour of about 96–104 mm, while at Hajipur, across the river, those of 1(f) give about 74–87 mm. The reanalysis grids of NIH-DHAARA read 77.0 mm for that hour at Patna; at 24 hours they read well above the CWC maps over north and north-east

Bihar (526 mm for a 50-year day at Kishanganj, against about 320–360 mm on the map) and below them at Gaya (227 mm, against about 280–320 mm). The station records lie above all of them: Motihari's 520.0 mm day of 2005 and Muzaffarpur's 436.0 mm of 2007 exceed the 100-year values on the maps. No sub-daily station record has been published to show which short-storm value is right.

Bihar has no drainage design standard of its own. Research for this Manual found no design standard, IDF relationship or circular of UDHD, BUIDCO, WRD, PMAA, PMC or any other Nagar Nigam that fixes return periods or design rainfall for storm drains. In particular:

- **The State is building drains without a published design storm.** The State budget for 2026 was reported to provide about ₹3,559 crore for 38 storm water drainage schemes, and BUIDCO's project in Patna was reported to cover 103 drain lines and 185 km of drains in nine packages. No detailed project report (DPR) stating the return period, intensity or runoff coefficient of any of them was found, and no State guideline for urban storm drainage was found. The Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 requires each Municipality to make a drainage and sewerage code (s.219), but none was found for any city. This Manual is offered as a technical companion to these schemes and to the byelaws: it supplies the design storm, detention and buffer values that they leave open. It has not been adopted by UDHD, BUIDCO or any other body;
- **The building byelaws require recharge but not detention.** The Byelaws 2014 make rainwater harvesting mandatory on plots of every size, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof (bye-law 51), require surface-water drains within the curtilage where the Authority asks and its written approval to connect them to a sewer (bye-law 30(D)), and ask for tree cover on at least 5% of the land (bye-law 32). The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, posted on 5 June 2026 and not notified as of September 2026, would require a rainwater harvesting proposal on plots of 100 m² and more and drop the pit volume. The Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006 lets the Authority it creates direct rainwater harvesting on premises of 1,000 m² and more in notified areas, and lets a local body make it a condition of plan approval (s.18); whether the Act has been brought into force was not confirmed [TBC]. No rule requires on-site detention, limits peak runoff or sets "zero runoff";
- **Basements are barred from flood-prone areas, but the areas are not defined.** The Byelaws 2014 do not allow basements in low-lying or flood-prone areas (bye-law 47(1)), and the draft of 2026 keeps the rule and asks site plans to show the normal flood-affected areas and contours at 0.5 m where the slope is steeper than 1 in 20. Neither text says how a flood-prone area is to be drawn;
- **The only pond buffer is 9 m, and the draft drops it.** The Byelaws 2014 bar building within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank unless the owner shows that its drainage will not reach the tank (bye-law 30(B)), in natural waterways or drains shown in the Development Plan or drainage plan (bye-law 29(A)), and over or under a municipal drain (bye-law 29(D)). The draft of 2026 bars permanent construction only within a water body's boundary, with no buffer. The Municipal Act vests public tanks in the Municipality (s.177), but also lets it order a tank or pond filled up if it appears injurious to health (ss.184 and 251(e)). No setback in metres from nalas was found in any rule read for this Manual;
- **The floodplain rule covers embanked rivers, not city nalas.** WRD's Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 makes the land between the embankments of a river embanked on both banks, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank of one embanked on one side, a Prohibited Zone: no permanent construction, and temporary structures only beyond 250 m from the bank, with the district administration to monitor. Rivers without embankments are left to a second phase, in which NIH is to map the 5-, 25- and 100-year floodplains of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari under an agreement of 3 August 2025. The River Ganga Authorities Order, 2016 defines the floodplain by the flood of once in a hundred years, and the Wetlands Rules bar permanent construction within 50 m of the mean high flood level of a notified wetland; no wetland in Bihar was found finally notified under them. None of these reaches the nalas and pokhars inside a city;
- **A new law removes drainage clearances for enterprises.** Schedule V of the Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 lists a storm water drain NOC, a Revenue Department NOC for land near water bodies or nalas, a Collector's NOC for development on wetland and an Irrigation Department NOC for sites near canals as "Not required" for enterprises. Whether it reaches the sanction of building plans for housing is not clear. A drainage submittal under this Manual therefore belongs within building-plan sanction, not in a separate NOC; and

- **No document sets the river level for which an outfall is designed.** The warning and danger levels and the highest flood levels published for river gauges are flood-warning levels and records, not design levels, and sources give different values for some gauges, as at Gandhi Ghat in September 2026.

So each agency and each local body interprets the central manual its own way. PMC and the other Nagar Nigams, the Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats, BUIDCO, PMAA, WRD, BIADA, road agencies, their consultants and funding agencies fill the gaps differently. Two drains on the same street, built by different agencies, can be sized for different storms from different rainfall sources. A nala built by BUIDCO can pass through wards cleaned by PMC and end at a sump house and a sluice on the Ganga or the Punpun, with no agreed level at which the sluice is shut or the pumps started. And a reviewer has no common basis against which to check a design.

What this Manual does about it. It turns those open choices into one State standard:

- one source and method for design rainfall across the three CWC subzones, with a floor for short storms where no station analysis exists (Chapter 2);
- named return periods for every drainage element (Chapters 2 and 6);
- a required pre- versus post-development rule for private sites (Chapter 4);
- a required tailwater check for outfalls to rivers and nalas, sluiced, gated or pumped, against a design river level (Chapter 5);
- corridors and setbacks along nalas and around pokhars and chaurs, which no rule now sizes, proposed by this Manual (Chapter 7);
- recharge only where the water table and groundwater quality allow it, and treatment where nalas carry sewage (Chapter 8); and
- basin-wide master plans, so that the agencies that share a basin plan together (Chapter 11).

It uses the route the CPHEEO manual itself provides: a State may adopt standards higher than the national values (CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.1, Note 2). A Nagar Nigam, PMAA or BIADA can still adopt a stricter standard (Chapter 1).

Sources: CPHEEO (2019) Part A §4.4–4.5 and Table 4.1; CPHEEO presentation to CSE (August 2023); IRC:SP:50-2013 §6; IRC:SP:42-2014 §6; NDMA (2010) Urban Flooding Guidelines, para 6.6.2; MoHUA Model Building Bye-Laws (2016); UDHD, Government of Bihar, Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014 (English text, "Dec-2014"; Notification No. 577 (file 11/ न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text), bye-laws 29, 30, 32, 47 and 51 and Table 1, and Guidebook on Application, Approval & Occupancy Procedure under Bihar Building Bye Laws, 2014; UDHD, Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 (posted 5 June 2026), clauses 1, 6, 23, 24 and 41 and Tables 5 and 6; Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012 (Bihar Act 20 of 2012), s.11; Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, ss.177, 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 198, 201, 219, 251 and 252; Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006, ss.1(3) and 18; Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311, 5 April 2018; Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956; Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997 (extracts); Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120, 16 September 2026, Schedule V; WRD, Government of Bihar, Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, Implementation of Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers (Hindi), and the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, of 12 January 2026 in NGT O.A. 200/2014 (M.C. Mehta v. Union of India), annexing it with BUIDCO's drain-status table of 13 December 2025; River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl.3(l); Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, r.4(2)(vi); Bihar State Wetland Authority, list of Ramsar sites and draft wetland notifications; Ramsar Information Sheet, Kabartal Wetland (site 2436); Patna High Court, CWJC No. 15027 of 2018 and connected cases, order of 18 October 2019; supplementary affidavit of the District Magistrate, Patna, of 19 August 2025 in NGT O.A. 188/2024/EZ (Saurav Narayan v. Bihar State Pollution Control Board), quoting the Tribunal's order of 5 March 2025; NGT O.A. 155/2022/EZ (Talab Bachao Abhiyan v. Government of Bihar), order of 23 March 2023 as recorded in later filings, and the petitioners' objection of 23 November 2024 in M.A. 18/2024; Talab Bachao Abhiyan's application to the NGT (EZ) of 2025 on the Darbhanga storm water drainage project; CAG, Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme (report number and date of tabling not confirmed [TBC]); Government of Bihar, Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan, State portal (progress table, accessed 6 November 2026); CWC, Flood Estimation Reports for Subzones 1(f) (GP/10/1984), 1(d) (S/15/1987) and 1(g) (LG-1(g)/R-1/23/94), including the

1(f) worked example for Bridge No. 152 on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli section; IMD, Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012); IMD, Climate of Bihar (Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18, 2011), Tables V and VII; IMD, Pai et al. (2020), new normal dates of onset and withdrawal of the south-west monsoon, Table 2; Das et al. (2022), MAUSAM 73(4); NIH-DHAARA (accessed 6 November 2026); CWC Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna, daily water level bulletin of 31 October 2026, and WRD/FMISC Daily Flood Information Bulletin of 31 October 2026 (levels in metres as printed; datum to be confirmed [TBC]); Rajya Sabha question No. 266 of 27 November 2024, on drainage pumping stations (as quoted; not read); reports of the Patna waterlogging of September 2019 and the State's inquiry, the Patna flood of August 1975, the Kosi breach of August 2008, the north Bihar floods of August 2017, the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat in September 2026 and the closing of Patna's sluices, PMC's counter-affidavit of 20 May 2025 (as quoted; not read), the loss and recovery of ponds, the Mokama tals, the 2026 State budget for storm water drainage, BUIDCO's Patna storm water drainage project and the status of the Draft Byelaws 2026 (press and secondary sources).

How to use this Manual

Clauses and commentary. Numbered clauses (for example 4.5.2) are the requirements of this Manual and use "shall". Paragraphs headed **Commentary** explain the reason for a clause and cite its precedent. They are guidance, not requirements. Where a value has no direct precedent elsewhere, the commentary says so and explains why this Manual sets it.

Return periods. Storms are described both by annual exceedance probability (AEP) and by return period. For example, "1% AEP (100-yr)" means a storm with a 1-in-100 chance of being equalled or exceeded in any year.

Illustrative values. Worked examples and figures marked "Illustrative — not design values" show method and scale only. Design values come from the sources set in Chapter 2.

Annexes and forms. Each chapter lists the annexes and forms it relies on. They follow the chapters, grouped by chapter, and hold the forms to submit, worked examples, templates, model text and standard drawings. Annexes that need data not yet collected are marked *To be prepared*. They say what they will contain, and the clause that depends on them states the rule that applies in the meantime.

Figures. All figures are original drawings prepared for this Manual. Where a figure follows a published concept, its caption credits the source.

Where to start.

If you are…	Read first
A developer or architect	Chapter 1 (does it apply?), Chapter 4 (what to provide), Chapter 10 (what to submit)
A design engineer	Chapters 2–6, then 8 and 9
A local body or approving authority	Chapters 1, 10 and 11
A planner or waterbody manager	Chapters 7 and 11

Contents

Ch	Title	Annexes and forms
1	Policy, Applicability and Adoption	Annexes 1
2	Design Rainfall and Design Storms	Annexes 2
3	Hydrologic Methods	Annexes 3
4	Site Runoff Control: Retention and Detention	Annexes 4
5	Downstream and Tailwater Analysis	Annexes 5
6	Minor and Major Drainage Systems	Annexes 6
7	Waterbodies, Pokhars (Ponds) and Setbacks	Annexes 7
8	Water Quality and Recharge	Annexes 8
9	Hydraulic Design of Structures	Annexes 9
10	Submittals, Review, Operation & Maintenance and Enforcement	Annexes 10
11	Basin and City Stormwater Master Plans	Annexes 11

List of tables

Table	Title
1.1	Differences between Tier A and Tier B authorities
1.2	Policy supplement: adoptable alternatives S-1 to S-5
1.3	Relationship with other instruments
1.4	Roles and responsibilities under this Manual
1.5	Working assignment of drainage elements under this Manual
2.1	Design return periods (summary)
2.2	Interim climate factors
2.3	Illustrative scale of the mixed-frequency rule (not design values)
3.1	Permitted hydrologic methods
3.2	Runoff coefficient C (for AEP of 10% or more frequent)
3.3	Frequency factor Cf
3.4	Manning's n for sheet flow (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Table 3-1)
3.5	Runoff curve numbers, AMC II, Ia = 0.2S (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Tables 2-2a and 2-2c)
4.1	Design storms to be routed for detention sizing
4.2	Illustrative example: peak discharges and storage used, by duration (Illustrative — not design values)
4.3	Tier B permissible site discharge and site storage requirement (template)
4.3A	Fixed release coefficients (provisional)

Table	Title
5.1	Design tailwater levels for tidal outfalls
5.2	Joint-probability cases for tidal and riverine outfalls
6.1	Design AEPs for conveyance (matches Clause 2.4)
6.2	Street flow limits
6.3	Flow hazard limits for streets and overland flow paths
6.4	Combined flood hazard vulnerability classes (reproduced for reference)
6.5	Inlet clogging factors (share of clean capacity assumed lost)
6.6	Manning's n for design (from CPHEEO 2019)
6.7	Minimum freeboard in open and covered drains
6.8	Maximum spacing of manholes on straight pipe runs
6.9	Minimum drainage reserve width (adopted from PUB Singapore)
7.1	Fixed-width setback where no 1% AEP extent is available
8.1	Pollutants of concern, sources and primary controls
8.2	Required Level of Service for sites that are not redevelopment
8.3	BMP Value Ratings and suitability in Bihar
9.1	Entrance loss coefficients ke (outlet control, full or partly full)
9.2	Maximum permissible mean velocities in channels
9.3	Riprap classes and apron dimensions (HEC-14)
9.4	Minimum internal size of manholes
9.5	Minimum IS 456 exposure classes for Bihar locations
10.1	Submittal stages and linked approvals
10.2	Forms used in submittals
10.3	Minimum owner inspection frequencies
10.4	Graduated enforcement response
11.1	Minimum data and surveys for a BSMP
11.2	Minimum levels of service
1A.1	Tier A authorities as defined in Clause 1.6.1
1A.2	Register of Tier A authorities (layout)
1B.1	Flood-sensitive catchments listed in Clause 4.5.3.2
1B.2	Attributes of the flood-sensitive catchment layer (layout)
1C.1	Alternatives adopted by this resolution
1D.1	Schedule: alternatives adopted (layout)
2A.1	Benchmark comparison of design depths (layout)
2A.2	Rainfall zones (layout)

Table	Title
2B.1	Ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone (layout)
2B.2	Fixed-interval adjustment factors (Clause 2.6.3)
2C.1	Grid-to-point factors (layout)
2D.1	Cumulative fraction of storm depth against cumulative fraction of storm time (layout, one table per zone, duration class and quartile)
2E.1	Retention depth P_R by zone (layout)
3A.1	Soil series to HSG lookup (layout)
3A.2	Seasonal high water table, by mapping unit (layout)
3B.1	Supplementary land covers, AMC II (layout)
3B.2	CN calibration catchments (layout)
3C.1	Problem 3C-1 solution
3C.2	Problem 3C-2 solution
3C.3	Problem 3C-3 solution
3C.4	Problem 3C-4 solution
3C.5	Problem 3C-5 stage–storage–discharge relationship
3C.6	Problem 3C-5 routed outflow
3C.7	Benchmark results to be reported by the applicant
3D.1	Calibrated peak rate factors (layout)
3E.1	SUH relationships by subzone (layout)
3E.2	Worked example outline (layout)
4A.1	Attributes of the shallow-groundwater zone layer (layout)
4B.1	Contents of Annex 4B and their status
4B.2	Tier B PSD and SSR (layout of Table 4.3)
4B.3	Retention credit factor C_R (layout)
4B.4	Largest orifice diameter (mm) for a permissible discharge at a given head (Cd = 0.60, free discharge)
4B.5	Fixed release coefficients C_10 and C_2 (provisional, Table 4.3A)
4C.1	Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.2	Design rainfall depths, mm (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.3	Curve numbers and abstractions (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.4	Storm runoff depth Q, mm (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.5	Unit hydrograph parameters (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.6	Stage–storage–discharge, trial outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.7	Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, around the peak (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.8	Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, hourly (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.9	Results for the trial outlet (120 mm and 470 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)

Table	Title
4C.10	Stage–storage–discharge, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.11	Results for the revised outlet (170 mm and 460 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.12	Retention credit by routing, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.13	Outlet checks, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)
4C.14	Summary of the revised design (Illustrative — not design values)
5A.1	Use of the Annex 5A values in the design tailwater (Table 5.1)
5A.2	Tidal datums, surge and still-water levels by coastal segment (layout)
5B.1	Water bodies named in Chapter 5
5B.2	Attributes of the Annex 5B layers (layout)
5C.1	Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.2	Outfall-closed check results (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.3	Volume balance, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.4	Stage hydrograph, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)
5C.5	Summary (Illustrative — not design values)
6A.1	Interim requirements for inlets until Annex 6A is published (from Chapters 6 and 9)
6A.2	Register of standard inlet types (layout)
6A.3	Capacity on grade (layout; one table per inlet type)
6A.4	Capacity in a sag (layout; one table per inlet type)
6B.1	Sediment allowances already set by Chapter 6 (provisional, to be calibrated)
6B.2	Sediment yield by land use and drain type (layout)
6B.3	Calibration of the sediment allowance (layout)
6C.1	Dimensions on the standard drawings and their source clauses
7A.1	Attribute fields of the waterbody inventory (WB_POLY)
7A.2	Code lists
7A.3	Attribute fields of structures (WB_STRUCT)
7B.1	Fixed-width setback by waterbody class (alternative S-3)
7B.2	Source buffers cited in Clause 7.4.6 (KC APWA 5600, 2006, §5605.3)
7C.1	Rule levels by period (to be completed for each tank)
7C.2	Outlet settings by level (to be completed for each tank)
7C.3	Triggers and actions (to be completed for each tank)
7D.1	Hold points for desilting and restoration works
7E.1	Waterbodies and land
7E.2	Channels, embankments and parts of the system
7E.3	Floods and statutory terms

Table	Title
7E.4	Terms not yet verified
8A.1	Water quality rainfall depths by zone (layout)
8A.2	3-month ARI intensity by duration (layout)
8B.1	Required LoS for redevelopment (layout)
8B.2	Worked example: composite VR (illustrative)
8B.3	Composite VR of treatment trains (layout)
8C.1	Monitoring site register (layout)
8C.2	Event record (layout; parameters of Clause 8.13.2)
8C.3	Performance summary and proposed VR (layout)
8D.1	Pretreatment (all BMPs)
8D.2	Bioretention and rain gardens (Figure 8.2)
8D.3	Vegetated swales
8D.4	Vegetated filter strips
8D.5	Permeable pavement
8D.6	Infiltration trenches and basins (Figure 8.3)
8D.7	Wet ponds (extended wet detention)
8D.8	Constructed wetlands
8D.9	Gross pollutant traps and outfall screens
8D.10	Oil-grit separators
8D.11	Infiltration and recharge criteria (all infiltrating BMPs)
8D.12	Bioretention filter media and layers
8D.13	Indicative plants for bioretention, swales and filter strips
8D.14	Indicative plants for constructed wetlands and wet ponds
8D.15	Species not to be planted
8E.1	Selection of measures (Clause 8.12.3)
8E.2	ESC timing and inspection (Clauses 8.12.2 and 8.12.5)
9A.1	HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients for common inlets
9A.2	Inputs for the worked example
9A.3	Critical depth and specific head (D = 1.2 m)
9A.4	Inlet-control headwater
9A.5	Outlet-control headwater
9A.6	Governing headwater and checks
9A.7	Riprap apron sizing
9A.8	Summary of the worked example (Illustrative — not design values)

Table	Title
9B.1	Dimensions and rules on the standard drawings and their source clauses
9C.1	Pump station design checklist
9C.2	Control levels (values to be set in design)
10A.1	Calculator inputs
10A.2	Calculations the calculator shall perform
10B.1	Layers
10B.2	Attributes of SW_FAC (facilities)
10B.3	Attributes of SW_OUTF (outfalls)
10B.4	Attributes of SW_CATCH (catchments)
10B.5	Attributes of SW_FLOW and SW_CONV (flow paths and conveyance)
10B.6	Metadata (SW_META)
10B.7	Facility type codes (FAC_TYPE)
10B.8	Status codes (STATUS)
10B.9	Inspection result codes (INSP_RES)
10C.1	Access dimensions set by the Manual
10C.2	Access dimensions not set by the Manual (to be confirmed in design)
10D.1	Contents of an O&M plan
10D.2	Retention and infiltration (soakaways, trenches, bioretention, permeable paving)
10D.3	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
10D.4	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
10D.5	Pumped detention, pumps and controls
10D.6	Flap or tide gate, non-return valve
10D.7	Gross pollutant trap or first-flush device
10D.8	Private drains and inlets
11A.1	Deliverables
11B.1	Basins named in Clause 11.3.3 (provisional)
11B.2	Attributes of the basin boundary layer (layout)
11C.1	Depth–damage curve (layout, one table per building type)
11D.1	Items to be published

List of figures

Figure	Title
1.1	Stormwater management hierarchy

Figure	Title
1.2	Applicability decision flowchart
2.1	Design rainfall source hierarchy and adjustments
2.2	Design hyetographs
2.3	From design rainfall source to design storm
3.1	Selection of hydrologic method
3.2	Time of concentration: flow segments along the longest flow path (schematic)
3.3	SCS-CN runoff depth versus rainfall depth
3.4	Two-step continuous simulation: starting tank level (schematic)
3.5	Pre- and post-development hydrographs
4.1	Pre-development 10-yr, post-development 100-yr uncontrolled, and detained hydrographs (illustrative)
4.2	Detention storage stack and multi-stage outlet (schematic)
4.3	Fixed-coefficient route: release caps, storage by the mass-curve method and two-stage outlet (schematic)
5.1	Extent of downstream analysis
5.2	Tidal outfall section with flap gate and design tailwater levels
5.3	Tide-locked outfall timeline (illustrative)
6.1	Minor and major drainage in a kerbed street
6.2	Gutter spread, inlet interception and clogging
6.3	Drain sections: freeboard, sediment allowance and access
6.4	Drainage reserve: cross-section (schematic)
6.5	Coastal band: floor level stack and extent of the band (schematic)
7.1	Waterbody setback zones
7.2	Compensatory storage by elevation band (schematic)
7.3	River-locked outfall of the Patna type: colony drains, a nala and pokhar, a sluice through the river bank and a sump house (drainage pumping station)
8.1	Treatment train
8.2	Bioretention cell
8.3	Infiltration trench
9.1	Culvert hydraulics: inlet control and outlet control
9.2	Riprap apron at a pipe or culvert outlet (schematic)
9.3	Stormwater pump station: wet well, screens, levels and outfall
10.1	Submittal, review and approval workflow
10.2	Construction hold points from approval to handover
10.3	Maintenance cycle and responsibility
11.1	Basin master plan process
11.2	BSMP model schematic

Figure	Title
6C.1	Covered roadside drain with removable covers
6C.2	Access and junction chamber on a covered drain
6C.3	Kerb inlet with silt sump
8E.1	Silt fence: section and plan (schematic)
8E.2	Sediment basin with surface dewatering outlet: section (schematic)
8E.3	Stabilised construction exit: plan and section (schematic)
8E.4	Drain inlet protection (schematic)
9B.1	Culvert headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls
9B.2	Straight vertical drop structure
9B.3	Trash rack at a conduit entrance
9B.4	Detention outlet riser and emergency spillway

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
AEP	Annual exceedance probability
AMC	Antecedent moisture condition
AMRUT	Atal Mission for Rejuvenation and Urban Transformation
APWA	American Public Works Association
ARF	Areal reduction factor
AWS	Automatic weather station
BBL 2014	Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 (Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014)
BIADA	Bihar Industrial Area Development Authority
BSDMA	Bihar State Disaster Management Authority
BSMP	Basin Stormwater Master Plan
BSPCB	Bihar State Pollution Control Board
BUIDCO	Bihar Urban Infrastructure Development Corporation Limited
CAG	Comptroller and Auditor General of India
CGWA	Central Ground Water Authority
CGWB	Central Ground Water Board
CMO	Chief Municipal Officer (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007)
CN	Curve number (SCS/NRCS method)
CPCB	Central Pollution Control Board

Abbreviation	Meaning
CPHEEO	Central Public Health and Environmental Engineering Organisation
CSE	Centre for Science and Environment
CWC	Central Water Commission
DPR	Detailed project report
DPS	Drainage pumping station (a sump house)
DWF	Dry-weather flow
EIA	Environmental impact assessment
ESC	Erosion and sediment control
FAR	Floor area ratio
FER	Flood Estimation Report (CWC)
FMISC	Flood Management Improvement Support Centre, WRD
FTL / MWL	Full tank level / maximum water level
HAT / MHWS	Highest astronomical tide / mean high water springs (coastal terms; not applicable in Bihar)
HFL	High flood level (the highest level recorded at a gauge)
HGL	Hydraulic grade line
HSG	Hydrologic soil group
IDF	Intensity–duration–frequency
IMD	India Meteorological Department
IRC	Indian Roads Congress
MLD	Million litres a day
MoEF&CC	Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
MoHUA	Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs
NDMA	National Disaster Management Authority
NDRF	National Disaster Response Force
NGT	National Green Tribunal (EZ: its Eastern Zone bench)
NIH	National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee
NMCG	National Mission for Clean Ganga
NOC	No-objection certificate
PMAA	Patna Metropolitan Area Authority
PMC	Patna Municipal Corporation (Nagar Nigam Patna)
PSD	Permissible site discharge
RRV	Required retention volume
RWH	Rainwater harvesting
SLA	Sea-level allowance (coastal term; not applicable in Bihar)

Abbreviation	Meaning
SoI	Survey of India
SRRG	Self-recording rain gauge
STP	Sewage treatment plant
SUH	Synthetic unit hydrograph (CWC)
SW monsoon / JJAS	South-west monsoon, June–September
SWD	Storm water drain
UDHD	Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (also UD&HD)
ULB	Urban local body (a Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat)
UTM	Universal Transverse Mercator
WQv	Water quality volume
WRD	Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar
WSUD	Water-sensitive urban design

CHAPTER 1

Policy, Applicability and Adoption

1.1 Purpose and objectives

1.1.1 This Manual sets the minimum standards for the planning, design, construction, operation and maintenance of stormwater systems in Bihar. It applies to private development and to public works, as set out in Clause 1.5.

1.1.2 The Manual has the following objectives:

- (a) to make stormwater management a **condition of development approval**, so that new development and redevelopment do not increase flood peaks or runoff volumes downstream;
- (b) to retain frequent rainfall on site, so that groundwater recharge is sustained and pollutant loads are reduced;
- (c) to size storage for the long-duration south-west monsoon storms of July–September, brought by monsoon depressions, which fall on ground and water tables raised by weeks of rain and often on rivers already in flood from rain over Nepal and the catchments upstream, as well as for short-duration intensities;
- (d) to design outfalls for the stage of the rivers into which the cities drain, the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun at Patna, the Burhi Gandak at Muzaffarpur, the Bagmati and the Adhwara group at Darbhanga, the Ganga at Munger and Bhagalpur and the Mahananda at Purnia, which closes the sluices on outfalls through the river embankments and leaves the land behind them to be drained by pumping, and the levels of the nalas, tals and chaurs into which local drains discharge, including the case where the outfall is closed;
- (e) to protect tanks (pokhars), marshes, rivers, supply channels and surplus courses as part of the drainage system;
- (f) to give every element of the drainage network a safe overland path for the 1% AEP (100-yr) storm;
- (g) to make design inputs, approvals and facility records public, so that designs can be checked and repeated; and
- (h) to make sure that facilities, once built, are maintained and remain effective.

1.1.3 This Manual does not replace the rainwater harvesting (RWH) mandate, the building bye-laws issued by the Urban Development and Housing Department for the municipal areas and planning areas of the State (the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014), or the statutes on waterbodies. It adds runoff control requirements to them (Clause 1.8).

> Commentary. Bihar's floods come from three sources, often together. The first is the rivers. About 68.80 lakh ha of the State's 94.16 lakh ha, some 73%, is flood-prone, and about 3,800 km of embankments, most of them in north Bihar, protect 39.96 lakh ha (WRD Order No. 143, 2025). In August 1975 the Sone began rising on about 19 August, and on the night of about 24 August its waters and the Ganga's crossed the Patna Canal and entered Patna; ground floors were under water for 5–7 days (as reported). The Ganga at Dighaghat in Patna still holds its highest recorded level from that year, 52.52 m, and the Punpun at Sripalpur and the Sone at Maner theirs from 1976, 53.91 m and 53.79 m (CWC). On 18 August 2008 the Kosi breached its eastern afflux bund at Kusaha in Nepal and shifted its course across north Bihar, leaving about three million people homeless (as reported). In August 2017 floods in north Bihar killed 514 people in 19 districts (as reported), and the Mahananda at Dhengraghat and the Parman at Araria set new highest levels that year (CWC). The Ganga at Gandhi Ghat in Patna set its highest recorded level, 50.52 m, in August 2016 (CWC), and is reported to have passed it on 5–6 September 2026, at 50.53–50.57 m (as reported); the CWC bulletin of 31 October 2026 still lists the 2016 level. The second is the heavy storm: Motihari recorded 520.0 mm in a day on 25 August 2005 and Muzaffarpur 436.0

mm on 26 September 2007, both station records (IMD). The third is the city drainage that fails in a fall that is not extreme. Over 26–29 September 2019 Patna received about 210–226 mm in three to four days (the reported totals conflict), less than a 50-year 24-hour depth; Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony were under water for days, the NDRF rescued more than 4,000 people, most of the sump houses were reported not working, and the State's inquiry found that pumps were not started on time and drains had not been cleaned (all as reported). The Patna High Court asked the State to report which sump houses were working, who had cleaned the nalas and what was done after the weather forecast (order of 18 October 2019). On 29 July 2025, 175.4 mm in 24 hours again left parts of Patna waterlogged (as reported).

Missing design makes all three worse. Patna's drainage system "was laid about 200 years ago and is in bad condition", and its natural and man-made drains discharge both runoff and sewage to the Ganga and the Punpun (CAG). Most city outfalls discharge to rivers whose highest flood levels lie 1.2–3.3 m above their danger levels, so an outfall below the river's flood level is shut, or pumped, for days. No published Bihar document sets a design storm, return period or rainfall intensity for a city's drains, and the BBL 2014 control rainwater harvesting pits, not runoff. Objectives (b) to (e) address the storage, outfall and building-level failures, which a drain-sizing manual alone cannot fix.

No national instrument requires on-site detention. CPHEEO (2019) is advisory and describes peak control only as typical practice. NDMA (2010) says detention and retention "will" be included but gives no sizing rule. MBBL 2016 and the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 mandate RWH only. Objective (a) is therefore the main new step this Manual takes.

1.2 Stormwater management hierarchy

1.2.1 Every development to which Chapter 4 applies shall consider stormwater measures in the following order. A designer shall not use a lower measure in place of a higher one that is practicable on the site.

1. **Preserve** — keep or restore natural drainage features, tanks, wetlands, permeable soils, trees and overland flow paths (Chapter 7).
2. **Retain** — hold the runoff from the retention depth of Annex 2E on site, by infiltration, reuse or evapotranspiration (Chapters 4 and 8).
3. **Detain** — store larger storms temporarily and release them at or below the rates in Chapter 4, checked against downstream and tailwater conditions (Chapters 4 and 5).
4. **Convey** — carry the remaining flow safely in the minor system, and the 1% AEP flow in the major system (Chapters 6 and 9).

1.2.2 **Maintenance** underlies all four measures. A measure that cannot be maintained by its owner under Chapter 10 shall not be credited.

1.2.3 Credits from higher measures reduce the requirements of lower ones. Preserved areas and retained volume reduce detention storage as set out in Chapter 4.

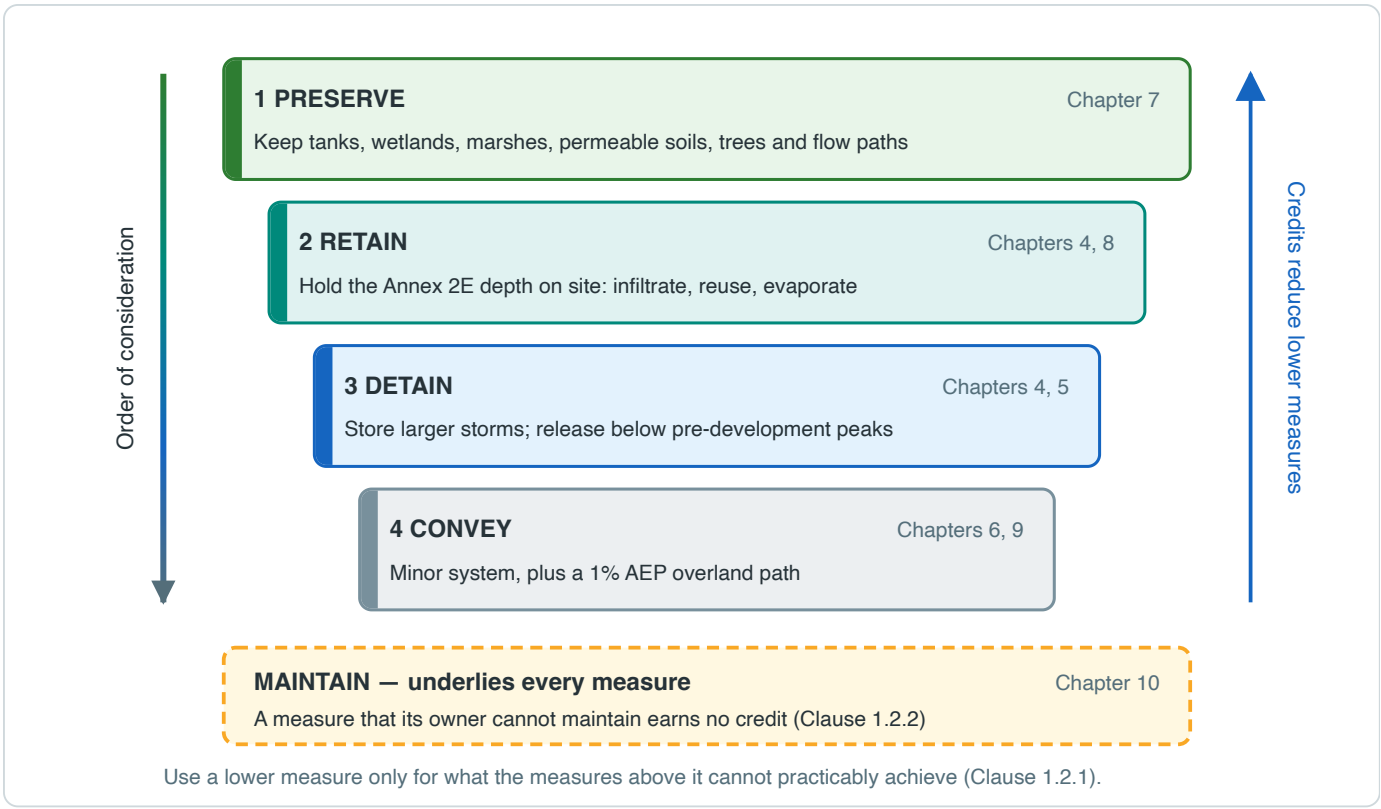


Figure 1.1 — Stormwater management hierarchy: preserve, retain, detain, convey, with maintenance underlying each measure. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Mid-America Regional Council / Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA, "Layers of Stormwater Management", APWA 5600 Manual Factsheet, 2025 (concept).

Commentary. The order follows the "layers" of Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600, Version 2025.01: preserve or restore, retain, detain, convey, maintain (MARC factsheet, 2025). The same logic is behind Georgia's runoff-reduction standard and CSE's "attenuate and infiltrate first" principle (CSE, 2023). For Bihar, the top layer has a particular meaning. Much of the State's flood storage lies in its pokhars and talabs, in the ahars and pynes of south Bihar, in the chaurs and mauns (oxbow lakes) of the north Bihar plain, in the Mokama group of tals, about 1,062 km² of low land in Patna, Nalanda and Munger districts that is waterlogged each monsoon (NIH, as reported), and in the diara land of the Ganga and the Kosi. The law protects some of it. The BBL 2014 refuse permission for a building within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank (bye-law 30(B)) and in the natural waterways and drains shown in the Development Plan or drainage plan (bye-law 29(A)); public tanks in a municipal area vest in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s.177); and the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956 treats as public land any land over which the community has a right of irrigation, which brings community ahars and pynes within it. The same Municipal Act, however, still lets a Municipality order a tank or pond to be filled up where it appears "injurious to health" (ss.184 and 251(e)). The State's Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign reports encroachment removed from 28,685 ponds, ahars, pynes and wells and 26,381 ponds and 78,090 ahars and pynes restored (State portal). The larger wetlands are a separate layer: Bihar has six Ramsar sites, among them Kabartal in Begusarai, designated on 21 July 2020 over 2,620 ha, a complex of 18 interconnected wetlands between the Burhi Gandak and an old channel of the Bagmati that is inundated to 1.5 m in the monsoon and drains through the Bagras maun (Ramsar Information Sheet). The land between the embankments of the embanked rivers is a Prohibited Zone (WRD Order No. 143, 2025). Losing that storage cannot be offset economically by pipes and pumps.

1.3 Legal basis and status

1.3.1 **Notification.** This Manual shall be given statutory effect by the Government of Bihar through:

- (a) an amendment to the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 that makes compliance with this Manual a condition of planning permission, building permit, layout approval and completion certificate, for development to which Clause 1.5 applies; and
- (b) bye-laws or standing orders of each urban local body (ULB), adopting the Manual for works executed or approved by that ULB, including the ULB's own drains and roads.

1.3.2 **Higher State standards.** The design return periods and performance criteria of this Manual exceed the national advisory minimums of the CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019). The State shall constitute, by notification, a high-powered committee (the **State Stormwater Technical Committee**, Clause 1.9) to adopt these higher standards. This is the route that CPHEEO (2019) provides for higher return periods.

1.3.3 **Precedence.** Within its scope, this Manual governs where it is stricter than CPHEEO (2019), IRC:SP:42-2014, IRC:SP:50-2013 or any departmental standard. Where a statute or statutory rule sets a stricter requirement (for example a waterbody setback), the statute governs.

1.3.4 **Design-practice standard for public works.** Departments and ULBs that procure drainage, road or waterbody works shall require compliance with this Manual in detailed project reports (DPRs) and contracts, from the dates in Clause 1.11.

> Commentary. In Bihar the building rules are the Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014, issued by the Urban Development and Housing Department (UDHD). The English text in use on the PMC building plan approval portal is titled "Dec-2014" and its pages are initialled 4 December 2014, and the official Hindi text gives UDHD Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014; no Gazette date for the bye-laws, and no notification for any amendment, was found in research for this Manual [TBC]. One amendment is reported, raising the permitted coverage of commercial buildings from 40% to 70% of the plot by relaxing their setbacks; its number and date are not known [TBC]. In Patna, Chapter III (zoning) of the bye-laws is reported to be substituted by the land-use rules of the Patna Master Plan 2031 (seen only through a search summary). The bye-laws set no design storm, return period, release rate or detention volume, and no "zero runoff" rule. They make rainwater harvesting mandatory on plots of every size, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof (bye-law 51); refuse permission within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank, in natural waterways and drains shown in the Development Plan or drainage plan, and over or under a municipal drain (bye-laws 30(B), 29(A) and 29(D)); bar basements in flood-prone areas (bye-law 47(1)); require at least 5% of the land under tree cover (bye-law 32); and require surface-water drains within the curtilage where the Authority so requires, and written approval to connect a surface-water drain to a sewer (bye-law 30(D)). A **Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026** was posted by UDHD on 5 June 2026; it had not been notified as of September 2026 (as reported) and is a draft only. If notified it would repeal the 2014 bye-laws "with all its amendments and associated executive orders" (cl. 41(1)), require a rainwater harvesting proposal on plots of 100 m² and more (cl. 24), prohibit permanent construction within the boundary of a water body but set no buffer around it (Table 5), and drop the 9 m tank rule. In Bihar the route of Clause 1.3.1(a) therefore runs through UDHD, which would amend the 2014 bye-laws, or include the rule in the 2026 bye-laws before they are notified. This Manual is a draft; neither the Government nor any authority has adopted it. MoHUA told Parliament in July 2026 that urban flooding "falls under the purview of the State Governments and the ULBs" and listed the CPHEEO manual among "advisory guidelines" (Lok Sabha AU1847). The State therefore needs no central approval to adopt higher standards. CPHEEO's Note 2 to Table 4.1 (§4.4.1.4) allows "a high powered committee constituted by State/UT Government through a notification" to adopt higher return periods. Clause 1.3.2 uses that route so that higher standards are on record for centrally funded schemes.

1.4 Definitions

1.4.1 The following terms apply throughout this Manual. Chapter-specific terms are defined in each chapter (for example Clause 2.2).

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Approving Authority (the Authority)	The body that grants planning permission, building permit or layout approval for a development, or that sanctions a public work: the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat concerned, which grants building permission under the BBL 2014; where it grants planning permission or layout approval, the authority of a Metropolitan Area or Planning Area under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, such as PMAA in the Patna Metropolitan Area; or BIADA in its industrial areas, under the rules that apply there (the division of these powers between the bodies is to be confirmed [TBC]), or a department for its own works.
Applicant	The owner, developer or department that seeks approval, and its successors in title.
Development	Any building, layout, sub-division, road, paving or land-use change that requires approval under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 or that is executed as a public work.
Redevelopment	Development on a site where impervious cover already exists.
Land disturbance	Clearing, grading, excavation, filling or paving of land, measured in plan area over the whole of a common plan of development (Clause 1.5.5).
Impervious area	Roofs, paving, compacted gravel, decks and other surfaces that prevent infiltration. Permeable paving designed to Chapter 8 is counted as pervious only for the area it treats.
New or replaced impervious area	Impervious area created, or removed and rebuilt down to the subgrade, by the development. Resurfacing that leaves the base in place is not "replaced".
Retention	Permanent removal of runoff from the drainage system on site, by infiltration, reuse or evapotranspiration (Chapter 4).
Detention	Temporary storage of runoff with a controlled outlet, emptied after the storm (Chapter 4).
Rainwater harvesting (RWH)	Collection of rainfall for supply or recharge under the RWH mandate. RWH storage is not detention unless Chapter 4 allows it.
Minor system	Drains, pipes and inlets designed for the minor-system AEP of Chapter 6.
Major system	The overland and floodway path that carries the 1% AEP (100-yr) flow (Chapter 6).
Pre-development condition	Greenfield: open land in good condition for the mapped hydrologic soil group. Existing impervious cover is not counted (Chapter 3).
Flood-sensitive catchment	The catchments of the drains of Patna, Danapur, Phulwari and Khagaul that outfall to the Ganga and the Punpun through sump houses, drainage pumping stations and sluices, including Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony; the catchments of the drains of Muzaffarpur that outfall to the Burhi Gandak; the catchments of the drains of Darbhanga that outfall to the Bagmati and the Adhwara group; and tal and chaur land, including the Mokama group of tals and the chaurs and mauns of north Bihar, and any catchment the Authority notifies (Chapter 4; Annex 1B).
Waterbody	A river, stream, canal, tank (pokhar), lake, pond, marsh, supply channel or surplus course, whether perennial or seasonal (Chapter 7).
Regional facility	A detention, retention or tank storage facility serving more than one development, built or restored under a basin plan (Chapter 4).
Tier A / Tier B authority	An Approving Authority classed under Clause 1.6.
Policy supplement	The set of adoptable alternative clauses in Clause 1.7 and Annex 1C.
Drainage report	The preliminary or final report required by Chapter 10.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Registered professional	A person registered under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 to prepare and sign the relevant plans, with any further qualification required by Clause 10.6.
Compliance calculator	The State-issued tool for computing and reporting compliance (Clause 10.5).
Maintenance declaration	The registered undertaking by an owner to maintain a stormwater facility (Clause 10.10).
Variance	Approval to depart from a numeric requirement, with equivalent performance shown (Clause 1.10).
Waiver	Approval that a requirement does not apply to a site, on the grounds in Clause 1.10.
Notified	Published by the Government or the State Stormwater Technical Committee in the Bihar Gazette.

> **Commentary.** "Replaced" impervious area is defined to the subgrade so that redevelopment of a fully paved site is captured, while routine resurfacing is not. This follows the approach of the APWA 5600 (2025.01) redevelopment triggers (MARC Supplement, 2025).

1.5 Applicability

1.5.1 **Who is covered.** This Manual applies to:

- (a) all development requiring planning permission, building permit or layout approval under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014;
- (b) all drainage, road, bridge, culvert, waterbody and flood-mitigation works executed by a ULB, a State department, a board, or a State undertaking; and
- (c) works executed by Central agencies or their contractors within Bihar, to the extent that the Authority's approval or no-objection is required.

1.5.2 **Retention and detention threshold.** Chapters 4 and 5 (retention, detention, downstream and tailwater analysis) apply to any development that, over the common plan of development, involves:

- (a) land disturbance of **0.1 ha or more**; **or**
- (b) new or replaced impervious area of **500 m² or more**.

1.5.3 **RWH.** The existing RWH mandate continues to apply under bye-law 51 of the BBL 2014 to plots of **all sizes**, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof area; and, under section 18 of the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006, to residential, commercial and other premises of 1,000 m² and more in urban areas notified under the Act, whose commencement and notified areas were not confirmed for this Manual [TBC], as now. This Manual does not change it.

1.5.4 **Provisions that apply at every size.** The following apply to all development under Clause 1.5.1, whatever its size, unless exempted by Clause 1.5.8:

- (a) no sewage connection to a storm drain (Chapter 8);
- (b) lowest habitable floor and openings at or above the 1% AEP level plus 0.5 m, where a 1% AEP level is mapped or determinable (Chapter 6);
- (c) waterbody setbacks and the no-fill zone (Chapter 7); and
- (d) no obstruction of a natural drainage path or major-system flow path (Chapter 6).

1.5.5 **Common plan of development.** The thresholds of Clause 1.5.2 apply to the total area of a development, including all phases, plots and sub-divisions under one layout approval or one ownership at the date of application. A development shall not be divided to avoid the thresholds.

1.5.6 **Redevelopment.** For redevelopment, the thresholds apply to new plus replaced impervious area. Retention and detention apply to the whole of the new and replaced impervious area, and the pre-development condition is greenfield (Clause 1.4). Where greenfield control cannot be achieved on a constrained redevelopment site, the relief route of Clause 4.5.6 applies: a minimum on-site cut of 50% from existing peaks, with the shortfall paid as fee-in-lieu into basin storage.

1.5.7 **Linear public works.** For roads, widening and other linear works, the impervious area threshold applies to the added impervious area within each drainage catchment crossed. Retention and detention shall be provided within the right of way, or in a regional facility under Chapter 4, where the right of way cannot hold them.

1.5.8 **Exemptions.** The following are exempt from Chapters 4 and 5:

- (a) a single dwelling on its own plot, where the thresholds of Clause 1.5.2 are not met; and
- (b) linear road resurfacing that adds no impervious area.

Exempt development remains subject to the RWH mandate and to Clause 1.5.4.

1.5.9 **Applicability determination.** The Applicant shall record the applicability decision on **Form 1-1** (Applicability Determination) with the first submittal under Chapter 10. The Authority may confirm or correct it at the pre-application stage.

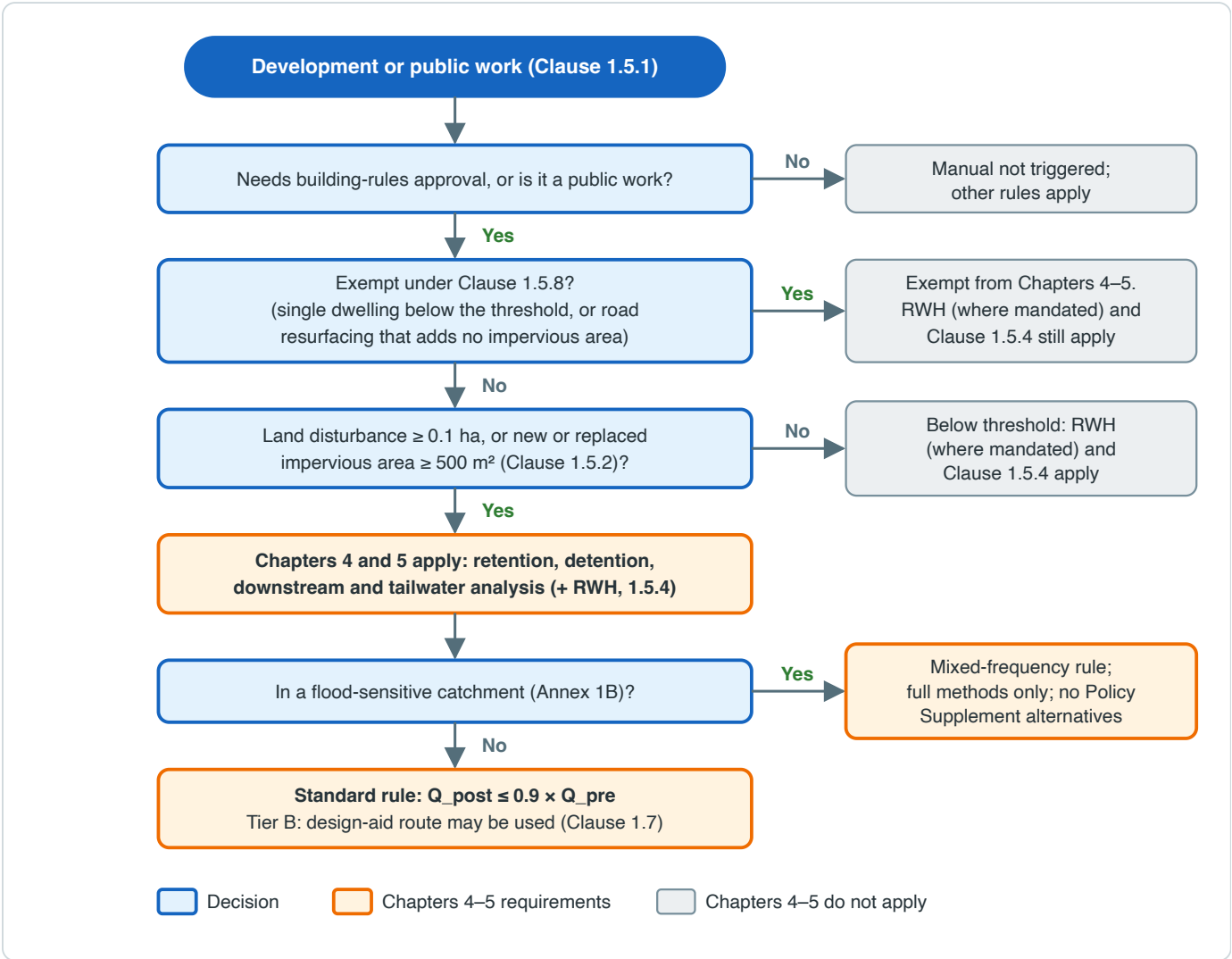


Figure 1.2 — Applicability decision flowchart for Clause 1.5. Original drawing for this Manual.

> **Commentary.** The thresholds have no single direct precedent; they are set by this Manual. Precedents span a wide range:
>
> - Singapore controls peak runoff from developments of 0.2 ha or more (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., cl. 7.1.5).
> - Malaysia's 2008 DID checklist used on-site detention for sites up to 0.1 ha and community ponds above that.
> - The APWA 5600 (2025.01) Policy Supplement offers alternative triggers of ¼ acre (about 0.1 ha) disturbed, or 1 acre (about 0.4 ha) with 10,000 sq ft (about 930 m²) impervious, and warns agencies not to exceed a 1-acre trigger.
> - MBBL 2016 makes recharge mandatory for buildings over 500 m².
>
> The 0.1 ha / 500 m² trigger sits at the strict end of these, because typical Bihar plots are small and the cumulative effect of many small plots is what fills Patna's drains. For small buildings in Bihar, bye-law 51 of the BBL 2014 already requires rainwater harvesting on plots of every size, with recharge pits of 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof, about 60 mm of roof runoff; that is a pit volume, not a rule on what leaves the plot, and in north Bihar, where the water table is within a few metres of the ground in the monsoon, the pits may stand full. The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, not in force, would narrow the rule to plots of 100 m² and more (cl. 24). The 2014 bye-laws bar basements in flood-prone areas (bye-law 47(1)) but do not say what land is flood-prone; their plinth rule was not read for this Manual [TBC], and the draft sets a plinth of 0.45–0.90 m (Table 6), not related to any flood level. The draft would also approve low-risk buildings on self-certification (as reported). Clause 1.5.4(b) applies to every building whatever its size for this reason.
>
> Clause 1.5.4(b) has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because floor levels are the cheapest protection a building can have, and it would be perverse to protect only large developments. Where no 1% AEP level is mapped, Chapter 6 gives the method for small sites.

1.6 Tiered adoption

1.6.1 **Tier A authorities.** The following are Tier A:

- (a) the Patna Municipal Corporation (PMC);
- (b) every Approving Authority within the Patna Metropolitan Area under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, as that area is notified from time to time, including PMAA where it is the Approving Authority, and the Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats in that area; and
- (c) every other Nagar Nigam constituted under the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, as constituted from time to time.

1.6.2 **Tier B authorities.** All other Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats are Tier B.

1.6.3 **What differs between tiers.** All criteria of this Manual apply in both tiers. The tiers differ only in method and review:

Table 1.1 — Differences between Tier A and Tier B authorities

Item	Tier A	Tier B
Performance criteria (Chapters 2–9)	Apply in full	Apply in full
Hydrologic method for storage	Hydrograph method (Chapter 3)	Hydrograph method, or the design-aid route of Clause 1.7 where eligible

Item	Tier A	Tier B
Compliance calculator (Clause 10.5)	Required as a summary	Required; may be the sole calculation on the design-aid route
Policy supplement alternatives (Clause 1.7)	Only with State Stormwater Technical Committee concurrence	May be adopted by council resolution
Technical review	By the Authority	By the Authority, with UDHD regional support or an empanelled reviewer (Clause 10.7)
Flood-sensitive catchment rule	Applies	Applies

1.6.4 **Moving between tiers.** A Tier B authority may opt into Tier A by council resolution. The Government may notify a Tier B authority as Tier A when it becomes a Corporation, joins the Patna Metropolitan Area under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, or is found by a post-event review (Clause 10.16) to need the full methods.

1.6.5 **Flood-sensitive catchments override tier.** In a flood-sensitive catchment, whatever the tier, the alternatives of Clause 1.7 are available only as Table 1.2 allows: S-1 (the design-aid route) for sites of 0.5 ha or less (Clause 4.14.1), and S-5 fee-in-lieu where a basin plan has been notified (Clause 1.10.3(d)). S-2, S-3 and S-4 are not available.

> Commentary. Patna Municipal Corporation, with its engineering wing and a city of about 535 drains, much of whose runoff is lifted into the Ganga and the Punpun by sump houses that BUIDCO runs (as reported), and a small Nagar Panchayat with one assistant engineer cannot be asked to review the same hydrograph models. The Kansas City solution was to keep one regional standard and publish adoptable alternatives for the most contested criteria, so that smaller agencies can "opt down" without leaving the standard (MARC Supplement, Nov 2025). The tiers here keep the performance criteria the same in both tiers and vary only the method, so that a building in a Tier B town is protected to the same level as one in Patna.

1.7 Policy supplement: adoptable alternatives

1.7.1 The Government shall publish, with this Manual, a **Policy Supplement** (Annex 1C) of alternative clauses. An Approving Authority may adopt one or more alternatives under the conditions in Clause 1.7.3.

1.7.2 The alternatives are:

Table 1.2 — Policy supplement: adoptable alternatives S-1 to S-5

No.	Main-text requirement	Adoptable alternative	Eligibility
S-1	Storage sized by hydrograph method (Chapter 3)	**Design-aid route:** retention and detention volumes taken from the unit-storage tables (m³ per ha, by rainfall zone, soil group and impervious fraction) in Annex 4 and the compliance calculator	Sites ≤ 2 ha outside flood-sensitive catchments; ≤ 0.5 ha within them (as Clause 4.14.1)
S-2	Release rate $Q_{post(T)} \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre(T)}$, computed for the site	**Permissible site discharge (PSD):** a tabulated unit-area release rate (m³/s/ha) by zone and AEP, derived from the $0.9 \times Q_{pre}$ rule	Any site outside flood-sensitive catchments
S-3	Waterbody setback extended to the mapped 1% AEP flood extent plus margin (Chapter 7)	**Fixed-width setback table** by waterbody class, where no 1% AEP extent is mapped. Never less than the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7	Waterbodies with no mapped 1% AEP extent
S-4	Downstream analysis by hydraulic model (Chapter 5)	**Screening checklist** of downstream capacity and known flooding, with a model only where the screen fails	Sites < 1 ha, outside flood-sensitive catchments, not discharging to a tidal outfall

No.	Main-text requirement	Adoptable alternative	Eligibility
S-5	On-site detention	Fee-in-lieu toward a regional facility or restored tank storage in a master-planned basin (Chapter 4)	Where a basin plan has been notified

1.7.3 **Conditions on adoption.**

- (a) An alternative shall not lower any criterion below the values of this Manual. S-1 and S-2 are simplified methods for meeting the same criterion. They are not lower criteria.
- (b) A Tier B authority adopts an alternative by council resolution, sent to the State Stormwater Technical Committee within 30 days. A Tier A authority needs the Committee's concurrence before adoption.
- (c) The adopted alternatives shall be published on the Authority's website and in the register of Clause 10.17.
- (d) Retention (Annex 2E depth) cannot be replaced by any alternative, except where fee-in-lieu under S-5 funds equivalent retention in the same basin.
- (e) The tables for S-1, S-2 and S-3 shall be issued by the State Stormwater Technical Committee, and reviewed with Chapter 2 (Clause 2.14).

> **Commentary.** The supplement follows the model of the APWA 5600 (2025.01) Policy Supplement, which gives alternatives for the four most contested criteria (applicability, Rational Method limits, stream setback trigger, and Zone 2 setback width). Two of those map onto S-3 and onto the applicability threshold of Clause 1.5.2. Alternative S-3 copies the APWA answer to the same problem: the 1% AEP extent is not mapped for small drainage areas, so a fixed-width table is offered. S-2 follows the Kansas City 2011 shift from "match existing" to fixed unit-area release rates. Local agencies preferred a set rate because existing conditions were hard to determine consistently (MARC Evolution deck). It also reflects the Sydney Water permissible site discharge (PSD) method. The 2 ha / 0.5 ha limits for S-1 (matching Clause 4.14.1) and the 1 ha limit for S-4 have no direct precedent; they are set by this Manual.

1.8 Relationship with other instruments

1.8.1 This Manual shall be applied together with the instruments below. Where they overlap, Clause 1.3.3 governs.

Table 1.3 — Relationship with other instruments

Instrument	Relationship
Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014 (UDHD; Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text), with the amendment relaxing the setbacks of commercial buildings (as reported; number and date [TBC])	Continue. They refuse permission in natural waterways and drains shown in the Development Plan or drainage plan (bye-law 29(A)), over or under a municipal drain (29(D)), and where structural plans in an area that floods do not take flooding into account (29(G)); refuse permission within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank unless domestic drainage is kept out of it, and let the Authority require the lowest floor to be raised above the "normal maximum flood level" of the adjoining ground (30(B)); require surface-water drains in the curtilage where the Authority so requires, and written approval to connect them to a sewer (30(D)); require tree cover on at least 5% of the land (32); and bar basements in low-lying areas without adequate drainage and in flood-prone areas (47(1)). They set no design storm, release rate, detention volume or setback in metres from a nala. The 9 m tank rule is the only metre value they set; the design criteria of Chapters 2–6 and the hydraulic corridor and setbacks of Chapter 7, whose Zone 1 is at least 15 m, are this Manual's proposals; they are not statutory values, and no authority has adopted them. Where the bye-laws, the Patna Master Plan 2031 or a statute are stricter, they govern (Clause 1.3.3).

Instrument	Relationship
Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 (UDHD, posted on 5 June 2026)	A draft, not in force; it had not been notified as of September 2026 (as reported). If notified it would apply to all Municipal Corporations, Municipal Councils, Nagar Panchayats, Metropolitan Areas and Planning Areas, and to BIADA areas if the Department of Industries adopts it (cl. 1(2)), and would repeal the 2014 bye-laws with all their amendments (cl. 41(1)). It would require site plans to show water bodies, "normal flood-affected areas" and contours at 0.5 m where the slope is steeper than 1 in 20 (cl. 6), a rainwater harvesting proposal on plots of 100 m² and more (cl. 24), and no basement in low-lying or flood-prone areas (cl. 23(12)(1)); it would prohibit permanent construction within the boundary of a water body (Table 5) but set no buffer around it, and it has no 9 m tank rule and no detention rule. Clause 1.3.1(a) would apply to it as to the 2014 bye-laws.
Rainwater harvesting: BBL 2014, bye-law 51; Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006, s.18	Continue unchanged. Bye-law 51 makes rainwater harvesting mandatory "for all sizes of plots", with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof area filled with pebbles, brick jali or river sand; terrace collection to a sump through a filter, and replacing topsoil with river sand, are optional. Under s.18 of the Act the Bihar State Ground Water Authority may direct rainwater harvesting on premises of 1,000 m² and more in notified urban areas, and a Municipal Corporation or other local authority may make rooftop harvesting a condition of plan approval for such premises, with water and electricity connections given only after compliance. None of these gives an outlet rule or a storage that is empty when a storm arrives. RWH storage is not detention unless it is a dedicated empty-on-arrival volume with an outlet, and tanks are assumed full at the start of SW monsoon storms (Chapter 4). Recharge structures may count toward retention only where they meet Chapters 4 and 8, which allow no infiltration credit on diara, chaur or tal land or in the north Bihar plain in the monsoon.
Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012, amended by Act 4 of 2022)	PMAA, constituted under section 11 of the Act, prepares the Patna Master Plan 2031 and area development schemes; the Act lists storm-water drainage among the contents of such schemes. Its sections were not read in full for this Manual [TBC]. This Manual does not decide zoning.
Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, Chapter XXIII (ss.193–219), and ss.177, 183, 184, 251(e) and 252	Continue. The Municipality shall construct and maintain drains and "provide a safe and sufficient outfall … in such manner as may not cause any nuisance, whether by flooding" (s.193); all public drains vest in it (s.195), and it may make them over to another authority with the State's approval (s.196); the Chief Municipal Officer may require one drain for sewage and an "entirely separate drain for rain water" (s.198); no premises may be erected or occupied without a drain to his satisfaction (s.201); a connection to a municipal drain needs his permission (s.204); and the Municipality shall prepare a Municipal Water-supply, Drainage and Sewerage Code (s.219), of which none was found for any city in the State [TBC]. Public tanks vest in the Municipality (s.177); a new tank or pond needs the Chief Municipal Officer's permission (ss.183 and 252), so a detention pond on private land in a municipal area needs it too; and the Municipality may order a tank or pond to be filled up (ss.184 and 251(e)). This Manual does not change those powers; Chapter 7 treats ponds as drainage assets.
Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018)	The Act repealed the 1982 Act and merged all the assets, liabilities, ongoing projects and staff of the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad into BUIDCO; its commencement notification was not found [TBC]. BUIDCO has since run Patna's sump houses and trunk drains, while the Municipal Act vests all public drains in the Municipality; the exact split between PMC and BUIDCO is not confirmed (Clause 1.9) [TBC]. Patna's nalas also carry sewage: a CAG report on Patna sewerage under Namami Gange records 19 drains discharging 628.5 MLD against six sanctioned STPs of 350 MLD, and the NGT has directed that storm water be kept separate from sewage and that BUIDCO plan its diversion (O.A. 188/2024/EZ, 5 March 2025). The interception of dry-weather flow under Chapter 8 (Clause 8.9) applies until the connections are removed.
Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006	Continues, to the extent it is in force: it comes into force on dates the State notifies, area by area (s.1(3)), and whether it has been brought into force or any area notified was not confirmed for this Manual [TBC]. Arsenic above 0.01 mg/L is reported in groundwater in 27 districts, mostly along the Ganga, and fluoride above 1.5 mg/L in 19, mostly in the south (CGWB, as cited in the State's report to the NGT in O.A. 728/2023). Under Chapters 4 and 8, untreated runoff is not injected into recharge wells in the arsenic belt unless a hydrogeologist confirms the target aquifer; surface infiltration with soil treatment, or detention, is used instead. Section 18 is the statutory hook for recharge conditions.

Instrument	Relationship
Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956	Continues. "Public land" includes land over which the public or the community has a right of user such as irrigation, which brings community ahars and pynes within the Act; the competent officer serves notice on the occupant (s.3), hears him (s.5) and orders removal (s.6), and the burden of proof lies on the person who claims the land is not public. Chapter 7 relies on it for the recorded extent of pokhars, ahars and pynes.
Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997	Continues. It makes it an offence to erect or add to an embankment without the Collector's permission, or to damage, obstruct or encroach on an irrigation work. No setback in metres from an embankment or canal was found in it.
WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (floodplain zoning of embanked rivers)	Continues. Where both banks are embanked, the land between the embankments, and where one bank is embanked, the land from the embankment across the river to 500 m beyond the other bank, is the floodplain zone and a Prohibited Zone: no permanent construction, no increase in the floor area or height of existing structures, and nothing that obstructs the natural channel; fully temporary or movable structures are allowed only beyond 250 m from the current river bank; flood-protection works and the discharge of treated wastewater to prescribed standards are among the permitted activities; and the district administration monitors the zone. Un-embanked rivers come in a second phase, beginning with the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari, for which NIH is to delineate 5-, 25- and 100-year zones (MoU of 3 August 2025). Where the 1% AEP extent of Chapter 7 is mapped and wider, it governs.
River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016	Continues. The Order defines the floodplain by "a flood of frequency once in hundred years", bars structures in the active floodplain of the Ganga and its tributaries, and requires the prior approval of NMCG for embankments and channelisation in it (as quoted by NMCG). An amendment of the Order in 2026 is reported; its text was not read [TBC].
Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017; Bihar State Wetland Authority; the six Ramsar sites of the State	Continue. The Rules bar construction of a permanent nature, except boat jetties, "within fifty metres from the mean high flood level" of a notified wetland. The six Ramsar sites are Kabartal (Begusarai), Nagi and Nakti (Jamui), Gokul Jalashay (Buxar), Udaipur Jheel (West Champaran) and Gogabil (Katihar); State notifications under the Rules were seen only in draft [TBC]. Where a notification is wider than the setback of Chapter 7, it governs (Clause 1.3.3).
Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 (Act No. 32 of 2026), Schedule V	In force from 16 September 2026. Schedule V, an indicative list of NOCs, marks as "Not required" the storm water drains NOC, the Revenue Department NOC for land near water bodies or nalas, the District Collector NOC for development on wet land and the Irrigation Department NOC for sites near canals, and makes groundwater extraction a matter of self-certification. Its scope is enterprises; whether it reaches the sanction of plans for housing is unclear [TBC]. The checks of this Manual are made within the sanction of the building or layout plan (Chapter 10), not as a separate NOC.
Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (Rural Development Department, nodal, with fourteen other departments)	Continues. An executive campaign, for which no statute or notified scheme was found; its components include the removal of encroachment from public water bodies, the restoration of ponds, ahars and pynes, and rooftop rainwater harvesting, with the progress reported on the State portal. Chapter 7 relies on it for the restoration of pokhars.
Disaster Management Act, 2005; BSDMA; the WRD Daily Flood Information Bulletin of FMISC	Continue. FMISC issues its flood bulletin generally from 15 June to 15 October, and WRD's anti-erosion works are due by 15 May (as reported). No urban flood plan or SOP of BSDMA was found [TBC]. Chapter 10 links its pre-monsoon checks to these dates.
CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019)	Engineering reference. This Manual sets higher return periods under Clause 1.3.2.
NDMA Guidelines on Management of Urban Flooding (2010) and MoHUA SOP (2017)	This Manual puts into effect the NDMA directives on catchment-based design, detention and retention, waterbody protection and climate-adjusted IDF.
NDMA Urban Flood Risk Management Programme (UFRMP) and AMRUT 2.0	Works funded under these programmes shall comply with this Manual. The development controls of Chapters 4–5 protect the capacity those works create.
IRC:SP:42-2014 and IRC:SP:50-2013	Apply to road drainage only where they do not conflict with Chapter 6.
MBBL 2016, Chapter 9	Model for RWH and for the inspection regime in Chapter 10.

Commentary. RWH in Bihar is framed as a water supply and recharge measure. It works well for that purpose. It cannot, however, be relied on for flood control in the SW monsoon, because RWH sumps are usually full or the ground saturated by the time a July to September monsoon depression arrives after weeks of rain. The Manual therefore keeps harvest volume and attenuation volume apart, while letting recharge count as retention where it truly removes water from the system.

Bihar is spending on drainage. The 2026 State budget is reported to provide about ₹3,559 crore for 38 storm-water drainage schemes; BUIDCO's storm-water drainage project in Patna is reported to cover 103 drain lines in nine packages, about 185 km of drains; a Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 cites storm-water drainage projects worth ₹1,230.74 crore and 22 new drainage pumping stations worth ₹325.48 crore (seen only through a search summary); and a scheme of ₹245 crore is being built by BUIDCO in Darbhanga (as noted in a Patna High Court order, seen only through a search summary). None of these works has a published design return period, and no development-control condition stops new plots in the same catchments from using up the capacity such works create. Linking Chapters 4–5 to approvals closes that gap.

The State's law already holds many of the tools. It refuses building within 9 m of a tank and in the natural waterways and drains shown in plans, and bars basements in flood-prone areas (BBL 2014); makes rainwater harvesting mandatory on every plot; lets the Chief Municipal Officer require separate drains for sewage and rain water and forbid new tanks without permission (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, ss.198, 183 and 252); prohibits permanent construction between the embankments of the embanked rivers (WRD Order No. 143, 2025); and recovers public land, including land under ponds, ahars and pynes, from encroachment (Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956). What it lacks is a design standard. None of these instruments says how large a drain must be, which storm it must carry, how wide the reserve along a nala or around a pokhar should be, or how much storage a filled pond or a paved plot removes. The Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 has meanwhile marked the storm water drain and water-body NOCs as not required for enterprises, so this Manual's checks are framed as part of the sanction of the building or layout plan rather than as a separate NOC. This Manual is offered as a technical companion to these instruments and to the drainage works of BUIDCO and the Nagar Nigams: it supplies the design storm, detention and buffer numbers they do not set, as a proposal for the Government and the authorities to consider. Neither UDHD nor any other body has adopted it.

1.9 Roles and responsibilities

1.9.1 The responsibilities below apply under this Manual. They do not change any agency's statutory powers.

Table 1.4 — Roles and responsibilities under this Manual

Agency	Role under this Manual
Urban Development and Housing Department (UDHD)	Issues the building bye-laws, as it did the BBL 2014 and the draft of 2026; oversees the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats, BUIDCO and PMAA; sanctions the storm-water drainage schemes of the cities. Would make the amendment of Clause 1.3.1(a), issue the model ULB bye-law of Clause 1.3.1(b), give regional support to Tier B authorities (Table 1.1) and maintain the empanelled reviewer list (Clause 10.7).
State Stormwater Technical Committee (Clause 1.3.2)	Would adopt higher standards, issue Annexes, tables and the compliance calculator, concur with Tier A alternatives, decide variances referred to it and review the Manual (Clause 1.12).
Bihar Urban Infrastructure Development Corporation (BUIDCO)	A company of UDHD; executes the storm-water drainage schemes of Patna and other cities, sewerage and the Namami Gange works, and, as successor to the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad (Repeal Act of 2017), runs the sump houses and drainage pumping stations of Patna. Would apply this Manual in its DPRs and designs, design interception works that keep the storm capacity of the nala (Chapter 8), and certify the readiness of pumps and sluices (Chapter 10).

Agency	Role under this Manual
Patna Municipal Corporation (PMC) and the other Nagar Nigams; Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats	Hold the public drains of their areas by statute (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s.195), clean and maintain them, and grant building permission under the BBL 2014. In Patna the division of drains and sump houses between PMC and BUIDCO is not confirmed [TBC]. Would apply this Manual to their works, receive handed-over assets (Clause 10.14), and inspect and enforce (Clauses 10.12–10.15).
Patna Metropolitan Area Authority (PMAA)	Constituted under section 11 of the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012; prepares the Patna Master Plan 2031 and area development schemes. Would show flood-sensitive catchments, drain reserves and regional facility sites in its plans and schemes.
Water Resources Department (WRD) and its Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC)	Holds the rivers, embankments, sluices and the flood-control drainage channels; zones the floodplains of the embanked rivers (Order No. 143, 2025); issues the daily flood bulletin from 15 June to 15 October (FMISC). Would provide design river levels and the sluice and pump operating rules for Chapter 5, and consent to outfalls through its embankments.
Minor Water Resources Department	Holds the ahar-pyne systems and minor irrigation tanks, and the State's groundwater directorate. Would supply groundwater levels for the infiltration checks of Chapters 4 and 8, with CGWB, and certify the recorded extent of ahars and pynes for Chapter 7.
Rural Development Department	Nodal department of the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan, which removes encroachment from public water bodies and restores ponds, ahars and pynes. Would share its inventories of restored water bodies for Chapter 7.
Environment, Forest and Climate Change Department and the Bihar State Wetland Authority	The Authority implements the Wetlands Rules 2017 in the State, identifies and notifies wetlands and proposes Ramsar sites. Would keep the list of notified wetlands and permit regulated activities in their zones (Chapter 7).
BSDMA and the District Disaster Management Authorities	Approve the State and district disaster management plans. Would recommend flood-sensitive catchments, hold the record of flood-prone locations with the District Magistrates, and lead the post-event review (Clause 10.16). No urban flood SOP of BSDMA was found [TBC].
Bihar State Pollution Control Board (BSPCB)	Monitors the drains and rivers and identified the drains of Patna that discharge sewage to the Ganga and the Punpun; a respondent in the NGT cases on them. Supports the removal of sewage from storm drains (Chapter 8).
Bihar Industrial Area Development Authority (BIADA)	Develops and manages the industrial areas of the State; would apply this Manual to the drains of those areas, and the 2026 bye-laws, if notified, would apply there only if the Department of Industries adopts them [TBC].
Revenue and Land Reforms Department: the District Magistrates, the Sub-Divisional Officers and the anchal (circle) offices	Keep the land records in which ponds, ahars, pynes and nalas are recorded; remove encroachment from public land under the 1956 Act; monitor floodplain zoning in their districts (WRD Order No. 143); lead flood relief. Would certify the recorded extent of a pokhar for Chapter 7.
Central Water Commission (CWC), a body of the Union	Publishes the Flood Estimation Reports for subzones 1(d), 1(f) and 1(g) used in Chapters 2 and 3, and the river levels at its flood forecasting sites, such as Gandhi Ghat and Dighaghat on the Ganga and Sripalpur on the Punpun in Patna, Sikandarpur on the Burhi Gandak, Hayaghat on the Bagmati and Dhengraghat on the Mahananda. Would supply river stage records and forecasts for Chapter 5.
Central Ground Water Board (CGWB), a body of the Union	Assesses the groundwater units of the State and their categories, and the arsenic and fluoride in groundwater. Would supply groundwater levels and quality with the Minor Water Resources Department.
National Institute of Hydrology (NIH), Roorkee, and its regional centre at Patna	Runs NIH-DHAARA (Chapter 2); is to delineate the 5-, 25- and 100-year floodplain zones of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari for WRD (MoU of 3 August 2025); its regional centre reported on short-interval rainfall in the Punpun basin (Clause 2.3.6(b)).
IMD (Meteorological Centre Patna), and road and rail owners (the Road Construction Department, NHAI, Indian Railways)	IMD's stations supply the rainfall records of Chapter 2. Road and rail owners would apply this Manual to road drainage (Chapter 6), culverts and linear works (Clause 1.5.7).

> **Commentary.** Stormwater in Bihar is split between UDHD, through the bye-laws, the Nagar Nigams, BUIDCO and PMAA; WRD, through the rivers, embankments, sluices and floodplain zoning; and the Minor Water Resources Department, through the ahar-pyne systems; the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign adds the Rural Development Department. Patna shows why the split matters. Since the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad was merged into BUIDCO, BUIDCO has run the city's sump houses and trunk drains, while the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 vests all public drains in the Municipality (s.195) and lets it make them over to another authority only with the State's approval (s.196). No order under section 196, and no order of UDHD, dividing Patna's drains and sump houses between PMC and BUIDCO was found [TBC]; PMC is reported to have told the NGT that the drainage system is not directly under it (seen only through a search summary), and after the waterlogging of September 2019 the Patna High Court had to ask the State which sump houses had been working and who had cleaned the nalas. Until such a rule is made, this Manual assigns the drainage elements as in Table 1.5. The assignment is this Manual's working split for applying its clauses; it does not change any agency's powers.

Table 1.5 — Working assignment of drainage elements under this Manual

Element	Assigned to
Rivers, their floodplains and embankments, the sluices on the embankments, and flood-control drainage channels	WRD
Ahars, pynes and minor irrigation tanks	Minor Water Resources Department
Sump houses, drainage pumping stations and trunk drains in Patna, and the storm-water drainage schemes that BUIDCO builds in other cities, until an order assigns them otherwise	BUIDCO
Nalas, road-side and lane drains and public tanks within the limits of a local body, other than those assigned to BUIDCO	The Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat
Sewers, interceptors and the interception and diversion of nalas, and sewage treatment plants	BUIDCO
Drains of State and national highways	The Road Construction Department or NHAI
Drains within an industrial area	BIADA
Notified wetlands	The Bihar State Wetland Authority, with the owner of the land

This Manual names departments and authorities as the statutes, orders and records name them. A manual that names one owner for each task does not fix institutions by itself, but it removes ambiguity about who signs what.

1.10 Variances and waivers

1.10.1 **Variance.** The Authority may grant a variance from a numeric requirement where the Applicant shows, through a report certified under Clause 10.6, that:

- (a) compliance is impracticable because of site conditions such as a high groundwater table, contaminated soil, rock, or a site area too small for the required facility; and
- (b) the proposed alternative gives equal or better performance at the downstream point of Chapter 5, or the shortfall is made up by fee-in-lieu or off-site works in the same catchment.

1.10.2 **Waiver.** The Authority may waive Chapter 4 detention requirements (not retention) where a hydraulic analysis certified under Clause 10.6 shows that the site discharges directly to the sea, or to a tidal reach with no flood-prone property downstream, and that undetained flow does not worsen the outfall-closed condition of Chapter 5. Bihar has no

coast and no tidal reach, so no site in the State qualifies for this waiver. A site that drains to a river through a sluice or flap gate in an embankment, as along the Ganga and the Punpun at Patna, or only by pumping through a sump house, is in the outfall-closed condition of Chapter 5 whenever the river is high, and detention is not waived for it.

1.10.3 **No variance or waiver.** No variance or waiver shall be granted for:

- (a) a sewage connection to a storm drain;
- (b) the lowest habitable floor level of Chapter 6;
- (c) any reduction of a waterbody setback below the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7, or any fill or construction in the no-fill zone of Chapter 7; or
- (d) the retention requirement in a flood-sensitive catchment, except by fee-in-lieu under Clause 1.7.

1.10.4 **Procedure.**

- (a) The request shall be made on **Form 1-2** (Variance / Waiver Request) with the preliminary drainage report.
- (b) A Tier B authority shall refer any variance on a site of 1 ha or more to the State Stormwater Technical Committee.
- (c) A decision shall state its reasons and any conditions, and shall be entered in the public register of Clause 10.17.
- (d) A variance runs with the approval. It lapses if the approval lapses.

> Commentary. The 2006 APWA 5600 included a waivers section (5601.6), and Georgia allows waivers where downstream analysis shows a peak control is unnecessary. The waiver of Clause 1.10.2 is narrow: on a tidal coast, undetained flow can help by passing through before the tide closes the outfall, but only an analysis can show that. This Manual requires every decision to be published because publication deters case-by-case erosion of the standard; in Bihar the NGT has had to direct that encroachment be removed from three ponds in Darbhanga within three months (O.A. 155/2022/EZ, order of 23 March 2023, as stated in the applicants' later filing), and the State's own Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign reports encroachment removed from 28,685 ponds, ahars, pynes and wells (State portal).

1.11 Transition provisions

1.11.1 **Effective date.** This Manual takes effect for new applications **6 months** after notification (the effective date).

1.11.2 **Applications in process.** An application filed complete before the effective date may be decided under the rules in force when it was filed, if a decision is issued within 12 months of the effective date. Otherwise, this Manual applies.

1.11.3 **Phased start for Tier B.** In Tier B authorities, Chapters 4 and 5 apply from **24 months** after notification, except in flood-sensitive catchments, where they apply from the effective date.

1.11.4 **Public works.** DPRs sanctioned before the effective date may proceed as sanctioned. Any DPR revised or re-tendered after the effective date shall comply. Departments shall report non-compliant works in progress to the State Stormwater Technical Committee within 12 months.

1.11.5 **Before the annexes are issued.** Until an annex referred to in this Manual is issued, the Applicant shall use the method stated in the clause, with values agreed with the Authority and recorded in the drainage report.

> Commentary. The 6-month lead time matches the lead time for NIH-DHAARA updates in Clause 2.14.2. Singapore gave a similar interval for its 2025 detention addendum (issued 16 Apr 2025, applied from 1 Oct 2025). The 12- and 24-month periods are set by this Manual to let Tier B authorities train staff and to let the State issue the

> design-aid tables (Clause 1.7).

1.12 Review and amendment

1.12.1 The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall review this Manual every **10 years**, and after any event that exceeds the 1% AEP design depth as set out in Clause 2.14.1.

1.12.2 Amendments shall be notified in the Gazette, published with a change log, and take effect 6 months after notification unless the notification states otherwise.

1.12.3 Any person may propose an amendment to the Committee. Proposals and the Committee's decisions shall be published.

References (chapter)

- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2014). Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014 (English text, "Dec-2014", pages initialled 4 Dec 2014), bye-laws 29, 30, 32, 47 and 51 and Table 1 (Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text), as linked from the PMC Building Plan Approval System portal. https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/PlanningPortals/images/Bihar%20Building%20Bylaw%20English%20Dec-2014.pdf ; https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/Portal/BuildingBylaws
- Urban Development and Housing Department (2024). Guidebook on Application, Approval & Occupancy Procedure under Bihar Building Bye Laws, 2014. https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2024/May/07-May-2024/19/DyPage/cd47e267-11d1-4671-a56a-b63a6c83a779.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department (2026). Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, posted 5 Jun 2026, cl. 1, 6, 23, 24 and 41 and Tables 5 and 6 (a draft, not notified). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2026/Jun/05-Jun-2026/19/LatestNews/0424d72a-9e14-4227-8221-8adb08c0c009.pdf
- Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012, with Act 4 of 2022 appended; PRS copy, searched by keyword only). https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2012/2012Bihar20.pdf
- Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, ss.177, 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 198, 201, 219, 251 and 252 (IELRC copy); s.204 (seen only through a legal-database extract). https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006, ss.1(3), 2, 5 and 18 (Bihar Gazette scan, FAOLEX copy; Act number and commencement not confirmed [TBC]). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND197019.pdf
- Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311, 5 Apr 2018. https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956 (copy on the Bihar State Wetland Authority website). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/Downloads/BIHAR%20PUBLIC%20LAND%20ENCROACHMENT%20ACT,%201956.pdf
- Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997 (seen only through legal-database extracts).
- Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120, 16 Sep 2026, Schedule V (PRS copy). https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2026/Act32of2026BR.pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar (2025). Order No. 143 of 6 Mar 2025, Implementation of Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers (Hindi), with the letters on the NIH study of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari, as annexed to the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, of 12 Jan 2026 in NGT O.A. 200/2014, *M.C. Mehta v. Union of India*. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme (report number and date of tabling not confirmed [TBC]). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- District Magistrate, Patna (2025). Supplementary affidavit of 19 Aug 2025 in NGT (EZ) O.A. 188/2024/EZ, *Saurav Narayan v. Bihar State Pollution Control Board* (quoting the order of 5 Mar 2025). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755756412_pagenumber.pdf
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan (2024, 2025). Objection of 23 Nov 2024 in M.A. 18/2024 in NGT (EZ) O.A. 155/2022/EZ (Darbhanga ponds), and application to the NGT (EZ) of 2025 on the Darbhanga storm water drainage project (applicant's filings). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1732521637_pagenumber.pdf ; https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755167303.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (State portal; components and progress table). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/jaljivan.aspx

- Bihar State Wetland Authority. Home page and Acts, Rules and Notifications (Ramsar sites; draft notifications under the Wetlands Rules 2017). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ ; https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ActRulesandNotification.aspx
- Ramsar Convention. Ramsar Information Sheet, Kabartal Wetland (site 2436). https://rsis.ramsar.org/RISapp/files/RISrep/IN2436RIS_2010_en.pdf
- National Mission for Clean Ganga (2024). Reply in NGT O.A. 515/2023 (quoting the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl. 3(l), 6(3) and 42). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Reply%20of%20NMCG%20in%20OA%20NO%20515%20of%202023%20(Ganga%20Pollution%20Vs.%20State%20of%20UP%20&%20Ors.).pdf
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (2017). Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, r.4(2)(vi).
- Water Resources Department, Bihar, Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC). Home page (Daily Flood Information Bulletin, generally 15 June to 15 October). https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/
- Press reports of the amendment of the 2014 bye-laws on commercial setbacks, the status of the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, the anti-erosion deadline of WRD and the operation of the Patna sump houses (secondary sources). https://patnapress.com/bihar-commercial-building-bye-laws-setback-rules-relaxed/ ; https://www.gktoday.in/bihar-drafts-new-building-map-approval-rules/ ; https://patnapress.com/bihar-building-bye-laws-2026-self-certification-draft/ ; https://www.prabhatkhabar.com/state/bihar/bhagalpur/date-for-completion-of-anti-erosion-works-has-been-extended
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A, §4.4.1.4 (Table 4.1 and notes).
- Kakkar, R. (CPHEEO) (2023). Understanding Urban Stormwater Management. CSE, Aug 2023.
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). National Guidelines on Management of Urban Flooding.
- MoHUA (2016). Model Building Bye-Laws, Chapter 9.
- Lok Sabha Unstarred Question 1847, 30 Jul 2026 (MoHUA). https://sansad.in/getFile/lsapps/loksabhaquestions/annex/188/AU1847_x29brZ.pdf
- Patna High Court. CWJC No. 15027 of 2018 with connected writs (*Navin Kumar Singh v. State of Bihar*, including *Vishal Kumar Singh*), order of 18 Oct 2019. https://slic.org.in/uploads/2019/10/Vishal-PIL-ORDER.pdf
- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin, 31 Oct 2026 (via FMISC; read from the page image; datum to be confirmed [TBC]). https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012), stations of Bihar. https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- Lok Sabha debates of 12 and 16 Jan 1976 on the Patna flood of August 1975 (seen only through search extracts). https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/857276/1/05_XV_16-01-1976_p57_p59_PII.pdf ; https://eparlib.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/907314/1/05_XV_12-01-1976_p12_p15_s87.pdf
- Press reports of the Patna flood of 1975, the Kosi breach of 2008 and its commission of inquiry, the north Bihar floods of 2017, the Patna waterlogging of September 2019 and its inquiry, the Patna rain of July 2025 and the Ganga at Patna in September 2026 (secondary sources). https://www.business-standard.com/article/news-ani/show-cause-notices-served-to-officials-responsible-for-patna-water-logging-says-chief-secretary-119101401451_1.html ; https://www.cbsnews.com/news/monsoon-season-flooding-india-heavy-late-rains-kills-more-than-100-in-several-days-2019-09-30 ; https://www.patrika.com/en/state-news/patna-breaks-28-year-old-rainfall-record-city-inundated-19820889 ; https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/ ; https://www.dtnext.in/news/national/bihar-downstream-areas-on-alert-as-ganga-water-level-rises-in-patna-19-lakh-affected-by-floods
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA 5600 Manual Factsheet; APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement (7 Nov 2025). https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- Mid-America Regional Council. The Evolution of Regional Stormwater Design Standards (presentation). https://www.marc2.org/Assets/Environment/WQEC/The_Evolution_of_Regional_Strormwater_Design_Standards.pdf

- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600, §5601.6 Waivers.
- PUB Singapore (2018, with Addendum No. 3 of 16 Apr 2025). Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed.
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management.
- Centre for Science and Environment (2023). Urban Stormwater Management (presentation).
- Rajya Sabha. Reply of 27 Nov 2024 on storm-water drainage projects and drainage pumping stations in Bihar (seen only through a search summary). https://rsdebate.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/754718/1/PQ_266_27112024_S10_p23_p25.pdf
- Press reports of the Patna storm-water drainage project of BUIDCO, the Danapur–Khagaul–Phulwari drainage DPR, the 2026 State budget for storm-water drainage and the drainage works and sump houses of Patna (secondary sources). https://www.nbmcw.com/news/infra-development/construction-begins-on-stormwater-drainage-project-in-patna-to-prevent-floods.html ; https://patnapress.com/buidco-drainage-inspection-catchment-1-2-patna-monsoon-work-2026/ ; https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-ranchi/20220530/281556589453660 ; https://patnapress.com/bihar-budget-urban-development-drainage-waste-management-2026/
- Patna Master Plan 2031 (cabinet approval reported in October 2016; its drainage section not read for this Manual [TBC]).

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
1A	List of Tier A authorities, with the boundaries of the Nagar Nigams and of the Patna Metropolitan Area
1B	Maps of flood-sensitive catchments
1C	Policy Supplement: text of alternatives S-1 to S-5 and model council resolution
1D	Model BBL 2014 amendment and model ULB bye-law
Form 1-1	Applicability Determination
Form 1-2	Variance / Waiver Request

CHAPTER 2

Design Rainfall and Design Storms

2.1 Purpose and scope

2.1.1 This chapter sets the rainfall inputs for every hydrologic calculation in this Manual: drain and inlet sizing (Chapter 6), retention and detention sizing (Chapter 4), downstream and tailwater analysis (Chapter 5), and waterbody and tank works (Chapter 7).

2.1.2 It specifies:

- (a) the approved sources of design rainfall depth and intensity;
- (b) how depths are converted between durations, between point and area, and from present to future climate;
- (c) how design storms (hyetographs) are constructed; and
- (d) the storms that must be applied to pre- and post-development conditions.

2.1.3 This chapter applies throughout Bihar. Where a Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad, Nagar Panchayat or PMAA has adopted a stricter rainfall standard under Chapter 1, the stricter standard governs.

> **Commentary.** Most past drainage failures in Bihar trace to the rainfall input, not the hydraulics. Bihar shows how. No published Bihar document sets a design storm, return period or rainfall intensity for a city's storm drains: none was found in the material of BUIDCO, PMC and the Patna Master Plan 2031 searched for this Manual, and the drainage DPR for Danapur, Khagaul and Phulwari is known only from the press. The rainfall figures that circulate after a flood are often unsourced: a press report that 175.4 mm on 29 July 2025 broke Patna's record of 181.1 mm from 1997 contradicts itself, and IMD's own record for June 1997 at Patna (A) is 205.4 mm (IMD). The two published sources that seem to fill the gap do not. IMD Das et al. (2022) has no panel for any station in Bihar, and NIH-DHAARA's reanalysis-based depths are too high over most of north Bihar, too low at Gaya, and low at 1 hour everywhere (Clause 2.3.6). The CWC Flood Estimation Reports are the only regional sub-daily source, and the three subzones that meet in the State give 1-hour ratios that differ by about a fifth across the Ganga at Patna. Fixing one transparent source and method for the whole state is the main purpose of this chapter.

2.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Annual exceedance probability (AEP)	Probability that a given rainfall depth is equalled or exceeded in any one year. A 1% AEP storm is the "100-year" storm. Both forms are used here: T-year = 1/AEP.
IDF / DDF	Intensity–duration–frequency and depth–duration–frequency relationships for a location.
Point rainfall	Rainfall at a single location, as measured by a rain gauge.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Design storm	A hyetograph (rainfall depth versus time) of stated AEP, duration and temporal pattern.
Critical duration	The storm duration that produces the largest peak flow, water level or storage requirement for the element being designed.
Areal reduction factor (ARF)	Ratio of catchment-average rainfall to point rainfall for the same AEP and duration.
SW monsoon season (JJAS)	June–September, when Bihar receives about 86% of its annual rainfall, with July (about 28%) and August (about 24%) the wettest months. The State's annual normal is 1,191.2 mm (1951–2000), from 857.9 mm at Arwal and 858.2 mm at Jahanabad in the south-west to 2,215.0 mm at Kishanganj in the north-east; Patna 984.7 mm, Gaya 941.3 mm, Muzaffarpur 1,151.0 mm and Purnea 1,732.8 mm (IMD). The normal date of onset is 13 June at Purnea, 16 June at Patna and Gaya and 18 June at Chhapra, and of withdrawal 6 October at Chhapra, 8 October at Patna, 9 October at Gaya and 10 October at Purnea (IMD, new normals of 2020); in 2025 the monsoon withdrew from the whole State on 13 October (as reported). The north-east is wet before the season begins, with May normals of 166.5 mm at Kishanganj, 127.4 mm at Purnea, 120.2 mm at Araria and 105.9 mm at Katihar, and June normals of 266.8–374.7 mm there, against 27.6 mm in May and 116.4 mm in June at Patna (IMD). The antecedent moisture rule of Clause 2.11.4 refers to this season; the pre-monsoon deadline of 31 May is set ahead of the earliest onset, with an earlier date in the north-east (Chapter 10).
Storms outside the season	Large falls come before and after it: 271.8 mm at Motihari on 29 May 2006, 220.5 mm at Purnea on 27 May 1887, and 214.6 mm at Sabour and 172.0 mm at Bhagalpur on 22 April 1971 before the monsoon; 458.2 mm at Buchaha (Muzaffarpur) and 374.0 mm at Sheikhpura on 3–4 October 1961, 243.0 mm at Chapra on 5 October 1977, 196.0 mm at Bhagalpur on 20 October 1987 and 162.6 mm at Patna (A) on 6 October 1946 at or after its normal withdrawal; and 745.1 mm at Motihari in May 1993 (IMD). Of the 113 storms and depressions that affected Bihar in 1891–2010, 43 came in September, 18 in August, 17 each in June and October, 12 in July, 5 in May and 1 in November (IMD). Design statistics use annual maxima from all months, and no works deadline or operating rule shall assume that heavy rain is confined to June–September.
Climate factor (CF)	Multiplier applied to present-day design depths to represent the design-life climate.
Approved source	A rainfall source listed in Clause 2.3.

2.3 Approved sources of design rainfall

2.3.1 **Primary source.** Design rainfall depths and intensities shall be taken from the National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee **NIH-DHAARA** platform (Design Hydrology and Advanced Rainfall Analysis, nihdhaara.in). Use its IDF / frequency tools for the site's coordinates, for each duration and AEP required by Clause 2.4. In Bihar this clause is suspended until Annex 2A is published: Clause 2.3.6 sets the interim source.

2.3.2 **Station IDF.** A station-specific IDF relationship may be used in place of 2.3.1 only if all of the following hold:

- (a) it is derived from at least 30 years of recording-gauge (hourly or finer) data;
- (b) it has been published or approved by IMD, the State Hydrology Authority or the approving authority; and
- (c) the gauge is within 10 km of the site, with no major change of terrain or coastal exposure in between.

Where a station IDF is used, the design value shall be the **greater** of the station value and the NIH-DHAARA value.

2.3.3 **Cross-checks (mandatory, not alternatives).** The designer shall report, but need not adopt, the following values for comparison:

- (a) the IMD isopluvial / IDF values of Das et al. (2022), *MAUSAM* 73(4), for durations of 1–24 h;
- (b) for catchments of 25–5,000 km², the 24-hour point rainfall from the CWC Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(d) (Sone), 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains) or 1(g) (Lower Ganga Plains), as applicable.

Where the design value is lower than the CWC 1(d)/1(f)/1(g) value for the same AEP, the CWC value shall be adopted as a floor.

2.3.4 **Not permitted.** None of the following shall be used as a design rainfall source:

- (a) generalised all-India IDF formulae (for example Kothyari & Garde, 1992);
- (b) rainfall values that cite no source, including vendor or web-calculator tables;
- (c) single-event maxima; or
- (d) design intensities carried forward from a previous project without a stated AEP.

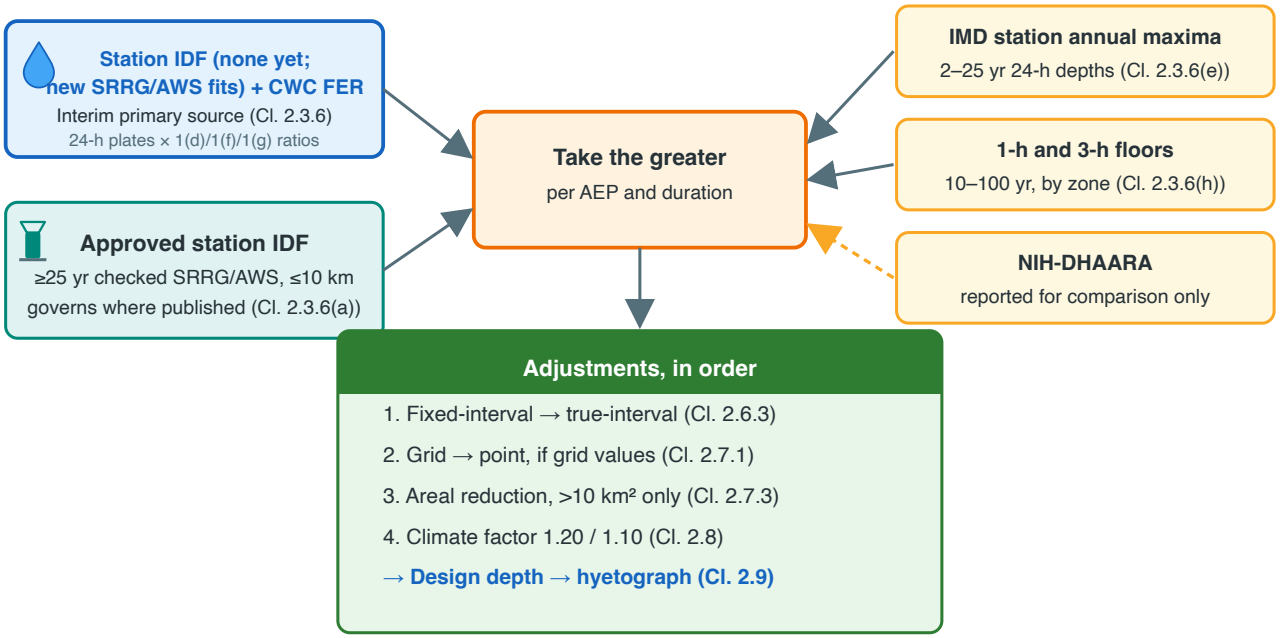


Figure 2.1 — Design rainfall source hierarchy and adjustment sequence. Original drawing for this Manual.

2.3.5 **Version control.** Every submittal shall record the source, its version or access date, the coordinates queried, and the values extracted (Clause 2.13).

2.3.6 **Interim source in Bihar.** Until Annex 2A is published and confirms NIH-DHAARA, or an approved station IDF, for a zone, Clause 2.3.1 does not apply in Bihar, and design rainfall shall be taken as follows:

- (a) **Station IDF.** Where a station IDF fitted to a checked IMD recording-gauge (SRRG) or automatic weather station record of at least 25 years has been published in Annex 2B, it governs, within 10 km of the station, for the durations and AEPs it covers, in place of (g) and (h); the comparison of Clause 2.3.2 is then made with the 24-hour and longer depths of (d) to (f), and the CWC floor of Clause 2.3.3 still applies. A record is checked when its annual totals and annual maxima have been compared with the IMD normals and station extremes for the station, and every year that disagrees has been explained or removed. An IDF derived from daily data by the one-third rule (Clause 2.6.4) or by any other fixed ratio is not a station IDF. In Bihar Clause 2.3.2(a) is read with 25 years in place of 30 (set by this Manual, so that the recording gauges of the State's main cities can qualify once analysed). No IDF has yet been published in Annex 2B, and none was found for any city in the State.
- (b) **Patna and the Punpun basin.** The only sub-daily frequency analysis for any part of Bihar located in research for this Manual is a research report of the National Institute of Hydrology on the characteristics of short-interval rainfall in the Punpun basin, which drains south Patna; it is reported to give depth–duration–frequency curves for 5 to 100 years from hourly gauges, fitted by L-moments to the GEV distribution, but it was seen only through a

summary and was not obtained [TBC]. It is not used until it has been obtained, its records have been checked as in (a) and its values have been published in Annex 2B. Patna has no published station IDF; the 1-, 3- and 6-hour depths at every site in the State are those of (g) and (h).

- (c) **Subzone.** The site's CWC subzone is that of the Flood Estimation Report whose area contains it, by the boundaries drawn on the reports' plates. The Ganga divides the State: 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains, GP/10/1984, 1985) covers all of the State north of the Ganga, including West and East Champaran, Gopalganj, Siwan, Saran (Chhapra and Sonpur), Vaishali (Hajipur), Muzaffarpur, Sitamarhi, Sheohar, Darbhanga, Madhubani, Samastipur, Begusarai, Khagaria, Saharsa, Supaul, Madhepura, Purnia, Araria, Kishanganj, Katihar and Bhagalpur district north of the river (Naugachia); 1(d) (Sone, S/15/1987, 1987) covers the State south of the Ganga and west of the Kiul (about 86.2° E), including **Patna city** with Danapur, Phulwari and Khagaul, Bhojpur (Arrah), Buxar, Rohtas (Sasaram and Dehri), Kaimur (Bhabua), Jehanabad, Arwal, Gaya, Aurangabad, Nawada, Nalanda (Bihar Sharif and Rajgir), Sheikhpura and Lakhisarai west of the Kiul; and 1(g) (Lower Ganga Plains, LG-1(g)/R-1/23/94, 1994) covers the south-east, Munger with Jamalpur, Bhagalpur south of the Ganga (Bhagalpur city, Sultanganj and Kahalgaon), Banka, Jamui and Lakhisarai east of the Kiul. Within 5 km of a subzone boundary, the higher of the two plate values is used, and at each duration the higher of the two products under (g). Because the Ganga is itself the boundary between 1(d) or 1(g) and 1(f), this applies to the riverside parts of Patna, Hajipur, Sonpur, Mokama, Begusarai, Munger and Bhagalpur. The district lists are a guide: the plate boundaries govern, and are to be confirmed on the reports' index maps [TBC]. The rainfall zone and sub-area of the site are those of Annex 2A.

- (d) **24-hour depth, 2% and 1% AEP (50- and 100-yr).** The 24-hour point value at the site read from the 50- and 100-year isopluvial plates of the report for its subzone (Plates 9 and 10 of 1(d), by their titles, although the text of that report calls Plate 10 the 50-year map; Plates 8 and 9 of 1(f); and Plate 9 of 1(g) with that report's 100-year plate, whose number is to be confirmed [TBC]), whatever the catchment area. Where the site lies between two contours, the higher contour value is used; where it lies inside a closed contour with no higher contour within it, the value is that contour plus one contour interval (set by this Manual). Plates are read by the coordinates of the site, not by the town labels, one of which (Kishanganj, on the 1(f) plate) is misplaced. For orientation only, read by eye to about one contour, the 50-year plates give about 260–280 mm at Patna, 240–280 mm at Arrah and Sasaram, about 280 mm at Bihar Sharif and Rajgir, 280–320 mm at Gaya, less than 240 mm at Lakhisarai, 240–280 mm at Hajipur, Chhapra and Katihar, 280–320 mm at Darbhanga, Begusarai, Motihari and Purnia, about 320 mm at Muzaffarpur and Saharsa, 320–360 mm at Kishanganj, more than 400 mm in a cell at Bagaha and Valmikinagar on the Nepal border, 280–320 mm at Munger and Bhagalpur and about 240 mm at Banka; the 100-year values are about one contour (40 mm) higher. The worked example of the 1(f) report, on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli railway line, reads 340 mm at 50 years. Where the Gumbel estimate of (e) for the station of the site is higher for the same AEP, it governs.

- (e) **24-hour depth, 50%, 20%, 10% and 4% AEP (2-, 5-, 10- and 25-yr).** The reports have no plates for these. The depth is the Gumbel (EV1) estimate from the annual maximum daily rainfall series, of all months, of the IMD station agreed with the Authority, checked as in (a), multiplied by the fixed-interval factor of Clause 2.6.3. The station is, for example, Patna (A), 42492 (daily record from 1946), for Patna; Gaya (A), 42591 (from 1896); the higher of Bhagalpur, 42498 (from 1950), and Sabour, 42499 (from 1931), for Bhagalpur; Muzaffarpur, 42387 (from 1901); Darbhanga, 42391 (from 1901); Purnea, 42500 (from 1874), for Purnia; Chapra, 42488; Motihari, 42383; Forbesganj, 42395; Supaul, 42393; or Dehri, 42588. Arrah, Bihar Sharif, Begusarai, Katihar and Kishanganj have no long-record IMD station; for them, and elsewhere, the station is the nearest IMD station with 30 or more years of record, from the candidates in Annex 2A.

- (f) **48- and 72-hour depths.** The Gumbel estimate from the annual maximum 2-day and 3-day rainfall series of the same station, with the fixed-interval factors of Clause 2.6.3, and not less than the 24-hour depth for the same AEP.

- (g) **Durations of 1 to 24 hours.** The 24-hour depth of (d) or (e) multiplied by the ratios of the report for the site's subzone in Table 2B.1, at every AEP: in 1(d), the 50-year ratios 0.37 at 1 hour, 0.58 at 3 hours, 0.70 at 6 hours, 0.80 at 9 hours, 0.89 at 12 hours, 0.94 at 15 hours and 0.98 at 18 hours, which the report found independent of the return period from 5 years upward (the 18-hour value from an OCR of the report, not checked against the

page image [TBC]); in 1(f), the 50-year ratios 0.31 at 1 hour, 0.425 at 2 hours, 0.50 at 3 hours, 0.555 at 4 hours, 0.605 at 5 hours, 0.65 at 6 hours, 0.75 at 9 hours, 0.82 at 12 hours, 0.89 at 15 hours and 0.94 at 18 hours; and in 1(g), the ratios 0.350 at 1 hour, 0.515 at 3 hours, 0.640 at 6 hours, 0.735 at 9 hours, 0.800 at 12 hours, 0.860 at 15 hours and 0.915 at 18 hours. Between the tabulated durations the ratio is interpolated on logarithmic axes. The 1-, 2- and 3-hour depths are then subject to (h).

- (h) **Floor for short storms, 10-yr and rarer.** The 1-hour and 3-hour depths shall be not less than the greater of (i) 0.35 times (1 hour) and 0.57 times (3 hours) the 24-hour depth of (d) or (e) for the same AEP, and (ii) the following values for the site's zone of Annex 2A, all set by this Manual; the 2-hour depth shall be not less than the value interpolated on logarithmic axes between the 1- and 3-hour values for the same AEP:

Zone	Duration	10% (10)	4% (25)	2% (50)	1% (100)
BR-Z1 South Bihar; BR-Z2 North Bihar plain	1-hour depth not less than (mm)	80	95	105	115
BR-Z1 South Bihar; BR-Z2 North Bihar plain	3-hour depth not less than (mm)	130	155	175	195
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai	1-hour depth not less than (mm)	90	110	120	135
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai	3-hour depth not less than (mm)	150	180	200	220

  The reason is that no station in Bihar has a published short-duration frequency analysis against which the subzone ratios, derived in 1984–1994 from recording-gauge data averaged over each subzone, can be tested, and that in the one place in the same Gangetic plain where such a test has been made, they fall short. At Lucknow, in subzone 1(f) in Uttar Pradesh, a station fit to about 25 years of hourly records gives 106.0 mm in 1 hour and 174.6 mm in 3 hours for the 50-year storm, 22–43% more at 1 hour than the 1(f) plates and ratios give there, and the same paper's 2-year ratios of the 1-hour to the 24-hour depth at three stations of that plain are 0.35–0.38, and of the 3-hour depth 0.57–0.61, all above the 1(f) ratios of 0.31 and 0.50 and the 1(g) ratios of 0.350 and 0.515 (Kathuria, Kaur & Mehra, 1987); the ratio floor of (i) takes the lowest of the three stations at each duration. In 1(d) the subzone's own ratios, 0.37 and 0.58, already exceed it. The depths of (ii) for BR-Z1 and BR-Z2 are the values of that station fit at 10, 25, 50 and 100 years, rounded to 5 mm. They are applied in both zones because the 24-hour plate values there, about 240–320 mm, with Patna at about 260–280 mm, Gaya at 280–320 mm and Muzaffarpur at about 320 mm, are mostly equal to or higher than the 240–280 mm of the plate at Lucknow, and because nothing in the Bihar record suggests that short storms are smaller here. In BR-Z3, the wettest part of the State, where the 50-year plate values rise to 320–360 mm at Kishanganj and more than 400 mm near Valmikinagar, the annual normals are 1,390–2,215 mm and days of 445–510 mm have been recorded at Barsoe, Champatia, Bahadurganj and Dengraghat (IMD), the same values are scaled by 320/280 and rounded to 5 mm; where the 24-hour depth is larger still, the ratio floor of (i) governs. At Patna the 1(d) plates and ratios give about 96–104 mm in 1 hour and 151–162 mm in 3 hours for the 50-year storm, and the floors raise these to 105 mm and 175 mm. The few sub-daily maxima found for Bihar are single events at recording gauges with short records, 52 mm in 1 hour at Sabour on 19 May 1971 and 35 mm at Jamui in 1972 (CWC FER 1(g)), and they neither confirm nor rule out the floors; hourly falls of 98–100 mm have been recorded in the lower Gangetic plain of West Bengal (IMD), and the 24-hour records of the State's stations reach 1.5–2 times the 50-year plate values (Clause 2.3.6(d); Annex 2A). The floors are present-day, true-interval values: the fixed-interval factor of Clause 2.6.3 is not applied to them, and the climate factor of Clause 2.8 is. The floors are interim: they rest on a station fit outside the State, about 25 years of data that end before 1985, with standard errors of 10–12% at 50 years; no IMD hourly maximum for a recent storm in Bihar was found in research for this Manual [TBC]; and Annex 2B is to replace them with frequency analyses of the IMD recording-gauge and automatic weather station records of the State, beginning with Patna (A) and Patna (Anisabad), Gaya, Bhagalpur and Sabour, Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga and Purnea, and with the report of (b) once it is obtained.

- (i) **Durations below 1 hour.** No sub-hourly frequency analysis for any station in the State was found in research for this Manual. Until Annex 2B gives one, the ratio of the depth for a duration below 1 hour to the 1-hour design depth is agreed with the Authority, from a published recording-gauge analysis whose source is stated, and

recorded on Form 2-1 [TBC]; the average intensity for a duration below 1 hour shall be not less than the 1-hour design intensity for the same AEP (set by this Manual).

- (j) **Order of depths.** For the same AEP, no depth shall be less than the depth for a shorter duration.
- (k) **NIH-DHAARA.** Its present-day values at the site are reported on Form 2-1 beside the interim values, for comparison only: in the State they are too high at 24 hours over most of north Bihar, low at Gaya, and low at 1 hour everywhere (commentary). Its projected depths are not used under Clause 2.8.4; the ratio of its projected to its present-day depths may be reported as a check on the climate factors of Table 2.2, which apply.
- (l) **IMD Das et al. (2022).** The paper has no panel for any station in Bihar, and its range for the Gangetic plain gives a 3-hour upper bound (14 cm) below its 1-hour upper bound (16 cm), which cannot hold at one place. The cross-check of Clause 2.3.3(a) is recorded on Form 2-1 as not available, and the paper is not used as a value, a check or a floor.
- (m) **Other clauses.** Where Clauses 2.3.2, 2.6.1, 2.7.1 and 2.13, Annexes 2A to 2C and Form 2-1 refer to the NIH-DHAARA value, the value under this clause is meant.

> Commentary. NIH-DHAARA is a national, publicly accessible product from a Government of India institution, and it can be queried at any point in the State. That makes it a reproducible default that an approving authority can check. NIH-DHAARA's sub-daily values are derived from hourly records, not disaggregated from daily totals. That makes it the only public source suitable for sizing drains, which depend on short-duration intensity. Its values should still be checked against the long IMD daily record at 24 hours and longer (Annex 2A). In Bihar the platform does not yet meet that purpose. Its present-day values there come from IMDAA reanalysis (about 12 km), not from gauges, and they err in both directions. Its 50-year 24-hour depths are far above the CWC plates over most of north Bihar: 526 mm at Kishanganj, against a plate value of about 320–360 mm; 404 mm at Purnia, against about 280–320 mm and a station record of 318.5 mm; 362 mm at Darbhanga, where the highest day in more than a century of record is 266.7 mm; and 351 mm at Katihar, against about 240–280 mm. At Gaya it is below both, 227 mm against a plate value of about 280–320 mm and a record of 290.8 mm. Near Patna (288 mm) it is close to the plate. Its 50-year 1-hour depths, 73–115 mm, are only 0.20–0.34 of its 24-hour depths, all below the CWC ratio of their own subzone (0.31–0.37); at Patna it gives 77.0 mm, 20–26% below the 96–104 mm of the 1(d) plates and ratios (NIH-DHAARA, queried 6 Nov 2026; IMD; CWC). A source that errs by these margins cannot be adopted, so Clause 2.3.6 uses the CWC reports and the long IMD station records until Annex 2A has been done, and uses NIH-DHAARA for comparison and as a check on the climate factors only. Bihar differs from its neighbours in one respect: three CWC subzones meet in the State, split by the Ganga, and the 1-hour ratio of the Sone subzone 1(d) south of the river, 0.37, is higher than that of any other Ganga-plain subzone (1(e) 0.34, 1(g) 0.350), while that of 1(f) north of it is 0.31, so the 1-hour screening depth changes by about a fifth across the river at Patna. That is why Clause 2.3.6(c) assigns Patna city to 1(d) and applies the higher value along the river, and why Clause 2.3.6(h) sets floors at 1 and 3 hours in every zone. The interim rules for the more frequent AEPs, the 48- and 72-hour depths, the reading of the plates, the subzone of each district, durations below 1 hour and the floors of (h) are set by this Manual. Several points are unresolved. The plate values were read by eye on scans, to about one contour, and the 1(f) plate near Darbhanga and Purnia needs a better copy [TBC]. The 1(f) ratios at 2, 4 and 5 hours and the 1(d) ratio at 18 hours were read from OCR text and not checked against the page images [TBC]. The 1(f) and 1(g) plates disagree at Bhagalpur (about 240–280 mm against 280–320 mm), which the 5-km rule of (c) resolves by taking the higher. No storm-drain DPR for any Bihar city, with its design return period and rainfall analysis, was found for this Manual [TBC], so the design basis of the drainage works now being built in Patna and other cities could not be compared with this clause.

2.4 Design return periods (summary)

2.4.1 Design AEPs are set in the chapters for each element. They are summarised here so that the correct rainfall is extracted at the start of design.

Table 2.1 — Design return periods (summary)

Element	Design AEP (return period)	Check event	Chapter
Minor drains: Patna, Gaya, Bhagalpur, Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga core and high-density areas	10% (10-yr)	1% (100-yr) overland path	6
Minor drains: other Class I urban areas	20% (5-yr)	1% overland path	6
Minor drains: other areas	50% (2-yr)	1% overland path	6
Arterial roads and crossings	2–4% (25–50-yr)	next higher AEP	6
Collector / local roads	4% / 10% (25 / 10-yr)	2% / 4% (50 / 25-yr), plus the 1% overland path	6
Major (overland) system	1% (100-yr)	—	6
Retention volume	Percentile daily rainfall (Clause 2.10)	—	4
Detention: standard catchments	50%, 10%, 1% (2, 10, 100-yr)	1% emergency spillway	4
Detention: flood-sensitive catchments	Mixed-frequency rule, Clause 2.11	1%	4
Building floor levels	1% + 0.5 m freeboard	—	6
Detention emergency spillway	1% with outlet blocked	0.2% (500-yr) where high hazard	4

> **Commentary.** These values exceed the CPHEEO (2019) national advisory minimums of 5-yr (Class I cities) and 2-yr (other areas). CPHEEO allows a State to set higher values. The values are set in Chapters 4 and 6, and the table is reproduced here for convenience.

2.5 Design durations

2.5.1 **Conveyance elements** (pipes, open drains, inlets, culverts) shall be designed with the intensity for a duration equal to the time of concentration (Tc) of the contributing area (Chapter 3). The minimum duration is **10 minutes**.

2.5.2 **Storage elements** (detention, retention, tanks, pumped sumps) shall be checked for every duration in the set {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}. The largest required storage or water level governs. The 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms are **mandatory** checks at every site, whatever the critical-duration result.

2.5.3 **Tidally influenced outfalls.** For storage draining to a tidally influenced outfall (Chapter 5), the 48- and 72-hour storms shall also be run with the tailwater boundary of Clause 2.12.

> **Commentary.** Bihar's worst floods have come when a long wet spell meets a full river. In August 1975 the Sone rose for about five days before its waters and the Ganga's entered Patna (as reported); the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat set its highest recorded level in August 2016, and passed it in September 2026 in what was reported as the third

prolonged flood spell of the season (CWC; as reported). The monthly records show how much rain a single month can bring: 995.8 mm at Motihari in July 1977, 926.6 mm at Sabour and 815.4 mm at Bhagalpur in August 1987, 925.2 mm at Forbesganj in September 1960, 922.0 mm at Purnea in September 1989 and 800.7 mm at Patna (A) in July 1987 (IMD). The Patna waterlogging of September 2019 followed about 210–226 mm in three to four days, not a single extreme hour (as reported). Behind the embankments and the sluices of the Ganga and the Punpun at Patna, where the drains are closed and pumped when the rivers are high, storage is filled by the whole wet spell, not by its peak hour. A rule based only on critical duration, applied to a small site, picks a 1–2 hour storm and misses this failure mode. That is why the long-duration checks are mandatory.

2.6 Sub-daily rainfall

2.6.1 Where NIH-DHAARA or an approved station IDF provides values directly for the required duration, those values shall be used.

2.6.2 Where only daily (24-hour) depths are available for a duration below 24 hours, the sub-daily depth shall be derived using the **ratio set of Annex 2B**. These are duration-to-24-hour ratios calibrated to Bihar recording gauges. They shall not be lower than the ratios of the CWC Flood Estimation Report for the subzone (1(d), 1(f) or 1(g)). IMD Das et al. (2022) has no Bihar station panel and is not used as a floor in Bihar.

2.6.3 **Fixed-interval adjustment.** Depths from fixed observation windows (for example 08:30–08:30 IST daily data, or clock-hour data) shall be converted to sliding-window ("true interval") depths:

- 1.13 for a single fixed observation interval;
- 1.04 for 2 intervals;
- 1.02 for 3–4 intervals.

This adjustment does not apply where the approved source already gives true-interval values.

2.6.4 The empirical relationship P(t) = P(24)·(t/24)^(1/3) shall not be used for design unless Annex 2B confirms it for the zone concerned.

Commentary. The one-third power rule is common in Indian project reports, but no primary IMD source for it was found during research for this Manual. It applies one fixed curve shape everywhere: P(1h)/P(24h) = 0.35, P(3h) = 0.50, P(6h) = 0.63 and P(12h) = 0.79. It cannot represent the difference between a short convective burst and a long SW monsoon soak, and it tends to understate short-duration depths in convective coastal storms. Annex 2B shall tabulate the NIH-DHAARA ratios P(t)/P(24h) against these values by zone. That comparison shows whether the rule is acceptable anywhere in the State and corrects older daily-based analyses. The fixed-interval factors are the standard WMO (Hershfield) values. The IMD 2022 study applies similar clock-hour to any-hour corrections.

2.7 Point, grid and areal rainfall

2.7.1 Design depths are point values. Where an approved source provides grid-average values (for example 0.25° cells), they shall be converted to point values with the grid-to-point factors in Annex 2C before use.

2.7.2 For catchments **≤ 10 km²**, ARF = 1.0.

2.7.3 For catchments **> 10 km²**, apply ARF as follows:

- for 25–5,000 km² in subzone 1(d), 1(f) or 1(g): use the ARF curves of the applicable CWC Flood Estimation Report;
- for 10–25 km²: interpolate linearly between ARF = 1.0 at 10 km² and the CWC value at 25 km².

2.7.4 An ARF shall never be applied to storage design for a single development site.

> Commentary. Gridded and district-average return levels are much lower than point values. For example, NIH-DHAARA's IMDAA cell at Gaya gives a 50-year 24-hour depth of about 227 mm, while the Gaya (A) gauge has recorded 290.8 mm (16 September 1976), and its cell at Patna about 288 mm, while gauges in and near the city have recorded 366.0 mm (Patna Observatory, 8 September 1918) and 498.9 mm (Dinapur, 25 June 1897) (NIH-DHAARA, queried 6 Nov 2026; IMD; CWC FER 1(d)). Over most of north Bihar the same product errs the other way: 362 mm at Darbhanga, against a station record of 266.7 mm in more than a century, and 526 mm at Kishanganj, against a plate value of about 320–360 mm. Single storms are patchy at a scale that no cell of about 12 km can show: in the 24 hours to 05:30 on 30 September 2019, Patna recorded 91 mm and Gaya 17 mm, while Rosera, Udaikishanganj, Baltara and Chargharia recorded more than 200 mm (IMD, as reported). Neither error can be corrected without the factors of Annex 2C. Using grid values as point values without correction would make site-level design unsafe.

2.8 Climate factor

2.8.1 Until a statewide future-climate rainfall product is adopted, present-day design depths shall be multiplied by the following interim climate factors:

Table 2.2 — Interim climate factors

Duration	Climate factor (CF)
≤ 6 h	**1.20**
> 6 h to 72 h	**1.10**

2.8.2 The CF applies to all elements with a design life of more than 25 years. For temporary works (design life ≤ 5 years), CF = 1.0.

2.8.3 The climate factor does not apply to the retention depth (Clause 2.10) or to the water quality volume depth (Chapter 8). Those depths are percentile or frequent-event statistics of everyday rainfall, not AEP design values.

2.8.4 Where NIH-DHAARA, or a product adopted on review under Clause 2.14, provides projected future-climate depths, those depths shall replace the interim factors.

> Commentary. CPHEEO (2019) considers a fixed climate factor "not feasible" nationally and recommends trend testing instead. That leaves designers without a usable number. The 1.20 short-duration factor matches the UK value cited by CPHEEO itself. It is at or below published projections for India: Ali and Mishra (2018) project 3-hourly 100-year maxima rising by about 20% at 1.5 °C and 25% at 2.0 °C of warming. No design uplift factor has been adopted in Bihar, and the rainfall projections of the State action plan on climate change were not found for this Manual [TBC]. Seasonal totals and extremes point different ways. Studies of the record from 1901 report falling annual and monsoon totals, especially in east Bihar after 1960, while a study of gridded data for 1901–2020 reports that monsoon daily rainfall intensity has risen considerably, particularly in north Bihar (both seen only through summaries; the metric of the second was not read [TBC]). Recent extremes have not fallen: Motihari

recorded its highest day, 520.0 mm, on 25 August 2005, Muzaffarpur its highest, 436.0 mm, on 26 September 2007, and Ekma (Saran) 400.0 mm on 8 June 2005, all after the CWC plates of 1985–1994 were drawn (IMD). Half of the highest flood levels at the CWC sites of north Bihar were set in 2016–2025 (CWC), though river levels also reflect embankments, sediment and rain in Nepal. NIH-DHAARA offers a CMIP6 projection but no historical run of the same model, so no ratio of future to present depths can be formed; under Clause 2.3.6(k) it would serve only as a check. The factors of Table 2.2 are therefore interim values, not Bihar estimates.

2.9 Temporal patterns (design hyetographs)

2.9.1 **Storms up to 24 hours.** Use the nested **alternating-block** method:

- construct the storm from the same IDF relationship (after the climate factor), at time steps no longer than Tc/3 and no longer than 15 minutes;
- place the peak block at **50%** of the storm duration.

2.9.2 **48- and 72-hour storms (SW monsoon pattern).** Construct as follows:

- (a) The total storm depth equals the design depth for the full duration (48 or 72 h).
- (b) The **final 24 hours** contain the 24-hour design depth for the same AEP, distributed by the alternating-block method of 2.9.1.
- (c) The remaining depth (total minus the 24-hour depth) is spread uniformly over the preceding 24 or 48 hours.

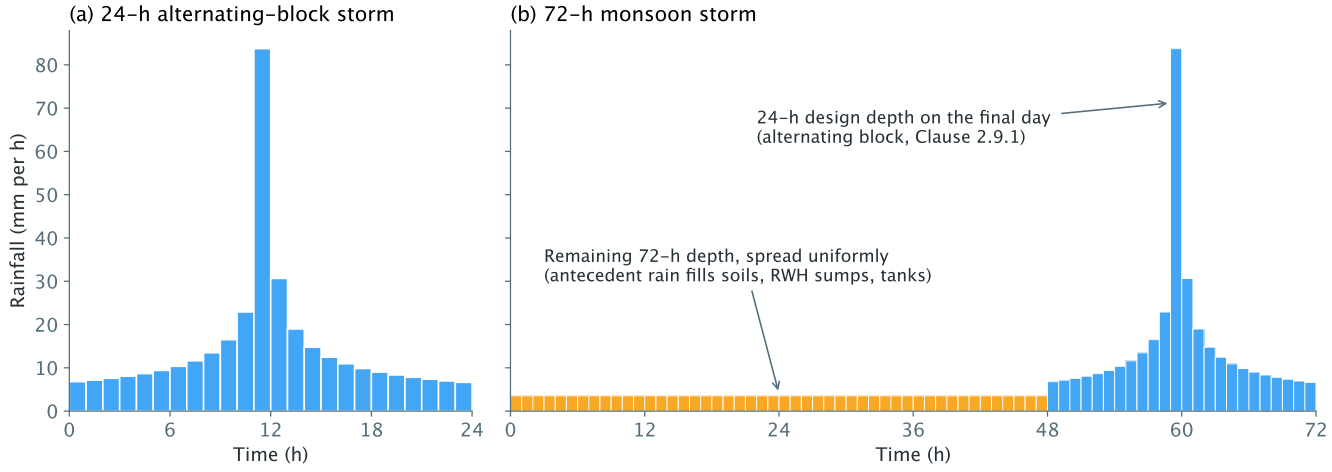


Figure 2.2 — (a) 24-hour alternating-block design storm; (b) 72-hour SW monsoon design storm with the 24-hour design depth on the final day. Illustrative depths only. Original drawing for this Manual. The alternating-block method follows Chow, Maidment & Mays, Applied Hydrology (1988), §14.4.

2.9.3 **Other temporal patterns.** Huff-type or mass-curve patterns derived from Bihar storms may be used instead of 2.9.1 and 2.9.2 only after they are published in Annex 2D. SCS Type I, IA, II and III distributions shall not be used.

2.9.4 **Large catchments.** For catchments of 25–5,000 km², the CWC Flood Estimation Report time-distribution curves may be used, and a sensitivity run with 2.9.1 shall be reported.

Commentary. The alternating-block storm embeds every shorter-duration design intensity in one hyetograph. That makes it conservative and consistent across durations. The 72-hour pattern puts the most intense day last. This reproduces the monsoon sequence of Bihar: by the time the largest falls arrive in July–September, the water table

in the diara, the chaurs and the north Bihar plain is near the surface, the pokhars, tals and chaurs are full, and the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun, the Burhi Gandak and the Bagmati, fed by rain over their catchments in Nepal and Jharkhand, may already have closed the sluices on the outfalls through their embankments. SCS distributions are excluded because they come from US convective and Gulf storm data and have no basis in Bihar records.

2.10 Retention rainfall depth

2.10.1 The **retention design depth** is the 24-hour rainfall depth not exceeded on **90%** of days with rain (≥ 2.5 mm) in the long-term record, read from the zone value in Annex 2E.

2.10.2 The site must retain on site the runoff from this depth (Chapter 4). Retention earns a detention credit equal to the reduction in required detention storage found by routing with the retention in place (Clause 4.4.6). The credit is not the retained volume subtracted one-for-one.

> Commentary. This follows the Kansas City Metro APWA 5600 (2025.01) Required Retention Volume concept and Georgia's 1.0-inch runoff reduction standard. Both are based on percentile storms. A percentile depth is a statistic of everyday rainfall, not an AEP value, so it is computed from the daily record rather than from the frequency curves.

2.11 Design storms for pre- and post-development comparison

2.11.1 **Same storm for both scenarios.** Pre- and post-development runs shall use the same design storms:

- same AEP, duration, temporal pattern and climate factor;
- same antecedent moisture condition (Clause 2.11.4).

The two runs differ only in land surface parameters and Tc.

2.11.2 **Standard catchments.** For each of the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP storms and each duration in Clause 2.5.2:

> $Q_{post}(T) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T)$

2.11.3 **Flood-sensitive catchments** (as listed in Chapter 4: the catchments of Patna behind the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun, of Muzaffarpur on the Burhi Gandak and of Darbhanga between the Bagmati and the Adhwara group, and tal and chaur land, and any catchment notified by the authority). The **mixed-frequency rule** applies:

> Q_{post}(1% AEP, 100-yr) ≤ Q_{pre}(10% AEP, 10-yr), and Q_{post}(50% AEP, 2-yr) ≤ Q_{pre}(50% AEP, 2-yr),

The post-development peak is checked for each duration in Clause 2.5.2. The caps are taken at the **pre-development critical duration**. The 10-yr cap is the largest pre-development 10-yr peak over all durations, and the 2-yr cap is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak over all durations. Each cap applies to every post-development duration.

2.11.4 **Antecedent moisture.** Use **AMC III** (wet conditions) for every design storm, whatever its duration, from 15 June to 30 September at a site in sub-area BR-A Gandak–Burhi Gandak plain, BR-B Mithila and Kosi plain or BR-C Seemanchal of Annex 2A, or on tal, chaur or diara land anywhere in the State, and in July and August at a site in sub-area BR-D South Bihar plain (Magadh–Bhojpur) or BR-E South-east Ganga fringe and plateau margin. At any other site or time, use AMC III for a design storm that follows, or contains, a 5-day rainfall total of more than 53 mm. Use AMC II (average conditions) for every other storm. AMC I is not used for design.

2.11.5 **Pre-development condition.** Pre-development is defined in Chapter 3: greenfield, open land in good condition for the mapped hydrologic soil group. Existing impervious cover is not counted as pre-development.

> **Commentary.** Matching each site's post-development peak to its own pre-development peak does not protect the catchment. Denver's analysis found that 100% matching at every site still produced 106% of historic peak downstream, which led to the 90% rule. The mixed-frequency rule is stricter. It caps the 100-yr post-development release at what the undeveloped site produced in a 10-yr storm. Malaysia (DID 2008: all ARIs ≤ pre-development 2-yr) is a tropical precedent for this kind of cap. AMC III for long storms reflects that SW monsoon extremes arrive after weeks of rain. In Bihar the wetness of the ground differs across the State as much as the rainfall does. In the north Bihar plain and Seemanchal (BR-A, BR-B and BR-C) the water table lay about 1.5–5.7 m below ground before the monsoon in the district profiles of 2011, with a water table 1.5 m below ground in a pit at Supaul in November (CGWB, as reported); chaurs and mauns hold water through the season; and the north-east is wet from the onset in mid-June, with June normals of 266.8–374.7 mm at Araria, Purnea and Kishanganj (IMD). The diara land of the Ganga and the Kosi is flooded each monsoon, and the Mokama group of tals, about 1,062 km² in Patna, Nalanda and Munger districts, is waterlogged through it (NIH, as reported). In the south Bihar plain (BR-D) and the south-east fringe and plateau margin (BR-E), June is drier, 116.4 mm at Patna and 133.2 mm at Gaya, while the July and August normals are 238.0–304.9 mm at Patna and 248.9–267.7 mm at Gaya (IMD). This Manual therefore uses AMC III from 15 June to 30 September in BR-A, BR-B and BR-C and on tal, chaur and diara land anywhere, in July and August in BR-D and BR-E, and at any other site or time only after a 5-day total of more than 53 mm, the NRCS growing-season threshold for AMC III; AMC II otherwise (Clause 2.11.4). These are interim choices set by this Manual; no study in the State has yet validated AMC classes against observed runoff.
>
> **Illustrative scale of the mixed-frequency rule.** The values below are not design values. They assume a 2 ha site in a low-lying colony in south Patna behind the Punpun with 24-h depths of 200 mm (10-yr) and 350 mm (100-yr), SCS-CN runoff with Ia = 0.2S, and CN 70 pre-development and CN 92 post-development:

Table 2.3 — Illustrative scale of the mixed-frequency rule (not design values)

Case	Runoff depth	Runoff volume (2 ha)
Pre-development, 10-yr 24 h	111 mm	2,210 m³
Post-development, 100-yr 24 h	325 mm	6,500 m³

The post-development 100-yr storm generates about three times the runoff volume of the pre-development 10-yr storm. A peak-rate cap at the pre-development 10-yr level means most of the difference must be stored and released slowly, so storage of the order of 0.2 m³ per m² of site may be needed. For this reason the rule applies only in flood-sensitive catchments (Clause 2.11.3); elsewhere the 0.9 × Q_pre rule of Clause 2.11.2 applies.

2.12 Joint occurrence with tailwater

2.12.1 For outfalls under tidal or river backwater influence, the design rainfall of this chapter shall be combined with the tailwater conditions of Chapter 5 as follows. The more severe case governs.

- (a) Design rainfall (AEP as required) with a mean high water springs (MHWS) tailwater plus the sea-level allowance.
- (b) A 10% AEP (10-yr) 48-hour storm with the 1% AEP still-water level (tide plus surge) plus the sea-level allowance.

Bihar has no coast, so no outfall in the State is tidal and cases (a) and (b) do not arise. The tailwater is the river into which a city drains, and the nalas, tals and chaurs that local drains discharge into. For an outfall under river backwater, the site storm is combined with the river level under Clause 5.8.4, which pairs a design event on one side with a 10-yr event on the other in the same way as case (b). The river stage is read at the nearest CWC gauge. In the CWC bulletin of 31 October 2026 the danger level and highest flood level (HFL) are 48.60 m and 50.52 m (2016) for the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat and 50.45 m and 52.52 m (1975) at Dighaghat, in Patna; 50.60 m and 53.91 m (1976) for the Punpun at Sripalpur, into which the drains of south Patna outfall; 52.00 m and 53.79 m (1976) for the Sone at Maner; 52.53 m and 54.29 m (1987) for the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur, Muzaffarpur; 45.72 m and 48.96 m (1987) for the Bagmati at Hayaghat, Darbhanga; 35.65 m and 38.20 m (2017) for the Mahananda at Dhengraghat, Purnia; and, on the Ganga, 60.32 m and 62.09 m (1948) at Buxar, 41.76 m and 43.52 m (2021) at Hathidah, 39.33 m and 40.99 m (1976) at Munger and 33.68 m and 34.86 m (2021) at Bhagalpur (CWC). Press reports give 50.53–50.57 m at Gandhi Ghat on 5–6 September 2026, above the HFL that the bulletin still lists; the conflict is unresolved [TBC]. These HFLs lie 1.2–3.3 m above the danger levels, so an outfall below the HFL can be shut for days. When the rivers are high the sluices on Patna's outfalls to the Ganga and the Punpun are closed and runoff is lifted by the sump houses, reported as 56 permanent and 28 temporary drainage pumping stations in a Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 whose scope, Patna or the State, is unclear; so storage and pumps are checked for the gates-shut condition, with the local storm falling before, during or after the river peak. No document found in research for this Manual sets a design river level for the outfalls of any city in the State [TBC], and Chapter 5 sets the interim rule. Every level is stated on a named datum, as Chapter 5 requires; the datum of the CWC gauge levels quoted here is to be confirmed [TBC].

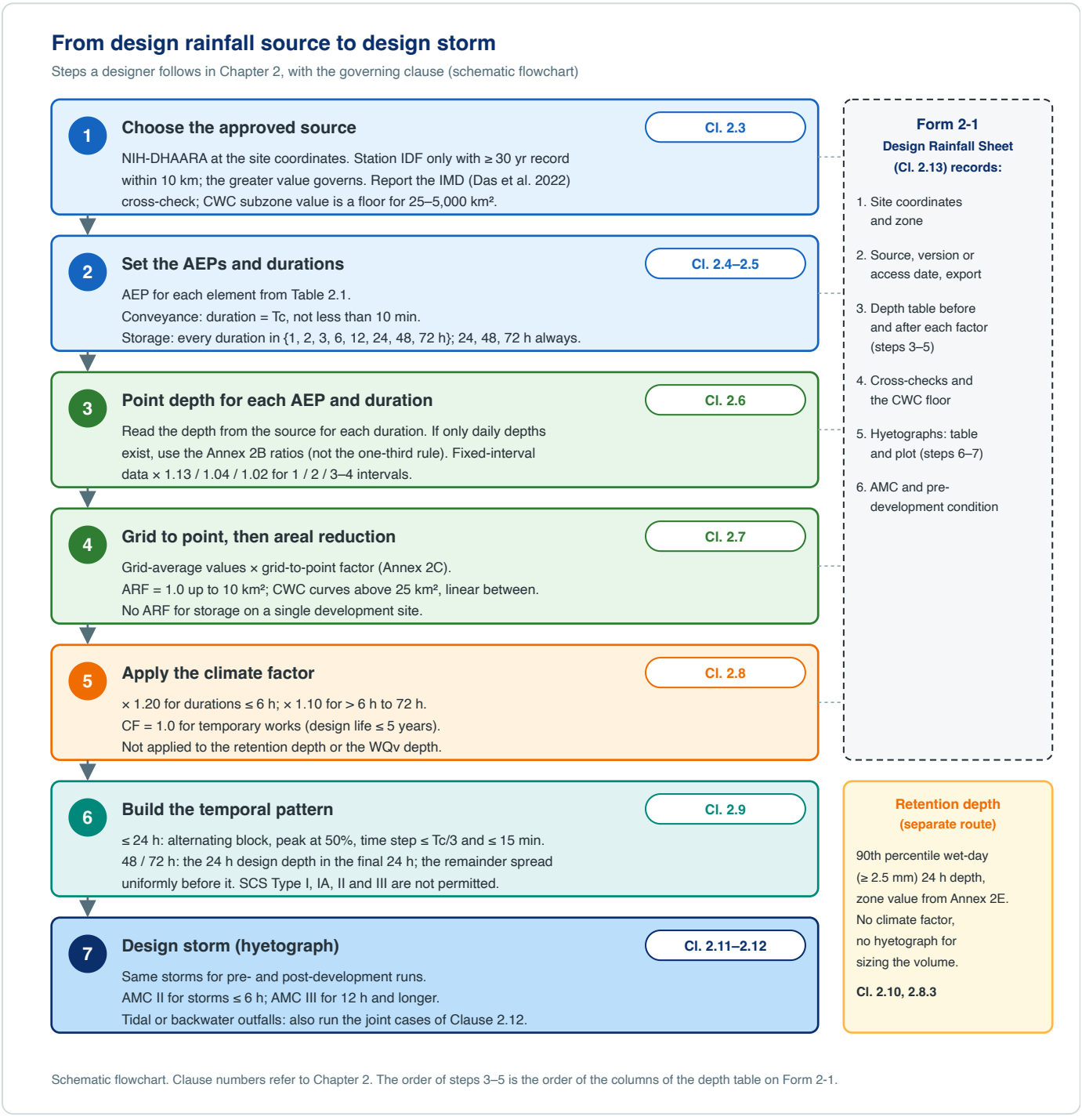
> Commentary. Bihar has no coast, so no outfall is tidal and there is no storm surge; the coincident load is the stage of the rivers. The coincidence is on record. In August 1975 the Sone and the Ganga rose together and their waters entered Patna (as reported). In September 2026, during heavy rain, the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat rose above its highest recorded level, the sluice gates on the Ganga and the Punpun at Patna were closed and drains connected to the Ganga were blocked (as reported). The rivers stay high for days and weeks: on 31 October 2026, a month after that flood, the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat still stood at 45.41 m and the Punpun at Sripalpur at 46.68 m (CWC). Their floods come largely from rain over catchments far upstream, in Nepal and Jharkhand, so they give no warning of a local storm that falls while the gates are shut. Behind the embankments and sluices of Patna, Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga, the drains cannot outfall by gravity while the river is high and depend on pumps. The levels of the sources are on different datums, which is why Chapter 5 requires every level to name its datum. Because rainfall and surge share a weather cause (in Bihar, which has no coast, the counterpart of surge is the stage of the rivers, raised by the same monsoon systems that bring the heaviest rain to the cities and to the catchments above them in Nepal and Jharkhand: in August 1975 the Sone and the Ganga rose together and their waters entered Patna, and in September 2026 the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat rose above its highest recorded level during heavy rain, both as reported), they cannot be treated as independent. Case (b) is a simple joint-probability surrogate until a statistical joint analysis is adopted.

2.13 Submittal requirements

Every hydrologic submittal shall include a **Design Rainfall Sheet** (Form 2-1) stating:

1. the site coordinates and zone;
2. the source (Clause 2.3), version or access date, and a screenshot or export of the values extracted;
3. a depth table for each AEP and duration used, before and after the fixed-interval factor, grid-to-point factor, ARF and climate factor;
4. the cross-check values of Clause 2.3.3 and the floor check;
5. the hyetographs used, as a table and a plot, for each design storm; and
6. the AMC and pre-development definition adopted.

Figure 2.3 shows the steps of this chapter in the order in which the sheet records them.



Schematic flowchart. Clause numbers refer to Chapter 2. The order of steps 3–5 is the order of the columns of the depth table on Form 2-1.

Figure 2.3 — From design rainfall source to design storm: the steps a designer follows (source, AEPs and durations, point depth, grid-to-point and areal reduction, climate factor, temporal pattern, design storm), the clause that governs each step, what Form 2-1 records, and the separate route for the retention depth. Schematic. Original drawing for this Manual.

2.14 Review and update

2.14.1 The approving authority shall review this chapter **every 10 years**. It shall also review it within 2 years of any event in which recorded rainfall exceeds the 1% AEP 24-hour or 72-hour design depth at two or more approved gauges in the State.

2.14.2 Updates to NIH-DHAARA take effect for new submittals **6 months** after release, unless the authority notifies otherwise.

References (chapter)

- National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee. NIH-DHAARA: Design Hydrology and Advanced Rainfall Analysis. http://www.nihdhaara.in/
- Das, S.K. et al. (2022). Isopluvial analysis and intensity–duration–frequency curves for different cities in India. *MAUSAM* 73(4), 887–898. https://metnet.imd.gov.in/docs/mausamdocs/173412_F.pdf
- Central Water Commission (1987). Flood Estimation Report for Sone Subzone 1(d), Report No. S/15/1987, CWC Publication No. 33/88, Aug 1987, approved at the 46th meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 27–28 Aug 1987 (Plates 8–10, of which Plate 9 is titled the 50-year and Plate 10 the 100-year map, although the text calls Plate 10 the 50-year map; the SUH relationships, p. 40, where the exponent of the tp relation is printed 1.102 in the table and 1.012 in the worked example; the short-duration ratio table, p. 50, whose 18-hour value was read from OCR text [TBC]; Annexure II; read from the Wayback Machine capture of 12 Apr 2016 of the cwc.gov.in copy). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- Central Water Commission (1985). Flood Estimation Report for Middle Ganga Plains Subzone 1(f), Report No. GP/10/1984, Oct 1985, approved at the 41st meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 30 Jan 1985 (Plates 8 and 9, the SUH relationships, the short-duration ratio table, Fig. 10, whose 2-, 4- and 5-hour ratios were read from an OCR and not checked against the page image [TBC], and the worked example for Bridge No. 152 on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli section; Wayback Machine capture of the cwc.gov.in copy). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- Central Water Commission (1994). Flood Estimation Report for Lower Ganga Plains Subzone 1(g) (revised), Design Office Report No. LG-1(g)/R-1/23/94, Nov 1994 (Plate 9, the short-duration ratio table, and Annexes 4.3 and 4.4, including the recording-gauge maxima at Sabour and Jamui; Wayback Machine capture of 12 Apr 2016 of the cwc.gov.in copy). https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A.
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012), stations of Bihar (pp. M32–M38). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2011). Climate of Bihar. Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18, Nov 2011 (district normals 1951–2000, Table V; storms and depressions 1891–2010, Table VII; heaviest 24-hour rainfall by district). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/patna/mcdata/climateofbihar.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2020). New normal dates of onset/progress and withdrawal of the southwest monsoon over India (Pai et al.), press release of 15 May 2020, Table 2. https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20200515_pr_804.pdf
- National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee. NIH-DHAARA IDF Curve Tool (IMDAA reanalysis), queried at 16 cells in Bihar on 6 Nov 2026. http://117.252.14.251:8080/
- National Institute of Hydrology, Regional Centre, Patna. Characteristics of short interval rainfall in Punpun basin, Bihar (research report; seen only through a summary, not obtained [TBC]). https://oldiwp.indiawaterportal.org/articles/characteristics-short-interval-rainfall-punpun-basin-bihar-research-report-national
- Kathuria, S.N., Kaur, S. & Mehra, A.K. (1987). Rainfall intensity for local drainage design in Lucknow and its neighbouring area. *MAUSAM* 38(1), 85–88 (Tables 2–4; the basis of the floors of Clause 2.3.6(h)). https://mausamjournal.imd.gov.in/index.php/MAUSAM/article/download/2654/2468
- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin, 31 Oct 2026 (via FMISC; read from the page image; datum to be confirmed [TBC]); and Water Resources Department, FMISC, Daily Flood Information Bulletin, 31 Oct 2026. https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf ; https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/Flood%20Bulletin.pdf
- Rajya Sabha. Reply of 27 Nov 2024 on drainage pumping stations in Bihar (seen only through a search summary). https://rsdebate.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/754718/1/PQ_266_27112024_S10_p23_p25.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. District groundwater profiles of Supaul, Saharsa, Katihar and Sitamarhi (2011) (seen only through search summaries).

- Studies of rainfall trends in Bihar: *Hydrology* (MDPI, 2024), gridded data 1901–2020 (summary read); *Current World Environment* 18(2) and 20(1) (summaries read). https://doaj.org/article/69bb222448444c808df7ab0c9320a2e0 ; https://www.cwejournal.org/pdf/Vol20No1/CWE_Vol20_No1_p_105-120.pdf
- Ali, H. & Mishra, V. (2018). Increase in subdaily precipitation extremes in India under 1.5 and 2.0 °C warming worlds. *Geophysical Research Letters* 45. https://repository.ias.ac.in/142345
- Press reports of the Patna rain of September 2019 and July 2025, the monsoon withdrawal of 2025 and the Ganga at Patna in September 2026 (secondary sources). https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-lucknow/20191001/281797105729423 ; https://www.cbsnews.com/news/monsoon-season-flooding-india-heavy-late-rains-kills-more-than-100-in-several-days-2019-09-30 ; https://www.patrika.com/en/state-news/patna-breaks-28-year-old-rainfall-record-city-inundated-19820889 ; https://patnapress.com/bihar-monsoon-withdrawal-2025-31-percent-deficit/ ; https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/
- Chow, V.T., Maidment, D.R. & Mays, L.W. (1988). *Applied Hydrology*. McGraw-Hill (alternating-block method, §14.4).
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Mile High Flood District (Denver). Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual (90% release rationale).
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008, 2012). Urban Stormwater Management Manual (MSMA).

Annexes

Annex	Content
2A	NIH-DHAARA vs IMD station and IMD gridded checks at benchmark points; zone map
2B	Sub-daily ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone: NIH-DHAARA (hourly-based) vs the one-third rule
2C	Grid-to-point factors
2D	Bihar temporal patterns (Huff curves)
2E	Retention percentile depths by zone
Form 2-1	Design Rainfall Sheet

CHAPTER 3

Hydrologic Methods

3.1 Purpose and scope

3.1.1 This chapter sets out how design rainfall from Chapter 2 is turned into runoff peaks, volumes and hydrographs for:

- (a) drain, inlet and culvert sizing (Chapter 6);
- (b) retention and detention sizing, and the pre- vs post-development comparison (Chapter 4);
- (c) downstream and tailwater analysis (Chapter 5); and
- (d) waterbody, tank (pokhar) and regional facility studies (Chapter 7).

3.1.2 It specifies:

- (a) which method may be used for which purpose and catchment size (Clause 3.4);
- (b) how the pre- and post-development land surfaces are defined (Clause 3.3);
- (c) the parameters of each method: runoff coefficients, time of concentration, soils, curve numbers, unit hydrographs and routing (Clauses 3.5–3.12);
- (d) when continuous simulation and model calibration are required (Clauses 3.13 and 3.15);
- (e) the step-by-step pre- vs post-development comparison (Clause 3.14); and
- (f) software acceptance and documentation (Clauses 3.16 and 3.17).

3.1.3 Rainfall inputs (depth, duration, areal reduction, climate factor, temporal pattern and antecedent moisture) are governed by Chapter 2 and shall not be varied in this chapter.

> **Commentary.** The CPHEEO (2019) Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems gives a full Rational Method procedure and names SWMM for hydrograph work, but it is a drain-sizing guide. It does not say how a regulator should define "pre-development" or which method must be used to test a development against it (CPHEEO Part A §4.4, §8.5.1). APWA Section 5600 does both: it limits the Rational Method, names baseline hydrograph methods, and fixes the land-use assumptions for existing and proposed conditions (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2–5602.3; Version 2025.01, §5603.4). This chapter follows that model.

3.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Pre-development condition	The reference land surface defined in Clause 3.3.2, against which post-development runoff is tested. It is not the existing condition.
Post-development condition	The land surface after the proposed works are complete, as defined in Clause 3.3.3.
Point of comparison (POC)	A location where site runoff leaves the site, at which pre- and post-development flows are compared (Clause 3.14).

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Time of concentration (Tc)	The time for runoff to travel from the hydraulically most distant point of the catchment to the point of interest.
Lag (tL)	The time from the centroid of rainfall excess to the peak of the runoff hydrograph.
Hydrologic soil group (HSG)	The NRCS classification (A, B, C, D) of a soil by its minimum infiltration rate when wet (USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 7).
Curve number (CN)	The NRCS parameter that combines soil group, land cover and antecedent moisture into a single runoff-potential index (USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 9–10).
Antecedent moisture condition (AMC)	The soil wetness at the start of a storm: AMC I (dry), II (average), III (wet).
Directly connected impervious area (DCIA)	Impervious surface that drains to a drain, pipe or channel without first flowing over a pervious surface.
Disconnected impervious area	Impervious surface whose runoff flows as sheet flow over a pervious surface before reaching the drainage system, and meets Clause 3.9.3.
Peak rate factor (PRF)	The constant in the unit hydrograph peak equation (484 in US customary units; 0.208 in the SI form of Clause 3.11.2).
Continuous simulation	A model run over a long rainfall record (years), with soil moisture, storage and tank levels carried forward between storms.
Tank cascade	A chain of tanks (pokhars) in which the surplus of one tank feeds the next.

3.3 Pre-development and post-development land surface

3.3.1 **Same site, same storm.** Pre- and post-development runs shall cover the same area draining to each POC, and use the same design storms (Clause 2.11.1). They shall differ only in the land-surface parameters of this clause, the resulting Tc, and the stormwater controls.

3.3.2 **Pre-development condition.** The pre-development land surface shall be **greenfield: open land in good condition for the mapped hydrologic soil group**, as follows:

- (a) All land within the site, including land that is now built on, paved, compacted or cultivated, is treated as open land (grass cover > 75%) in good condition. **Existing impervious cover shall not be counted.**
- (b) The curve number is the TR-55 value for "open space, good condition" for the HSG of Clause 3.7: **CN 39 (A), 61 (B), 74 (C), 80 (D)** at AMC II (Table 3.5).
- (c) The HSG is the natural HSG of Clause 3.7, including the dual-group rule for high water table (Clause 3.10.1). No HSG improvement for drainage works is allowed.
- (d) Tc is computed on the pre-development ground surface using unchannelled overland and shallow concentrated flow and natural channels only (Clause 3.6). Existing pipes, lined drains and kerbs are ignored.
- (e) Existing waterbodies, tank waterspreads up to the full tank level (FTL), natural channels and supply or surplus channels are kept as they are, and modelled as water surfaces or channels, not as open land.

3.3.3 **Post-development condition.** The post-development land surface shall represent the proposed works at full build-out:

- (a) Impervious areas shall be measured from the site plan, separately for roofs, paved surfaces, roads and other sealed surfaces, and classified as directly connected or disconnected (Clause 3.9). Lot-size residential rows of TR-55 shall not be used for the site itself.

- (b) Pervious areas disturbed by construction (graded, filled or trafficked) shall be assigned one HSG lower in infiltration capacity than the natural HSG (A to B, B to C, C to D), unless post-construction infiltration tests (Clause 3.7.3) show otherwise. Soil disturbed by construction shall never be classed as HSG A.
- (c) Rainwater harvesting (RWH) sumps shall be treated as full at the start of storms of 12 hours or more, and the roof area draining to them as directly connected for those storms (Chapter 4).
- (d) Retention and detention facilities shall be represented explicitly as storage (Clause 3.12), not by lowering CN.

3.3.4 **Redevelopment.** The pre-development condition of Clause 3.3.2 applies to redevelopment as well. A site that is already fully paved is tested against greenfield, not against its existing state. For the constrained-redevelopment route of Clause 4.5.6, the existing condition shall also be modelled, with existing impervious areas as surveyed, so that the 50% minimum can be checked.

3.3.5 **Off-site areas.**

- (a) For conveyance design (Chapter 6), areas upstream of the site shall be taken at their ultimate land use under the approved master plan or development plan. Where no plan exists, upstream undeveloped land shall be assumed to be at least 35% impervious.
- (b) For the pre- vs post-development comparison, off-site run-on shall be modelled identically in both runs, at its existing condition (Clause 3.14.2).

> **Commentary.** A greenfield reference stops each redevelopment from being judged against an already degraded baseline. The UK non-statutory standards and KC APWA take the same approach in different forms: APWA caps existing agricultural land at no more than "good condition pasture, grassland or range (C = 0.30, CN = 74)" for HSG C, and forbids disturbed soils from being classed as HSG A or B (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.3A and E). The TR-55 "open space, good condition" values used in (b) are identical to TR-55's "pasture, grassland or range, good" values (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Tables 2-2a and 2-2c), so this Manual's pre-development CN equals the APWA cap on HSG C soils. The one-class downgrade for disturbed soils in 3.3.3(b) is set by this Manual as a simpler, less strict version of the APWA rule, suited to the Ganga, Gandak and Kosi alluvium, diara and chaur lands, tal clays and plateau-fringe rock of Bihar, where an HSG A to C jump would be excessive. The 35% minimum imperviousness for unplanned upstream land in 3.3.5(a) is the APWA value (2011, §5602.3E.2). Using the master-plan land use for conveyance follows CPHEEO, which requires C to reflect "ultimate development of the catchment as per the master plan" (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.1.5).

3.4 Selection of method

3.4.1 The method shall be selected from Table 3.1 by purpose and catchment size. Figure 3.1 shows the same rules as a flowchart.

Table 3.1 — Permitted hydrologic methods

Purpose	Catchment / condition	Permitted method	Clause
Peak flow for one conveyance element (inlet, pipe reach, drain reach, culvert)	≤ 16 ha contributing, no upstream storage, no backwater	Rational Method	3.5
Peak flow for conveyance	> 16 ha, or any upstream storage, tank or pond	Hydrograph method (SCS-CN with SCS unit hydrograph, SWMM or HEC-HMS)	3.8–3.12
Retention, detention, any storage; pre- vs post-development comparison	Any size	Hydrograph method; **Rational Method not permitted**	3.8–3.12, 3.14

Purpose	Catchment / condition	Permitted method	Clause
Pipe or drain network with backwater, tidal or tank tailwater	Any size	Hydrograph method with dynamic-wave hydraulic routing	3.12.4; Chapter 5
Catchment-scale flows	25–5,000 km² in CWC subzone 1(d), 1(f) or 1(g)	HEC-HMS or SWMM, benchmarked against the CWC synthetic unit hydrograph (SUH)	3.11.4
Regional facilities	Draining > 25 km²	Design-storm hydrograph method **plus** continuous simulation	3.13
Tank (pokhar) cascades	Any size	Design-storm hydrograph method **plus** continuous simulation	3.13
Tier B: small sites under Chapter 1	Within the limits of the design aid	Design aids issued under Chapter 4, which are themselves derived by the methods of this chapter	3.4.4
Small sites, any authority	≤ 1 ha, within the limits of Clause 4.14.3	Fixed-coefficient route of Chapter 4 (fixed release coefficients, rainfall-mass storage)	3.4.4; 4.14.3

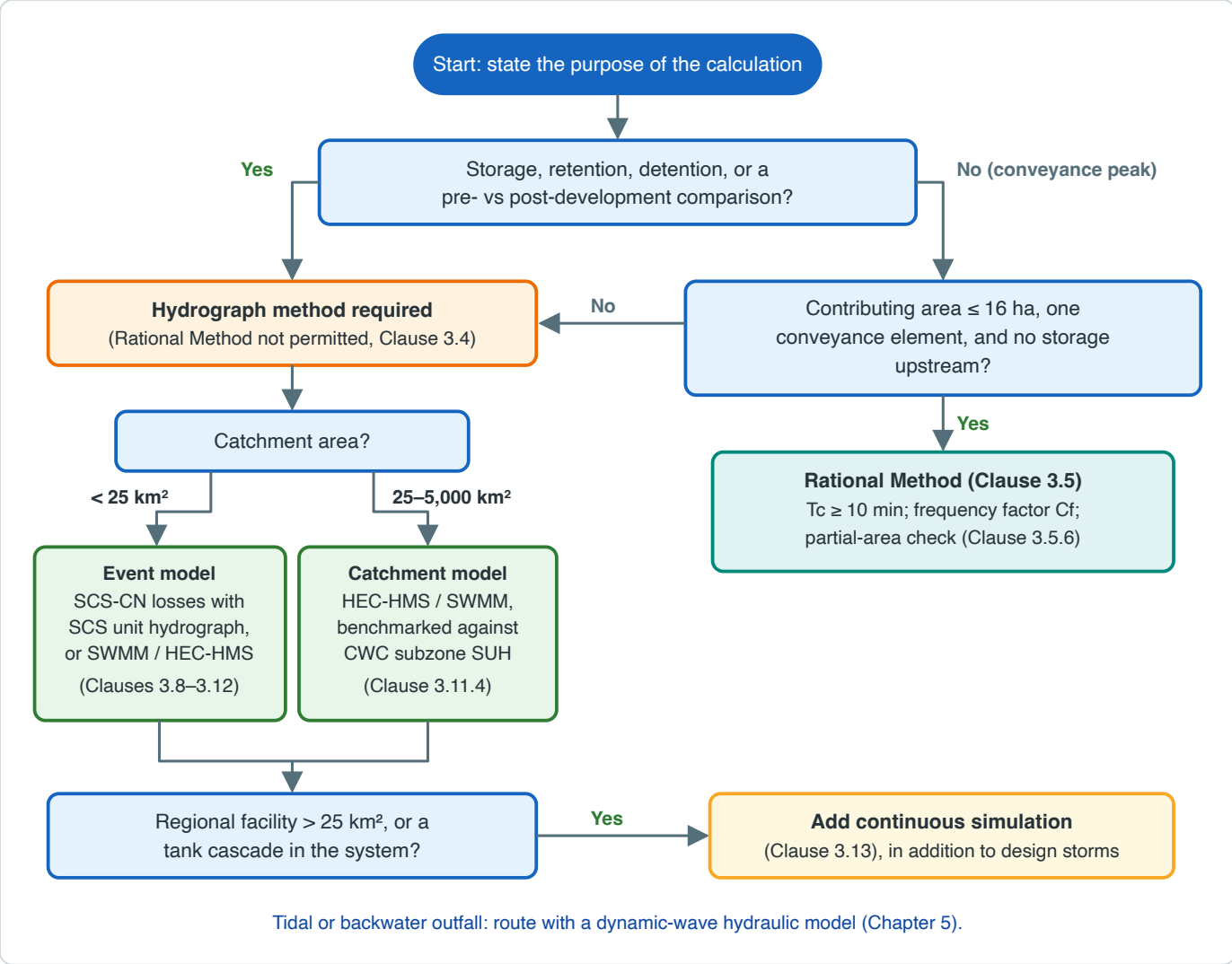


Figure 3.1 — Selection of hydrologic method. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from KC Metro APWA, Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, 2011 (§5602.2) and Version 2025.01 (§5603.4, Policy Supplement, 2025).

3.4.2 **Rational Method limits.** The Rational Method shall be used only for catchments of **16 ha or less** and only to compute the peak flow to a **single conveyance element**. It shall **never** be used to size retention, detention or any other storage, nor to derive a hydrograph or runoff volume.

3.4.3 **Hydrograph methods.** Above 16 ha, and for every storage calculation, a hydrograph method shall be used: SCS-CN losses with the SCS (NRCS) unit hydrograph, EPA SWMM, or HEC-HMS. For 25–5,000 km² the CWC synthetic unit hydrograph shall also be computed as a benchmark (Clause 3.11.4).

3.4.4 **Simplified routes.** In Tier B areas (Chapter 1), sites within the limits stated on a design aid issued under Chapter 4 may use that design aid in place of a site-specific hydrograph model. In any area, sites of 1 ha or less may use the fixed-coefficient route of Clause 4.14.3; it is the only exception to the rule in 3.4.2 that rainfall-based peak methods shall not be used for storage. The Rational Method remains available for conveyance under 3.4.2.

3.4.5 **Catchments above 5,000 km².** These are outside the scope of this Manual and require a basin study approved by the Water Resources Department (WRD).

> **Commentary.** The 16 ha limit and the single-element rule follow APWA 5600 Version 2025.01, which cut the Rational Method from 200 ac to 40 ac and restricted it to "a single pipe segment". The MARC Policy Supplement adds that it "cannot be used to size runoff reduction practices or determine retention volumes and detention volumes" (MARC, APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement, 2025). CPHEEO (2019, Part A §4.4.1.3) allows the Rational Method up to 8–10 km², which is too large for a method that assumes uniform rainfall intensity over the whole catchment for the whole of Tc and gives no volume. The Rational Method is excluded from storage design because it gives a peak, not a hydrograph, and storage depends on volume and timing.

3.5 Rational Method

3.5.1 **Equation.** The peak flow shall be computed as:

$$Q = C \cdot Cf \cdot i \cdot A / 360$$

where Q is the peak flow (m³/s); C is the runoff coefficient (Table 3.2); Cf is the frequency factor (Table 3.3), with $C \cdot Cf \le 1.0$; i is the rainfall intensity (mm/h) for a duration equal to Tc, from Chapter 2 (with the climate factor of Clause 2.8); and A is the contributing area (ha).

> **Commentary.** This is the CPHEEO equation Qp = 10 C I A, with Qp in m³/h (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.1.1–4.4.1.3), converted to m³/s.

3.5.2 **Runoff coefficients.** C shall be taken from Table 3.2. Within a range, the designer shall use the upper half of the range unless site data justify a lower value.

Table 3.2 — Runoff coefficient C (for AEP of 10% or more frequent)

Surface or land use	C	Source
Commercial	0.70–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Industrial	0.60–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Institutional	0.70–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Residential, high density	0.60–0.75	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Residential, low density	0.40–0.60	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2

Surface or land use	C	Source
Recreational	0.10–0.25	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Asphalt	0.70–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Concrete	0.80–0.95	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Brick paving	0.70–0.85	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Roofs: tiles	0.80–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Roofs: metal	0.70–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Roofs: concrete	0.70–0.90	CPHEEO 2019, Table 4.2
Lawns, sandy soil, flat (≤ 2%)	0.05–0.10	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, sandy soil, average (2–7%)	0.10–0.15	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, sandy soil, steep (> 7%)	0.15–0.20	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, heavy (clay) soil, flat (≤ 2%)	0.13–0.17	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, heavy soil, average (2–7%)	0.18–0.22	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Lawns, heavy soil, steep (> 7%)	0.25–0.35	ASCE/WPCF 1969
Undeveloped land (maximum for any condition)	0.30	KC APWA 5600 (2011), §5602.3E

3.5.3 **Frequency factor.** For design AEPs rarer than 10%, C shall be multiplied by Cf from Table 3.3. The product C · Cf shall not exceed 1.0.

Table 3.3 — Frequency factor Cf

Design AEP (return period)	Cf
10% (10-yr) and more frequent	1.00
4% (25-yr)	1.10
2% (50-yr)	1.20
1% (100-yr)	1.25

3.5.4 **Composite C.** Where a catchment contains more than one surface, C shall be the area-weighted value $C = \Sigma(C_j \cdot A_j) / \Sigma A_j$, computed from the measured areas of each surface. Cf is applied to the composite C.

3.5.5 **Time of concentration and networks.**

- (a) Tc shall be computed by Clause 3.6 and shall not be less than **10 minutes**.
- (b) For each reach of a network within the 16 ha limit, the peak shall be computed with the cumulative $\Sigma(C \cdot A)$ upstream of that reach and the longest Tc to that reach. Peaks from upstream reaches shall not be added.

3.5.6 **Partial-area check.** Where a compact, highly impervious part of the catchment has a much shorter Tc than the whole, the peak shall also be computed for that part alone, using its own area, C and Tc. The larger peak governs.

> **Commentary.** The developed-surface coefficients in Table 3.2 are CPHEEO Table 4.2, which CPHEEO adapted from ASCE/WPCF (1969). CPHEEO keeps C constant for all return periods. Table 3.3 instead adopts the APWA antecedent-precipitation factors (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2A: K = 1.1, 1.2 and 1.25 for 4%, 2% and 1% storms, with C·K ≤ 1.0). These factors matter here because Bihar's rare storms arrive on wet ground (Clause 2.11.4). The 10-minute minimum Tc matches the minimum design duration of Clause 2.5.1. APWA 2011 bounds

inlet time between 5 and 15 minutes (§5602.7A). The partial-area check follows CPHEEO's treatment of "partial area effect" (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.1.7). This Manual requires the upper half of each range in 3.5.2 because Indian urban plots are typically more densely covered than the US land uses behind the ASCE ranges.

3.6 Time of concentration

3.6.1 **General.** Tc shall be computed separately for the pre- and post-development conditions, along the flow path that gives the longest travel time to the point of interest, as the sum of travel times in each flow segment. Tc shall not be less than **10 minutes** for either condition.

3.6.2 **NRCS velocity (segment) method.** The NRCS segment method is the default for all catchments. Tc = Tt(sheet) + Tt(shallow) + Tt(channel), where:

- (a) **Sheet flow:**

  > Tt = 0.091 (n · L)^0.8 / (P2^0.5 · S^0.4)

  where Tt is in hours; n is the sheet-flow roughness from Table 3.4; L is the sheet-flow length (m); P2 is the present-day 50% AEP (2-yr) 24-hour rainfall (mm) from Clause 2.3, without the climate factor; and S is the land slope (m/m).

- (b) **Sheet-flow length.** In urban areas, and for all post-development conditions, the sheet-flow length shall not exceed **30 m**. For pre-development greenfield surfaces, up to 90 m may be used only where survey shows unchannelled planar ground; otherwise 30 m applies.

- (c) **Shallow concentrated flow:** Tt = L / (3,600 V), with V = 4.918 S^0.5 (unpaved) or V = 6.196 S^0.5 (paved), V in m/s, L in m and S in m/m.

- (d) **Channel and pipe flow:** Tt = L / (3,600 V), with V from Manning's equation at bank-full or pipe-full flow.

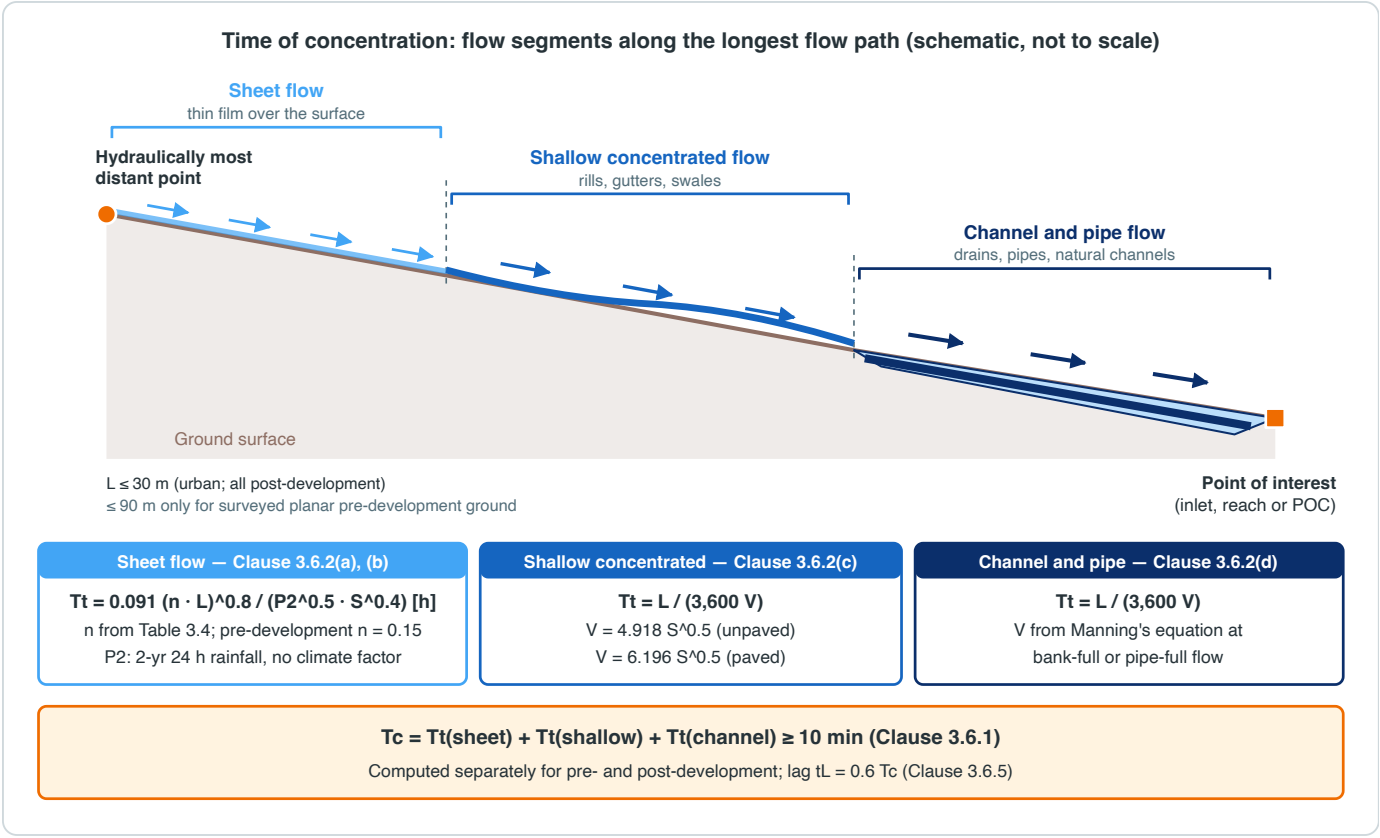


Figure 3.2 — Time of concentration by the NRCS segment method: sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow and channel or pipe flow along the longest flow path, with the travel-time equations and limits of Clause 3.6. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from USDA SCS TR-55 (1986), Ch. 3, and USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 15 (2010).

Table 3.4 — Manning's n for sheet flow (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Table 3-1)

Surface	n
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt, gravel, bare soil)	0.011
Fallow (no residue)	0.05
Cultivated, residue cover ≤ 20%	0.06
Cultivated, residue cover > 20%	0.17
Grass: short-grass prairie	0.15
Grass: dense grasses	0.24
Range (natural)	0.13
Woods: light underbrush	0.40
Woods: dense underbrush	0.80

3.6.3 **Pre-development roughness.** For the pre-development greenfield surface of Clause 3.3.2, sheet-flow n shall be **0.15** unless the designer justifies another Table 3.4 value from the natural vegetation of the area.

3.6.4 **Kirpich formula.** The Kirpich formula may be used only as a cross-check, or for pre-development rural catchments with a defined main channel:

tc = 0.0195 L^0.77 S^−0.385

where tc is in minutes, L is the length of the main flow path (m) and S is its average slope (m/m). It shall not be used for urban or post-development catchments.

3.6.5 **Lag.** Where a unit hydrograph method requires lag, tL = 0.6 Tc.

3.6.6 **Check.** Post-development Tc shall normally be shorter than pre-development Tc. Where it is longer, the designer shall explain why in the submittal.

> Commentary. The segment method and its equations are from TR-55 (USDA SCS, 1986, Ch. 3) and NEH Part 630, Ch. 15 (USDA NRCS, 2010). The SI constants are direct conversions of the US equations: 0.007 becomes 0.091 with L in m and P2 in mm, and 16.1345 and 20.3282 ft/s become 4.918 and 6.196 m/s. TR-55 (1986) allowed sheet flow up to 300 ft (≈ 90 m). NEH 630 Ch. 15 states that sheet flow typically lasts no more than about 100 ft (≈ 30 m) before becoming shallow concentrated flow (citing Merkel, 2001), and many US agencies now cap it there. This Manual sets the 30 m urban limit in 3.6.2(b) on that basis: in Indian urban plots, flow reaches a drain, kerb or compound-wall weep hole within a few metres. The undisturbed P2 is used in the sheet-flow equation because P2 is a parameter of the travel-time relationship, not a design load. The default n = 0.15 for greenfield is the TR-55 short-grass value; this Manual adopts it to avoid long pre-development Tc values that would make Q_pre artificially low. The Kirpich formula is the SI form given by Chow, Maidment and Mays (1988, Table 15.1.2), from small agricultural catchments in Tennessee (Kirpich, 1940), so it does not suit urban surfaces. The lag ratio 0.6 is the NRCS value, also used by APWA (2011, §5602.7C).

3.7 Soils and hydrologic soil groups

3.7.1 **Mapping.** HSG shall be assigned from the soil series mapped by the National Bureau of Soil Survey and Land Use Planning (NBSS&LUP) or the Bihar Department of Agriculture (soil survey) [TBC], using the soil-series-to-HSG lookup of Annex 3A. The source map and its scale shall be stated.

3.7.2 **Assignment rule.** Where Annex 3A is not yet available for a series, the HSG shall be assigned from the measured saturated hydraulic conductivity and depth to an impermeable layer or water table using the criteria of NEH Part 630, Ch. 7. Until Annex 3A is published, this Manual sets the following interim groups for Bihar: the diara and the active floodplain of the Ganga, the Kosi, the Gandak, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati, the Mahananda and the other rivers, HSG A or B by texture, but HSG D, with no infiltration credit, for every design storm from 15 June to 30 September, because the rivers rise over or beside this land every monsoon and the water table then stands at or near the surface; the newer and calcareous alluvium of the north Bihar plain, HSG C, and HSG D in chaurs and mauns and wherever the water table before the monsoon is less than 3 m below ground, which is the case over most of the Mithila and Kosi plain and Seemanchal (sub-areas BR-B and BR-C of Annex 2A); the sandy deposits of the Kosi plain in Supaul, Saharsa, Madhepura and Araria, HSG A or B by texture, but HSG D for every design storm from July to September; the older alluvium of the south Bihar plain, HSG B or C by texture, and HSG C or D on tal land, the less permeable of the two wherever the land is under water in the monsoon; the marshy terai of West Champaran below the Someshwar hills, HSG C or D, and HSG D wherever the seasonal high water table is within 0.6 m of the surface; on the plateau fringe, the Kaimur and Rohtas plateaus, the Rajgir and Kharagpur hills and the Chotanagpur margin in Banka and Jamui, HSG D on rock outcrop and thin red soils and HSG C on deeper red sandy loam; and made ground and fill, HSG C unless a field test shows otherwise. A field infiltration test is required on every site larger than the limits of the simplified method of Clause 4.14.1; on smaller sites, a soil that has not been tested shall be given the less permeable of the groups listed for it. Clause 3.10.1 applies to all of these groups.

3.7.3 **Site verification.** For every site that relies on retention by infiltration (Chapter 4), the mapped HSG shall be verified by site infiltration tests at the location and depth of each infiltration facility. Where the tests show a lower infiltration capacity than the mapped HSG, the test result governs for both the retention design and the post-development CN. Where they show a higher capacity, the pre-development HSG shall not be changed without the approval of the authority.

3.7.4 **Disturbed and filled ground.** Clause 3.3.3(b) applies.

> Commentary. NBSS&LUP soil maps are typically at 1:250,000 to 1:50,000 scale and classify soils by series and taxonomy, not by HSG. A lookup table is therefore needed (Annex 3A). Site tests matter most on the diara and the Kosi sands, where a sand that is HSG A or B by texture behaves as D once the monsoon has raised the river and the water table (Clause 3.10); in the chaurs and on tal land, where a clay can stay saturated for months; on the calcareous alluvium of north Bihar and the older alluvium of the south, where a kankar layer can make a loam behave as HSG C; and on the plateau fringe, where the depth to rock can change from a few centimetres to several metres within one site. No statewide HSG map of Bihar was found during research for this Manual [TBC]. An ICAR study with a co-author from Bihar Agricultural University assigned curve numbers by HSG and land use, and a thesis of Dr Rajendra Prasad Central Agricultural University, Pusa, modelled the Burhi Gandak to Samastipur, about 10,913 km², with SCS-CN losses in HEC-HMS (both from search summaries [TBC]). This Manual does not adopt one group for the whole State. A single group D would be conservative for peak flows, and it is close to the truth in the monsoon over much of north Bihar, but it would deny infiltration retention (Clause 4.4) on the older alluvium of the south, where the water table is deeper. The geology supports a split. The CWC report for subzone 1(f) records that the "major portion of the subzone has alluvial soils of recent origin excepting Tarai region and the plains on the North-Eastern side between Rapti and Kosi rivers where Tarai and Calcarious alluvium soils are encountered"; the report for subzone 1(d) records that the subzone is "mostly covered with red and yellow soils except the alluvial soils in the South Bihar Plains"; and IMD divides the State into the sub-Himalayan foothills of West Champaran, with a marshy terai belt below them, the Indo-Gangetic plain, and the southern plateau of the Kaimur in the west and the Chotanagpur in the east (*Climate of Bihar*, 2011). The Kosi "has changed its course over 120 kms from east to west" in about 250 years (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*), and the CGWB describes the aquifers of its plain as Quaternary alluvial sand (Supaul district profile, from a search summary [TBC]). About 1,062 km² of the Mokama group of tals in Patna, Nalanda and Munger districts is waterlogged by excess rain (NIH, from a search summary [TBC]). No measured infiltration rates or saturated hydraulic conductivities for the diara sand, the calcareous alluvium, the tal clays or the Kosi sand were obtained, and no source was found for the months for which the tals and chaurs stay under water [TBC]. The only regional measures of losses are the design loss rates of the CWC subzones, 2.5 mm/h in 1(d), 3.0 mm/h in 1(f) and 2.7 mm/h in 1(g) (Annex 3E). They are φ-indices fitted to the floods of whole rural catchments, which include the area under standing water and the land beside saturated channels, not the infiltration capacity of any soil, and they shall not be used to assign an HSG or to size an infiltration practice. The interim groups of Clause 3.7.2, the 3 m water-table threshold for the north Bihar plain, the seasonal group D for the diara and the Kosi sands, the treatment of tal land and the Champaran terai, and the rule for untested soil on small sites are set by this Manual pending a soil-series lookup for Bihar.

3.8 SCS curve number (SCS-CN) loss method

3.8.1 **Runoff equation.** Runoff depth shall be computed by:

> $Q = (P - Ia)^2 / (P - Ia + S)$ for $P > Ia$; $Q = 0$ otherwise $S = 25{,}400 / CN - 254$

where Q is runoff depth (mm), P is the cumulative rainfall depth (mm), S is potential maximum retention (mm) and Ia is initial abstraction (mm). In hydrograph models the equation is applied to the cumulative rainfall at each time step to obtain incremental rainfall excess.

3.8.2 **Curve numbers.** CN at AMC II shall be taken from Table 3.5, for the HSG of Clause 3.7.

Table 3.5 — Runoff curve numbers, AMC II, Ia = 0.2S (USDA SCS TR-55, 1986, Tables 2-2a and 2-2c)

Cover type	HSG A	HSG B	HSG C	HSG D
Pre-development reference (Clause 3.3.2): open space, good condition (grass > 75%)	39	61	74	80
Open space, fair condition (grass 50–75%)	49	69	79	84
Open space, poor condition (grass < 50%)	68	79	86	89
Impervious: roofs, paved parking, driveways, paved roads with kerbs and drains	98	98	98	98
Paved roads with open ditches (including right-of-way)	83	89	92	93
Gravel roads (including right-of-way)	76	85	89	91
Dirt roads (including right-of-way)	72	82	87	89
Newly graded areas (pervious, no vegetation)	77	86	91	94
Fallow, bare soil	77	86	91	94
Meadow (continuous grass, protected from grazing)	30	58	71	78
Brush, good condition	30	48	65	73
Woods, good condition	30	55	70	77
Woods, fair condition	36	60	73	79
Woods, poor condition	45	66	77	83
Water surfaces, tank waterspreads, wet detention basins	Runoff = rainfall (no losses)			

3.8.3 **Use of Table 3.5.**

- (a) Post-development CN shall be built up from measured surfaces (Clause 3.9). The TR-55 urban district and residential lot-size rows shall not be used for the site.
- (b) Pervious areas in the post-development condition shall use "open space" in the condition the landscape plan will achieve. Where no landscape plan is submitted, fair condition applies.
- (c) Cultivated rows of TR-55 may be used for off-site existing conditions, but never for the pre-development reference of Clause 3.3.2.

3.8.4 **Antecedent moisture.** AMC shall follow Clause 2.11.4: AMC III for every design storm, whatever its duration, from 15 June to 30 September at a site in sub-area BR-A Gandak–Burhi Gandak plain, BR-B Mithila and Kosi plain or BR-C Seemanchal of Annex 2A, or on tal, chaur or diara land anywhere in the State, and in July and August at a site in sub-area BR-D South Bihar plain (Magadh–Bhojpur) or BR-E South-east Ganga fringe and plateau margin; at any other site or time, AMC III for a design storm that follows, or contains, a 5-day rainfall total of more than 53 mm; and AMC II for every other storm. CN for AMC I and III shall be obtained from AMC II by:

$$CN(I) = 4.2\,CN(II) / (10 - 0.058\,CN(II)) \qquad CN(III) = 23\,CN(II) / (10 + 0.13\,CN(II))$$

The conversion shall be applied **to the pervious component only**. Impervious surfaces stay at CN 98 for all AMC. Composite CNs shall not be converted directly.

Illustrative — not design values. Pre-development reference CNs at AMC III are: HSG A 59.5; HSG B 78.2; HSG C 86.7; HSG D 90.2.

3.8.5 **Initial abstraction.**

- (a) **Default:** Ia = 0.2S, with the CNs of Table 3.5.
- (b) **Sensitivity run (mandatory):** every storage design shall also be run with Ia = 0.05S. For this run, S shall be converted as S0.05 = 1.33 · S0.20^1.15 (S in inches), which in SI is:

  > S0.05 = 25.4 × 1.33 × (S0.20 / 25.4)^1.15 (mm)

- (c) The design shall be based on the default run. The sensitivity results shall be reported on Form 3-2. Where the sensitivity run increases the required retention volume or water quality volume, the larger value governs for that volume.

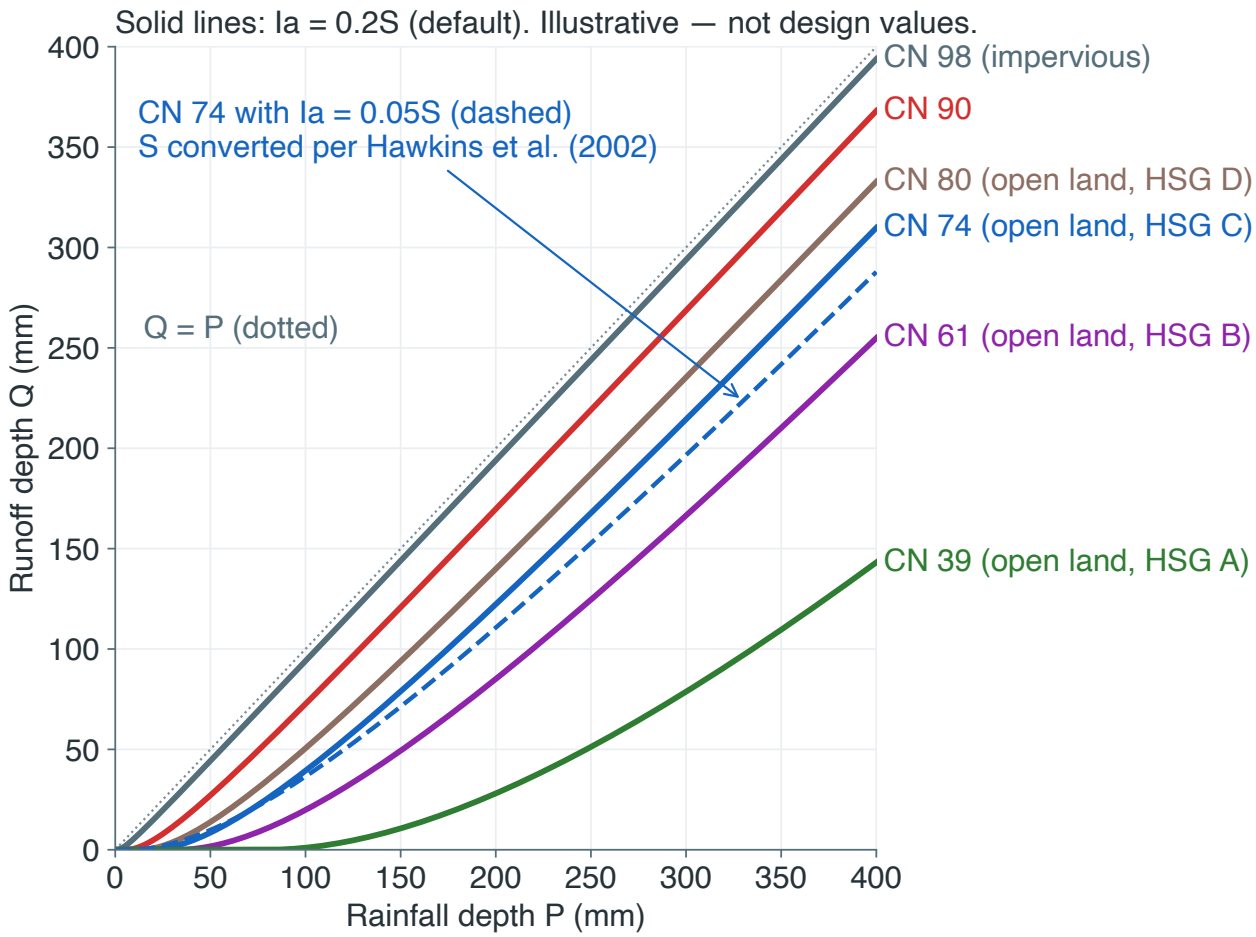


Figure 3.3 — SCS-CN runoff depth versus rainfall depth for selected curve numbers at Ia = 0.2S, with the Ia = 0.05S sensitivity case for CN 74. Original drawing for this Manual, computed from the runoff equation of USDA NRCS, NEH Part 630, Ch. 10 (2004) and USDA SCS TR-55 (1986), and the S-conversion of Hawkins et al. (2002). Illustrative — not design values.

Commentary. Table 3.5 reproduces standard NRCS TR-55 (1986) values. They were derived from US catchments and have not been calibrated in Bihar. The AMC conversion equations are the standard NEH-4 relationships as given by Chow, Maidment and Mays (1988, §5.5). Converting only the pervious component follows APWA, which states that "direct conversion of composite antecedent moisture conditions is not appropriate" (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2C). Converting a composite CN would wrongly lower the CN of the impervious part.

Ia = 0.2S is the original NRCS ratio. Analysis of US rainfall–runoff data found that 0.05S fits better on average (Hawkins et al., 2002; Woodward et al., 2003), and gave the conversion of 3.8.5(b). NRCS has not formally replaced 0.2S, so this Manual keeps it as the default. Figure 3.3 shows why the sensitivity run is needed: for CN 74, the 0.05S case gives **more** runoff for small storms (about 2.0 mm vs 0.5 mm from 25 mm of rain) but **less** for large storms (about 242 mm vs 262 mm from 350 mm). *Illustrative — not design values.* The ratio therefore matters most for retention and water quality volumes, and the default 0.2S is the conservative choice for peak and detention design. The rule in 3.8.5(c) that the larger retention or water-quality volume governs has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because the 0.05S case gives more runoff from the small storms that set those volumes.

3.9 Impervious connectivity

3.9.1 **Classification.** Every impervious surface in the post-development condition shall be classified as directly connected (DCIA) or disconnected, and shown on the drainage plan.

3.9.2 **Preferred representation.** In hydrograph models, DCIA and pervious areas shall be modelled as separate sub-areas (or as the separate impervious and pervious fractions of a SWMM subcatchment), each with its own loss parameters. The runoff from disconnected impervious areas shall be routed onto the receiving pervious area.

3.9.3 **Disconnection criteria.** An impervious area may be classed as disconnected only if all of the following hold:

- (a) its runoff discharges as sheet flow onto a pervious area, without a pipe, channel or kerb;
- (b) the pervious flow path is at least as long as the impervious flow path draining to it;
- (c) the pervious area is not compacted, not HSG D, and is protected from paving by the approved plan; and
- (d) for storms of 12 hours or more, it does not drain to an RWH sump or tank (Clause 3.3.3(c)).

3.9.4 **Composite CN.** Where a single composite CN is used instead of 3.9.2, it shall be computed as:

- for directly connected impervious area: $CNc = CNp + (Pimp / 100)(98 - CNp)$;
- where total impervious area is below 30% and part of it is disconnected: $CNc = CNp + (Pimp / 100)(98 - CNp)(1 - 0.5\,R)$,

where CNp is the pervious CN, Pimp is the percentage of impervious area and R is the ratio of disconnected to total impervious area. The composite CN shall not be used for retention or water quality volumes.

Commentary. The composite equations are from TR-55 (USDA SCS, 1986, Ch. 2, Figures 2-3 and 2-4). This Manual prefers separate representation in 3.9.2 because a composite CN spreads the impervious response over the whole area, which suppresses runoff from small storms. For a site that is 50% directly connected impervious on HSG B open space (CNp 61), 25 mm of rain gives about 9.9 mm of runoff when the two parts are modelled separately, but only about 1.8 mm with the composite CN 79.5. At 200 mm the two methods agree (139.5 mm vs 138.4 mm). *Illustrative — not design values.* The error is largest for the frequent storms that set retention and water-quality volumes. The disconnection criteria of 3.9.3 are set by this Manual, drawing on common practice in US runoff-reduction manuals. Criterion (d) follows the rule of Clause 3.3.3(c) that RWH sumps are full at the start of SW monsoon storms.

3.10 Groundwater, high water table and tank backwater

3.10.1 **High water table (dual HSG).** Where the seasonal high groundwater table is within 0.6 m of the ground surface, the soil shall be assigned HSG D for both the pre- and post-development runs, whatever its texture, unless it is permanently drained by works that are maintained under Chapter 10. This rule applies in every case to storms of 12 hours or more, which are run at AMC III (Clause 2.11.4).

3.10.2 **Water-table data.** The seasonal high water table shall be taken as the highest level recorded in the SW monsoon season (June–September), from site piezometers or trial pits, or from the nearest Central Ground Water Board (CGWB) or Minor Water Resources Department observation well, adjusted for ground level.

3.10.3 **Infiltration-based losses.** Where Green–Ampt, Horton or soil-moisture-accounting losses are used instead of SCS-CN, the cumulative infiltration in any storm shall not exceed the storage available in the soil above the seasonal high water table.

3.10.4 **Tank and waterbody backwater.** Where a site or sub-catchment drains to a tank, pokhar, marsh or other waterbody:

- (a) the water level in the receiving waterbody shall be applied as the downstream boundary of the model, per Chapter 5 and Chapter 7;
- (b) land below the level of the receiving waterbody in the design event (including the tank foreshore below FTL) shall be modelled as water surface or storage, with no losses; and
- (c) where the outfall is submerged by the waterbody level, the routing shall use the dynamic-wave method of Clause 3.12.4.

Commentary. The dual-group rule follows NEH Part 630, Ch. 7 (USDA NRCS, 2009), which places wet soils with a water table within 60 cm (24 in) of the surface in group D in their undrained state, with a dual group (A/D, B/D, C/D) where drainage is feasible. This Manual applies the undrained group to long storms because over most of Bihar the water table stands close to the surface in the SW monsoon, and whatever infiltration capacity the soil has in the dry season is gone when a July–September design storm arrives. On the north Bihar plain the water table before the monsoon is about 1.5–5.7 m below ground: 1.90–3.85 m in Supaul, 2.22–5.72 m in Saharsa and 2.5–3.9 m in Sitamarhi, rising to 1.84–3.0 m, 1.2–4.6 m and 1.5–2.68 m after the monsoon, and in Supaul the water table was seen "exposed in a small pit of hardly 1.5 m deep during November" (CGWB district profiles of 2011, from search summaries [TBC]). Across the State before the monsoon of 2013-14 the depth to water was 0.44–13.0 m, with 47% of wells at 2–5 m, mostly in north Bihar (CGWB year book, from a search summary [TBC]). The diara and the chaurs are wetter still. The rivers rise over or beside the diara every monsoon, and the chaurs and tals hold water at the surface through the season: the Kabartal wetland complex in Begusarai, 2,620 ha, is inundated in the monsoon to a depth of up to 1.5 m (Ramsar Information Sheet), and about 1,062 km² of the Mokama group of tals is waterlogged by excess rain (NIH, from a search summary [TBC]). The south Bihar plain is the less wet case, with a deeper water table south of Patna, but no current depths for Patna or its peri-urban blocks were obtained [TBC]. Groundwater is not scarce over most of the State: in the 2024 assessment 473 of its 535 assessment units were safe, 49 semi-critical, 9 critical and 4 over-exploited (CGWB, from a search summary [TBC]). No monsoon water-table depths for individual sites, and no map of the water table of the diara, the chaurs and the tals, were obtained [TBC]; Annex 3A is to supply them. Clause 3.10.4 reflects the State's receiving waters, which are rivers held between embankments or standing above the cities' outfalls for days, with chaurs and tals behind them. Patna is ringed by the Ganga on the north, the Sone on the west and the Punpun on the south; when the rivers are high its sluices are closed and its drains are pumped (as reported). The Punpun at Sripalpur reached 53.91 m in 1976, 3.31 m above its danger level of 50.60 m, and the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat 50.52 m in 2016, 1.92 m above its danger level of 48.60 m (CWC, Lower Ganga Division-2 bulletin of 31 October 2026; datum to be confirmed [TBC]). Press reports put the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat at 50.53–50.57 m on 5–6 September 2026, above

> that record, while the CWC bulletin of 31 October 2026 still lists 50.52 m (2016) as the highest level; the conflict is not resolved [TBC]. At Muzaffarpur the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur reached 54.29 m in 1987, 1.76 m above its danger level of 52.53 m (CWC).

3.11 Unit hydrographs and runoff transformation

3.11.1 **Permitted transforms.**

- (a) SCS (NRCS) dimensionless unit hydrograph, curvilinear or triangular, for catchments below 25 km² and for any sub-area of a larger model;
- (b) the SWMM non-linear reservoir with kinematic overland flow;
- (c) Clark or ModClark unit hydrograph in HEC-HMS, where parameters are calibrated under Clause 3.15; and
- (d) the CWC synthetic unit hydrograph, for 25–5,000 km² (Clause 3.11.4).

3.11.2 **SCS unit hydrograph.** The peak and time to peak of the unit hydrograph shall be:

> qp = PRF' · A · Q / tp, with PRF' = 0.208 (SI form of the standard peak rate factor 484) tp = Δt / 2 + tL, tL = 0.6 Tc

where qp is the peak flow (m³/s); A is the area (km²); Q is the runoff depth (mm), equal to 1 mm for the unit hydrograph; tp is the time to peak (h); and Δt is the computation interval (h).

3.11.3 **Computation interval and sub-areas.**

- (a) Δt shall not exceed 0.133 Tc of the smallest sub-area, nor the hyetograph time step of Clause 2.9.1.
- (b) Sub-areas shall be reasonably uniform in HSG, land cover and slope. Pervious and directly connected impervious areas shall be separate sub-areas, per Clause 3.9.2.

3.11.4 **CWC synthetic unit hydrograph.** For catchments of 25–5,000 km² in CWC subzone 1(d) (Sone), 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains) or 1(g) (Lower Ganga Plains):

- (a) the SUH parameters, design storm duration, loss rate, base flow, areal reduction and time distribution shall be taken from the applicable CWC Flood Estimation Report, using the catchment's physiographic parameters measured from survey or a DEM;
- (b) the 24-hour design rainfall shall follow Clause 2.3.3(b) and Clause 2.7.3, and the climate factor of Clause 2.8 shall be applied;
- (c) the SUH result shall be reported alongside the HEC-HMS or SWMM result for the existing natural condition; and
- (d) where the hydrograph model gives a lower 1% AEP peak than the CWC SUH, the designer shall either justify the model by calibration under Clause 3.15 or adopt the CWC SUH peak.

3.11.5 **Peak rate factor for flat coastal land.** The standard factor (484; PRF' = 0.208) is the default. A lower factor may be used only:

- (a) for unchannelled, flat coastal-plain land without piped or lined drainage;
- (b) in the same way in both the pre- and post-development runs for any land that stays unchannelled; and
- (c) after the authority adopts calibrated values in Annex 3D.

Land drained by pipes, lined drains or kerbs in the post-development condition shall use the standard factor.

> **Commentary.** The SCS unit hydrograph, the 0.6 lag ratio and the 0.133 Tc interval are from NEH Part 630, Ch. 16 (USDA NRCS, 2007). The interval follows from the unit hydrograph geometry: with tp = Δt/2 + 0.6 Tc and Tc + Δt = 1.7 tp, Δt = 0.133 Tc. The SI constant 0.208 is the direct conversion of 484 (cfs, mi², in, h). APWA uses the SCS dimensionless unit hydrograph as its basis (2011, §5602.5). The CWC Flood Estimation Reports give regression equations for SUH parameters, a design storm duration, a constant loss rate and ARF and time-distribution curves for each subzone (CWC 1985, 1987 and 1994; see Chapter 2). They were derived from natural, mostly rural catchments with data that predate the reports of 1985 to 1994, so they represent pre-development conditions, not urbanised ones. That is why the SUH is used as a benchmark rather than as the post-development model. Clause 3.11.4(d) mirrors the floor principle of Clause 2.3.3. HEC-HMS has been calibrated against CWC subzone SUH responses in Indian studies, which shows the two can be linked.
>
> The lower-factor option of 3.11.5 is based on the NRCS Delmarva unit hydrograph, which uses a peak rate factor of 284 (PRF' ≈ 0.122) for flat, poorly channelled coastal-plain catchments on the Delmarva Peninsula (Welle et al., 1980, as adopted by NRCS; New Jersey Department of Agriculture, Delmarva bulletin, which uses 285). A lower factor gives a lower, later peak. Used only in the pre-development run, it would lower Q_pre and make the release cap stricter; used in a piped post-development run, it would understate Q_post. Clause 3.11.5(b) prevents both biases.

3.12 Routing

3.12.1 **Storage routing.** Routing through detention and retention facilities, tanks, ponds and any storage behind embankments shall use level-pool (modified Puls, storage-indication) routing with:

- (a) a stage–storage relationship from the design grading or survey;
- (b) a stage–discharge relationship for every outlet (orifices, weirs, surplus weirs, pumps), including the minimum orifice and trash screen of Chapter 4; and
- (c) the tailwater boundary of Chapter 5, where the tailwater affects the outlet rating.

3.12.2 **Channel routing.** Routing through channels and drains shall use the Muskingum–Cunge method, or the Muskingum method with parameters K and X that are derived from channel geometry or calibration. For the Muskingum method, the routing interval Δt shall satisfy $2KX \le \Delta t \le 2K(1 - X)$.

3.12.3 **Incidental storage.** Storage behind road embankments, culverts or boundary walls that is not part of an approved facility shall not be counted in the design unless the authority is satisfied that it will be maintained for the design life.

3.12.4 **Dynamic-wave routing.** Dynamic-wave (full Saint-Venant) routing, in SWMM or HEC-RAS unsteady flow, shall be used where:

- (a) the outfall is under tidal, river or tank backwater (Chapter 5, Clause 3.10.4);
- (b) flow can reverse, or the network has loops or overflow links; or
- (c) the network surcharges in the design event and the hydraulic grade line sets the design.

3.12.5 **Tank cascades.** Tanks in a cascade shall each be routed by Clause 3.12.1, with the surplus weir and sluice ratings and the documented operating rule of Chapter 7. The starting water level in each tank shall be FTL unless continuous simulation (Clause 3.13) supports a lower level.

> **Commentary.** Modified Puls routing for storage and Muskingum–Cunge for channels are the APWA requirements (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.8). APWA also excludes "incidental detention" behind embankments unless it will be maintained, which 3.12.3 adopts. CPHEEO's detention procedure uses the same three inputs as 3.12.1: an inflow hydrograph, a stage–storage curve and a stage–discharge curve (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §8.5.3). The

> Muskingum stability limits are standard (Chow, Maidment and Mays, 1988, §8.4). This Manual starts pokhars, chaurs and tals at FTL in 3.12.5 because Bihar's heaviest rain falls in the middle and late monsoon, on water bodies that have taken the earlier rains and are not drawn down for drainage. About 86% of the State's annual rainfall falls in June–September, and July and August bring about 28% and 24% of it (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*, 2011); the normals at Patna are 304.9 mm in July and 238.0 mm in August, and at Muzaffarpur 323.8 mm and 296.1 mm (1951–2000). The stations' all-time 24-hour records fall in all four monsoon months and in early October, among them 273.5 mm at Patna (A) on 20 September 1967, 520.0 mm at Motihari on 25 August 2005, 436.0 mm at Muzaffarpur on 26 September 2007 and 458.2 mm at Buchaha (Muzaffarpur district) on 4 October 1961 (IMD), and September brings more of the storms and depressions that affect Bihar than any other month, 43 of 113 in 1891–2010 (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*). No pokhar, chaur or tal in the State was found to have a documented operating rule or a record of water levels [TBC], and the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign restores ponds and ahars to hold water, not to be emptied before a storm. Pokhars, chaurs and tals should therefore be assumed full from July and modelled below FTL only where a continuous simulation under Clause 3.13 or a notified operating rule supports it. The window of 1 July to 15 October in Clause 3.13.5(a) is set by this Manual. It starts after the monsoon normally covers the whole State, by about 20 June (new normal onset 13 June at Purnea, 16 June at Patna and Gaya and 18 June at Chhapra; IMD, Pai et al., 2020), because the dry days of June in the south-west, where the June normals are 96.6 mm in Buxar and 116.4 mm in Patna district, would lower the starting level; in the north-east June is already wet (374.7 mm in Kishanganj and 277.3 mm in Purnea district), so the pokhars and chaurs there are likely to be fuller still by July. It ends on 15 October, the date to which WRD runs its daily flood bulletin and to which this Manual keeps pumps and sluices on standby, because withdrawal normally completes on 6–10 October (IMD, Pai et al., 2020), came on 13 October in 2025 (as reported), and heavy storms have fallen in early October, such as 458.2 mm at Buchaha on 4 October 1961 and 374.0 mm at Shekhpura on 3 October 1961 (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*).

3.13 Continuous simulation

3.13.1 **When required.** Continuous simulation shall be carried out, in addition to the design-storm analysis, for:

- (a) regional facilities draining more than 25 km²; and
- (b) any system that includes a tank cascade whose storage is counted in the design (Chapter 7).

The authority may also require it for any facility where the starting storage level governs the design.

3.13.2 **Rainfall input.**

- (a) The longest available hourly record from IMD or another approved recording gauge representative of the catchment shall be used.
- (b) Where hourly data are shorter than 30 years, the record shall be extended with the IMD 0.25° gridded daily data. The full gridded record (1901 to present) should be used; at least the most recent 30 years shall be. The daily data shall be disaggregated to hourly by a method stated in the submittal and checked against the hourly gauge for the overlapping years. Grid values shall be converted to point values under Clause 2.7.1 where applicable.
- (c) A future-climate run shall scale the record by the climate factors of Clause 2.8.

3.13.3 **Model content.** The model shall include soil-moisture accounting with evaporation (IMD pan evaporation or equivalent), groundwater or base flow, tank storage with operating rules and irrigation withdrawals, and the tailwater series of Chapter 5 (predicted tides plus a surge allowance for coastal outfalls).

3.13.4 **Use of results.** Annual maxima of water level, storage and volume, and the duration of outfall closure, shall be extracted and fitted by frequency analysis. Results shall be compared with the design-storm results. The more severe result at each AEP governs. Peak flows in drains and channels with a response time of less than one day shall be taken

from the design-storm analysis where the continuous record was disaggregated from daily data, because the disaggregated hourly peaks are synthetic.

3.13.5 **Two-step approach.** The continuous simulation need not use the full hydraulic model. It may use a simplified hydrologic and storage model, at a daily or hourly step, that represents the soil moisture, groundwater, tank storage, operating rules and tailwater of 3.13.3. Its results shall then be passed to the design-storm runs of the full hydraulic model as:

- (a) the **starting level of each tank**, taken as the level exceeded on 10% of the days from 1 July to 15 October over the record; and
- (b) the **antecedent soil-moisture condition**, taken from the same days and compared with the AMC rule of Clause 3.8.

The designer shall show that the simplified model reproduces the water balance of the full model for at least one recorded event.

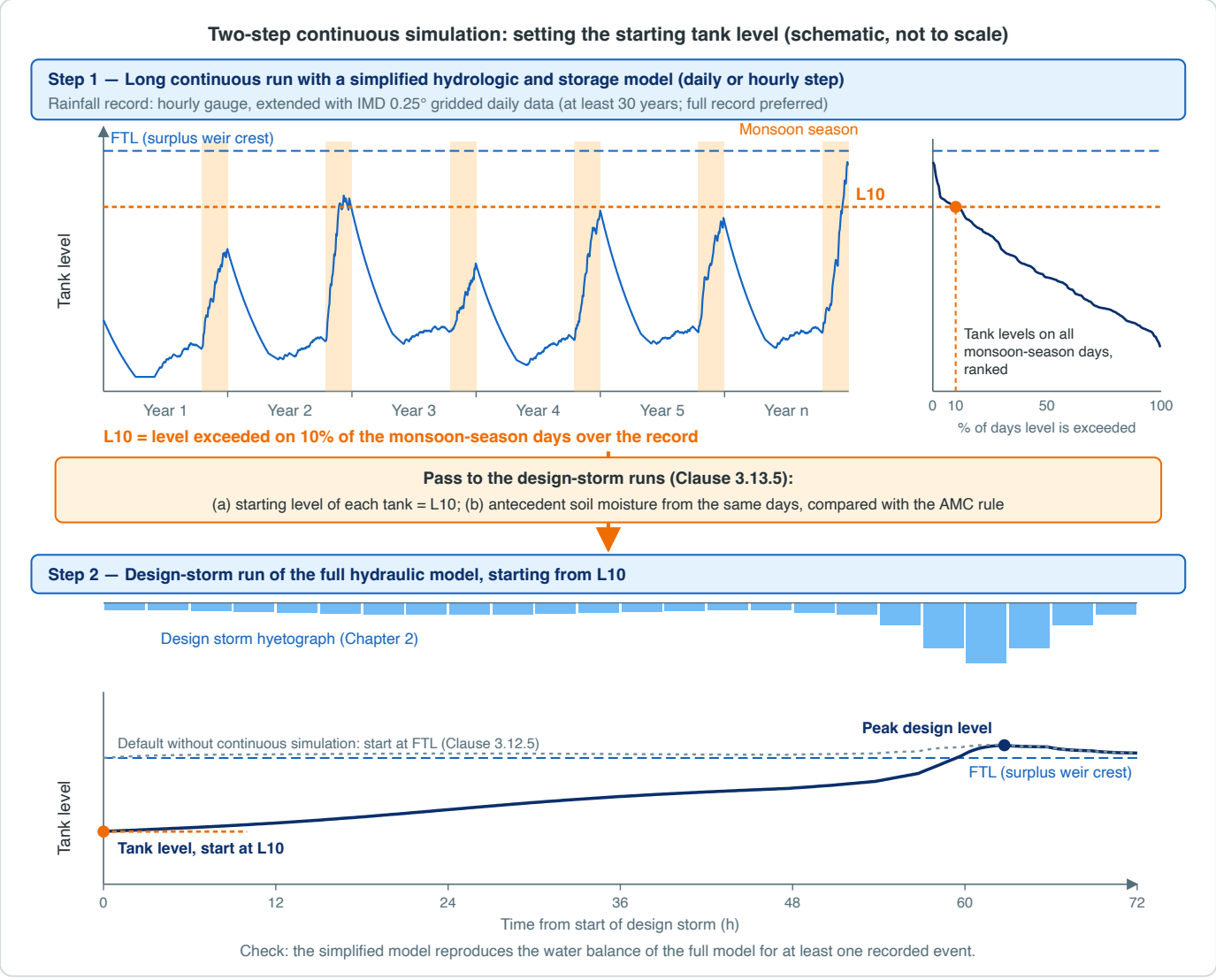


Figure 3.4 — Two-step approach of Clause 3.13.5. Step 1: a long continuous run with a simplified hydrologic and storage model gives the tank level exceeded on 10% of the days from 1 July to 15 October (L10). Step 2: the design storms are run in the full hydraulic model from that starting level, in place of the default start at FTL of Clause 3.12.5. Schematic, not real data. Original drawing for this Manual, illustrating the two-step approach set by this Manual in Clause 3.13.5.

Commentary. Design storms assume one starting condition, but in a tank cascade the governing variable is how full the tanks are when the storm arrives, which depends on the weeks of rain before it. An Australian study of 20 real on-site detention systems found that designs based on one temporal pattern, or even an ensemble of ten, "cannot reliably produce an OSD system design that will always be effective" under real rainfall, and continuous simulation showed frequent-event peaks exceeding pre-development levels (Water Science and Engineering, 2019). The 30-year minimum in 3.13.2(b) matches the station IDF rule of Clause 2.3.2; a longer record is better, and the IMD gridded daily record, which starts in 1901, is the practical long series for Bihar. The record length matters less than what the simulation is for. Its main purpose here is to find how full the tanks and soils usually are when a south-west monsoon storm arrives, and how often heavy rain coincides with a closed outfall. A design storm cannot answer either question, because it starts from one assumed condition. It is not intended to replace design storms for the peak flow in urban drains. Clause 3.13.5 therefore allows the long run to be made with a simple storage model, which takes minutes, and passes the starting tank levels to the detailed hydraulic model, which is then run only for the design storms. Running a detailed 1D–2D city model continuously for decades is rarely practical and is not required. The 10% exceedance level in 3.13.5(a) is set by this Manual: it represents a wet but not exceptional monsoon, so that the design storm arrives on tanks that are already well filled, as they were in July 1987 at Patna, when 800.7 mm fell in the month and 250.8 mm on the 28th, and August 2005 at Motihari, when 953.2 mm fell in the month and 520.0 mm on the 25th (IMD).

3.14 Pre- vs post-development comparison procedure

3.14.1 The comparison required by Clause 2.11 and Chapter 4 shall be carried out by the following steps. The results shall be recorded on Form 3-2.

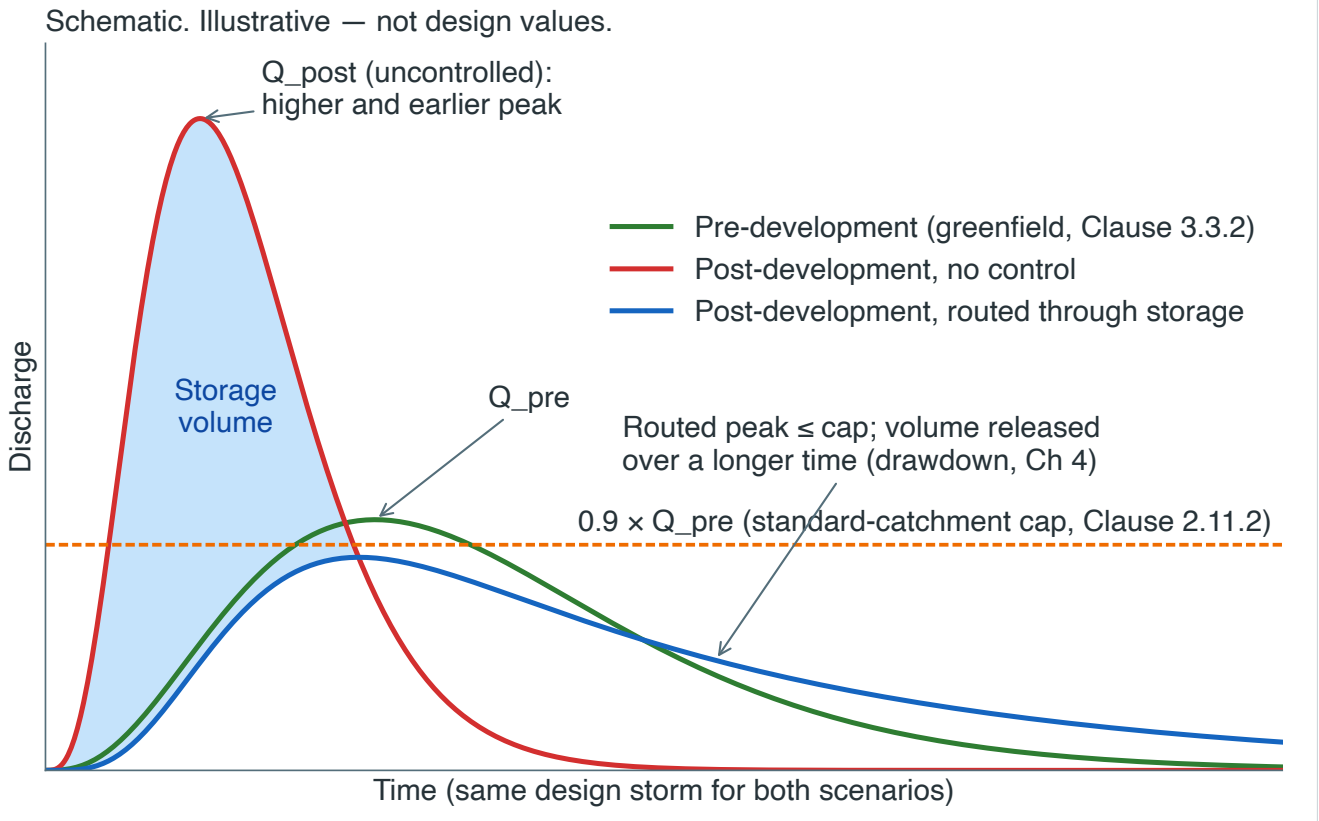


Figure 3.5 — Pre-development, uncontrolled post-development and routed post-development hydrographs for the same design storm. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the pre- vs post-development detention concept in CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A §8.5, 2019, and KC Metro APWA Section 5600, 2025.01. Schematic. Illustrative — not design values.

3.14.2 **Step 1 — Define the site, catchments and points of comparison.**

- (a) Delineate the site and every area that drains to it, from survey.
- (b) Identify each POC where runoff leaves the site. Each POC shall be tested separately. Runoff shall not be diverted from one natural catchment to another to meet the criterion.
- (c) Model off-site run-on identically in both runs, at its existing condition (Clause 3.3.5(b)). Where it passes through the site's storage, the criterion applies to the total outflow at the POC.

3.14.3 **Step 2 — Soils.** Map HSG (Clause 3.7), apply the high-water-table rule (Clause 3.10.1) and record the infiltration tests.

3.14.4 **Step 3 — Pre-development model.** Build the pre-development model per Clause 3.3.2: greenfield CN (Table 3.5), Tc (Clause 3.6, with n = 0.15), and existing waterbodies and channels. Compute CN at AMC II and AMC III.

3.14.5 **Step 4 — Post-development model.** Build the post-development model per Clause 3.3.3: measured impervious areas, connectivity (Clause 3.9), disturbed-soil HSG, CN, Tc, and the proposed retention, detention and outlets as storage (Clause 3.12.1).

3.14.6 **Step 5 — Design storms.** From Chapter 2, prepare for each required AEP (50%, 10% and 1%; 2-, 10- and 100-yr) and each duration in {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}:

- the depth with the climate factor (Clause 2.8), ARF = 1.0 for the site (Clause 2.7.4);
- the hyetograph (Clause 2.9); and
- the AMC (Clause 2.11.4).

The same storms shall be used in both runs (Clause 2.11.1).

3.14.7 **Step 6 — Run the pre-development model** for every storm and tabulate $Q_{pre}(T, d)$. For flood-sensitive catchments, identify the largest 10% AEP pre-development peak over all durations; that value is the cap of Clause 2.11.3.

3.14.8 **Step 7 — Run the post-development model without controls** and tabulate $Q_{post}(T, d)$ and runoff volumes. This shows the size of the problem and is reported, not tested.

3.14.9 **Step 8 — Add retention and detention.**

- (a) Represent the retention volume of Chapter 4 as storage that is lost to infiltration or reuse (not released to the POC) within the period verified under Chapter 4.
- (b) Route the remaining hydrograph through the detention storage and outlets (Clause 3.12.1).
- (c) Apply the tailwater of Chapter 5, including the joint cases of Clause 2.12, where the outfall is tidal or under backwater.
- (d) Adjust storage and outlets until Step 9 is met.

3.14.10 **Step 9 — Test the criterion** at each POC, for every AEP and every duration:

- (a) standard catchments: $Q_{post}(T) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T)$ for the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP (Clause 2.11.2);
- (b) flood-sensitive catchments: Q_{post}(1% AEP) ≤ Q_{pre}(10% AEP), and Q_{post}(50% AEP) ≤ Q_{pre}(50% AEP) (Clause 2.11.3).

The governing duration for storage is the one that needs the largest storage or gives the highest water level; the 24, 48 and 72 h runs are always reported (Clause 2.5.2).

3.14.11 **Step 10 — Sensitivity runs.** Repeat Steps 6–9 for the governing storms with Ia = 0.05S (Clause 3.8.5) and, where a lower peak rate factor is used, with the standard factor (Clause 3.11.5). Report the change in peaks and required storage.

3.14.12 **Step 11 — Associated checks.** Using the final routed model, check the drawdown times, minimum orifice and emergency spillway of Chapter 4, the outfall-closed storage check of Chapter 5, and the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.

3.14.13 **Step 12 — Document** the results on Forms 3-1 and 3-2 (Clause 3.17).

> Commentary. The step sequence follows the standard event-based workflow: delineate; set pre-development CN and Tc; set post-development CN and shorter Tc; run identical storms through a unit hydrograph or kinematic model; compare peaks and volumes; and size storage by modified Puls routing. It adds the Bihar elements: the 48–72 h storms, AMC III, and tailwater. Figure 3.5 shows why the long-duration runs matter: the routed peak can meet the cap while the storage holds the volume difference between the post- and pre-development hydrographs, which must then drain within the Chapter 4 limits. The ban on diverting runoff between catchments in 3.14.2(b) stops a site meeting the rule at one POC by moving flow to a neighbour's drain.

3.15 Model calibration and validation

3.15.1 **When required.** Calibration and validation are required for:

- (a) catchment models of 25 km² or more;
- (b) regional facilities and continuous simulation under Clause 3.13;
- (c) city or basin drainage master plans; and
- (d) any model whose parameters differ from the defaults of this chapter (for example a Clark transform or a lower peak rate factor).

3.15.2 **Data.** Calibration shall use observed rainfall (gauges, and radar where available) and observed flows or water levels (WRD gauging sites, PMC or BSDMA level sensors, tank gauges, or surveyed flood marks).

3.15.3 **Events.** At least three independent events shall be used for calibration and at least one further event for validation. At least one event shall be a long-duration SW monsoon or cyclone event (for example the Patna rains of 26–29 September 2019 (about 211–226 mm in four days, as reported), the Patna storm of 29 July 2025 (175.4 mm in 24 hours, as reported), the Muzaffarpur storm of 26 September 2007 (436.0 mm in 24 hours, IMD), or the north Bihar floods of August 2017, where data exist).

3.15.4 **Performance.** The submittal shall report, for each event, the observed and modelled peak, volume and time to peak, and for continuous models the Nash–Sutcliffe efficiency (NSE) and percent bias. As a guide, a calibrated model should reproduce event peaks and volumes within ±25%, and a continuous model should achieve NSE ≥ 0.5 and percent bias within ±25%.

3.15.5 **Limits on calibration.** Calibration shall not be used to justify design flows lower than those given by the default methods of this chapter, unless site-specific factors are thoroughly examined and documented and the authority agrees.

3.15.6 **Reasonableness check.** Design peak flows shall be plotted as discharge per unit area against catchment area and compared with the CWC SUH results, regional gauged estimates and known historical floods.

> **Commentary.** Clauses 3.15.5 and 3.15.6 follow APWA, which states that "model calibration shall not be used to justify discharge estimates that are lower than those provided by the baseline unit hydrograph method" and requires unit discharges to be plotted against tributary area and compared with regression, gauge and historical values (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.9). The event-count and performance values in 3.15.3 and 3.15.4 are set by this Manual. The NSE ≥ 0.5 and ±25% bias thresholds are the "satisfactory" streamflow ratings of Moriasi et al. (2007), which were developed for monthly continuous simulation; their use for event peaks and volumes here is an extension.

3.16 Software acceptance

3.16.1 **Accepted software.** The following are accepted without further demonstration, in a version current at the time of submittal:

- (a) EPA Storm Water Management Model (SWMM 5.x);
- (b) USACE HEC-HMS and HEC-RAS;
- (c) USDA NRCS WinTR-55 and WinTR-20; and
- (d) spreadsheets for the Rational Method and single-area SCS-CN calculations, where every formula and input is shown.

3.16.2 **Other software.** Commercial packages built on the SWMM or HEC engines are accepted if the engine and version are stated. Any other method or software is accepted only if the designer reports, for every sub-area, the peak flow, lag, runoff volume and equivalent CN from both that method and a baseline method of 3.16.1, identifies every difference greater than 5%, and justifies every difference that gives a less conservative result.

3.16.3 **Benchmark problems.** The authority shall publish benchmark test problems (Annex 3C). Software not listed in 3.16.1 shall reproduce them within the stated tolerance.

3.16.4 **Model files.** Native model input and output files shall be submitted with every hydrograph-based design.

> **Commentary.** The 5% equivalence test is the APWA rule for alternative methods (KC Metro APWA 5600, 2011, §5602.2D). APWA names TR-55, TR-20, HEC-1 and HEC-HMS as baseline methods (§5602.2B). CPHEEO names SWMM for hydrograph and continuous modelling (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §4.4.2). Submitting native model files lets the authority rerun the model and is the main safeguard against unreviewable black-box results.

3.17 Documentation

Every hydrologic submittal shall include:

1. **Form 3-1, Hydrologic Calculation Summary**, stating the method used and why (Table 3.1), the software and version, and the computation interval.
2. **Catchment maps** for the pre- and post-development conditions, showing sub-areas, flow paths used for Tc, POCs, and off-site run-on.
3. **Soils:** the HSG map and its source and scale (Clause 3.7), water-table data (Clause 3.10), and infiltration test results.
4. **Parameter tables** for each sub-area and condition: area, impervious area by type and connectivity, HSG, CN at AMC II and III (or C and Cf), Tc worksheets, and n values.
5. **Rainfall:** the Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) and the hyetographs used.

6. **Results:** hydrograph tables and plots for each storm; stage–storage and stage–discharge tables; routed outflows; and peak water levels.
7. **Form 3-2, Pre- vs Post-Development Comparison**, with Q_pre, Q_post (uncontrolled and routed) and the criterion for each POC, AEP and duration, and the sensitivity runs of Clause 3.14.11.
8. **Calibration report**, where Clause 3.15 applies.
9. **Model files** (Clause 3.16.4).
10. **A statement by the responsible engineer** that the methods and parameters of this chapter have been used, with any departures listed and justified.

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Volume I, Part A: Engineering Design. Ministry of Housing and Urban Affairs, New Delhi. §4.4 (Rational Method, Table 4.2 runoff coefficients, time of concentration, partial area effect), §8.5 (detention).
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2011). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (Feb 16, 2011), §5602.2–5602.9.
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01, §5603.4. https://kcmetro.apwa.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/23/2026/01/APWA-Section-5600_Storm-Drainage-Systems-Facilities.pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement (Policy Supplement). https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- USDA Soil Conservation Service (1986). Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, Technical Release 55 (TR-55), 2nd ed. Tables 2-2a, 2-2c, 3-1; Figures 2-3, 2-4, 3-1.
- USDA NRCS. National Engineering Handbook, Part 630 Hydrology: Ch. 7 Hydrologic Soil Groups (2009); Ch. 9 Hydrologic Soil-Cover Complexes; Ch. 10 Estimation of Direct Runoff from Storm Rainfall (2004); Ch. 15 Time of Concentration (2010); Ch. 16 Hydrographs (2007). https://directives.nrcs.usda.gov/
- Hawkins, R.H., Jiang, R., Woodward, D.E., Hjelmfelt, A.T. and Van Mullem, J.A. (2002). Runoff curve number method: examination of the initial abstraction ratio. Proc. Second Federal Interagency Hydrologic Modeling Conference, Las Vegas.
- Woodward, D.E., Hawkins, R.H., Jiang, R., Hjelmfelt, A.T., Van Mullem, J.A. and Quan, Q.D. (2003). Runoff curve number method: examination of the initial abstraction ratio. World Water & Environmental Resources Congress, ASCE.
- Welle, P.I., Woodward, D.E. and Moody, H.F. (1980). A dimensionless unit hydrograph for the Delmarva Peninsula. American Society of Agricultural Engineers paper. See also New Jersey Department of Agriculture, Delmarva Unit Hydrograph bulletin. https://nj.gov/agriculture/divisions/anr/pdf/DelmarvaBulletin.pdf
- Chow, V.T., Maidment, D.R. and Mays, L.W. (1988). Applied Hydrology. McGraw-Hill. §5.5 (SCS method, AMC), §8.4 (Muskingum), Table 15.1.2 (Kirpich).
- Kirpich, Z.P. (1940). Time of concentration of small agricultural watersheds. Civil Engineering 10(6), 362.
- Merkel, W.H. (2001), as cited in USDA NRCS NEH Part 630, Ch. 15 (2010), on the length of sheet flow.
- ASCE and WPCF (1969). Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers. ASCE Manual of Practice No. 37.
- Texas Department of Transportation. Hydraulic Design Manual, Ch. 4, §12 Runoff Coefficients. https://www.txdot.gov/manuals/des/hyd/chapter-4--hydrology/section-12--rational-method/runoff-coefficients.html
- Central Water Commission (1985). Flood Estimation Report for Middle Ganga Plains Subzone 1(f). Design Office Report No. GP/10/1984, October 1985, approved at the 41st meeting of the Flood Estimation Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 30 January 1985. https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report (read from the Internet Archive copy; the unit hydrograph relationships, the rainfall-ratio table and the Bihar portion of Plates 8 and 9 checked against the page images; the worked example for Railway Bridge No. 152 on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli section re-read; the list of Bihar bridge catchments read by optical character recognition only [TBC])
- Central Water Commission (1987). Flood Estimation Report for Sone Subzone 1(d). Design Office Report No. S/15/1987, CWC Publication No. 33/88, August 1987, discussed and approved at the 46th meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee, 27–28 August 1987, CWC (Sewa Bhawan), New Delhi. https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report (read from the Internet Archive copy of 12 April 2016, file "Sone subzone 1(d)"; the relationship table (p. 40), the rainfall-ratio table (p. 50) and Plates 8–10 checked against the page images, the rest by optical character recognition)
- Central Water Commission (1994). Flood Estimation Report for Lower Ganga Plains Subzone 1(g) (revised). Design Office Report No. LG-1(g)/R-1/23/94, November 1994, approved at the 52nd meeting of the Committee, RDSO, Lucknow. https://cwc.gov.in/regional-flood-estimation-report (read from the Internet Archive copy; the Bihar annexures (pp. 52–53) and the Bihar portion of Plate 9 checked against the page images)

- Moriasi, D.N. et al. (2007). Model evaluation guidelines for systematic quantification of accuracy in watershed simulations. Trans. ASABE 50(3), 885–900.
- "OSD for Australian development projects: does it meet frequent flow management objectives?" Water Science and Engineering (2019). https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1674237019300213
- India Meteorological Department (2011). *Climate of Bihar*. Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18, November 2011 (district normals 1951–2000, Table V; storms and depressions, Table VII; heaviest 24-hour rainfall by district). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/patna/mcdata/climateofbihar.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012) (Bihar stations, pp. M32–M38). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2020). New normal dates of onset/progress and withdrawal of the southwest monsoon (Pai et al.), press release of 15 May 2020, Table 2. https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20200515_pr_804.pdf
- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin, 31 October 2026 (warning, danger and highest flood levels; read from the page images), via the Flood Management Improvement Support Centre, WRD. https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar, Flood Management Improvement Support Centre. Daily Flood Information Bulletin, 31 October 2026, and home page (bulletin period 15 June to 15 October). https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/Flood%20Bulletin.pdf ; https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/
- Reports on the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, on 5–6 September 2026 (ThePrint, PTI; DT Next). https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/ ; https://www.dtnext.in/news/national/bihar-downstream-areas-on-alert-as-ganga-water-level-rises-in-patna-19-lakh-affected-by-floods
- Central Ground Water Board. District ground water profiles of Supaul, Saharsa, Katihar and Sitamarhi (2011), and Ground Water Year Book, Bihar, 2013-14 (cited from search summaries; the CGWB sites could not be reached) [TBC].
- Central Ground Water Board. Dynamic ground water resources of Bihar, 2024 assessment (cited from a search summary). https://www.cgwb.gov.in/cgwbpnm/public/uploads/documents/17435848198417103 60file.pdf
- Ramsar Convention. Ramsar Information Sheet, Kabartal Wetland (site 2436). https://rsis.ramsar.org/RISapp/files/RISrep/IN2436RIS_2010_en.pdf
- National Institute of Hydrology. Waterlogged area mapping and hydrological data analysis of the Mokama tal area, research report (cited from a summary). https://www.indiawaterportal.org/articles/waterlogged-area-mapping-and-hydrological-data-analysis-mokama-tal-area-research-report
- Government of Bihar. Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (components and progress). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/jaljivan.aspx
- Studies using hydrologic soil groups in Bihar: an ICAR paper with a Bihar Agricultural University co-author assigning curve numbers by HSG and land use (*Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*), and an HEC-HMS study of the Burhi Gandak to Samastipur (thesis, Dr Rajendra Prasad Central Agricultural University, Pusa) (both cited from search summaries; not read) [TBC]. https://epubs.icar.org.in/index.php/IJAgS/article/download/143427/54537/412951
- Reports on the Patna waterlogging of 26–30 September 2019 (Hindustan Times, analysis of IMD data; CBS News, AFP). https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-lucknow/20191001/281797105729423 ; https://www.cbsnews.com/news/monsoon-season-flooding-india-heavy-late-rains-kills-more-than-100-in-several-days-2019-09-30
- Report on the Patna rain of 29 July 2025 (Patrika). https://www.patrika.com/en/state-news/patna-breaks-28-year-old-rainfall-record-city-inundated-19820889
- US EPA. Storm Water Management Model (SWMM 5). US Army Corps of Engineers, Hydrologic Engineering Center. HEC-HMS and HEC-RAS.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
3A	Bihar soil series to HSG lookup; seasonal high water table map
3B	Bihar CN calibration and supplementary land covers (diara land, chaur and tal beds, Kosi sands, ahar beds, hill forest and scrub, plateau rock)
3C	Benchmark test problems for software acceptance
3D	Peak rate factor study for flat coastal land
3E	CWC SUH parameters for subzones 1(d), 1(f) and 1(g), with worked example
Form 3-1	Hydrologic Calculation Summary
Form 3-2	Pre- vs Post-Development Comparison

CHAPTER 4

Site Runoff Control: Retention and Detention

4.1 Purpose and scope

4.1.1 This chapter sets the performance standard that every regulated development shall meet for runoff leaving the site. It covers:

- (a) the order in which runoff-control measures are to be applied (Clause 4.3);
- (b) retention of frequent rainfall, and how retained volume is credited against detention (Clause 4.4);
- (c) release-rate criteria for standard and flood-sensitive catchments (Clause 4.5);
- (d) the procedure for sizing detention storage and outlets (Clauses 4.6 to 4.9);
- (e) facility types, rainwater harvesting (RWH) accounting, and high-groundwater sites (Clauses 4.10 to 4.12);
- (f) regional detention and fee-in-lieu (Clause 4.13);
- (g) simplified methods for small sites: the Tier B tables and the fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14); and
- (h) public safety (Clause 4.15).

4.1.2 This chapter applies to land disturbance of **0.1 ha or more**, or new or replaced impervious area of **500 m² or more**, as set in Chapter 1. Single dwellings below that threshold, and road resurfacing that adds no impervious area, are exempt. The existing RWH mandate of the building rules (rainwater harvesting on plots of all sizes, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof area, under bye-law 51 of the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014; the directions that the Bihar State Ground Water Authority may issue, and the conditions that a Municipal Corporation or other local authority may impose on building plans, for premises of 1,000 m² and more under section 18 of the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act 2006, whose commencement and notified areas were not confirmed [TBC]; and, if it is notified, clause 24 of the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, which would require a complete rainwater harvesting proposal on plots of 100 m² and more; the rules are discussed in the Commentary to Clause 4.11) continues to apply to every building it covers, whether or not this chapter applies.

4.1.3 Rainfall inputs come from Chapter 2. Hydrologic methods come from Chapter 3. Tailwater, downstream analysis and the outfall-closed check come from Chapter 5. Water quality volume (WQv) treatment comes from Chapter 8. Where this chapter and those chapters overlap, the more stringent requirement governs.

> **Commentary.** No Indian national rule or Bihar rule found during research for this Manual limits the rate of discharge from a site, and none requires on-site detention or "zero run-off". The building rules are the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 (BBL 2014), made by UDHD; the English text in use on the building plan approval portal of PMC is dated December 2014, and the official Hindi text gives the notification as UDHD Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014. An amendment reported in the press relaxed the setbacks of commercial buildings (as reported; its number and date were not found [TBC]). The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, posted by UDHD on 5 June 2026, would repeal BBL 2014 "with all its amendments and associated executive orders" when notified (clause 41); it had not been notified as of September 2026 (as reported), and this Manual cites it as a draft only. The drainage provisions of BBL 2014 protect the building, the drain and the tank, not the catchment. No building may be permitted "In areas of natural waterways or drains, as detailed in the Development Plan, and drainage plan" (bye-law 29(A)), over or under a municipal drain (29(D)), or, in areas that flood, where the structural plans do not take that into account (29(G)); no building may be permitted within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank unless the owner satisfies the Authority that domestic drainage will not pass into

it, and the Authority may require the lowest floor to be raised above "the normal maximum flood level of the adjoining ground" (30(B)); land within the curtilage shall, if the Authority requires, "be effectively drained by surface water drains or other means", and connecting a surface-water drain to a sewer needs its written approval (30(D)); at least 5% of the land shall be under tree cover (32); and rainwater harvesting is mandatory on plots of all sizes, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof area (51; Commentary to Clause 4.11). The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 makes the Municipality responsible for drains and "a safe and sufficient outfall" (section 193), lets the Chief Municipal Officer require separate drains for sewage and for rain water (section 198), and allows no premises without a drain of the size and level that the Chief Municipal Officer thinks necessary (section 201); section 219 requires each Municipality to keep a water-supply, drainage and sewerage code, but none was found for any Bihar city [TBC]. The 2026 draft would require site plans to show "normal flood-affected areas" and contours at 0.5 m intervals where the slope is more than 1 in 20 (clause 6), would forbid "All permanent construction within the water body boundary" but set no buffer beyond it and drop the 9 m tank rule (Table 5), and would require a complete rainwater harvesting proposal on plots of 100 m² and more (clause 24). None of these, in force or in draft, sets a design storm, a release rate, a storage volume or an overflow path, and no drainage design standard of UDHD, BUIDCO or PMC stating a return period was found [TBC]. The Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act 2026 lists a "Storm Water Drains NOC" and a revenue NOC "for land near water bodies or nalas" as "Not required" for enterprises (Schedule V), so the requirements of this chapter are best checked within building-plan sanction, as part of the drain section and rainwater harvesting plan that UDHD's guidebook already asks for, rather than as a separate clearance. Basements are already restricted. Bye-law 47(1) provides that basements "shall not be permitted in low lying area and without adequate drainage facilities" and that "Basement shall not be allowed in flood prone areas", and the 2026 draft keeps both (clause 23(12)). BBL 2014 does not define a low-lying or flood-prone area. This Manual proposes that, for bye-law 47(1), the flood-sensitive catchments of Clause 4.5.3.2, any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4, and land in Zone 1 or Zone 2 of Chapter 7 be treated as flood-prone, and it adds its own requirements for every basement that is permitted elsewhere: no detention storage in a habitable basement (Clause 4.10.1), the crest of every basement ramp and the sill of every basement opening at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level, with basement drainage pumped to the surface drain through a non-return valve (Clauses 6.11.1 and 6.11.4), and no basement in Zone 2 (Clause 7.5.2). This chapter is written so that it can supply, as a technical companion to BBL 2014 and to the storm-water drainage schemes of UDHD and BUIDCO, the design storm, release rates and storage volumes that the Byelaws leave open; it has not been adopted for either purpose. In practice many city nalas in Bihar carry sewage: a CAG report on Patna sewerage under Namami Gange records 19 drains of Patna discharging 628.5 MLD to the Ganga and the Punpun (Clause 8.9). Retention and detention apply in full on every site whatever the drain carries: every litre a site releases at the peak of a storm takes up capacity in a drain that is already part-filled with sewage. The CPHEEO (2019) manual describes limiting outflow to the pre-development peak as typical practice, but it uses no "shall" and names no storm frequencies (CPHEEO Part A §8.5.1). This chapter turns that description into a development-control requirement.

4.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Retention	Permanent removal of runoff from the surface drainage system by infiltration, evapotranspiration or reuse, so that the water never reaches the outfall.
Retention depth	The 90th percentile wet-day 24-hour rainfall depth for the site's zone (Clause 2.10, Annex 2E).
Required retention volume (RRV)	The runoff volume from the retention depth over the post-development site (Clause 4.4.2).
Detention	Temporary storage of runoff, released through a controlled outlet at a rate set by Clause 4.5.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Retention credit	The reduction in required detention storage that results from retention practices, determined by routing under Clause 4.4.6. It is **not** the same as the retained volume.
Permissible site discharge (PSD)	The maximum rate at which a site may discharge for a stated AEP, in L/s or L/s/ha.
Site storage requirement (SSR)	The detention storage required per hectare of site under the simplified method of Clause 4.14.
Multi-stage outlet	An outlet structure with separate openings at different levels, each controlling a different AEP (Figure 4.2).
Drawdown time	Time from the peak stored volume until the stated fraction of that volume has been released.
Emergency spillway	A secondary overflow that passes flows above the primary outlet capacity, or all flow when the primary outlet is blocked, without overtopping the embankment.
Freeboard	Vertical distance between the maximum design water level and the embankment crest or other critical level.
Flood-sensitive catchment	A catchment listed in Clause 4.5.3 or notified under Clause 4.5.4.
Authority	The approving authority under Chapter 1 (the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat that grants building or layout permission under the Bihar Municipal Act 2007 and the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014; the Patna Metropolitan Area Authority or another authority under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012, where it grants that permission; or BIADA in its industrial areas [TBC], as applicable).
Tier A / Tier B	Adoption tiers defined in Chapter 1. Tier A: the Patna Municipal Corporation (PMC), every approving authority within the Patna Metropolitan Area under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012, including PMAA where it is the approving authority and the Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats in that area, and every other Nagar Nigam constituted under the Bihar Municipal Act 2007. Tier B: Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats.

4.3 Order of measures

4.3.1 Every site runoff-control design shall apply measures in the following order, and shall document in the submittal why each earlier step could not do more:

1. **Preserve.** Keep existing waterbodies, pokhars, natural drainage lines, wetlands, and permeable soils and vegetation. Avoid fill in flood storage (Chapter 7).
2. **Retain.** Retain the RRV on site by infiltration, reuse or evapotranspiration (Clause 4.4).
3. **Detain.** Detain the remaining runoff so that the release-rate criteria of Clause 4.5 are met for every design storm and duration (Clauses 4.6 to 4.9).
4. **Convey.** Convey the 1% AEP (100-yr) flow safely through the site to the receiving system on a defined overland path (Chapter 6), and check the receiving system downstream (Chapter 5).

4.3.2 Preservation and retention reduce the detention required (Clauses 4.4.6 and 4.4.7). They do not relieve the site of the release-rate criteria of Clause 4.5 or of the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.

> Commentary. This order follows the "layers of stormwater management" adopted in the Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 Version 2025.01: preserve or restore, retain, detain, convey, maintain (MARC factsheet; MARC Supplement, Nov 2025). Maintenance is the fifth layer and is set in Chapter 10. The 2025.01 manual credits retention and natural-area preservation against detention size (MARC Supplement, Nov 2025). Clause 4.4.6 adopts that credit, and defines it so that it cannot be claimed twice.

4.4 Retention

4.4.1 Requirement

The site shall retain the RRV. Retention shall be achieved by one or more of the following:

- infiltration practices (soakaways, infiltration trenches, permeable pavement with an infiltration base, bioretention);
- rainwater reuse that is drawn down by a demonstrated non-potable demand;
- green roofs and landscape areas that do not drain to the outfall in the retention-depth storm.

The limits of Clause 4.4.4 apply.

4.4.2 Computation of the RRV

> RRV (m³) = 10 × Q_R × A

where:

- Q_R (mm) is the runoff depth from the retention depth P_R (Annex 2E). It is computed with the SCS-CN method for the post-development cover of each sub-area, at AMC II, with Ia = 0.2S (Chapter 3); and
- A (ha) is the area of the site that drains to the outfall.

Q_R shall be computed for each sub-area separately and summed. An area-weighted CN shall not be used where impervious and pervious areas differ by more than 20 CN points.

The volumetric method RRV = 10 × P_R × Rv × A, with Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 × I (I = percent impervious), may be used for sites under 0.5 ha and under the Tier B method.

> **Commentary.** The Rv formula is the one used in the KC water quality volume (MARC BMP Manual 2012). It is simple to review for small sites. The SCS-CN form is required for larger sites so that the retention computation uses the same runoff model as the detention routing. That keeps the credit computation of Clause 4.4.6 consistent.

4.4.3 Verification

Retention by infiltration shall be supported by:

- (a) site infiltration tests at the location and depth of each practice, at the frequency set in Chapter 8;
- (b) a design infiltration rate of no more than **half** of the measured rate; and
- (c) groundwater evidence showing the seasonal high groundwater table at least **1.0 m** below the base of the practice (Chapter 8).

Retention by reuse shall be supported by a demand calculation showing that the RRV is drawn down within 72 hours by a continuous non-potable use, such as toilet flushing, cooling or irrigation.

> **Commentary.** The factor of 2 on measured infiltration rate has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it to allow for clogging and for the difference between a test pit and a full-scale practice. Chapter 8 may set a different factor; if

it does, Chapter 8 governs.

4.4.4 Limits on retention

4.4.4.1 Infiltration practices shall not be used:

- where the seasonal high groundwater table is less than 1.0 m below the base (Chapter 8);
- on contaminated land;
- within the setbacks from foundations, wells and septic systems set in Chapter 8; or
- on fill, unless tested after placement.

4.4.4.2 Where the RRV cannot be fully retained, the shortfall shall be stated in the submittal. The shortfall shall be treated as WQv under Chapter 8 and shall get no retention credit.

4.4.5 Drawdown of retention

Retention storage shall be emptied by infiltration or reuse within **72 hours** of the end of the retention-depth storm, verified by the tests of Clause 4.4.3.

4.4.6 Retention credit: definition and computation

4.4.6.1 **What the credit is.** The retention credit is the reduction in required detention storage that results when the retention practices are included in the post-development routing. It is computed. It is not assumed equal to the RRV.

4.4.6.2 **Tier A method (routing).** For each design storm and duration of Clause 4.6.3:

- (a) model each retention practice explicitly as a storage that is **empty at the start of the storm**, unless Clause 4.11 says otherwise;
- (b) let the practice fill from the front of the storm, and let it lose water during the storm only at the design infiltration or reuse rate of Clause 4.4.3;
- (c) once it is full, route its overflow to the detention facility; and
- (d) size the detention for the residual hydrograph.

The required detention storage is the largest storage over all storms and durations. The credit is the difference between that storage and the storage required with no retention. No further deduction shall be made.

4.4.6.3 **Tier B method (simplified).** The detention storage required by Clause 4.14 may be reduced by:

> $V_{credit} = C_R \times RRV_{provided}$

where C_R is the retention credit factor from Annex 4B for the zone, soil group and drawdown rate. Until Annex 4B is published, **$C_R = 0$**.

4.4.6.4 Retention that is not verified under Clause 4.4.3 gets no credit.

> Commentary. "Credited against detention" (APWA 5600 2025.01) can be read in two ways. One reading subtracts the retained volume from the detention volume, cubic metre for cubic metre. The other routes the storms with retention in place and sees what detention is still needed. The two readings give very different answers in Bihar,

because the mandatory 48- and 72-hour storms (Clause 2.5.2) fill any retention practice on the first day, long before the peak arrives on the last day (Clause 2.9.2). Unless the practice keeps infiltrating during the storm, it is full at the peak and does nothing to reduce the peak storage.

The illustrative example in Clause 4.6.7 shows the size of the effect. A 2 ha site with 552 m³ of retention (no infiltration during the storm) needs 138 m³ less detention for the 24-hour storm. That is a credit of about a quarter of the retained volume. For the 48- and 72-hour storms, which govern, the credit is close to zero. Subtracting the retained volume directly would have under-sized the detention by about 545 m³ (about 19%).

This Manual therefore defines the credit as the result of routing. Retention on fast-draining sandy soils, which keeps infiltrating through a multi-day storm, will earn a real credit. Retention that only fills will earn little. Both outcomes are physically correct. Setting C_R = 0 until Annex 4B exists is a safe default for Tier B, not a judgement that retention has no value: retention is still required for water quality and recharge (Chapter 8).

4.4.7 Preservation credit

Areas of the site that are permanently preserved in natural cover may be modelled at their pre-development CN in the post-development condition, provided that:

- they are protected by a registered covenant or dedication; and
- their runoff is not concentrated onto impervious surfaces.

This lowers both the RRV and the detention required. No other preservation credit applies.

4.5 Release-rate criteria

4.5.1 General

4.5.1.1 Peak discharge from the site shall be computed by a hydrograph method (Chapter 3) for the pre-development and post-development conditions with identical design storms (Clause 2.11.1). The Rational Method shall not be used for any part of storage sizing.

4.5.1.2 Pre-development is greenfield: open land in good condition for the mapped HSG. Existing impervious cover is not counted (Clause 2.11.5, Chapter 3). This applies to redevelopment as well, subject only to the constrained-redevelopment route of Clause 4.5.6.

4.5.1.3 The criteria apply at each point where runoff leaves the site. Where a site drains to more than one outfall, the criteria apply to each outfall for the area draining to it. Runoff shall not be diverted between catchments.

4.5.2 Standard catchments

For each of the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP (2-, 10- and 100-yr) storms, and for every duration in {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}:

$$Q_{post}(T, d) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T, d)$$

4.5.3 Flood-sensitive catchments

4.5.3.1 In the catchments listed below, the **mixed-frequency rule** of Clause 2.11.3 applies, for every duration in Clause 2.5.2:

> Q_post(1% AEP, 100-yr) ≤ Q_pre(10% AEP, 10-yr), and Q_post(50% AEP, 2-yr) ≤ Q_pre(50% AEP, 2-yr).

Each cap is the pre-development peak at the duration that maximises it: the 10-yr peak for the 100-yr check, and the 2-yr peak for the 2-yr check. The cap applies to every post-development duration (Clause 2.11.3).

4.5.3.2 The flood-sensitive catchments are:

- (a) **Patna behind the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun**: the catchments of the drains of Patna, Danapur, Phulwari and Khagaul that outfall to the Ganga or the Punpun through sump houses, drainage pumping stations or sluices, including the low-lying colonies of Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony, which cannot discharge to the rivers by gravity when they are high;
- (b) **Muzaffarpur on the Burhi Gandak**: the city of Muzaffarpur, whose drains outfall to the Burhi Gandak and are held up when the river is high;
- (c) **Darbhanga between the Bagmati and the Adhwara group**: the city of Darbhanga, with its pokhars, whose drains outfall to the Bagmati and the Adhwara group of rivers and are held up when they are high;
- (d) **tal and chaur land**: land in the Mokama group of tals (the Fatuha, Bakhtiarpur, Barh, More, Mokama, Barahiya and Singhaul tals) and in the chaurs and mauns of north Bihar, and the catchments that drain to them; and
- (e) any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4.

The boundaries shall be those mapped in Annex 4A.

4.5.4 Notification of further flood-sensitive catchments

4.5.4.1 The Authority may propose that a catchment be notified as flood-sensitive where one or more of the following is documented:

- (a) buildings or arterial roads flooded in an event of 1% AEP or more frequent, on at least two occasions in the previous 20 years;
- (b) receiving drains or channels with capacity below the 10% AEP flow under existing conditions;
- (c) an outfall that is closed by a sluice, gate or flap gate in a river embankment or town protection wall when the river is high, or that depends on a sump house or drainage pumping station, as along the Ganga and the Punpun at Patna, or that is held up by a river in flood, such as the Burhi Gandak at Muzaffarpur, the Bagmati at Darbhanga, the Ganga at Bhagalpur and Munger or the Mahananda at Purnia, for part of the SW monsoon (Chapter 5);
- (d) loss of more than a quarter of the mapped tank and pokhar storage in the catchment since the earliest available survey; or
- (e) a basin master plan that relies on limiting site discharge.

4.5.4.2 The procedure shall be:

1. The Authority prepares a technical note with the catchment boundary in GIS form and the evidence for 4.5.4.1.
2. The State-level technical committee constituted under Chapter 1 reviews the note.
3. The draft notification and map are published for public comment for at least 60 days.
4. The Government notifies the catchment and the map is added to Annex 4A.
5. The rule applies to applications received **6 months** or more after notification. Applications received earlier are assessed under Clause 4.5.2.

4.5.4.3 A notified catchment may be de-notified only by the same procedure, and only after a basin study shows that the downstream system meets Chapter 5 with all development under Clause 4.5.2.

> Commentary. The 0.9 factor is derived from the Denver (MHFD) analysis. In that analysis, ten basins each releasing 100% of the historic 100-yr peak still produced 106% of the historic peak at the outlet; releasing 90% at each gave 97% (UDFCD Full Spectrum Detention Release Rate Memorandum, 2012). The mixed-frequency rule has no direct precedent; the nearest is the Malaysian DID (2008) checklist, which required post-development 2-, 10-, 50- and 100-yr peaks below the pre-development 2-yr peak. The specific "100-yr post ≤ 10-yr pre" form appears in a New Berlin, Wisconsin planning discussion (not an adopted rule). The Patna entry follows the way the city drains. Patna is ringed by the Ganga on the north, the Sone on the west and the Punpun on the south; its outfalls are pumped, and when the rivers are high the sluices on the Ganga and the Punpun are closed and the city drains only through its sump houses and drainage pumping stations (as reported). In the waterlogging of 27–30 September 2019, after about 211–226 mm of rain in four days (the totals reported differ), Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony stayed under water for days, the NDRF rescued more than 4,000 people, and about 38 of the city's 39 sump houses were reported not working (as reported); the Patna High Court, by an order of 18 October 2019 in CWJC No. 15027 of 2018, called on the State to report on the sump houses and the nala contractors. That rain was less than a 50-yr 24-hour depth: the failure was of drainage and pumping, not of rainfall. Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh are reported to have flooded in every monsoon since the 1970s (as reported). The Punpun at Sripalpur reached 53.91 m in 1976, 3.31 m above its danger level of 50.60 m, the largest margin of any CWC site at Patna (CWC); it is the backwater that holds up the drains of south Patna. The Muzaffarpur entry follows the Burhi Gandak, which reached 54.29 m at Sikandarpur in 1987, 1.76 m above its danger level of 52.53 m (CWC), and the city's recurrent waterlogging (as reported); 436.0 mm fell at Muzaffarpur on 26 September 2007 (IMD). The Darbhanga entry follows the Bagmati at Hayaghat, which reached 48.96 m in 1987 against a danger level of 45.72 m, and the Adhwara group at Ekmighat, 49.52 m in 2004 against 46.94 m (CWC); the city's ponds are the subject of NGT O.A. 155/2022/EZ, and its storm water drainage project was challenged before the NGT in 2025 (as reported). The tal and chaur entry follows the land itself: about 1,062 km² of the Mokama group of tals is waterlogged in the monsoon and drains slowly to the Ganga (NIH and other reports, as reported), and a chaur is a low tal "in which rainwater stays for many days" (*Hindi Shabdasagara*), so a site in either drains to storage that is already full. Bhagalpur and Munger on the Ganga, where Bhagalpur set its highest level of 34.86 m in 2021 (CWC), Purnia on the Mahananda, which set its highest level at Dhengraghat in 2017, Hajipur on the Gandak and Chhapra on the Ghaghra are candidates for notification under Clause 4.5.4. The notification triggers in 4.5.4.1 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 6-month lead time follows the update rule of Clause 2.14.2. Clause 4.16 explains why releases below pre-development are needed at all.

4.5.5 Minimum outlet and short-duration 2-yr checks

4.5.5.1 Where the PSD for any AEP and duration is less than the discharge of a **50 mm** orifice (Clause 4.8.2) at the corresponding stage, the 50 mm orifice is deemed to comply for that AEP and duration.

4.5.5.2 Where meeting the 2-yr criterion at a duration of 3 hours or less would require a low-flow orifice so small that the drawdown requirement of Clause 4.7 cannot be met, the designer shall:

- size the low-flow orifice as the smallest opening that meets Clause 4.7; and
- report the resulting 2-yr exceedance for those durations.

The Authority may accept the design if the exceedance is below the discharge of the 50 mm orifice at the 2-yr stage, or if the downstream analysis of Chapter 5 shows no adverse effect.

> Commentary. Under AMC II, a greenfield site produces almost no runoff in a 1- or 2-hour, 2-yr storm, because most of the rain is lost to initial abstraction. A pre-development peak of a few litres per second, compared duration by duration, then forces a very small low-flow orifice. That orifice cannot release the 10-yr volume within

48 hours. Checked as if it were outside a flood-sensitive catchment, the illustrative example of Clause 4.6.7 would need a low-flow orifice of about 75 mm to match the 1-hour, 2-yr pre-development peak. 90% drawdown of the 10-yr volume would then take about 84 hours even with a clean orifice, against the 48-hour limit. The 170 mm orifice that meets drawdown with 50% blockage exceeds the 1-hour, 2-yr pre-development peak by about 11 L/s. Clause 4.5.5.2 resolves that conflict in favour of drawdown, because a basin that is still partly full when the next SW monsoon storm arrives fails in the event that matters more. KC APWA 5600 (2006) used a 75 mm (3 in) minimum orifice with trash racks. This Manual sets a 50 mm minimum (Clause 4.8.2).

4.5.6 Constrained redevelopment sites

4.5.6.1 **Eligibility.** The relief route of this clause is available only for **redevelopment** where all of the following hold:

- (a) the existing site is at least **60% impervious**, as surveyed before demolition;
- (b) the site is **1 ha or less**; and
- (c) the designer shows, in a Constraint Statement submitted with Form 4-1, that the greenfield criteria of Clauses 4.5.2 or 4.5.3 cannot be met on the site. The statement must show that every storage option of Clause 4.10 has been assessed: rooftop and podium storage, tanks under parking or landscape, permeable paving with sub-base storage, and landscape depressions. It must also give the storage each option can provide.

New development on undeveloped land is never eligible.

4.5.6.2 **Minimum on-site performance.** An eligible site shall provide all of the following on site:

- (a) the full retention volume (Clause 4.4) and the WQv treatment (Chapter 8), with no relief;
- (b) post-development peak discharge no more than **50% of the existing-condition peak** for the 50%, 10% and 1% AEP storms, at each duration of Clause 2.5.2. The existing condition is modelled under Clause 3.3.4; and
- (c) no increase in the 1% AEP water level at any building or road downstream (Chapter 5).

4.5.6.3 **Shortfall.** The shortfall is the detention storage required to meet the greenfield criteria (Clause 4.6) minus the storage provided on site under 4.5.6.2. The applicant shall pay for the shortfall as a fee-in-lieu at the unit rate of Clause 4.13.3. The fee shall be:

- (a) paid into the ring-fenced account of the basin in which the site lies;
- (b) spent only on regional detention or on restoring pokhar or tank flood storage identified in the basin stormwater master plan (Chapter 11); and
- (c) recorded in the public ledger of Clause 4.13.4, which shall show the volume owed and the volume delivered in each basin.

Where no basin master plan has yet been approved, the fee shall be held for up to **5 years**. If no plan is approved in that time, it shall be spent on restoring tank flood storage in the same basin, with WRD agreement.

4.5.6.4 **Flood-sensitive catchments.** In the catchments of Clause 4.5.3, the route is available under the same conditions. The Authority may, however, refuse it where the downstream analysis of Chapter 5 shows existing flooding of buildings in the 10% AEP event within the analysis extent.

Commentary. Greenfield is the target for all redevelopment, because a dense city only reduces its runoff as it rebuilds. On small, fully built plots in areas such as the old town of Patna City at the east end of Patna, or the old cores of Gaya, Bhagalpur and Darbhanga, there is often no space for the full greenfield storage. A rule that cannot be met invites variances and non-compliance, which help no one downstream. This clause follows the approach of the UK Non-statutory Technical Standards for Sustainable Drainage (Defra, 2015, S2–S3). For previously developed sites, those standards require peak runoff "as close as reasonably practicable to the greenfield runoff rate" and never above the pre-redevelopment rate. The fixed 50% minimum reduction has no direct precedent; this

> Manual sets it to give reviewers a clear number in place of a "reasonably practicable" judgement. The fee-in-lieu turns the shortfall into regional storage in the same basin, so the basin still receives greenfield-equivalent control in total. Retention and water quality get no relief, because they are small volumes that almost every site can hold.

4.6 Detention sizing procedure

4.6.1 Method

Detention shall be sized by hydrograph routing through the stage–storage–discharge relationship of the facility, by level-pool (Modified Puls) or an equivalent numerical method (SWMM, HEC-HMS). Fixed-ratio and Rational-based storage formulae shall not be used. The simplified methods of Clause 4.14 (the Tier B tables and the fixed-coefficient route) are the only exceptions.

4.6.2 Steps

1. Delineate the site and sub-areas. Map HSG and confirm by testing (Chapter 3).
2. Extract design rainfall for 50%, 10% and 1% AEP and every duration in Clause 2.5.2, with the climate factor (Chapter 2, Form 2-1).
3. Build design hyetographs: alternating block for ≤ 24 h; the "peak day last" pattern for 48 and 72 h (Clause 2.9).
4. Compute pre-development hydrographs (greenfield CN; AMC III for storms of every duration from 15 June to 30 September in sub-areas BR-A, BR-B and BR-C and on tal, chaur and diara land, and in July–August in BR-D and BR-E, and at other sites and times after a 5-day total of more than 53 mm, AMC II otherwise).
5. Compute the release caps for each AEP and duration under Clause 4.5.2 or 4.5.3.
6. Compute post-development hydrographs with the same storms and AMC, including retention practices (Clause 4.4.6).
7. Choose a trial facility geometry (stage–storage) and a multi-stage outlet (Clause 4.6.5).
8. Route every storm and duration. Use a time step of no more than **5 minutes**, and no more than Tc/3 of the post-development catchment.
9. Check every release against its cap, and check drawdown (Clause 4.7). Adjust the outlet and storage and repeat.
10. Check the tailwater condition of Clause 4.6.6 and the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.
11. Size the emergency spillway and set freeboard (Clause 4.9).
12. Report the governing storm for storage, for each outlet stage, and for the spillway (Clause 4.17).

4.6.3 Storms to be routed

Every facility shall be routed for the full matrix:

Table 4.1 — Design storms to be routed for detention sizing

AEP	Durations (h)	AMC
50% (2-yr)	1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72	II for ≤ 6 h; III for ≥ 12 h
10% (10-yr)	1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72	II for ≤ 6 h; III for ≥ 12 h
1% (100-yr)	1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72	II for ≤ 6 h; III for ≥ 12 h

The 24-, 48- and 72-hour runs are mandatory whatever the critical-duration result (Clause 2.5.2). Where Ia = 0.05S sensitivity is required by Chapter 3, it shall be run for the governing storage case.

4.6.4 Initial conditions

Each run shall start with:

- detention storage empty, down to the invert of the lowest outlet;
- any permanent pool full;
- retention practices empty, except as limited by Clause 4.11; and
- RWH storage full (Clause 4.11).

The 48- and 72-hour storms already contain their antecedent rain, so no further pre-filling is applied.

4.6.5 Multi-stage outlet design

4.6.5.1 The outlet shall have a separate control for each criterion, normally stacked as in Figure 4.2:

- **Stage 1**, at the invert: the low-flow orifice. It releases the WQv over 24–48 h (Chapter 8) and controls the 2-yr release.
- **Stage 2**: an orifice or slot set at or near the maximum 2-yr level. It controls the 10-yr release.
- **Stage 3**: a weir, riser crest or larger orifice set at or near the maximum 10-yr level. It controls the 100-yr release.
- **Emergency spillway**: separate from the primary outlet (Clause 4.9).

Stages may be combined where routing shows that every cap is met.

4.6.5.2 Orifices shall be computed with a discharge coefficient of 0.60 unless a rated device is used. Weirs shall use a coefficient appropriate to their shape. Submerged-outlet and tailwater effects shall be included (Clause 4.6.6).

4.6.5.3 Vortex flow controls and other proprietary devices may be used where the supplier provides a certified head–discharge curve and the minimum clear opening is at least 50 mm.

4.6.6 Tailwater on the outlet

The outlet shall be routed against the tailwater of the receiving system, not free outfall, wherever the receiving water level can rise above the outlet invert. The tailwater shall be:

- for a receiving drain: its water level in the same storm, from the Chapter 5 analysis or, for Tier B, the drain obvert;
- for tidal or backwater-affected outfalls: the levels and joint cases of Clause 2.12 and Chapter 5, including the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10).

Where tailwater governs, a flap gate shall be fitted to the outlet (Clause 5.11). The storage below the tailwater level shall not be counted as available unless the routing includes the gate closure.

4.6.7 Illustrative example

Illustrative — not design values. This example shows the procedure and the sizes it produces. The inputs are invented to be plausible for a low-lying colony in south Patna behind the Punpun. They are not NIH-DHAARA values and must not be used for design.

Inputs:

- Site: 2.0 ha, flood-sensitive catchment (Clause 4.5.3).
- Land cover: pre-development all pervious, CN 70. Post-development as two sub-areas (Clause 3.9.2): 1.57 ha of directly connected impervious surface at CN 98, never converted for AMC, and 0.43 ha of pervious open space at CN 70, on the same soil as pre-development; the area-weighted CN at AMC II is 92. For storms of 12 h and longer the pervious CN only is converted to AMC III: $CN_{III} = 23 \cdot CN / (10 + 0.13 \cdot CN) = 84.3$ (Clause 3.8.4).

- Time of concentration (Tc): 45 min pre-development, 15 min post-development (used for both sub-areas). SCS triangular unit hydrograph; 5-minute time step.
- 24-h depths: 110, 200 and 350 mm for 2-, 10- and 100-yr (the same 10- and 100-yr values as Clause 2.11).
- Shorter durations: P(t) = P24·(t/24)^0.40, an assumed ratio set and not Annex 2B.
- Longer durations: 48-h and 72-h depths taken as 1.25 and 1.40 × P24, laid out per Clause 2.9.2.
- Storage: vertical-walled, 2,500 m² plan area.
- Outlet, sized so that drawdown is met with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked (Clause 4.8.3). Annex 4C shows the trial outlet that failed this check.
    - Stage 1: 170 mm orifice at the invert.
    - Stage 2: 460 mm orifice with its invert 0.53 m above the floor.
    - Stage 3: none needed, because the 100-yr cap is met by Stages 1 and 2.

Results (discharges in L/s; storage in m³):

Table 4.2 — Illustrative example: peak discharges and storage used, by duration (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	2-yr pre	2-yr post, detained	10-yr pre	10-yr post, detained	100-yr post, uncontrolled	100-yr post, detained	100-yr storage used	10-yr drawdown, 50% blocked (h)
1	4	15	51	28	922	42	1,426	31.3
2	14	20	84	34	961	79	1,911	32.1
3	19	22	104	37	981	139	1,999	32.8
6	32	25	150	41	1,010	194	2,154	34.2
12	127	30	302	46	1,074	276	2,512	39.0
24	149	32	327	49	1,081	320	2,766	**45.3**
48	173	34	349	82	1,087	343	**2,913**	44.8
72	180	34	356	84	1,089	343	2,911	44.7

How to read it:

- **100-yr cap.** The cap is the largest pre-development 10-yr peak, 356 L/s (72 h). Every 100-yr detained peak is at or below it; the largest is 343 L/s.
- **2-yr cap.** The site is flood-sensitive, so the 2-yr cap is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak, 180 L/s (72 h; Clause 4.5.3.1). The largest 2-yr detained peak is 34 L/s. At 1, 2 and 3 hours the detained 2-yr peak is above the pre-development peak of the same duration (15 against 4 L/s, 20 against 14 L/s, and 22 against 19 L/s). That comparison is not required here. It would be for a site under Clause 4.5.2, and Clause 4.5.5.2 would then apply.
- **Governing storage.** Storage is governed by the **48- and 72-hour** storms: 2,913 m³, which is 0.146 m³ per m² of site, at a maximum depth of 1.17 m. A design that checked only the critical-duration peak storm (1–3 h here) would have provided about 2,000 m³, roughly two-thirds of what is needed.
- **Drawdown.** With the low-flow orifice 50% blocked (Clause 4.8.3), 90% of the 10-yr storage drains in at most 45.3 h (the 24-hour storm), within the 48 hours of Clause 4.7. A 120 mm orifice would drain it in about 42 h when clean but 54 to 75 h when half blocked, so it fails. Annex 4C shows that trial and the routing step by step.
- **Retention credit.** With an illustrative retention depth of 40 mm, RRV = 552 m³, computed for each sub-area (Clause 3.9.4). Modelled as filling from the start of the storm with no infiltration during it, the retention reduces the 24-hour storage by 138 m³ and the 48- and 72-hour storage by 7 m³ or less. The credit under Clause 4.4.6 is therefore effectively zero for this site.

The order of magnitude, about 0.15 m³ per m² of site, is consistent with the indication in Clause 2.11.

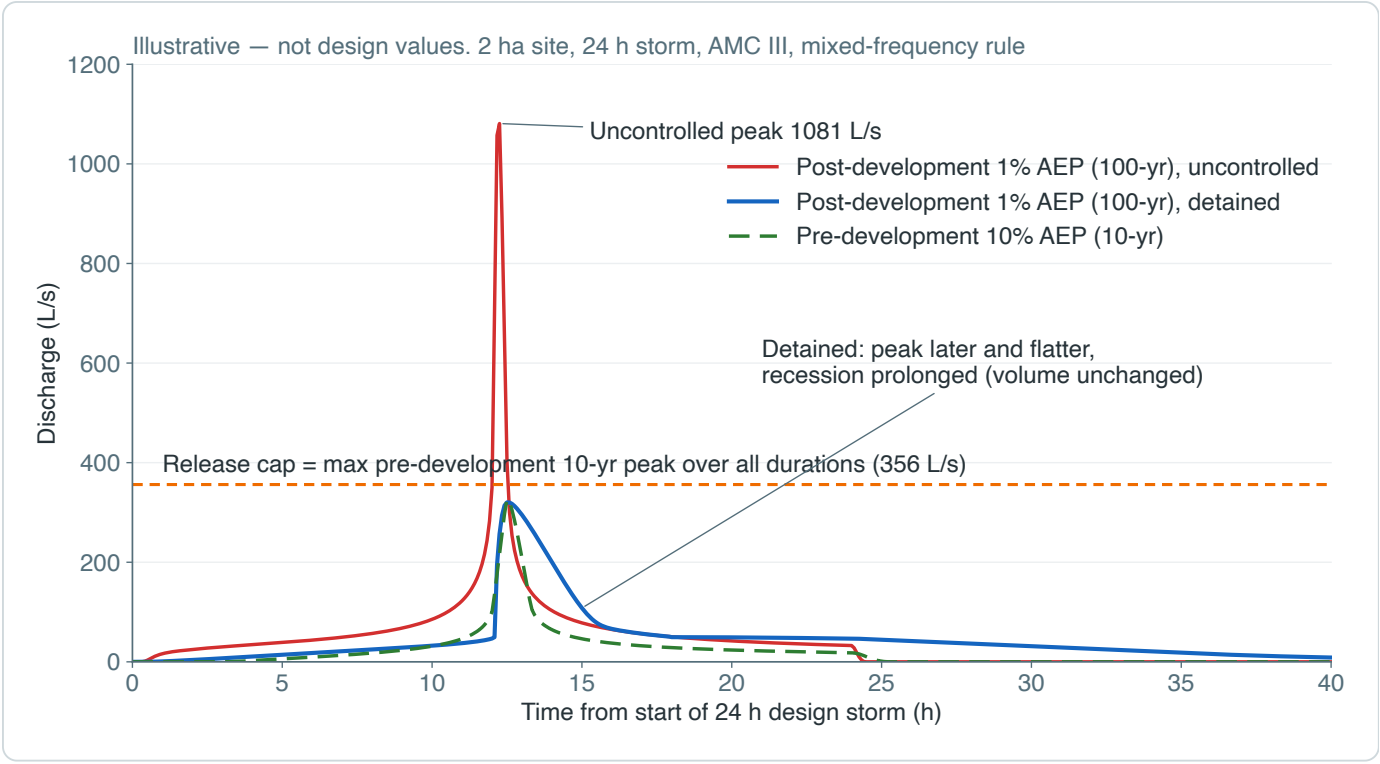


Figure 4.1 — Pre-development 10-yr, post-development 100-yr uncontrolled and detained hydrographs for the 24-hour storm of the illustrative example (Clause 4.6.7). Illustrative — not design values. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the pre/post-development hydrograph concept in MARC/KC APWA Section 5600 and the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016).

> **Commentary.** Figure 4.1 shows what detention does and does not do. It cuts and delays the peak. It does not reduce the volume: the area under the detained curve equals the area under the uncontrolled curve, more than twice the pre-development 10-yr volume. The extra volume leaves the site over many hours after the storm. That prolonged release can coincide with the peak of the larger catchment downstream (Clause 4.16), and it must still drain when the outfall is tide-locked (Chapter 5).

4.7 Drawdown

4.7.1 **Detention.** At least **90%** of the maximum volume stored in the 10% AEP (10-yr) storm of each duration shall be released within **48 hours** of the time of maximum storage, by gravity, with the tailwater of Clause 4.6.6.

4.7.2 **Water quality volume.** The WQv shall be released over not less than 24 hours and not more than 48 hours (Chapter 8).

4.7.3 **Retention.** Retention storage shall be emptied within 72 hours by infiltration or reuse (Clause 4.4.5).

4.7.4 **Tidal outfalls.** Where gravity drawdown is prevented by tide for part of each cycle, the 48-hour limit applies with the tidal tailwater modelled. Where it cannot be met by gravity, pumped drawdown shall be provided under Clause 5.12.

> **Commentary.** KC APWA 5600 (2006) required dry basins to release at least 80% of storage within 24 hours of the inflow peak and to empty within 72 hours. Singapore PUB requires detention to be restored within 4 hours. The 48-hour, 90% rule is longer than PUB's because Bihar storage must hold multi-day volumes. It is still short enough

that a basin filled by one SW monsoon depression will have most of its volume back before the next, which in late September 2019 at Patna (rain on four successive days, 26 to 29 September, about 211–226 mm in all, as reported) followed within days.

4.8 Outlet structures

4.8.1 **General.** Primary outlets shall be:

- unattended, with no moving parts, valves or pumps, except where Clause 5.12 permits pumped drawdown;
- accessible for inspection and cleaning from the surface without confined-space entry, where practicable; and
- built of durable materials. In coastal areas these shall be corrosion-resistant (Clause 4.12.5).

4.8.2 **Minimum orifice.** No control orifice shall be smaller than **50 mm** in diameter, or 50 mm in least dimension for a slot.

4.8.3 **Trash racks and screens.** Every orifice and weir shall be protected by a trash rack or screen. The rack shall:

- have a clear bar spacing no greater than half the smallest opening it protects, and not less than 25 mm;
- have a clear open area at least **10 times** the area of the opening it protects;
- be inclined, or set as a cage around the riser, so that debris rises with the water and does not pin against the bars;
- be removable or hinged for cleaning; and
- for routing, be assumed **50% blocked** at the low-flow orifice when checking drawdown.

4.8.4 **Anti-vortex devices.** Riser crests and orifices that may run under more than 1.5 times their diameter of head shall have an anti-vortex plate or hood (Figure 4.2).

4.8.5 **Outlet barrels.** Outlet barrels through embankments shall:

- be at least 300 mm in diameter (Chapter 6);
- have watertight joints;
- have a filter diaphragm or seepage collars over the length within the embankment; and
- have an energy-dissipating outfall (Chapter 9).

4.8.6 **Isolation.** Facilities serving more than 1 ha shall have a means of isolating the outlet for maintenance, such as a stop-log slot or penstock. In normal service it shall be left fully open.

> Commentary. The 50 mm minimum is smaller than the 75 mm (3 in) of KC APWA 5600 (2006), so the trash-rack requirements are correspondingly stricter. The ratios in 4.8.3 (bar spacing at half the opening, open area 10 times the opening, 50% blockage for the drawdown check) have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The blockage factor matches the 50% grate clogging factor for sag inlets in Chapter 6. Indian urban drains carry heavy loads of solid waste, so a low-flow orifice without an effective rack will block within one season.

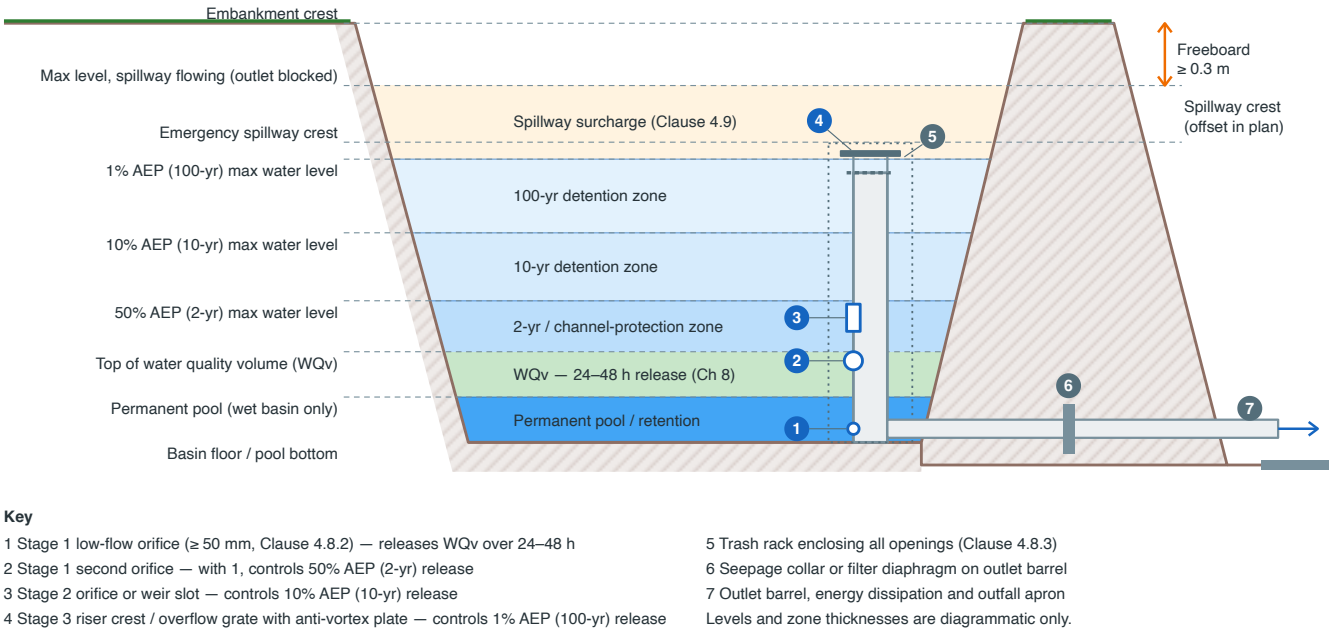


Figure 4.2 — Detention storage stack (permanent pool, WQv, 2-yr, 10-yr and 100-yr zones, spillway surcharge and freeboard) and multi-stage riser outlet. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the multi-stage outlet and storage-zone concepts in MARC/KC APWA Section 5600 (2006, 2025.01) and the Mile High Flood District Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 2 (full-spectrum detention).

4.9 Emergency spillway, freeboard and embankment safety

4.9.1 **Spillway capacity.** Every detention facility formed wholly or partly by an embankment, or whose overflow would reach buildings, shall have an emergency spillway that passes the **1% AEP (100-yr) peak inflow**:

- with the primary outlet assumed fully blocked;
- with the facility full to the spillway crest at the start of the storm; and
- with at least **0.3 m freeboard** from the maximum water level to the embankment crest.

4.9.2 **High-hazard facilities.** A facility is high-hazard if its failure or overflow could:

- endanger life;
- flood a habitable building or critical facility; or
- close an arterial road.

High-hazard facilities shall also be checked for the **0.2% AEP (500-yr)** peak inflow under the conditions of 4.9.1, with the embankment not overtopped.

4.9.3 **Spillway crest.** The spillway crest shall be at or above the 1% AEP maximum water level from routing with the primary outlet working. The recommended clearance is 0.15 m.

4.9.4 **Spillway location.** The spillway shall be:

- on natural ground or a reinforced section, not on fill, unless protected against erosion for the full design flow;
- discharging to the 1% AEP overland flow path of Chapter 6; and

- placed so that its flow does not reach a building.

4.9.5 **Underground and enclosed facilities.** Tanks, vaults and podium storage shall have an overflow route that operates when the outlet is blocked. The route shall carry the 1% AEP inflow to the overland path without surcharging any building, basement or lift pit.

4.9.6 **Embankments.**

- (a) Embankments more than **2 m** high (measured from the downstream toe to the crest) shall be designed by a qualified geotechnical engineer. The design shall include stability, seepage and settlement analysis.
- (b) Side slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V on any face that is mown or accessible to the public. Slopes shall be flatter where Clause 4.15 requires.
- (c) Embankments shall have:
  - a crest width of at least 3 m;
  - compacted, engineered fill with a core or cut-off where required by the seepage analysis; and
  - no trees or large shrubs.
- (d) An embankment structure that falls within the Dam Safety Act, 2021 is subject to that Act in addition to this Manual.

4.9.7 **Excavated facilities.** Facilities wholly below the surrounding ground, with no embankment, need not meet 4.9.6. They shall still meet 4.9.1, with the overflow route treated as the spillway.

> Commentary. The spillway criterion (1% inflow, outlet blocked, basin full, 0.3 m freeboard; 0.2% for high hazard) follows the KC APWA 5600 (2006) rule: the spillway passes the 1% storm with 1 ft (0.3 m) freeboard to the top of the dam, assuming zero storage and a clogged primary outlet, with the crest at least 0.5 ft (0.15 m) above the 1% maximum water surface. KC designed dams above 10 ft (3 m) to SCS TR-60 Class C. The 2 m embankment trigger, the 3H:1V slope (KC wet ponds), and the 3 m crest width have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

4.10 Facility types

4.10.1 **General.** Any storage that meets Clauses 4.5 to 4.9 may be used. Surface storage that is visible and can be inspected without confined-space entry is preferred. Storage shall not be placed in a habitable basement or in any space whose flooding would endanger life.

4.10.2 **Underground tanks and vaults.**

- (a) Gravity outlet is required where the receiving drain allows it. Pumped outlets are permitted only under Clause 5.12, with a registered maintenance declaration (Chapter 10).
- (b) Access openings shall be provided over the outlet chamber and over every inlet. In tanks over 500 m², they shall be no more than 30 m apart.
- (c) The floor shall fall at least 1% to a sump at the outlet, with a sediment pocket below the low-flow orifice invert.
- (d) The tank shall be ventilated.
- (e) Inlets shall pass through a silt trap or gross pollutant trap (Chapter 8).
- (f) Flotation and groundwater ingress shall be checked under Clause 4.12.

4.10.3 **Rooftop detention.**

- (a) It is permitted on flat roofs designed for the full ponded load with the outlet blocked. The ponding depth shall not exceed **150 mm** unless a structural engineer certifies a greater depth.
- (b) Each roof outlet shall have a flow-control ring or weir with a certified rating, and every roof area shall have at least one overflow scupper, independent of the controlled outlets, that passes the 1% AEP inflow.

- (c) Roofs used for RWH collection may also provide rooftop detention. The detained volume is released through the control, not into the RWH sump.

4.10.4 **Podium and landscape-deck detention.**

- (a) It is permitted above ground level or above a basement car park, provided the structure is designed for full saturation and ponding, and waterproofed.
- (b) The release, overflow and safety rules for rooftop detention (4.10.3) apply.

4.10.5 **Parking-lot detention.**

- (a) It is permitted only on surface parking. Ponding depth shall not exceed:
  - **200 mm** in the 10% AEP storm and **300 mm** in the 1% AEP storm at any parking bay;
  - zero on accessible routes, ramps and pedestrian crossings; and
  - zero in the 10% AEP storm on fire-tender access routes.
- (b) Signs shall warn that the area floods.
- (c) Ponding shall not reach a building wall unless the wall is waterproofed above the 1% level plus freeboard (Chapter 6).

4.10.6 **Multi-use detention (parks, playfields, open space reservation).**

- (a) Open space land may be used for detention, provided its primary use remains available in at least the 50% AEP storm.
- (b) The storage areas shall be graded to drain fully within the times of Clause 4.7.
- (c) A low-flow channel or underdrain shall carry dry-weather and frequent flows, so that the park is not waterlogged.
- (d) The depth and slope limits of Clause 4.15 apply.
- (e) Play equipment and seating shall be placed above the 10% AEP level.

4.10.7 **Ponds and wet basins.**

- (a) A permanent pool shall be at least 1.2 m deep over most of its area to discourage weed growth and mosquito breeding, with a vegetated safety bench at the edge (Clause 4.15).
- (b) Only storage above the permanent pool counts as detention.

> Commentary.
>
> - The rooftop depth (150 mm) and parking depths (200 and 300 mm) have no direct precedent. This Manual sets them so that a blocked outlet is noticed before it becomes dangerous.
> - The 1.2 m pool depth equals the 4 ft minimum permanent pool of KC APWA 5600 (2006). This Manual adopts it mainly for weed and mosquito control.
> - Pumped detention tanks need maintenance declarations in Singapore (PUB Addendum No. 3, April 2025). This Manual adopts the same approach through Chapter 10.
> - Using open space for multi-use detention fits BBL 2014, which requires at least 5% of the land of a plot under tree cover (bye-law 32) and allows the topsoil of open ground to be replaced with river sand "to allow slow percolation of rain water" (bye-law 51(B)); no Bihar rule limiting the paving of parks or open spaces was found [TBC]. A detention area graded into the open space below the level of the road keeps it pervious and usable, which is what 4.10.6 requires. Three kinds of land are not open space for this purpose. A pokhar, ahar, chaur or tal on the land is preserved under step 1 of Clause 4.3.1 and modelled as a water surface (Clause 3.3.2(e)) that starts at its full level (Clause 3.12.5), so only its flood storage above that level can count, and only as Chapter 7 allows; public tanks vest in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act 2007, section 177), land over which the community has a right of irrigation is public land under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act 1956, and no building may be permitted within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank (BBL 2014, bye-law 30(B)). The land between the embankments of an embanked river, or from the

embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank where only one bank is embanked, is a Prohibited Zone under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, in which only temporary or movable structures are allowed, and only beyond 250 m from the river bank. And the 50 m zone of a wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017, and land in the hydraulic corridor of a nala, pokhar, chaur or river under Chapter 7, are corridor or flood land already: water reaches them first, so they are not counted as detention for the development beside them (Chapter 7).

4.11 Rainwater harvesting versus detention accounting

4.11.1 **No double counting.** RWH storage (sumps, tanks, recharge pits and wells provided under the RWH mandate) shall **not** be counted as detention.

4.11.2 **RWH sumps assumed full.** For all routing under this chapter, RWH sumps and tanks shall be assumed **full at the start of every storm**, in every season. Their overflow shall be routed to the detention facility, or directly to the outfall if it bypasses detention. In the latter case the bypass flow counts against the PSD.

4.11.3 **Combined tanks.** A single tank may provide both RWH and detention only if:

- (a) the detention zone lies wholly **above** the RWH overflow level;
- (b) the detention zone is drained by its own gravity control orifice set at the RWH overflow level, meeting Clauses 4.7 and 4.8;
- (c) no pump, valve or user action can hold water in the detention zone; and
- (d) the two zones and the orifice level are shown on the drawings and in the maintenance declaration.

Only the volume between the RWH overflow level and the detention overflow level counts as detention.

4.11.4 **Recharge structures.** Recharge pits, trenches, shafts and wells may count as **retention** (not detention) if they meet Clauses 4.4.3 to 4.4.5. In particular, the seasonal high groundwater table shall be at least 1.0 m below their base. In the routing they are treated under Clause 4.4.6 with the groundwater level for the SW monsoon season.

4.11.5 **RWH remains mandatory.** Nothing in this chapter reduces the RWH requirement of bye-law 51 of the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014, section 18 of the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act 2006 and any direction or condition made under it, clause 24 of the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 if it is notified, or any rainwater harvesting rule of an approving authority.

Commentary. RWH in Bihar is required by bye-law 51 of BBL 2014, which sets a recharge volume but no storage volume, and section 18 of the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act 2006 is its statutory hook. Bye-law 51 reads: "Provision of rainwater harvesting shall be mandatory for all sizes of plots. The dimension of recharging pits/trenches shall be at least 6 cubic meters for every 100 Sq. m. of roof area." The pits are to be filled with small pebbles, brick jali or river sand under perforated concrete slabs; terrace collection to a sump through a filtering tank, with a valve to discharge the first, dirty water, and the replacement of topsoil by river sand on open ground are optional. A pit of 6 m³ per 100 m² of roof is about 60 mm over the roof, of the same order as the retention depth of Clause 4.4; but it is a volume of filled pit, not of water that infiltrates, and the bye-law sets no infiltration test and no depth to the water table. Section 18 of the 2006 Act lets the Bihar State Ground Water Authority identify recharge-worthy areas, issue guidelines and, in urban areas within notified areas, direct RWH structures on residential, commercial and other premises of 1,000 m² and more; and it lets a Municipal Corporation or other local authority impose rooftop RWH conditions on building plans of 1,000 m² and more, with permanent water and electricity connections given only after compliance. Whether the Act has been brought into force, whether any area has been notified and whether the Authority has been constituted were not confirmed [TBC]. The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, if notified, would require "the complete proposal of rainwater harvesting" with the plans of every plot of 100 m² and more (clause 24), without the 6 m³ rule; it is a

draft only. None of these rules requires a tank to be empty before a storm, and none restricts recharge where the water table is shallow or the aquifer is contaminated. This Manual credits these structures against its own retention requirement (Clause 4.4) as follows:

- An RWH storage tank or sump is RWH storage. It is not detention (Clause 4.11.1), and it is assumed full at the start of every storm (Clause 4.11.2), because after the July rains it is full. A tank may also provide detention only if it is built as a combined tank under Clause 4.11.3, with a detention zone above its RWH overflow level that drains through its own orifice; only that zone counts.
- An RWH tank counts toward the **retention** requirement of Clause 4.4 only to the extent that it is emptied within 72 hours by a continuous non-potable use, such as toilet flushing, demonstrated under Clause 4.4.3; it is then modelled under Clause 4.4.6 like any other retention practice. On the diara, in chaurs and tal land and over most of the north Bihar plain in the monsoon, reuse is the practical way to earn retention.
- The recharge pits and trenches of bye-law 51, and any structure required under section 18, count as retention only where they meet Clause 4.11.4: they are credited only to the extent that they drain within 72 hours at half the rate measured in a site test (Clauses 4.4.3 and 4.4.5), with their base at least 1.0 m above the seasonal high water table, and the credit is found by routing under Clause 4.4.6, not by deducting their volume. Infiltration is the exception in Bihar, not the rule. Recharge can earn credit only where the seasonal high water table is deep enough, as it may be in parts of the south Bihar plain and in the peri-urban blocks of Patna, shown by current observation-well or piezometer data; on the diara, in chaurs and tal land, and on the north Bihar plain in the monsoon, a recharge structure gets no retention credit.
- **Arsenic belt.** Arsenic above 0.01 mg/L has been found in the groundwater of 27 districts, along the Ganga, and fluoride above 1.5 mg/L in 19 districts, mostly in the south (CGWB, December 2023, as cited in the report of the Government of Bihar in NGT O.A. 728/2023 [TBC]). In the arsenic belt the shallow aquifer is the one that recharge reaches. There, untreated runoff shall not be injected into a recharge well, bore or shaft. Retention is provided by surface infiltration through a soil or filter layer (basins, swales and permeable pavement that infiltrate through their own floors) or by detention and reuse, unless a hydrogeologist confirms that the target aquifer is not the arsenic-affected one (Chapter 8). This rule is set by this Manual; no Bihar rule restricting recharge in the arsenic belt was found.
- The open ground of bye-law 51(B), where topsoil is replaced with river sand, and the tree cover of bye-law 32 are pervious area. They enter the post-development run as pervious land under Clause 3.9.2 and get no further credit as retention or detention unless they are built and tested as an infiltration practice.

On the diara, in the chaurs and over the north Bihar plain, a recharge pit drains slowly or not at all in the SW monsoon. Treating RWH as detention would therefore credit storage that does not exist when it is needed. That is why this Manual assumes RWH sumps are full at the start of every storm. Applying the assumption to every season keeps one simple rule. The combined-tank provision (4.11.3) lets an owner build one structure, as long as the detention part is empty when the storm arrives.

4.12 High-groundwater and sandy coastal sites

4.12.1 **Design groundwater level.** Each site in the diara lands of the Ganga, the Kosi, the Gandak and the other rivers, the north Bihar plain, where the water table before the monsoon is about 1.5–5.7 m below ground and rises in it, the chaurs and mauns, the Kosi plain, the Mokama group of tals and the other tal lands, and the low-lying land of Patna behind the Ganga and the Punpun, or any area where the groundwater table lies within 3 m of the surface at any time of year shall establish a design groundwater level (DGWL) for the facility. The DGWL is the seasonal high level during or after the SW monsoon, from:

- (a) site piezometer readings over at least one full June–November season; or
- (b) where (a) is not available, the higher of the CGWB or Minor Water Resources Department (groundwater directorate) record for the nearest observation well, plus **0.5 m**, and the design flood level of any adjacent river, nala, pokhar or chaur.

For the flotation check of 4.12.3 at sites in the diara lands, the chaurs, the Kosi plain and the tal lands, where (a) is not available, the DGWL shall be taken as existing ground level.

4.12.2 **Lined storage.** Where the DGWL is less than 1.0 m below the base of a storage facility:

- (a) the facility shall be watertight (lined or of watertight concrete), and no infiltration credit applies (Clause 4.4.4); or
- (b) if unlined, the volume below the DGWL shall not be counted as detention, and groundwater inflow shall be added to the routed inflow.

4.12.3 **Uplift and flotation.** Every below-ground tank, vault, lined pond or chamber shall be checked for flotation:

- with the facility empty;
- with groundwater at the DGWL; and
- for coastal sites, with groundwater also at the major-system tailwater level of Chapter 5, where that is higher.

The factor of safety against uplift, counting only permanent dead loads and ignoring wall friction unless supported by geotechnical design, shall be at least **1.2**. Anchoring by ballast, toe extensions or tension piles may be used.

4.12.4 **Shallow and above-ground storage preferred.** On sites where the DGWL is within 1.5 m of ground, storage should be provided above ground where possible: rooftop, podium, landscape or surface storage. Deep tanks should be avoided.

4.12.5 **Durability.** Concrete and metal parts in contact with saline or brackish groundwater or tidal water shall be designed for the exposure class appropriate to coastal conditions under IS 456:2000. Outlet fittings, trash racks and gates shall be of stainless steel, HDPE, FRP or another corrosion-resistant material.

4.12.6 **Sandy soils with deep groundwater.** Where the DGWL is 1.0 m or more below the base, infiltration retention in sandy soils is encouraged. The design infiltration rate of Clause 4.4.3 applies, and the Chapter 8 requirements on pollution of shallow aquifers shall be met.

> Commentary. Bihar is landlocked, so the coastal provisions of this clause, the tidal water levels of 4.12.1 and 4.12.3, do not apply in the State. The exposure provisions of 4.12.5 apply only where groundwater at a site is shown to be saline or brackish. Over most of Bihar the water table is shallow. On the north Bihar plain it is about 1.5–5.7 m below ground before the monsoon and rises in it (CGWB district profiles of 2011, from search summaries [TBC]); the diara is under or beside the river every monsoon; and the chaurs and tals hold water at the surface through the season. There an unlined tank fills with groundwater before the storm, and an empty lined tank can float, especially when a river in flood raises the water table of the floodplain beside it. The design groundwater level of 4.12.1(b) therefore takes the design flood level of the adjacent river, nala, pokhar or chaur where that is higher than the well record, and in the diara lands, the chaurs, the Kosi plain and the tal lands it is taken as existing ground level for the flotation check unless piezometers show otherwise. Groundwater is plentiful over most of the State, with 473 of its 535 assessment units classed safe in the 2024 assessment and only 4 over-exploited and 9 critical (CGWB, from a search summary [TBC]), so the case for recharge is weaker than in the over-exploited cities of other States; current depths for Patna and its peri-urban blocks, where recharge may be worthwhile, were not obtained [TBC]. Water quality limits recharge further: arsenic above 0.01 mg/L has been found in 27 districts along the Ganga and fluoride above 1.5 mg/L in 19 districts (CGWB, as cited in the report of the Government of Bihar in NGT O.A. 728/2023 [TBC]), and in the arsenic belt this Manual allows no injection of untreated runoff into recharge wells (Commentary to Clause 4.11; Chapter 8). The June–November monitoring season of 4.12.1(a) is set by this Manual to cover the SW monsoon and the post-monsoon high that the CGWB measures in November. The factor of 1.2, the 0.5 m allowance and the "ground level" default for the diara lands, the chaurs, the Kosi plain and the tal lands have no direct precedent; this Manual sets them because no published site-scale seasonal groundwater depths for Bihar were found during research.

4.13 Regional detention and fee-in-lieu

4.13.1 **Where permitted.** In a basin covered by a Basin Stormwater Master Plan approved under Chapter 11, a development may meet all or part of its detention requirement through:

- (a) a regional detention facility identified in the plan; or
- (b) a fee-in-lieu paid toward restoration of pokhar or tank storage identified in the plan.

4.13.2 **Conditions.** Regional detention or fee-in-lieu shall be accepted only where:

- (a) the regional facility or restored tank is operational, or is funded and scheduled to be operational within **3 years**. Until then, interim on-site detention is required.
- (b) the conveyance from the site to the facility carries the 1% AEP post-development flow without increasing water levels at buildings or roads between them (Chapter 5);
- (c) the storage credited at a tank is the **flood storage** only. This is the volume between full tank level (FTL) and the maximum water level the bund and surplus weir can safely hold, plus any volume below FTL that a notified operating rule commits to empty before the SW monsoon. Storage below FTL that is held for irrigation or supply through June to September shall not be credited.
- (d) the tank meets Chapter 7: surveyed FTL, a documented operating rule, and a maintained surplus weir;
- (e) the site still provides **retention** (Clause 4.4) and **WQv** treatment (Chapter 8) on site; and
- (f) in flood-sensitive catchments, the regional facility meets the mixed-frequency rule for its whole contributing area.

4.13.3 **Fee.** The fee-in-lieu shall be computed as:

> Fee = (detention volume required on site under Clause 4.6, m³) × (unit rate, ₹/m³, notified by the Authority)

The unit rate shall include land, construction and 10 years of maintenance. Fees shall be held in a ring-fenced basin account and spent only on the facilities named in the plan.

4.13.4 **Ledger.** The Authority shall keep a public ledger of:

- detention volume credited to each regional facility;
- volume delivered; and
- fees received and spent.

> Commentary. The Malaysian DID (2008) checklist favoured community ponds over on-site detention for sites above 0.1 ha. Studies of on-site detention show that its benefit depends on location and fades with distance downstream (Colorado State University thesis; McEnroe for Kansas City), and that a pond low in the catchment can synchronise with the main-stem peak (*Water* 2016). Regional storage therefore has to be sited by basin modelling, not simply aggregated.
>
> Bihar has no tank Act, and no pokhar, chaur or tal in its cities was found to be operated as part of a cascade with a documented rule [TBC]. The ahar-pyne systems of south Bihar, ahars that store rain and flood water and pynes that carry it to the fields, are irrigation works of the Minor Water Resources Department with no Act of their own, and their engineering layout was not found in a primary source [TBC]. The State's regional storage is of four kinds: the pokhars and talabs of the towns, the ahars and pynes of the south, the chaurs, mauns and tals of the floodplains, and the river floodplains with the embankments of WRD. Pokhars are protected by campaign and encroachment law rather than by a drainage rule. Public tanks vest in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act 2007, section 177), and land over which the community has a right of irrigation is public land under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act 1956; but the same Municipal Act lets the Chief Municipal Officer direct the filling up of a tank or pond that appears "injurious to health" (sections 184 and 251(e)), and no new tank or pond may be dug

without that officer's permission (sections 183 and 252), so a new detention pond inside a municipality needs that permission. Under the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign the State reports encroachment removed from 28,685 ponds, ahars, pynes and wells, and 26,381 ponds and 78,090 ahars and pynes restored (State portal, as reported). The NGT (Eastern Zone) has ordered encroachments removed from three ponds of Darbhanga (O.A. 155/2022/EZ, as reported). Six wetlands are Ramsar sites, among them Kabartal in Begusarai, 2,620 ha, designated on 21 July 2020; the Bihar State Wetland Authority has published draft notifications for other wetlands and chaurs under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017, which bar permanent construction within 50 m of the mean high flood level of a notified wetland, but no final notification was seen [TBC]. Three points follow:

- A pokhar on the record may not be a working pokhar. No inventory of the pokhars within PMC or the other Nagar Nigams was found [TBC]. A pokhar is credited only after a survey shows its bed, bund and outlet, and only for the storage above its full level.
- The chaurs, the tals and the river floodplain are not spare capacity for a site. About 1,062 km² of the Mokama group of tals is waterlogged in the monsoon (NIH, as reported); the land between the embankments of an embanked river is a Prohibited Zone under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025; and NIH is to delineate the 5-, 25- and 100-year flood zones of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari under a memorandum of 3 August 2025. Storage on this land is a matter for the basin master plan of Chapter 11, not for a site.
- An embankment, sluice or drain of WRD is not regional storage. Storm water spilled to a river through its embankment uses capacity that the river needs for its whole basin, and the outfall is shut by its sluice when the river is high; it can be relied on only with the written agreement of WRD, for a stated flow and level. The drains and sump houses of Patna are divided between PMC and BUIDCO, which took over the assets and projects of the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad under the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act 2017 (Act 3 of 2018), but no order fixing the split was found [TBC]; until one is made, this Manual treats rivers, floodplains, embankments and their sluices as WRD's, and the nalas, sump houses and road drains within the limits of an urban local body as that body's or BUIDCO's, as the record shows.

The first point is the basis of condition 4.13.2(c) in Bihar. A pokhar gives flood storage only above its full level, unless a notified operating rule commits it to be lowered before the SW monsoon. The 3-year operational limit and the 10-year maintenance allowance have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

4.14 Simplified methods for small sites

4.14.1 **Applicability.** Tier B local bodies may permit the simplified method for sites of **2 ha or less** outside flood-sensitive catchments. In flood-sensitive catchments, it may be used for sites of **0.5 ha or less**. All other sites shall use Clause 4.6. Until Table 4.3 (Annex 4B) is published, all Tier B sites shall also use Clause 4.6.

4.14.2 **Method.**

1. Read the PSD (L/s/ha) and SSR (m³/ha) for the site's zone, HSG and post-development imperviousness from **Table 4.3** (Annex 4B).
2. Required storage: V = SSR × A − V_credit (Clause 4.4.6.3).
3. Permissible discharges: Q_PSD,T = PSD_T × A for the 2-yr and 100-yr stages.
4. Select the low-flow orifice and upper control from the standard outlet table in Annex 4B (orifice sizes for the PSD at the stated depths), subject to the 50 mm minimum.
5. Provide a spillway or overflow under Clause 4.9, the RWH accounting of Clause 4.11, and the safety provisions of Clause 4.15.
6. Complete Form 4-2 (Tier B site sheet).

Table 4.3 — Tier B permissible site discharge and site storage requirement (template)

Zone (Annex 2A)	HSG	Imperviousness	PSD 2-yr (L/s/ha)	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), standard	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), flood-sensitive	SSR (m³/ha), standard	SSR (m³/ha), flood-sensitive
BR-Z1 South Bihar: BR-D South Bihar plain (Magadh–Bhojpur)	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
BR-Z1 South Bihar: BR-E South-east Ganga fringe and plateau margin	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain: BR-A Gandak–Burhi Gandak plain	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain: BR-B Mithila and Kosi plain	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai: BR-C Seemanchal	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai: Champaran terai strip of BR-A (Bagaha, Valmikinagar, Ramnagar, Narkatiaganj)	C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]

Worked example (illustrative — not design values).

A 0.4 ha residential layout in a Tier B Municipality, in a flood-sensitive catchment, with about 80% directly connected impervious area (area-weighted post-development CN about 92). Suppose Table 4.3 had been computed and gave the per-hectare equivalent of the Clause 4.6.7 example:

- PSD 100-yr = 356 / 2.0 = 178 L/s/ha
- SSR = 2,913 / 2.0 ≈ 1,460 m³/ha
- PSD 2-yr ≈ 17 L/s/ha

Then:

- Storage: V = 1,460 × 0.4 = **584 m³**. C_R = 0, so there is no retention credit.
- 100-yr release: 178 × 0.4 = **71 L/s**.
- 2-yr release: 17 × 0.4 = **7 L/s**. At about 1 m head this needs a low-flow orifice of about 60 mm, above the 50 mm minimum (Clause 4.8.2).
- Layout options:
  - a 400 m² underground tank 1.5 m deep; or
  - 250 m² of podium storage at 0.3 m (75 m³) plus a 350 m² tank 1.5 m deep (525 m³).
  - Rooftop storage at 150 mm over 1,200 m² of roof (180 m³) could replace part of the tank.
- RWH sumps are additional, and are assumed full (Clause 4.11).

> **Commentary.** Australian councils use permissible site discharge and site storage requirement tables in the same way (Sydney Water OSD guide; the Upper Parramatta River Catchment Trust handbook listed SSR of about 455 m³/ha). The illustrative SSR here, about 1,460 m³/ha, is much larger. That is the expected effect of combining a

> mixed-frequency cap with mandatory 48–72-hour storms at AMC III. MSMA 2 in Malaysia offers a similar simplified OSD method for sites under 5 ha. The MARC policy supplement offers smaller Kansas City municipalities adoptable alternatives within the regional standard; Clause 4.14 follows that model for Tier B.

4.14.3 **Fixed-coefficient route.** As an alternative to Clauses 4.6 and 4.14.2, the designer of any site of **1 ha or less**, under any Approving Authority and in any catchment, may size detention by Clauses 4.14.4 to 4.14.7. The route shall not be used where:

- (a) the site counts tank or waterbody storage in its design (Chapter 7);
- (b) any part of the site lies within a waterbody setback (Chapter 7); or
- (c) the site drains to a tank cascade whose storage is counted in a downstream design.

The route sets the release caps by fixed coefficients and does not need Table 4.3. It may therefore be used before Annex 4B is published. Retention (Clause 4.4), drawdown (Clause 4.7), outlets (Clause 4.8), the spillway (Clause 4.9), the downstream and tailwater checks (Chapter 5) and water quality (Chapter 8) still apply.

4.14.4 **Release caps.** Two caps apply at each point where runoff leaves the site:

$Q_{cap,10} = 2.78 \times C_{10} \times i_{10} \times A$ and $Q_{cap,2} = 2.78 \times C_2 \times i_2 \times A$

where Q_{cap} is in L/s; A is the site area (ha); i_{10} and i_2 are the 10% AEP (10-yr) and 50% AEP (2-yr) rainfall intensities (mm/h) for a **15-minute** duration at the site, from the sources of Chapter 2, with the climate factor of Clause 2.8; and C_{10} and C_2 are the fixed coefficients of Table 4.3A for the site's hydrologic soil group (Clause 3.7). For a site with more than one soil group, the coefficients are area-weighted.

Table 4.3A — Fixed release coefficients (provisional)

Hydrologic soil group	C_{10}	C_2
A (sandy, well drained)	0.05	0.02
B	0.08	0.03
C	0.15	0.08
D (clay, poorly drained)	0.25	0.15

$Q_{cap,10}$ is the maximum release for **every storm up to and including the 1% AEP (100-yr) storm**, in every catchment. $Q_{cap,2}$ is the maximum release for the 50% AEP (2-yr) storm. Where a cap is smaller than the discharge of a 50 mm orifice at the corresponding stage, the 50 mm orifice is deemed to comply (Clause 4.5.5.1).

4.14.5 **Storage.** The detention storage V (m^3) is the larger of V_{100} and V_2, each the largest over the durations d of Clause 2.5.2 (1 to 72 hours):

$V_{100} = \max_d [\, 10 \times C_v \times P_{100}(d) \times A - 1.8 \times Q_{cap,10} \times d \,]$

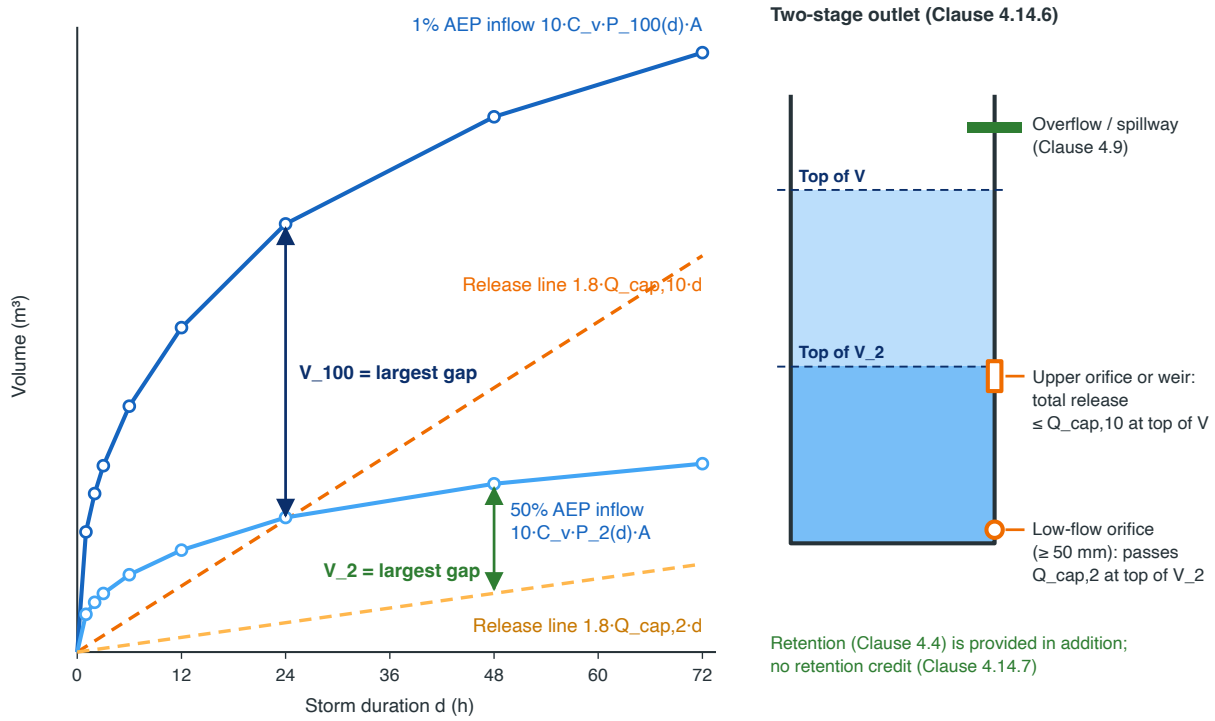
$V_2 = \max_d [\, 10 \times C_v \times P_2(d) \times A - 1.8 \times Q_{cap,2} \times d \,]$

where $P_{100}(d)$ and $P_2(d)$ are the 1% and 50% AEP rainfall depths (mm) for duration d (hours), with the climate factor; and C_v is the post-development volumetric coefficient: the composite C of Table 3.2 (upper half of each range), multiplied by Cf of Table 3.3 for the 1% AEP. For durations of 12 hours or more, C for every pervious surface shall be taken as not less than **0.50**. The factor 1.8 assumes an average release of half the cap over the storm (3.6×0.5).

4.14.6 **Outlet.** The outlet shall be a two-stage control: a low-flow orifice that passes $Q_{cap,2}$ when the storage holding V_2 is full, and an upper orifice or weir that limits the total release to $Q_{cap,10}$ at the top of V. The outlet table of Annex 4B may be used once it is published.

4.14.7 **Retention.** The retention volume of Clause 4.4 is provided in addition to V. No retention credit (Clause 4.4.6) is taken under this route.

Fixed-coefficient route for sites of 1 ha or less (Clauses 4.14.3–4.14.7) — schematic, not to scale



Dots: durations of Clause 2.5.2 (1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h). Pervious C ≥ 0.50 for d ≥ 12 h.

$Q_{cap,10} = 2.78 \times C_{10} \times i_{10} \times A$; $Q_{cap,2} = 2.78 \times C_2 \times i_2 \times A$; (L/s; A in ha; i in mm/h)

C_{10}, C_2 from Table 4.3A by soil group; i_{10}, i_2 for a 15-minute duration with the climate factor (Clause 2.8)

$V = \max(V_{100}, V_2)$; $V_T = \max$ over d of $[\, 10 \times C_v \times P_T(d) \times A - 1.8 \times Q_{cap} \times d \,]$ (m^3) ; 1.8 = 3.6 × 0.5 (average release of half the cap)

Figure 4.3 — Fixed-coefficient route for sites of 1 ha or less (Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7): the release caps Q_cap,10 and Q_cap,2 from Table 4.3A; the storage V as the largest gap, over the durations of Clause 2.5.2, between the cumulative inflow 10·C_v·P(d)·A and the release line 1.8·Q_cap·d, for the 1% and 50% AEP storms; and the two-stage outlet that passes Q_cap,2 at the top of V_2 and Q_cap,10 at the top of V. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the rainfall mass-curve (inflow minus outflow) storage concept and the single-coefficient peak cap of the PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed. (cl. 7.1.5).

Commentary. The fixed-coefficient route follows Singapore, which caps the peak runoff from every development of 0.2 ha or more with one runoff coefficient, C = 0.55, applied to the 10-yr storm (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., cl. 7.1.5, Addendum No. 3, 2025). It is quick to apply and quick to check: the cap needs only the site area, the soil group and two intensities. PUB's 0.55 is not used here, because Singapore's baseline is the existing urban drainage system, while this Manual's baseline is greenfield land (Clause 4.5.1.2). The coefficients of Table 4.3A are set by this Manual from the greenfield curve numbers of Clause 3.3 (CN 39, 61, 74 and 80 for soil groups A to D). They are the ratios of runoff to rainfall that those curve numbers give for 1-hour depths typical of the north Bihar plain, rounded down. They are therefore **provisional**. The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall confirm or revise them against NIH-DHAARA values for each zone when it issues Annex 4B.

> The route is deliberately **stricter** than the full method, so that simplicity costs the developer storage rather than costing the people downstream. The 100-yr release is held to about the greenfield 10-yr peak everywhere, which is the flood-sensitive rule of Clause 4.5.3; the storage assumes the outlet releases only half the cap on average; pervious ground is assumed wet in long storms; and no retention credit is taken. A designer who wants a smaller tank can use the full method of Clause 4.6. The storage formula is the rainfall-mass (inflow minus outflow) method. Clause 3.4.2 otherwise forbids rainfall-based peak methods for storage, because they ignore the shape of the hydrograph; this route is a stated exception because its conservative assumptions cover that error for small sites, and the 24- to 72-hour durations are always checked.

4.15 Safety, fencing and multi-use

4.15.1 **Depth limits for publicly accessible storage.** Where the public has access to a storage area (parks, playfields, open space, school grounds):

- (a) maximum depth in the 10% AEP storm: **0.45 m**;
- (b) maximum depth in the 1% AEP storm: **1.2 m**, except in a fenced zone under 4.15.3;
- (c) side slopes: no steeper than **4H:1V**, with at least a quarter of the perimeter at **6H:1V** or flatter for escape; and
- (d) no vertical drop greater than **0.3 m** within the storage area or at its edge.

4.15.2 **Wet basins.** Permanent pools shall have:

- a safety bench at least 3 m wide, no more than 0.3 m below the normal water level; and
- an emergent planting fringe that deters entry.

4.15.3 **Fencing.** A fence at least **1.2 m** high, of a non-climbable design with a lockable gate, is required around any part of a storage that:

- has a vertical wall or headwall drop greater than **0.6 m**;
- exceeds 1.2 m depth in the 1% AEP storm with slopes steeper than 4H:1V; or
- contains an outlet structure with an opening larger than 300 mm that is not grated.

4.15.4 **Outlets.** Every inlet and outlet opening larger than 300 mm accessible to the public shall be fitted with a grate or rack. The grate shall be designed so that a person pinned against it can escape: low approach velocity, inclined, with a large open area.

4.15.5 **Signs and depth markers.** Every publicly accessible storage shall have signs in Hindi and English stating that the area floods during rain, and a depth marker at the deepest point.

4.15.6 **Confined spaces.** Underground tanks shall have lockable covers. They shall be marked as confined spaces, and the maintenance declaration (Chapter 10) shall state the entry procedure.

4.15.7 **Vector control.** Dry storage shall drain completely (Clause 4.7) and have no low points that pond for more than 72 hours. Wet basins shall meet Clause 4.10.7.

> Commentary. The numeric limits in Clause 4.15 have no single direct precedent. They are drawn from common international practice, for example KC APWA 5600 (2006), which required at least a quarter of a dry-pond perimeter at 5:1 or flatter, a 20 ft (6 m) clearance from property lines and a 15 ft (4.6 m) maintenance strip. They are made somewhat stricter here because multi-use storage on open space land and in schools will be used by children during the monsoon. Standing water in dry basins is a mosquito-breeding risk, so complete drainage (Clause 4.15.7) is a public-health requirement, not an amenity.

4.16 Basis: why peak matching alone fails

Commentary. This section has no requirements. It records why this chapter requires release **below** pre-development rates, retention, long-duration checks and a downstream analysis, rather than simple peak matching.

1. **Timing.** Detention lowers a site's peak but stretches its hydrograph (Figure 4.1). Downstream, the stretched releases from many sites overlap with each other and with the main-stem peak. In Denver's study, ten basins each releasing 100% of the historic 100-yr peak produced 106% of the historic peak at the outlet. Only releasing 90% at each site brought it to 97% (UDFCD memo, 2012). A Colorado State University thesis found that location-blind on-site detention "can actually increase peak flows above post-development peaks". An optimisation study found that a downstream pond performed worse than upstream ponds because its outflow synchronised with the main stem (Water 2016, 8(7):290).
2. **Volume.** Detention does not remove volume. In the illustrative example, the post-development 100-yr storm produces about three times the runoff volume of the pre-development 10-yr storm (Clause 2.11). Only retention, or storage that empties to somewhere other than the receiving drain, reduces volume.
3. **Scale.** Kansas City modelling (McEnroe, 2005) found that uniform 3 cfs/ac control reduced Q100 by 36% in a 200-ac watershed. With the same control everywhere, Q100 still rose by 40% at 14 sq mi, and the benefit faded beyond about 1–2 sq mi. The KC committee concluded that "'match existing' can harm streams" (MARC Evolution deck). Georgia makes a ten-percent downstream analysis mandatory for the same reason: "Due to peak flow timing and runoff volume effects, some structural practices fail to reduce discharge peaks to pre-development levels downstream" (GSMM 2016).
4. **Design-storm dependence.** An Australian study of 20 real on-site detention systems found that designs using even ten temporal patterns "cannot reliably produce an OSD system design that will always be effective" under real rainfall (Water Science and Engineering, 2019). This is why Clause 4.6.3 routes the full duration matrix rather than one critical storm.
5. **Closed outfalls.** In Bihar, the governing failure is volume with no outlet when the river is high. Most large cities drain to a river that is embanked or that stands above their outfalls for days in a flood. Patna is ringed by the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun; when they rise, the sluice gates on the Ganga and the Punpun are closed, PMC blocks the drains connected to the Ganga, and the city then drains only through its sump houses and drainage pumping stations (as reported; a Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 cites 56 permanent and 28 temporary drainage pumping stations, of unclear scope [TBC]). In September 2019 most of Patna's sump houses were reported not working, and the State's inquiry found that pumps had been started late and drains not cleaned (as reported). The highest recorded levels of the rivers at the cities stand well above their danger levels: the Punpun at Sripalpur, Patna, 53.91 m (1976) against 50.60 m; the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, 50.52 m (2016) against 48.60 m; the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur, Muzaffarpur, 54.29 m (1987) against 52.53 m; the Bagmati at Hayaghat, Darbhanga, 48.96 m (1987) against 45.72 m; and the Mahananda at Dhengraghat, Purnia, 38.20 m (2017) against 35.65 m (CWC; datum to be confirmed [TBC]). In August 1975 the Sone and the Ganga entered Patna and ground floors stayed under water for 5–7 days (as reported). No hourly record of how long a river in Bihar stays above a city's outfalls was obtained [TBC], and no document was found that sets a design river level for an outfall; this Manual uses the highest recorded level at the nearest gauge and a closure of at least 7 days (Chapter 5). The Ganga showed in September 2026 how a river can exceed its record: press reports put it at 50.53–50.57 m at Gandhi Ghat on 5–6 September, above the level of 2016 (as reported). A perfectly orificed basin behind a closed outfall simply fills. No release-rate rule can fix that; it is handled by the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

The response in this Manual is layered:

- release below pre-development (Clause 4.5);
- retain the frequent storms (Clause 4.4);
- route long SW monsoon storms (Clause 4.6.3);
- prefer regional storage in the pokhar system (Clause 4.13); and

- check downstream and at the outfall (Chapter 5).

Kansas City's own history shows the price. On a test site, peak matching needed 3.0 ac-ft of storage and the 2011 comprehensive criteria needed 4.9 ac-ft (MARC Evolution deck). Over-detention costs more storage. That is the cost of protecting the catchment rather than only the site boundary.

4.17 Submittal requirements

Every site runoff-control submittal shall include a **Site Runoff Control Report** (Form 4-1) containing:

1. the Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) and the hydrology inputs (Chapter 3);
2. the evidence for the order of measures under Clause 4.3.1;
3. the RRV computation, infiltration tests, groundwater evidence and drawdown calculation (Clause 4.4);
4. the retention credit computation (Clause 4.4.6);
5. the release-rate criterion applied, standard or flood-sensitive, with the Annex 4A map extract (Clause 4.5);
6. a results table in the format of Clause 4.6.7 for every AEP and duration, with the governing case highlighted;
7. stage–storage and stage–discharge tables and plots, and inflow/outflow hydrographs for the governing cases;
8. the drawdown calculation (Clause 4.7);
9. outlet details, including orifice sizes and levels, trash racks and anti-vortex devices (Clause 4.8);
10. the spillway or overflow calculation, freeboard and hazard classification, and the geotechnical report where required (Clause 4.9);
11. the RWH and detention accounting, with tank sections showing zone levels (Clause 4.11);
12. the design groundwater level and flotation check (Clause 4.12);
13. the downstream and tailwater report (Chapter 5, Form 5-1); and
14. the safety provisions (Clause 4.15) and the draft maintenance declaration (Chapter 10).

Tier B sites using Clause 4.14.2 shall submit Form 4-2 in place of items 6 and 7. Sites using the fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14.3) shall submit Form 4-3 in place of items 6 and 7.

References (chapter)

- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01 (approved 10 Dec 2025). https://kcmetro.apwa.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/23/2026/01/APWA-Section-5600_Storm-Drainage-Systems-Facilities.pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA 5600 Stormwater Standards Policy Supplement (7 Nov 2025); APWA 5600 Manual factsheet. https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement ; https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-5600-manual-factsheet
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (5601.8, 5608.4). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- MARC / APWA (2012). Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality. https://www.marc.org/sites/default/files/2022-05/Best_Management_Practices_for_Stormwater_Quality.pdf
- MARC. The Evolution of Regional Stormwater Design Standards (presentation; McEnroe 2005 results). https://www.marc2.org/Assets/Environment/WQEC/The_Evolution_of_Regional_Strormwater_Design_Standards.pdf
- Atlanta Regional Commission / Georgia EPD (2016). Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, Volume 1. https://documents.atlantaregional.com/gastormwater/GSMM_2016%20EDITION_FINAL_V1.pdf
- Urban Drainage and Flood Control District (now MHFD) (2012). Full Spectrum Detention Release Rate Memorandum. https://mhfd.specialdistrict.org/files/23cb85ce8/UDFCD_Full_Spectrum_Detention_Release_Rate_Memorandum.pdf
- Mile High Flood District. Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual, Volume 2 (Storage).
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management. https://www.water.gov.my/jps/resources/auto%20download%20images/5844dfbba8fc1.pdf
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2012). Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA), 2nd ed.
- PUB Singapore (2024). On-site Detention Tank Technical Guide, Rev. 3; Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., Addendum No. 3 (16 Apr 2025). https://www.pub.gov.sg/-/media/PUB/PDF/detentionTank.pdf
- Sydney Water (2020). On-site Stormwater Detention Guide (SW201). https://www.sydneywater.com.au/content/dam/sydneywater/documents/on-site-stormwater-detention-guide.pdf
- Upper Parramatta River Catchment Trust (2005). On-site Stormwater Detention Handbook, 4th ed.
- "On-site stormwater detention for Australian development projects: does it meet frequent flow management objectives?" *Water Science and Engineering* (2019). https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1674237019300213
- Optimisation of urban detention (2016). *Water* 8(7):290. https://doi.org/10.3390/w8070290
- Colorado State University. Spatially Dependent On-Site Detention Policies (thesis). https://mountainscholar.org/bitstreams/f4dbec4e-a44f-4933-8d54-a097e741f44a/download
- Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, sections 177, 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 198, 201, 219, 251 and 252 (IELRC copy). https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956 (copy on the Bihar State Wetland Authority site). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/Downloads/BIHAR%20PUBLIC%20LAND%20ENCROACHMENT%20ACT,%201956.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (components and progress; the progress table is mislabelled "As on 17.12.2026"). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/jaljivan.aspx
- Bihar State Wetland Authority. Home page (Ramsar sites) and "Acts/Rules/Notification" page (draft notifications under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ ; https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ActRulesandNotification.aspx
- Ramsar Convention. Ramsar Information Sheet, Kabartal Wetland (site 2436). https://rsis.ramsar.org/RISapp/files/RISrep/IN2436RIS_2010_en.pdf

- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar (2025). Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, Implementation of Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers within Bihar State (in Hindi), and the memorandum with NIH Roorkee of 3 August 2025 for the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari, as annexed to the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, of 12 January 2026 in NGT O.A. 200/2014 (*M.C. Mehta v. Union of India*). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan. Objection of 23 November 2024 in M.A. 18/2024 in NGT O.A. 155/2022/EZ (three ponds of Darbhanga). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1732521637_pagenumber.pdf
- National Institute of Hydrology. Waterlogged area mapping and hydrological data analysis of the Mokama tal area, research report (cited from a summary). https://www.indiawaterportal.org/articles/waterlogged-area-mapping-and-hydrological-data-analysis-mokama-tal-area-research-report
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A (§8.5).
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2014). Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014 (English copy dated December 2014, on the PMC building plan approval portal; Notification No. 577 (file 11/ न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text): bye-laws 29, 30, 32, 47 and 51. https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/PlanningPortals/images/Bihar%20Building%20Bylaw%20English%20Dec-2014.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2026). Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, posted 5 June 2026 (draft; not notified as of September 2026): clauses 6, 23, 24 and 41 and Table 5. https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2026/Jun/05-Jun-2026/19/LatestNews/0424d72a-9e14-4227-8221-8adb08c0c009.pdf
- Reports on the status of the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 (GKToday; Patna Press). https://www.gktoday.in/bihar-drafts-new-building-map-approval-rules/ ; https://patnapress.com/bihar-building-bye-laws-2026-self-certification-draft/
- Report on the amendment of the 2014 Byelaws relaxing commercial setbacks (Patna Press; number and date not given). https://patnapress.com/bihar-commercial-building-bye-laws-setback-rules-relaxed/
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2024). Guidebook on Application, Approval and Occupancy Procedure under Bihar Building Bye Laws, 2014. https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2024/May/07-May-2024/19/DyPage/cd47e267-11d1-4671-a56a-b63a6c83a779.pdf
- Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006, sections 1(3), 2(c), 5 and 18 (Bihar Gazette scan, FAOLEX copy; commencement and notified areas not confirmed [TBC]). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND197019.pdf
- Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, sections 193, 198, 201 and 219 (IELRC copy). https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311, 5 April 2018 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120, 16 September 2026, Schedule V (PRS copy). https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2026/Act32of2026BR.pdf
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme (report number and tabling date not confirmed [TBC]). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Report in NGT O.A. 728/2023, citing CGWB (December 2023) on arsenic and fluoride in groundwater by district (cited from a search summary of the NGT news-updates page; not read) [TBC].
- Central Ground Water Board. Dynamic ground water resources of Bihar, 2024 assessment (cited from a search summary). https://www.cgwb.gov.in/cgwbpnm/public/uploads/documents/17435848191841710360file.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. District ground water profiles of Supaul, Saharsa, Katihar and Sitamarhi (2011) (cited from search summaries) [TBC].

- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin, 31 October 2026. https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- Rajya Sabha. Reply to Question No. 266 of 27 November 2024 (storm-water drainage projects and drainage pumping stations in Bihar; seen only through a search summary). https://rsdebate.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/754718/1/PQ_266_27112024_S10_p23_p25.pdf
- Patna High Court. CWJC No. 15027 of 2018 with connected writs, oral order of 18 October 2019. https://slic.org.in/uploads/2019/10/Vishal-PIL-ORDER.pdf
- Reports on the Patna waterlogging of September 2019 and its inquiry (Business Standard, 14 October 2019; Hindustan Times; CBS News, AFP). https://business-standard.com/article/news-ani/show-cause-notices-served-to-officials-responsible-for-patna-water-logging-says-chief-secretary-119101401451_1.html ; https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-lucknow/20191001/281797105729423 ; https://www.cbsnews.com/news/monsoon-season-flooding-india-heavy-late-rains-kills-more-than-100-in-several-days-2019-09-30
- Lok Sabha. Statement of 16 January 1976 on the Patna flood of August 1975 (seen only through a search extract). https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/857276/1/05_XV_16-01-1976_p57_p59_PII.pdf
- Reports on the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, in September 2026 and the closing of the sluice gates (ThePrint, PTI; Patna Press). https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan. Application in the NGT (Eastern Zone), 2025, against the Darbhanga storm water drainage and canal-lining projects. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755167303.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012) (Bihar stations, pp. M32–M38). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- Dasa, Syamasundara (ed.). *Hindi Shabdasagara*. Kashi: Nagari Pracarini Sabha, 1965–1975 (entry चौर), via DSAL. https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/dasa-hindi/
- Report on the recurrent waterlogging of Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh, Patna (Dialogue Earth, 2019; cited from the research notes for this Manual, not re-read) [TBC].
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 456:2000 Plain and Reinforced Concrete — Code of Practice.
- Government of India. Dam Safety Act, 2021.
- Chow, V.T., Maidment, D.R. and Mays, L.W. (1988). *Applied Hydrology*. McGraw-Hill (AMC conversion).

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
4A	Flood-sensitive catchment boundaries (GIS); shallow-groundwater zone map
4B	Tier B tables: PSD and SSR (Table 4.3), retention credit factor C_R, standard outlet sizes; confirmed fixed release coefficients (Table 4.3A)
4C	Worked example (Tier A) with full routing tables
Form 4-1	Site Runoff Control Report
Form 4-2	Tier B Site Sheet
Form 4-3	Fixed-coefficient Route Sheet (Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7)

CHAPTER 5

Downstream and Tailwater Analysis

5.1 Purpose and scope

5.1.1 This chapter sets two checks that every regulated development and every public drainage project must pass.

- **The downstream analysis** (Clauses 5.3 to 5.5) confirms that the project does not make flooding worse below its outfall.
- **The tailwater analysis** (Clauses 5.6 to 5.13) sets the water level the system discharges into, including tide, storm surge, sea-level rise, river backwater and sand-bar closure. It also requires the system to cope when its outfall is closed.

5.1.2 This chapter applies to:

- (a) every site to which Chapter 4 applies;
- (b) every minor- and major-system drainage project under Chapter 6; and
- (c) every regional detention or tank restoration project under Clause 4.13 and Chapter 7.

5.1.3 Rainfall and joint-occurrence inputs come from Chapter 2, in particular Clauses 2.5.3 and 2.12. Hydrologic methods come from Chapter 3. Site release criteria come from Chapter 4. Hydraulic design of gates, culverts and pumps follows Chapter 9.

5.1.4 **No tidal outfalls in Bihar.** Bihar is landlocked: it has no coast, no tide and no Coastal Regulation Zone. No outfall in the State discharges to the sea, a tidal creek or an estuary, so the provisions of this chapter that depend on tide, storm surge, sea-level rise or a river mouth do not apply in Bihar: Clause 5.7 and Annex 5A, cases J1 to J3 of Table 5.2, the tidal lock windows of Clause 5.10.3, the seawater requirement of Clause 5.11.3(a) (gates and seats shall still be of corrosion-resistant materials), and Clause 5.13. They are kept so that the clause numbers of this Manual match its other State editions. In Bihar the receiving water is a river, reached directly, through a sluice or gate in an embankment or a town protection wall, or through a drainage pumping station (a sump house); a drain or canal of WRD; a nala of a Nagar Nigam, of BUIDCO or of another drain-owning body; a pumped sump behind a river embankment; or a pokhar, chaur, maun, tal or other water body, and:

- (a) its tailwater is set by Clauses 5.6 and 5.8, including Clause 5.8.5;
- (b) where Clauses 5.10 to 5.12, Form 5-1 or Chapter 6 refer to the J1 tailwater or the J1 tidal curve, the minor-system tailwater of Clause 5.6.2 or 5.8.5 applies, as a time series where the receiving level varies; where they refer to the J2 tailwater or to HAT + surge + SLA, the major-system tailwater applies: the design-AEP river level of Clause 5.8.4(b), or the major-system tailwater of Clause 5.8.5, whichever is higher at the outfall; and
- (c) the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 applies where an outfall is closed by a river or by a receiving drain, with the river lock of Clause 5.8.5(a) in place of the tidal lock windows.

> Commentary. The drains of Bihar's large cities fail in places that site design does not see, because almost every one of those cities stands on a river that decides when its drains can discharge. Patna is "surrounded on three sides by rivers – The Ganga, Sone, and Punpun" (CAG, 2020); its drains discharge to the Ganga and the Punpun through sluices that are closed when the rivers rise, and from then the city drains only through its drainage pumping stations, the sump houses (as reported). Muzaffarpur stands on the Burhi Gandak, Darbhanga on the

Bagmati and the Adhwara group of rivers, Hajipur at the meeting of the Gandak and the Ganga, Bhagalpur and Munger on the Ganga, and Purnia in the basin of the Mahananda. The highest flood levels at the CWC gauges of these cities stand 0.6–3.3 m above their danger levels (CWC, 2026), and in September 2026 the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, was reported above its highest flood level (as reported), so an outfall set below the highest flood level is closed by the river for days, not hours. The rivers of north Bihar run between about 3,606 km of embankments (WRD Order No. 143, 2025) and rise with rain that falls in Nepal. The outfalls also belong to one body while the drains above them belong to others: the embankments are WRD's, while the drains and sump houses behind them are those of PMC or BUIDCO, which took over the assets of the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad in 2018; the split between the two is unconfirmed (Chapter 6, Clause 6.9). No document found during research sets a design river level for any outfall, and no design return period has been published for the drainage of any Bihar city. A detention basin that meets every release rate in Chapter 4 still fails if the drain below it is already full, or if the river it drains to stands above its outfall for days. This chapter makes both failure modes part of the design. Bihar has no tidal outfall, so Clause 5.1.4 says which of the chapter's coastal provisions fall away and what takes their place.

5.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Analysis point	A location on the downstream system where pre- and post-project conditions are compared (Clause 5.3.3).
Contributing catchment	The whole area draining to an analysis point, on and off site.
Major drain	A channel listed as a major drain in the basin plan or Annex 5B, or any river, WRD canal, the nalas and ghat drains of Patna that outfall to the Ganga, including the Bakarganj nala and the 19 ghat drains listed by BUIDCO, the drains of Patna that outfall to the Punpun, including the Badshahi drain, the Saidpur, Kurji and Anandpuri nalas of Patna, the drains that outfall to the Burhi Gandak at Muzaffarpur, to the Bagmati and the Adhwara group at Darbhanga, to the Gandak and the Ganga at Hajipur, to the Ganga at Bhagalpur and Munger and to the Mahananda and its tributaries in Purnia district, any drain or canal of WRD, any drain maintained by a Nagar Nigam, BUIDCO or BIADA with an internal width of 1.0 m or more, any irrigation canal that receives storm water, or a tidal creek.
Chart datum (CD)	The datum of the published tide tables and nautical charts, to which tidal heights are referred.
Mean sea level (MSL)	Average sea level over a long period at a tide gauge.
MHWS	Mean high water springs: the average of high waters at spring tides.
HAT	Highest astronomical tide: the highest level predicted under average meteorological conditions over a full tidal cycle (18.6 years).
Storm surge	The rise in sea level above the astronomical tide caused by wind and low pressure, mainly during cyclones.
Still-water level	Astronomical tide plus surge, excluding individual waves.
Sea-level allowance (SLA)	The allowance added to present-day tidal levels for sea-level rise over the design life (Clause 5.7.4).
Tailwater	The water level at the downstream end of a drain, outlet or storage.
Tide-lock	The condition in which the tailwater is at or above the upstream water level, so a gravity outfall cannot discharge.
Lock window	A period during which the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 sets gravity discharge to zero.
Sand bar	A bar of beach sand that partly or fully closes a river mouth or creek inlet.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Project datum	The levelling datum used on the project drawings. It must be tied to a Survey of India benchmark (Clause 5.7.2).

5.3 Extent of the downstream analysis

5.3.1 The downstream analysis shall start at each site or project outfall. It shall continue downstream to the **first** of:

- (a) the point at which the project area is **10% or less** of the contributing catchment;
- (b) the next **tank, pokhar** or other waterbody with a surplus weir or controlled outlet; or
- (c) the next **major drain**, or the sea.

The end point itself shall be analysed (Figure 5.1).

5.3.2 Where the analysis ends at a tank or pokhar under 5.3.1(b), it shall report:

- the change in the tank's maximum water level; and
- the change in surplus-weir discharge, for the AEPs and durations of Clause 5.4.3.

If the maximum water level rises, the analysis shall continue below the surplus weir to the next end point.

5.3.3 Analysis points shall be set at least at:

- (a) each site outfall;
- (b) each confluence with a drain or channel whose contributing catchment is at least half that of the receiving drain at that point;
- (c) each culvert, bridge or road crossing;
- (d) each location recorded as flood-prone by the local body, PMC, BSDMA or WRD; and
- (e) each building or road segment lying within the 1% AEP flood extent along the route. Representative points may be used where buildings are closely spaced.

5.3.4 **Small sites.** For sites of less than **0.5 ha**, the Authority may accept a simplified downstream statement (Form 5-2) in place of the full analysis, where all of the following hold:

- the receiving public drain has documented capacity for its minor-system design flow (Chapter 6);
- no flood-prone location is recorded within 500 m downstream; and
- the site does not drain to a tidal or backwater-affected outfall.

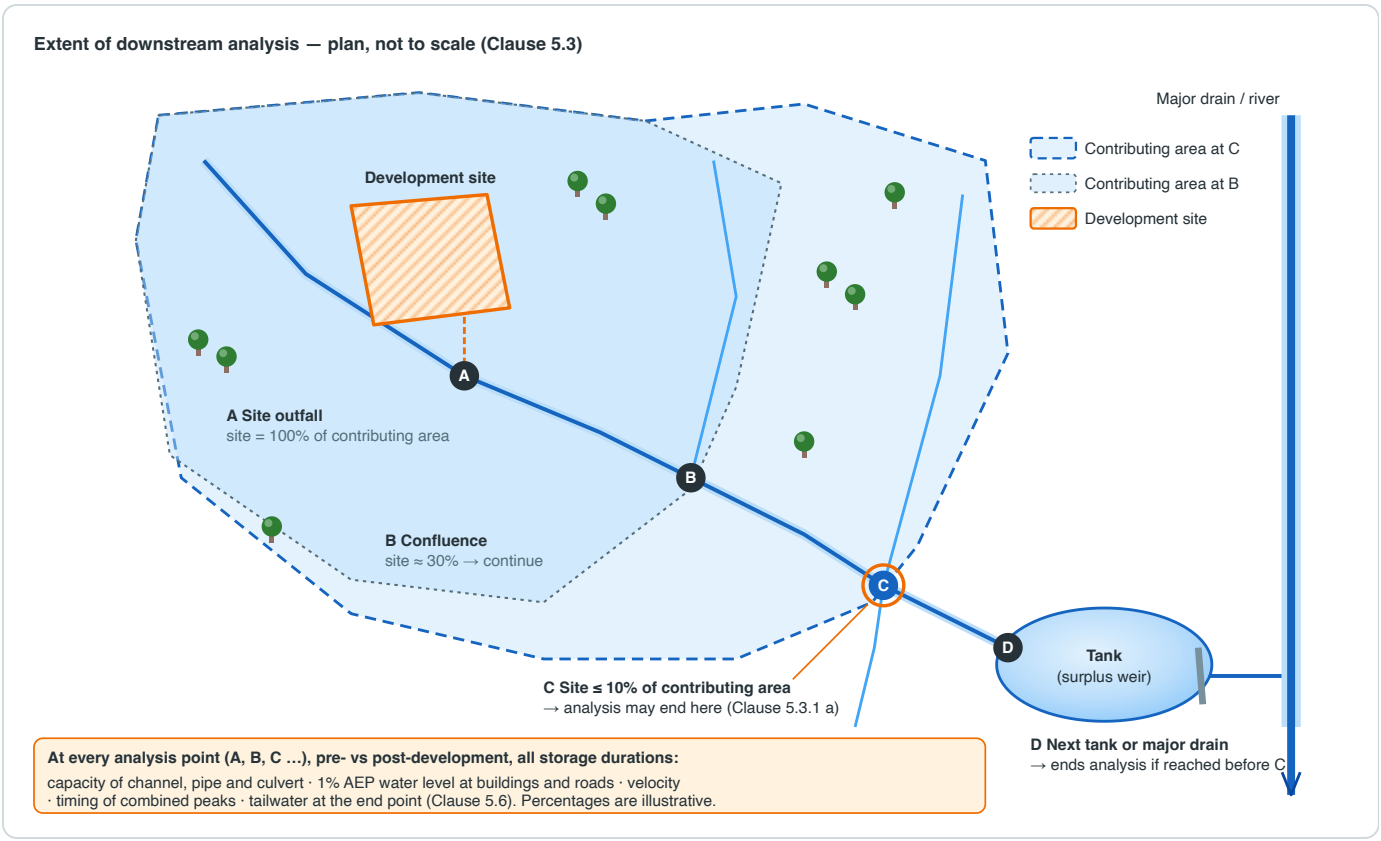


Figure 5.1 — Extent of downstream analysis: analysis points A–D, the contributing area at each point, the 10% point, and the next pokhar or major drain as an alternative end point. Schematic; percentages are illustrative. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the ten-percent rule in the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016, Vol. 2 §3.1.9) and KC APWA Section 5600 (2006, 5601.5).

> **Commentary.** The 10% rule has established precedent. KC APWA 5600 (2006) required the downstream system to be analysed "to the point the development's land mass is less than 10% of the total watershed". The Georgia manual makes the ten-percent analysis a mandatory standard (GSMM 2016, Standard #8). The tank or major-drain end point has no direct precedent; this Manual adds it for Bihar. In Patna, whose drainage "comprises hierarchy of natural and man-made drains that ultimately discharge surface run off and sewage to River Ganga and Punpun" (CAG, 2020) and where the 5.61 km Saidpur nala carries the runoff of nine drainage pumping stations and one sewage treatment plant (as reported), and in north Bihar, where drains end in chaurs and mauns that drain on to the rivers, as Kabartal drains through the Bagras maun to the Burhi Gandak (Ramsar Information Sheet, 2020), the 10% point can lie many kilometres downstream, across several tanks. A tank with a working surplus weir changes the hydrograph completely, so the analysis is better ended there and the tank level reported. Clause 5.3.2 prevents that end point from hiding a rise in the tank level. The small-site statement (5.3.4) and its 500 m distance have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

5.4 What the analysis must check

5.4.1 **Scenarios.** Each analysis shall compare:

- (a) **Existing**: the present downstream system and present land use of the whole contributing catchment, with the project site at its pre-project state; and
- (b) **With project**: the same, with the project and all its controls (Chapter 4) in place.

Where the Authority's basin plan defines future land use, the Authority may also require:

- (c) **Future**: the catchment fully developed under the plan, all to Chapter 4 standards, with and without the project.

5.4.2 **Quantities to be checked at every analysis point:**

- (a) **Capacity**: peak flow against the capacity of every channel, pipe, culvert and crossing, for the minor-system AEP of that element (Chapter 6) and for 1% AEP;
- (b) **Flood levels**: 1% AEP maximum water level at buildings (at the lowest opening) and on roads (at the crown and at the deepest point);
- (c) **Velocities**: peak velocity for 50%, 10% and 1% AEP;
- (d) **Timing of combined peaks**: the hydrograph at each confluence, showing the time to peak of the project outflow and of the receiving drain; and
- (e) **Duration of inundation**: on roads and at buildings, the time above the Chapter 6 depth limits.

5.4.3 **Storms.** The analysis shall use:

- 50%, 10% and 1% AEP;
- the duration set of Clause 2.5.2, at least the durations that give the highest level at each analysis point (these will usually be longer than at the site); and
- the 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms in every case.

The AMC rule of Clause 2.11.4 applies. Areal reduction follows Clause 2.7, applied to the contributing catchment at each analysis point and never to the site storage.

5.4.4 **Method.** The analysis shall:

- use a hydrograph method that combines hydrographs at confluences (SWMM, HEC-HMS, or an equivalent);
- include a hydraulic model with backwater (SWMM dynamic wave, HEC-RAS, or equivalent) wherever tailwater or backwater affects any analysis point; and
- not use the Rational Method at any analysis point, because it cannot represent timing.

Off-site areas shall be modelled at their present land use. Upstream detention shall be included only where it is built, maintained and documented.

5.4.5 **Tailwater.** The downstream end of the model shall use the tailwater of Clauses 5.6 to 5.9 and the sand-bar condition of Clause 5.13 where applicable.

> **Commentary.** Clause 5.4.2(d) exists because detention changes when the site's water arrives, not only how much arrives (Clause 4.16). A Colorado State University thesis and a *Water* (2016) optimisation study both found that delayed site releases can coincide with the main-stem peak and raise it. Georgia's manual states the result directly: some structural practices "fail to reduce discharge peaks to pre-development levels downstream" because of "peak flow timing and runoff volume effects" (GSMM 2016). The duration-of-inundation check (5.4.2(e)) matters in the river-locked cities of Bihar, whose outfalls lie behind sluices, embankments or a town protection wall and below the highest flood levels of the rivers they drain to, and where the rivers stand high for days: the highest flood levels at the CWC gauges of the cities stand 0.6–3.3 m above the danger levels (the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, 50.52 m against 48.60 m; the Punpun at Sripalpur 53.91 m against 50.60 m) (CWC, 2026), ground floors in Patna were reported under water for 5–7 days in the flood of August 1975, and the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported above its highest flood level on 5 and 6 September 2026 (as reported). Detention that prolongs releases can lengthen that time even when it lowers the peak.

5.5 Acceptance criteria

5.5.1 The project is acceptable if, at every analysis point and for every AEP and duration of Clause 5.4.3, comparing "with project" to "existing":

- (a) the 1% AEP maximum water level does not rise by more than **10 mm** at any habitable building, at any building's lowest opening, or on any road carriageway;
- (b) no building that is not flooded in the existing case is flooded with the project, and no building or road that meets the Chapter 6 freeboard or depth limits in the existing case fails them;
- (c) peak flow does not exceed the existing peak at the minor-system AEP of each element, or at 1% AEP;
- (d) peak velocity in lined channels stays within the permissible velocity for the lining (Chapter 6: 3.0 m/s maximum); and
- (e) in unlined or natural channels, peak velocity for 50% and 10% AEP does not increase by more than **10%**, unless protection is provided under Chapter 9.

5.5.2 The duration of inundation under 5.4.2(e) shall be reported. The Authority may refuse a project that increases the duration of road closure on an arterial or emergency route.

5.5.3 **Where the criteria are not met**, the project shall do one or more of the following:

- (a) reduce release rates or increase storage (Chapter 4);
- (b) build downstream improvements, with the consent of the owner of the downstream system. These shall not transfer the problem further downstream, and shall be re-analysed under this chapter;
- (c) contribute to a regional facility under Clause 4.13; or
- (d) under Clause 5.5.4, change the release strategy.

5.5.4 **Timing exception.** Where the analysis shows that detention raises downstream levels because of timing, the Authority may vary the site release-rate criteria of Clause 4.5. This applies only where the site discharges within the lower tenth of the contributing catchment, directly to a major drain, tidal creek or the sea, and only on the following conditions:

- (a) the varied strategy meets 5.5.1;
- (b) the retention requirement (Clause 4.4) and WQv treatment (Chapter 8) are met in full; and
- (c) the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10) is met.

> **Commentary.** The 10 mm tolerance (5.5.1(a)) has no direct precedent. It is meant to be at or below the numerical precision of a typical one-dimensional model, so that "no increase" can be tested without arguing over rounding. The 10% velocity tolerance is likewise set by this Manual. The timing exception in 5.5.4 follows the Georgia manual, where the downstream analysis can show "that peak controls are not needed" and allow them to be waived (GSMM 2016, Standard #8). It is limited here to sites low in the catchment, which is where synchronisation with the main-stem peak is most likely (*Water* 2016, 8(7):290). It is not available above that, because the evidence on scale (Clause 4.16) shows that early release from many upstream sites raises peaks.

5.6 Tailwater: general and non-tidal outfalls

5.6.1 Every drain, outlet and storage shall be designed against a stated tailwater. A free outfall shall be assumed only where the outlet invert is above the maximum receiving water level for the case being checked.

5.6.2 **Minor-system tailwater, non-tidal.** The tailwater is the receiving system's water level at the time of the minor-system peak, from the downstream model. Where no model exists, use:

- for a receiving pipe, its obvert; or
- for a receiving open drain, its full-bank level less freeboard (Chapter 6).

5.6.3 **Major-system tailwater, non-tidal.** The tailwater is the receiving system's 1% AEP water level, unless Clause 5.8 allows a coincident lower level.

5.6.4 **Tidal and backwater outfalls.** Clauses 5.7 to 5.13 apply in addition.

5.6.5 **Storage elements.** Detention, tanks and pumped sumps shall be routed with a time-varying tailwater (Clause 4.6.6), not a constant level, wherever the tailwater varies with tide or with the receiving system's hydrograph.

5.7 Tidal tailwater: datums, surge and sea-level allowance

5.7.1 **Design tailwater levels.** For outfalls to the sea, tidal creeks, estuaries, backwaters and tidal reaches of rivers and canals:

Table 5.1 — Design tailwater levels for tidal outfalls

Design case	Tailwater
Minor-system design (Chapter 6)	**MHWS + SLA**
Major-system design and storage design	**HAT + surge + SLA**, with the surge term defined in Clause 5.7.3
Joint case (Clause 2.12(b))	1% AEP still-water level + SLA

The SLA is **+0.3 m minimum** (Clause 5.7.4). The cases to be run are listed in Clause 5.9.

5.7.2 **Sources and datums.**

- (a) **Tidal levels.** MHWS, HAT and MSL shall be taken from the current edition of the Indian tide tables published by the National Hydrographic Office (NHO) or by the Survey of India, for the nearest standard or secondary port, or from the port authority's published tidal levels. The edition and port shall be stated.
- (b) **Datum conversion.** Tide-table heights are referred to chart datum. They shall be converted to the project datum through a documented connection between chart datum, the tide gauge zero and a Survey of India benchmark. The offset and its source shall be stated on Form 5-1.
- (c) **Estuaries, creeks and canals.** For outfalls inside estuaries, creeks, backwaters or tidal canals (for example the estuaries of the coastal States; there is none in Bihar, Clause 5.1.4), tidal levels may differ from the open coast. Open-coast levels shall be used unless measured levels over at least one spring–neap cycle, or a calibrated hydrodynamic model, justify a different value. No reduction below open-coast levels shall be taken without such evidence.
- (d) **Interim.** Until Annex 5A is published, the designer shall obtain the values directly from the sources in (a) and record them.

5.7.3 **Storm surge.**

- (a) **Major-system and storage design.** The surge term in "HAT + surge" is the **10% AEP (10-yr) storm surge** for the coastal segment, given in Annex 5A. The 1% AEP surge is used only in the joint case of Clause 2.12(b), with the 10-yr 48-hour storm. That keeps the two cases symmetric, so that a rare rainfall is never paired with a rare surge.
- (b) **Joint case.** The 1% AEP still-water level for Clause 2.12(b) is taken from Annex 5A.
- (c) Until Annex 5A is published, both values shall be taken from a site-specific study using INCOIS, IMD or NCCR surge hindcasts or return-level analyses. The study shall state its source, method and record length.

- (d) Wave set-up shall be added where the outfall faces the open sea without a protected entrance.

5.7.4 **Sea-level allowance.** The SLA shall be:

- (a) **+0.3 m** minimum for every element;
- (b) greater than 0.3 m where the State, PMAA or the Authority adopts a higher projection for the planning area; and
- (c) assessed for the design life of the element. For elements with a design life of more than 50 years, the designer shall report the effect of a sea-level rise of twice the SLA as a sensitivity run.

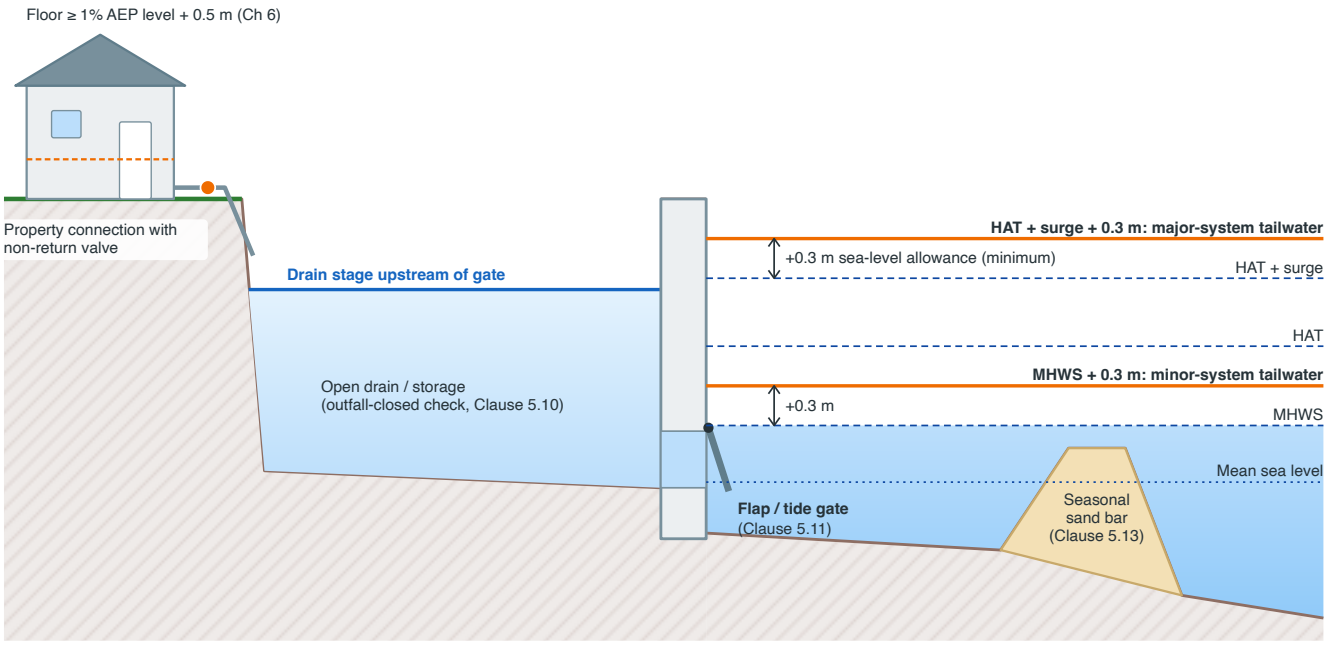


Figure 5.2 — Tidal outfall: flap gate, property non-return valve, and the design tailwater levels (MHWS + 0.3 m for the minor system; HAT + surge + 0.3 m for the major system), with a seasonal sand bar at the mouth. Schematic, not to scale. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the tidal tailwater table in MoHUA/CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Part A, Table 6.2.

Commentary. CPHEEO (2019) Table 6.2 sets the design tailwater for coastal outfalls as:

- MHWN to MHWS for a minor storm (more frequent than 1 in 5 years);
- MHWS to HAT for a major storm; and
- "Effect of climate change: additional 0.3 m".

CPHEEO also says the joint probability of storm, tide and surge "should" be considered, with the state maritime board consulted. This Manual takes the upper end of each CPHEEO range, adds surge for the major system, and makes the joint case explicit (Clause 2.12). CPHEEO does not require surge to be added; this Manual adds it because the surge records of the coastal States showed why it is needed there; Bihar has no coast, and the surge term does not arise in the State.

> Indian tide tables have been published by the Survey of India since the nineteenth century (Survey of India, Tidal Predictions). Current Indian tidal predictions also appear in the NHO's tide tables. One port document describes the current edition as covering 95 Indian ports, based on NHO observations and on data from civil ports, NIO and INCOIS (Adani Ports, Dahej tide table 2025, citing NHO INP-12). INCOIS runs coastal tide gauges and issues storm-surge and swell-surge warnings. None of these is used for design in Bihar, which has no coast, and Annex 5A is not prepared for the State (Clause 5.1.4).

5.8 Riverine backwater

5.8.1 **Where it applies.** Outfalls to rivers and canals whose water level in a storm can exceed the outfall invert shall be designed with riverine backwater. This includes:

- the **Ganga** along **Patna**, from **Dighaghat** past **Gandhi Ghat** to the **Punpun** confluence, with the **Sone** at **Maner** and the **Punpun** at **Sripalpur**, the town protection wall, the sluices and the gated and pumped outfalls of the city's drains and sump houses (Clause 5.8.5(a) and (b));
- the **Burhi Gandak** at **Muzaffarpur**, the **Bagmati** and the **Adhwara** group at **Darbhanga**, the **Gandak** and the Ganga at **Hajipur**, the **Mahananda** and its tributaries in **Purnia** district, and every other embanked river of north Bihar with the towns behind its embankments (Clause 5.8.5(c));
- the rivers that rise in **Nepal**, with the releases of the **Kosi** barrage at **Bhimnagar** and the **Gandak** barrage at **Valmikinagar** (Clauses 5.8.3 and 5.8.5(d));
- the **Kosi** between its embankments and the land behind them (Clause 5.8.5(e));
- the **Ganga** at **Buxar**, **Mokama** (Hathidah), **Munger** and **Bhagalpur**, and the outfalls of the drains that discharge to it there (Clause 5.8.5(a));
- any drain or canal of **WRD**, and any irrigation canal that receives storm water (Clause 5.8.5(f)); and
- elsewhere: any river or WRD channel listed in Annex 5B.

5.8.2 **River levels.** River water levels shall be taken from:

- (a) WRD design flood levels or recorded highest flood levels for the reach, where published; or
- (b) a hydraulic model (HEC-RAS or equivalent) of the river reach. The model shall use:
  - the river design flood from a hydrograph method (Chapter 3), with continuous simulation where Chapter 3 requires it;
  - the tidal boundary of Clause 5.7 at the mouth; and
  - the sand-bar condition of Clause 5.13.

5.8.3 **Reservoir and tank releases.** Where a reservoir or tank upstream can release to the river (for example the Kosi barrage at Bhimnagar in Nepal, the Gandak barrage at Valmikinagar, the Indrapuri barrage on the Sone, and the dams on the Sone and its tributaries upstream of the State), the river level shall include the release given by the reservoir's operating rule for the storm being checked. Where there is no published rule, it shall include the largest recorded release.

5.8.4 **Coincidence of site storm and river flood.** Unless a joint-probability study is accepted by the Authority, the more severe of the following governs:

- (a) the site design storm (AEP as required), with the river at its **10% AEP (10-yr)** level; and
- (b) the site **10% AEP** storm, with the river at its design-AEP level (1% AEP for the major system).

The two storms in each pair shall have the same duration and timing where they are generated by the same rainfall event.

5.8.5 **River-locked outfalls, the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun around Patna, the embanked rivers of north Bihar, floods from Nepal, the Kosi, and discharges to WRD drains and irrigation canals.**

- (a) **River-locked outfalls.** For an outfall to a river directly, through a sluice or gate in an embankment or a town protection wall or through a drainage pumping station (a sump house), or into a drain that itself discharges in one of those ways, the designer shall identify the body that operates each sluice, gate and pumping station, and obtain the sill of each gate, the crest of the embankment or wall, the installed pumping capacity and the operating levels, including the river level at which each sluice is closed. Every level shall state its datum and its connection to the gauge datum of the nearest CWC or WRD gauge.
    - **Design river level.** The river level of Clause 5.8.2 at the outfall shall be, for the major-system cases (Clause 5.8.4(b)), the **1% AEP river level at the outfall**: the 100-year level of a flood-frequency study or floodplain delineation that gives a level at the outfall, such as the 5-, 25- and 100-year zones that NIH Roorkee is delineating for WRD on the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari, once published, or a level from a hydraulic model under Clause 5.8.2(b). The Flood Plain Zone of WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 is defined by the embankments and not by a level, and does not give one. The level shall in no case be less than the **highest recorded level** at the nearest CWC or WRD gauge on the same river, transferred to the outfall. The highest levels in the CWC bulletin (Table 5B.1) are: the Ganga at Dighaghat, Patna, **52.52 m** (1975) and at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, **50.52 m** (2016); the Sone at Maner **53.79 m** (1976); the Punpun at Sripalpur, Patna, **53.91 m** (1976); the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur, Muzaffarpur, **54.29 m** (1987); the Bagmati at Hayaghat **48.96 m** (1987) and the Adhwara group at Ekmighat **49.52 m** (2004), at Darbhanga; the Gandak at Hajipur **50.93 m** (1948); the Mahananda at Dhengraghat, Purnia, **38.20 m** (2017); and the Ganga at Buxar **62.09 m** (1948), Hathidah **43.52 m** (2021), Munger **40.99 m** (1976) and Bhagalpur **34.86 m** (2021). Where two values are reported for the same gauge, the higher applies until CWC confirms the level [TBC]: at Gandhi Ghat, where the Ganga was reported at 50.53 m on 5 September 2026 and 50.57 m on 6 September 2026, **50.57 m** applies. Where a later flood has exceeded the listed level, the later level governs. The recorded level shall be transferred along the river with the water-surface slope of the flood that set it, from the CWC and WRD gauge records, or from the model. Until either is available, the recorded level of the nearest gauge upstream applies unchanged at the outfall, except that where the outfall lies between two gauges on the same river, with no tributary joining between them, the level may be interpolated linearly by river distance between the highest recorded levels of the two gauges (set by this Manual); an outfall upstream of every gauge on its reach shall not be designed without a profile [TBC]. For the cases with the river at its 10% AEP level (Clause 5.8.4(a)), the level shall be taken from the same model or a frequency analysis of the gauge record, and not less than the **danger level** at the nearest gauge, transferred in the same way: 50.45 m at Dighaghat, 48.60 m at Gandhi Ghat, 52.00 m at Maner, 50.60 m at Sripalpur, 52.53 m at Sikandarpur, 45.72 m at Hayaghat, 46.94 m at Ekmighat, 50.32 m at Hajipur, 35.65 m at Dhengraghat, 60.32 m at Buxar, 41.76 m at Hathidah, 39.33 m at Munger and 33.68 m at Bhagalpur (CWC, 2026) (all set by this Manual). The datum of the CWC levels is to be confirmed for each gauge [TBC].
    - **Tailwater.** The tailwater at the outfall shall be the higher of that river level beyond the sluice, gate or embankment, and the maximum level in the drain behind it, computed by routing the drain as a closed storage for as long as the river stands above the level behind it, with the inflow of the whole catchment that drains to it, its storage as surveyed in its present condition, net of silt, encroachment and vegetation, and an outflow of no more than the pumping capacity that the operator confirms in writing is available in a storm, and in no case more than the installed capacity of the permanent pumps less the largest pump (set by this Manual), with gravity discharge through the sluice only while the river is lower than the level behind it. Pumps shall deliver against the design river level of this item, and every pump, panel and control shall remain operable with the river at that level (Clause 5.12.5).
    - **River lock.** Portable dewatering pumps and temporary drainage pumping stations brought in for an event, and capacity that has been sanctioned or proposed but not commissioned, shall not be counted. The outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 applies with a single lock that lasts for as long as the river stays above the outfall invert, or above the level at which its sluice is closed if that is lower, taken from the river model or from the stage record of the nearest CWC or WRD gauge in the flood that set the highest recorded level (1975 for the Ganga at Dighaghat; 1976 for the Sone, the Punpun and the Ganga at Munger; 2016 and 2026 for the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat; 1987 for the Burhi Gandak and the Bagmati; 2017 for the Mahananda; 2021

for the Ganga at Hathidah and Bhagalpur) or in a comparable flood, and **not less than 7 days (168 hours)**, covering the whole of the 48- and 72-hour storms of Clause 5.10.2, so that storage and pumping handle the full storm volume (Clause 5.9.4) and the drawdown of Clause 5.10.5 is met by pumping until the lock ends (set by this Manual). A shorter lock may be used only where the outfall invert is above the 1% AEP river level of this item, or where a gauge analysis under Clause 5.10.6 shows it and the Authority approves it. Floor levels and pumped outfalls behind a sluice, embankment or town protection wall shall also be checked for the failure of the gate and for a breach of the embankment or wall, with the land and drains behind it filled to the river level beyond it.

- (b) **The Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun around Patna.** For an outfall in Patna, Danapur, Khagaul, Phulwari or another town of the Patna area to the Ganga, the Sone or the Punpun, or to a drain that ends in one of them:
    - the outfalls through the sluices, embankments and town protection wall shall be taken as river-locked under item (a), with the sump houses and drainage pumping stations behind them credited only with the permanent pumps that PMC or BUIDCO, as the operator, confirms in writing are working; temporary pumping stations, and pumping stations that have been proposed or sanctioned but not commissioned, shall not be counted;
    - the river level at an outfall shall be the highest of the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun levels at the outfall, with the three rivers in flood together, as the Sone and the Ganga were in August 1975 and the Sone and the Punpun in 1976, unless a model of the confluences shows a lower coincident level;
    - an outfall in south Patna to the Punpun, or to a drain that ends in it, shall take as tailwater the Punpun level of item (a), not less than 53.91 m at Sripalpur transferred to the outfall, with the backwater of the Ganga at the Punpun's confluence included, and an outfall in west Patna, Danapur or Maner, in place of the nearest gauge upstream, the higher of the Sone level at Maner and the Ganga level at Dighaghat;
    - a drain into which drainage pumping stations discharge, such as the Saidpur nala, which is reported to carry the runoff of nine pumping stations and one sewage treatment plant, shall be routed with all of those pumped inflows, and a project's pumped discharge into it shall be included in its level (Clause 5.12.3);
    - floor levels and pumped outfalls behind the town protection wall, and behind roads and embankments that act as flood barriers, such as the Digha–Maner road, which was reported breached at seven places in 1975, shall be checked for a breach under item (a); and
    - the interception works on the ghat drains (Clause 8.9.5) shall be included in the routing of item (a) as obstructions, at their present condition.
- (c) **The embanked rivers of north Bihar.** For an outfall in Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Hajipur, Purnia or another town behind the embankment of a river of north Bihar, to that river or to a drain that is gated or pumped through its embankment:
    - the outfall shall be taken as river-locked under item (a), with the river level not less than the highest recorded level of item (a) at the nearest gauge, transferred to the outfall: the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur for Muzaffarpur; the higher of the Bagmati at Hayaghat and the Adhwara group at Ekmighat for Darbhanga, until a model of both gives the profile; the higher of the Gandak at Hajipur and the Ganga at the confluence for Hajipur; and the Mahananda at Dhengraghat, or the nearest gauge on the river that receives the drain, for Purnia;
    - the land behind the embankment shall be routed as a closed storage under item (a), and no storage shall be credited in a chaur, maun, pokhar or other low ground behind the embankment unless the operator's records show the storage available at the start of a storm; any hydrological intervention in a notified wetland or a Ramsar site needs the permission of the Bihar State Wetland Authority (Chapter 7);
    - no outfall structure, sluice, pumping station or drain shall be built in the Flood Plain Zone of WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (the land between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank where only one bank is embanked), which the Order makes a Prohibited Zone, except as the Order permits and with the consent of WRD; whether a drain outfall is one of the permitted flood-protection structures or essential linear services is to be confirmed with WRD before design [TBC]. A cut through an embankment, or a structure in it, also needs any permission the Bihar Irrigation Act 1997 requires; and
    - floor levels and pumped outfalls behind the embankment shall be checked for a breach under item (a).
- (d) **Floods from Nepal.** For an outfall to the Gandak, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati, the Kamla, the Kosi, the

Mahananda or another river whose catchment extends into Nepal:
    - the river level shall not be reduced on the ground that the flood comes from rain that falls outside the State or that the site storm is small, and the cases of Clause 5.8.4 shall be checked with the river peak placed before, during and after the site storm;
    - the river level shall include the releases of Clause 5.8.3 from the Kosi barrage at Bhimnagar and the Gandak barrage at Valmikinagar, as they occurred in the largest recorded event, with the flow of the catchment below each barrage, and shall not assume that any gate opens fully or early unless the operator's records show it, until an operating rule is published [TBC]; and
    - the highest recorded level shall be taken from the latest CWC and WRD bulletins, because many of the highest flood levels on these rivers were set after 2015.
- (e) **The Kosi.** For an outfall to the Kosi, or to a drain behind its embankments:
    - no drainage work shall be built between the Kosi embankments except as WRD Order No. 143 permits (item (c));
    - the river level shall not be less than the highest recorded level at the nearest of the Kosi gauges at Basua (49.24 m, 2017), Baltara (36.40 m, 1987) and Kursela (32.10 m, 1982), transferred under item (a), with the danger levels of 47.75 m, 33.85 m and 30.00 m as the floor of the 10% AEP level (CWC, 2026), and the channel and bed levels shall be taken from the most recent survey, with its date stated; and
    - floor levels and pumped outfalls behind the embankments shall be checked for a breach under item (a), as the Kosi breached its eastern afflux bund at Kusaha in Nepal on 18 August 2008 and changed its course across north Bihar.
- (f) **WRD drains and irrigation canals.** Storm water shall not be discharged to a drain or canal of WRD, or to another irrigation canal, without the consent of WRD or of the channel's owner. Where consent is given:
    - the discharge shall not exceed the rate the consent allows;
    - the tailwater is the higher of the channel's design water level as WRD or the owner states it and its level in the coincident case of Clause 5.8.4, computed from all the storm water it receives, including the nalas of other bodies, and with its downstream boundary at the river level of item (a); until WRD publishes a design water level for a channel, the computed level governs [TBC];
    - the channel shall be taken in its present condition, net of silt, encroachment and obstruction by crossing services, and a widening, lining, remodelling or diversion that has been proposed but not completed, including the works of a storm water drainage scheme that are not yet built, shall not be counted; and
    - the outfall shall have a flap gate (Clause 5.11) where the design water level or the computed level is above the outfall invert.

No pump, sluice, gate or barrage operation that helps drainage, such as pumping a drain down before a storm, closing a sluice late or opening barrage gates early, shall be assumed unless the operator's written records show it. Where the outfall invert is below the tailwater of this clause, the outfall shall have its own flap gate (Clause 5.11) and, where the outfall-closed check requires it, pumping (Clause 5.12), with the pumped volume included in the routing of the drain or the river (Clause 5.12.3).

> **Commentary.** In large continental river basins, a site storm and a river flood are usually treated as roughly independent. That is the basis of tables of coincident frequencies such as FHWA HEC-22 Table 7.3. Bihar's rivers break that assumption. The Punpun drains the south Bihar plain, and its basin lies in the same CWC subzone as Patna (the Sone subzone 1(d), whose report names the Punpun and the Phalgu among its rivers), so the monsoon systems that flood south Patna also raise the river behind it. The Sone and the Ganga bring water from far upstream, but the same monsoon spells fall on the cities they pass: in August 1975 the Sone began to rise on 19 August after heavy rain upstream, and its waters and the Ganga's entered Patna together on the night of 24 August (as reported); the highest recorded levels of the Ganga at Dighaghat were set in 1975, and of the Sone at Maner and the Punpun at Sripalpur both in 1976 (CWC, 2026). September brings the most storms and depressions to Bihar, 43 of the 113 recorded in 1891–2010 (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*), Patna's highest 24-hour rainfall, 273.5 mm, fell on 20 September 1967 (IMD), and the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported above its highest flood level in early September 2026 (as reported). The rivers of north Bihar rise with the same monsoon systems over Nepal and north Bihar. The two cannot be treated as independent, and a local storm can fall before,

during or after the river peak. Clause 5.8.4 therefore pairs a design event on one side with a 10-yr event on the other, in the same way as Clause 2.12(b). This pairing has no direct precedent. It is more severe than an independence assumption would give.

Clause 5.8.3 reflects the barrages and dams above the State's cities. The Kosi and the Gandak enter Bihar from Nepal through the barrages at Bhimnagar and Valmikinagar, and the Sone reaches Patna below the Indrapuri barrage and the dams upstream of the State; the flood of August 1975 began with a rise of the Sone after heavy rain upstream (as reported). No operating rule or release record for any of them was obtained during research, and the CWC hourly stage records at Dighaghat, Gandhi Ghat, Maner, Sripalpur, Sikandarpur, Hayaghat, Ekmighat, Hajipur, Dhengraghat, Munger and Bhagalpur, and the WRD flood-control orders, were not obtained [TBC]. Until they are, the largest recorded release applies, with the flow of the catchment below the barrage as it occurred in the same event (Clause 5.8.5(d)). The danger and highest flood levels used in this Manual are those of the CWC daily bulletin for Bihar of 31 October 2026, read from the page image; the bulletin gives them in metres without a stated datum, so the datum and gauge zero of each gauge are to be confirmed from CWC [TBC].

Clause 5.8.5 is set by this Manual. In Bihar the tailwater at a city outfall is set not by the tide but by a river that stands high for days, by an embankment or the town protection wall and their sluices, by a barrage, or by a pump behind an embankment, and no document found during research gives a design river level for any of them. The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 requires the Municipality to provide "a safe and sufficient outfall" for the "effectual drainage and proper discharge of storm-water" without flooding any part of the municipal area (s.193), but it does not say against which river level. WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 zones the floodplain of embanked rivers by the embankments, not by a flood level, and no design return period has been published for the drainage of any Bihar city.

The first is the river lock. Clause 5.8.5(a) asks for a 1% AEP level. For the Ganga, the second phase of WRD's floodplain zoning has NIH Roorkee delineating 5-, 25- and 100-year zones from Chausa to Manihari (MoU of 3 August 2025, a one-year study); it had not been published when research was done [TBC]. Until a level is available at the outfall, the highest recorded level is the floor. The levels are those of the CWC daily bulletin for Bihar of 31 October 2026, read from the page image; the bulletin does not state the datum, so the datum and gauge zero of each gauge are to be confirmed [TBC]. The floor is not an estimate of the 1% AEP level, which may be higher: about half of the highest flood levels at the CWC gauges of north Bihar were set after 2015, and the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported 1–5 cm above its 2016 level on 5 and 6 September 2026, while the bulletin of 31 October 2026 still listed 50.52 m (2016). That is why item (a) uses the higher reported value at Gandhi Ghat until CWC settles it, and lets a later flood replace a listed level; the Gandak at Hajipur and the Ganga at Buxar still carry levels of 1948. Carrying a gauge level unchanged downstream is conservative, because the river falls downstream; upstream of the gauge it would not be, so an outfall upstream of every gauge needs a profile. The gauges on the Ganga are far apart, so between two gauges item (a) allows a straight-line interpolation of their highest levels: carrying the upstream level unchanged would put the 1975 level of Dighaghat, 52.52 m, about 2 m above the Gandhi Ghat record, on every outfall down to Gandhi Ghat. The interpolation is not the profile of any one flood, and a model of the reach replaces it. West Patna and Danapur lie upstream of Dighaghat but below the Sone confluence, and the nearest Ganga gauge upstream of them, at Buxar, is far up the river, so item (b) uses the Maner and Dighaghat levels there instead. The danger level is used as the floor of the 10% AEP river level because the highest recorded levels stand 0.6–3.3 m above the danger levels and the rivers have crossed them often in recent years, with new highest levels at Gandhi Ghat in 2016 and 2026 (as reported), on the Mahananda, the Parman and the Kosi at Basua in 2017 and at Hathidah and Bhagalpur in 2021 (CWC, 2026), so a level reached about once in ten years is unlikely to lie below it; it is to be replaced by a frequency analysis of the CWC record [TBC].

A river flood also lasts. No hourly hydrograph for any gauge in the State was obtained during research [TBC]. In the flood of August 1975, ground floors in Patna were reported under water for 5–7 days; the Ganga flood of September 2026 was described as a third prolonged flood spell of the season (as reported), and the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat still stood at 45.41 m on 31 October 2026 (CWC); and a river that peaks 1.9 m (Gandhi Ghat) or 3.3 m (Sripalpur) above its danger level must fall all of that before an outfall set at the danger level can open. A tide lock

opens again within hours; a river lock lasts as long as the flood. The single lock of at least 7 days is therefore a floor, to be lengthened from the gauge record of the flood that set the highest recorded level on each river. It also covers the whole design storm, so that a site behind an embankment stores or pumps its whole storm, which is what Clause 5.9.4 already requires when the tailwater stays above the outfall. It counts only the permanent pumps less the largest one, for the same reason that Clause 5.12.2(b) requires a standby pump; temporary pumping stations and portable pumps brought in for an event are not a design capacity. A Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 counted "56 permanent Drainage Pumping Stations and 28 Temporary" (seen only as an extract; whether for Patna or the State is unclear). The gate-failure and embankment-breach checks follow 1975, when the Sone and the Ganga crossed the Patna canal and the Digha–Maner road was reported breached at seven places, and 2008, when the Kosi breached its afflux bund at Kusaha.

The second is Patna. The city is "surrounded on three sides by rivers – The Ganga, Sone, and Punpun", and its drainage "was laid about 200 years ago and is in bad condition" (CAG, 2020). When the rivers rise, the sluice gates on the Ganga and the Punpun are closed and the city drains only through its sump houses and drainage pumping stations, such as Saidpur, Pahadi, Yogipur, Mandiri, Rajapur–Gosaitola, Kurji and Eco Park, nine of which are reported to be monitored from the Patna Smart City control centre (as reported). In September 2019, 38 of 39 sump houses were reported not working, and the State's inquiry was reported to have recommended 14 new pumping stations and 100 dewatering pumps (as reported), which is why item (b) counts only permanent, commissioned pumps that the operator confirms. No inventory of the pumping stations with their capacities and sump volumes, and no rule linking the closing of the sluices to the river stage, was found [TBC], and the division of the stations between PMC and BUIDCO is unconfirmed (Chapter 6, Clause 6.9). Item (b) takes the three rivers as coincident because their records show it: the Ganga at Dighaghat set its highest level in 1975, when the Sone and the Ganga entered the city together, and the Sone at Maner and the Punpun at Sripalpur both set theirs in 1976 (CWC, 2026). The Punpun's highest level, 53.91 m, stands 3.31 m above its danger level, the largest margin of any gauge around Patna, and on 31 October 2026 the river still stood at 46.68 m at Sripalpur (CWC); its backwater is what holds the drains of south Patna. A town protection wall of about 8.5 km was reported built after the 1975 flood (as reported). How the outfalls of south Patna were locked in 1975 and 1976 was not documented in any source read, and the report *Patna Deluge 1975* could not be obtained [TBC].

The third is north Bihar. WRD Order No. 143 records about 3,606 km of embankments in north Bihar, out of 3,800 km in the State, and 68.80 lakh ha of the State's 94.16 lakh ha as flood-prone. Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Hajipur and Purnia drain to rivers whose highest levels at the city gauges stand 0.6–3.2 m above danger (CWC, 2026), and whose floods come from rain in Nepal as well as in Bihar: WRD's flood centre compiles heavy-rainfall reports from CWC and from Nepal's Department of Hydrology and Meteorology, and a record rise of the Gandak was reported after rain in Nepal in late September 2026 (as reported). Item (d) therefore does not let a designer reduce the river level because the local storm is small. The Kosi runs between embankments, and in the flood of 18 August 2008 it breached its eastern afflux bund at Kusaha in Nepal and changed its course across north Bihar, leaving about three million people homeless (as reported); item (e) requires a breach check for every pumped outfall and floor level behind its embankments. Item (c) gives no storage credit in chaurs and mauns, which are part of the flood plain: Kabartal, the largest of a complex of 18 interconnected wetlands, is inundated to a depth of up to 1.5 m in the monsoon (Ramsar Information Sheet, 2020).

The fourth is the drain that another body owns. No rule dividing the drains of WRD from the nalas of the Nagar Nigams and BUIDCO was found during research (Chapter 6, Clause 6.9). WRD runs the embankments, canals and flood-control drainage works, and in Darbhanga an application to the NGT describes a WRD canal-lining project on an old storm-water canal (Talab Bachao Abhiyan, 2025), which would make the canal's level the tailwater of the drains that enter it. No WRD design water level was found for any drain or canal. Item (f) asks for the owner's consent and design water level and, until the level is published, computes it from the channel's present condition, without counting works that are not built. Schedule V of the Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act 2026 lists an "Irrigation Department NOC for sites near canals" and a "Storm Water Drains NOC" as "Not required" for enterprises; item (f) does not add a NOC, but a design that discharges to a channel cannot be checked without the owner's level and permitted rate.

5.9 Joint-probability cases

5.9.1 Every element draining to a tidal or backwater-affected outfall shall be checked for the cases below. The most severe governs each design quantity: storage, water level, pipe size and pump capacity.

Table 5.2 — Joint-probability cases for tidal and riverine outfalls

Case	Rainfall	Tailwater	Applies to	Basis
J1	Minor-system design AEP, Tc to 24 h	MHWS + SLA (tidal curve)	Minor system	Clause 2.12(a); Clause 5.7.1
J2	1% AEP, all durations of Clause 2.5.2	HAT + surge + SLA	Major system, detention, tanks, pumped systems	Clause 5.7.1
J3	10% AEP, **48 h**	1% AEP still-water level + SLA	Major system, detention, tanks, pumped systems	Clause 2.12(b)
J4	Design AEP, **48 h** (72 h reported)	Tidal curve per J1 with two **6 h lock windows** (Clause 5.10)	All storage and every gated or tide-affected outfall	Clause 5.10
R1	Site design AEP	River at 10% AEP level	Riverine outfalls	Clause 5.8.4(a)
R2	Site 10% AEP	River at design-AEP level	Riverine outfalls	Clause 5.8.4(b)

5.9.2 For storage elements, the 48- and 72-hour storms shall be run with the J2 and J3 tailwaters (Clause 2.5.3).

5.9.3 For tidally influenced riverine outfalls, R1 and R2 shall be run with the river model's downstream boundary at the J1 tidal curve. The Authority may also require them at J2.

5.9.4 Where tailwater is constant at a level above the outfall invert for the whole storm, the case is treated as a fully closed outfall. Storage and pumps shall then handle the full storm volume.

> Commentary. Clause 2.12 sets two joint cases. Case (a) is design rainfall with MHWS plus the sea-level allowance. Case (b) is the 10-yr, 48-hour storm with the 1% still-water level. This Manual adds HAT plus surge for major-system design (Clause 5.7.1). Case J2 combines these. J4 is the outfall-closed check, which tests the timing of tide against the storm rather than a single level. Rainfall and surge share a cyclone cause, so they cannot be treated as independent (Clause 2.12 commentary). These cases are simple surrogates, to be replaced when a statistical joint analysis of IMD rainfall and tide-gauge records is adopted.

5.10 Outfall-closed (tide-locked) storage check

5.10.1 **Where it applies.** The check applies to:

- every storage facility;
- every minor- and major-system element; and
- every pumped system

whose outfall invert is below HAT + surge + SLA, or which drains to a reach subject to tide-lock or sand-bar closure (Clause 5.13).

5.10.2 **Storm.** Use the 48-hour design storm built per Clause 2.9.2 (peak day last), at:

- the AEP of the element: 1% AEP for detention, tanks and the major system; the minor-system AEP for minor drains; and
- AMC III.

The 72-hour storm shall also be run and reported.

5.10.3 **Lock windows.** Unless a site study under 5.10.6 gives otherwise:

- (a) the outfall is closed for **two consecutive lock windows of 6 hours each**, centred on two consecutive high tides of the local tidal curve. For a semi-diurnal tide, the window starts are therefore about 12.4 hours apart.
- (b) During each lock window, gravity discharge is **zero**.
- (c) Between lock windows, gravity discharge is computed against the J1 tidal curve, including the head loss of the flap gate and any non-return valve.
- (d) The first lock window shall be placed so that it is centred on the peak 1-hour block of the final 24 hours of the storm. A second run with the first window **starting** at that peak block shall also be made. The more severe governs.

5.10.4 **Requirement.** Storage plus pumping (where provided) shall hold the inflow so that, throughout the check:

- (a) the maximum stage in any detention facility stays below its emergency spillway crest, so the spillway does not operate. Where the outfall-closed stage is higher than the 1% AEP maximum water level of the free-outfall design, it becomes the facility's 1% AEP maximum water level for Clause 4.9.3, and the spillway crest, freeboard and wall height are set from it;
- (b) the maximum stage in the minor and major systems meets the Chapter 6 limits: building floor levels, and street depths of no more than 150 mm at the crown and no more than 350 mm at the deepest point; and
- (c) no property connection surcharges above the lowest opening it serves, or a non-return valve is fitted under Clause 5.11.

In volume terms, over each lock window and the full storm:

> $V_{inflow} \le V_{storage\ available} + V_{pumped} + V_{gravity\ (between\ locks)}$

This shall be demonstrated by routing, not by a single volume balance. The release from each facility after a lock window ends may exceed the release caps of Chapter 4, because the facility is emptying into a drain that has just reopened. That release shall be included in the downstream analysis (Clauses 5.4 and 5.9).

5.10.5 **Drawdown after the storm.** After the second lock window, the storage shall drain under the J1 tidal curve. The drawdown requirement of Clause 4.7 shall be met, with pumping where gravity cannot meet it (Clause 5.12).

5.10.6 **Site study.** A longer or shorter lock may be used where a site study gives a time series of still-water level for the design case. The study may use a calibrated hydrodynamic model, gauge records of past events, or a surge hindcast. Locks shorter than the default require the Authority's approval. A longer lock shall be used where:

- sand-bar closure (Clause 5.13) or river backwater (Clause 5.8) keeps the outfall closed for longer; or
- the gauge record shows tailwater above the outfall invert for more than 6 hours per tide in comparable past events.

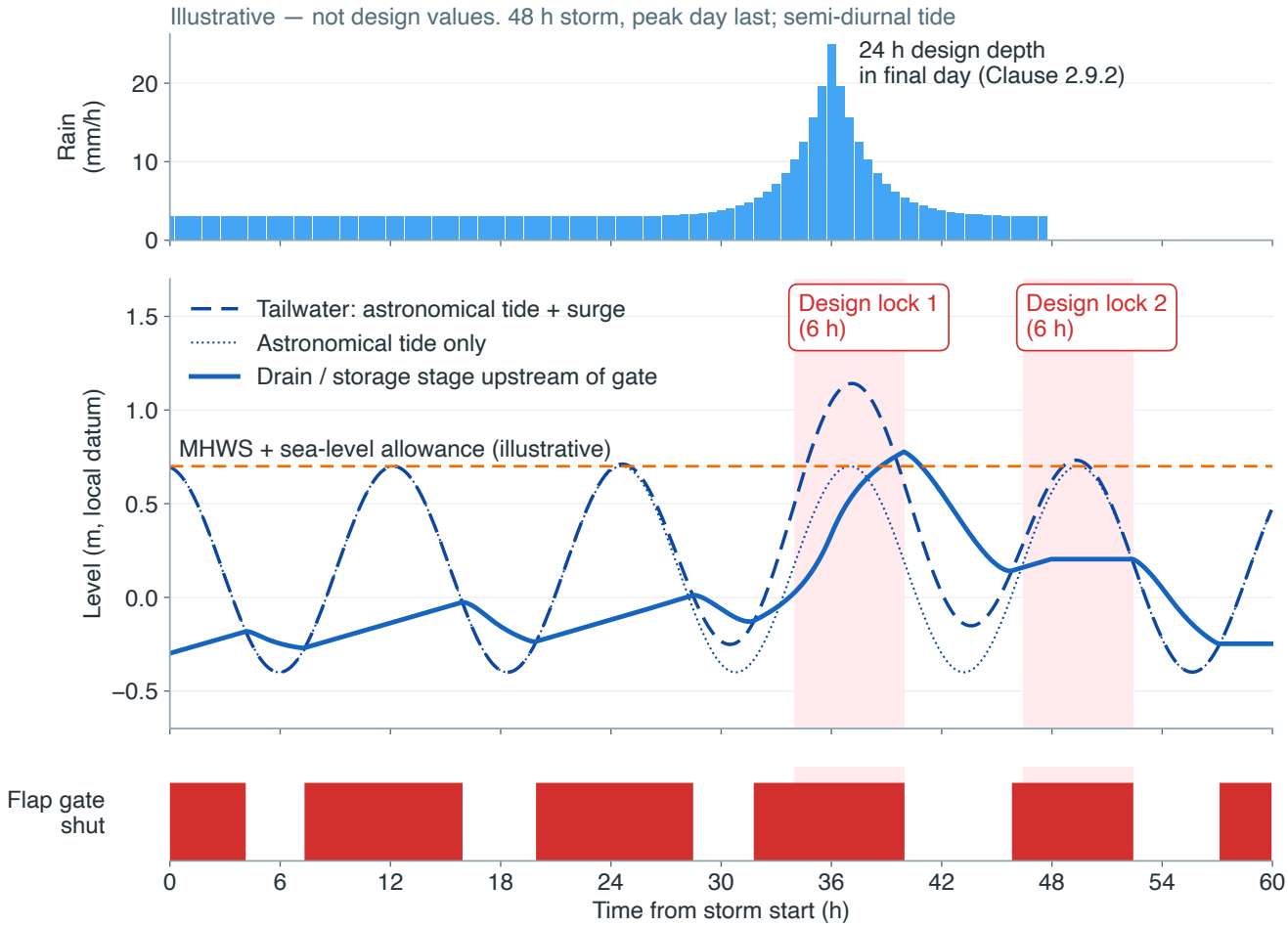


Figure 5.3 — Outfall-closed check: 48-hour storm with the peak day last (Clause 2.9.2), tailwater of astronomical tide plus surge, two 6-hour design lock windows, and the resulting stage upstream of the flap gate. Illustrative — not design values. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the tidal tailwater and joint-probability concepts of MoHUA/CPHEEO Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Part A, §6.3.6.

Commentary. The outfall-closed check is the distinctive Bihar requirement in this Manual. In Bihar it applies where an outfall is shut not by the tide but by a river. When the Ganga and the Punpun rise, the sluice gates on both rivers at Patna are closed and the drains connected to the Ganga are blocked, and the city then drains only through its pumping stations (as reported, September 2026). In the waterlogging of September 2019, 38 of the city's 39 sump houses were reported not working, and Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh stayed under water for days (as reported). In the flood of August 1975, ground floors in Patna were reported under water for 5–7 days. A river flood lasts for days, not hours, which is why Clause 5.8.5(a) replaces the two 6-hour windows described below with a single lock of at least 7 days. A rate rule cannot help when there is no outlet: an orificed basin behind a closed gate simply fills.

The default of two consecutive 6-hour locks has no direct precedent. It represents gravity outfalls failing to discharge for about half of each tidal cycle around the two high tides nearest the storm peak. Figure 5.3 shows why both windows matter. The first lock catches the storm peak. The second arrives before the storage has drained, so the stage rises again.

Placing the first window on the rainfall peak is deliberately unfavourable. Cyclone rainfall and surge share a cause, and Clause 2.12 already treats them as dependent. The check replaces neither the J2 and J3 level checks nor the downstream analysis; it adds a test of timing and volume.

5.11 Flap gates, tide gates and non-return valves

5.11.1 **Where required.** A flap gate, tide gate or equivalent non-return device is required on every outfall whose invert is below the **1% AEP still-water level** (Clause 5.7.3). It is also required on outfalls into irrigation channels under Clause 5.8.5.

5.11.2 **Hydraulics.** The design shall include:

- the gate's head loss and opening head, from the manufacturer's certified head–discharge curve; and
- the reduction in effective outfall capacity when the gate is partly open.

Gates shall not be assumed to seal perfectly in the outfall-closed check unless they are tested.

5.11.3 **Construction.**

- (a) Gates, hinges and seats shall be of corrosion-resistant materials suitable for seawater (Clause 4.12.5).
- (b) The gate shall be set so that sand, silt or debris on the downstream side cannot hold it shut or open. Where the bed is mobile, the gate invert shall be raised above the bed, or the approach shall be protected.
- (c) A trash screen shall be provided upstream where the gate could be jammed by debris.
- (d) A stop-log slot or penstock shall be provided upstream for maintenance isolation on outfalls larger than 600 mm.
- (e) The gate chamber shall be accessible at all tides, with its access above HAT + surge + SLA.

5.11.4 **Non-return valves on property connections.** A non-return valve, or a backwater valve with an accessible cleaning eye, is required on every property drainage connection where the lowest opening served is below:

- the major-system tailwater (J2) at the point of connection; or
- the maximum stage in the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10).

Basement drainage shall in addition be pumped to a level above both, with its own non-return valve.

5.11.5 **Inspection.** Gates and valves shall be inspected and operated:

- before **1 June** each year;
- after every event in which they closed against a storm flow; and
- as set in the maintenance plan (Chapter 10).

> **Commentary.** The requirement for gates below the 1% still-water level is set by this Manual. The construction details follow common coastal-drainage practice. A gate that is jammed open by debris lets the tide into the drain. A gate held shut by a sand bank turns a gravity outfall into a dead end. In Bihar the outfalls do not cross a beach, but the sluices and pumps on the outfalls through the river embankments and the town protection wall are the cities' defence against the rivers, and the rivers carry heavy silt in flood. When the Ganga and the Punpun rose in September 2026, the sluice gates on both rivers at Patna were closed and the drains connected to the Ganga blocked, and from then the city drained only through its pumping stations (as reported). In the waterlogging of September 2019, 38 of Patna's 39 sump houses were reported not working, and the State's inquiry was reported to have found that the pumps were not started on time (as reported); in 2024 the pumps of the Gosaitola station were reported to total only 143 HP (press report). The river embankments are WRD's, while the drains and sump houses behind them are PMC's or BUIDCO's, and who operates each sluice was not established during research [TBC], so a gate and the pumps behind it can belong to different bodies. The 1 June inspection date is set ahead of the SW monsoon.

5.12 Pumped outfalls

5.12.1 **When required.** Pumping shall be provided where gravity discharge cannot meet:

- the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10;
- the drawdown requirement of Clause 4.7; or
- the J2 and J3 cases.

Pumping shall not be used where a gravity solution meets these requirements.

5.12.2 **Capacity.**

- (a) The duty pumps together, with the storage provided, shall pass every case of Clause 5.9 (including J4), demonstrated by routing.
- (b) **Standby** capacity at least equal to the largest duty pump shall be installed (duty + 1 standby as a minimum).
- (c) Pump capacity shall be stated at the static head for the **J2** tailwater, not at mean tide.

5.12.3 **Effect on the receiving water.** Pumped discharge to a river, canal or creek shall be included in the river or creek level analysis of Clause 5.8. Pumping that raises the receiving water level above the acceptance criteria of Clause 5.5 elsewhere is not permitted.

5.12.4 **Power supply.** Pumping stations shall have either:

- two independent power supplies; or
- standby generation for 100% of the duty capacity, with on-site fuel for at least **72 hours** of duty operation.

Changeover shall be automatic.

5.12.5 **Flood immunity.** Electrical panels, control equipment, generators and fuel storage shall be set above the higher of:

- the 1% AEP flood level + 0.5 m; and
- HAT + surge + SLA + 0.5 m.

Access to the station shall remain usable in the 1% AEP event.

5.12.6 **Discharge arrangement.** Rising mains shall discharge:

- over a level above the J2 tailwater; or
- through a non-return valve and a flap gate.

The arrangement shall prevent back-siphoning.

5.12.7 **Controls and monitoring.** Each station shall have:

- automatic level control;
- remote alarms for high level, pump failure and power failure, sent to the operator; and
- a level and run-time log kept for at least 5 years.

Wet wells shall be sized to keep pump starts within the manufacturer's limits.

5.12.8 **Screens.** Inlet screens shall be provided with a cleaning method that works during a storm (a mechanical rake, or duplicate screens).

5.12.9 **Testing.** Every pumped outfall shall be test-run at full duty, including on standby power, before **1 June** each year. Private pumped systems shall be covered by a registered maintenance declaration (Chapter 10).

> **Commentary.** Duty + standby, 72 hours of fuel and flood-immune electrics have no single direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 72-hour fuel figure matches the longest mandatory design storm (Clause 2.5.2). A pump station that depends only on grid power can stop exactly when it is needed, because supply to flooded areas is often switched off for safety. Singapore's April 2025 amendments added annual maintenance declarations for pumped detention tanks (PUB Addendum No. 3). Clause 5.12.9 and Chapter 10 adopt the same approach. Clause 5.12.3 prevents pumping that simply moves water from one tide-locked drain into a tide-locked river.

5.13 Sand-bar closure of river mouths

5.13.1 **Where it applies.** This clause applies to outfalls into any river or creek whose mouth is subject to seasonal sand-bar closure. That includes the mouths of the coastal States (there is none in Bihar: Clause 5.1.4), and any other mouth listed in Annex 5B.

5.13.2 **Assumption at the start of the SW monsoon.** The mouth shall be assumed **closed** by a bar at the start of the June–September season, at the crest level of the most recent pre-monsoon survey. This applies unless WRD certifies that:

- a mouth-maintenance programme (dredging, bar cutting or training walls) has kept the mouth open at the start of each of the previous three SW monsoon seasons; and
- the programme is funded for the current season.

5.13.3 **Tailwater with a closed mouth.** With the mouth closed, the tailwater at the outfall shall be the higher of:

- (a) the tidal tailwater of Clause 5.7; and
- (b) the level in the river reach behind the bar, computed with the bar as a weir at its surveyed crest level. That level shall include the river flow of Clause 5.8 and the head needed to pass the flow over or through the bar.

5.13.4 **No credit for emergency cutting.** Bar cutting or breaching during the storm shall not be assumed in design, unless WRD has a documented operating procedure, with equipment stationed for it. Where it does, the bar may be assumed lowered to the procedure's target level only after the time the procedure states.

5.13.5 **Outfall-closed check.** Where the closed-mouth level of 5.13.3(b) exceeds the outfall invert for longer than the default lock windows, the lock duration of Clause 5.10 shall be extended to that period.

> **Commentary.** Bihar has no coast and no river mouth, so Clause 5.13 does not apply in the State (Clause 5.1.4). Its nearest inland counterparts are silt and the chaurs, mauns and tals. Silt deposited by a river in flood at a drain's outfall can hold a flap gate shut or open, and a chaur or tal whose outlet is uncontrolled or obstructed limits what can leave the drains that end in it: Kabartal drains through the Bagras maun to the Burhi Gandak (Ramsar Information Sheet, 2020), and the Mokama group of tals, about 1,062 km², stays waterlogged for part of each year (as reported). No outflow control for either was found during research [TBC]. Clause 5.8.5 deals with both by giving no credit for a gate operation or a storage that the operator's records do not show. Clause 5.13.2 has no direct precedent. It puts the burden of proof on showing that the mouth is open rather than assuming it.

5.14 Documentation

Every project subject to this chapter shall submit a **Downstream and Tailwater Report** (Form 5-1). It shall contain:

1. a plan of the analysis extent showing:
    - the site;
    - each analysis point with its contributing catchment area and the site's percentage of it; and
    - the end point and the reason it was chosen (Clause 5.3);
2. the model description:
    - software and version;
    - the network schematic, with survey sources for the drains and crossings;
    - land use and CN for off-site areas;
    - any upstream detention included; and
    - calibration or validation evidence where available;
3. for each analysis point, AEP and duration, the existing and with-project:
    - peak flow;
    - time to peak;
    - maximum water level and velocity; and
    - duration of inundation (Clause 5.4);
4. the comparison against Clause 5.5, with each failure identified and the remedy adopted;
5. the tailwater derivation:
    - tide-table edition and port;
    - MHWS, HAT and MSL relative to chart datum;
    - the datum connection to the Survey of India benchmark and the project datum;
    - surge source and value;
    - SLA; and
    - river levels and their sources (Clauses 5.6 to 5.8);
6. the joint-case table of Clause 5.9 with results;
7. the outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10):
    - storm and lock alignment;
    - stage hydrographs; and
    - the volume balance for each lock window;
8. a schedule of flap gates, tide gates and non-return valves, with certified head–discharge data (Clause 5.11);
9. pumped outfall design, power supply, flood immunity and controls, where provided (Clause 5.12);
10. the sand-bar assumption and supporting WRD certification, where relevant (Clause 5.13); and
11. inspection and maintenance requirements for Chapter 10.

Small sites under Clause 5.3.4 shall submit Form 5-2 (Simplified Downstream Statement) instead.

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A, §6.3.6 and Table 6.2 (coastal tailwater; +0.3 m climate allowance). https://web.archive.org/web/2024/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/VolumeI-Part%20A-Engineering-Design.pdf
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2013). Manual on Sewerage and Sewage Treatment Systems (pumping stations).
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (5601.5, ten-percent downstream analysis). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Atlanta Regional Commission / Georgia EPD (2016). Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, Vol. 1 (Standard #8) and Vol. 2 §3.1.9. https://documents.atlantaregional.com/gastormwater/GSMM_2016%20EDITION_FINAL_V1.pdf
- MARC. The Evolution of Regional Stormwater Design Standards. https://www.marc2.org/Assets/Environment/WQEC/The_Evolution_of_Regional_Strormwater_Design_Standards.pdf
- Optimisation of urban detention (2016). *Water* 8(7):290. https://doi.org/10.3390/w8070290
- Colorado State University. Spatially Dependent On-Site Detention Policies (thesis). https://mountainscholar.org/bitstreams/f4dbec4e-a44f-4933-8d54-a097e741f44a/download
- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin, 31 October 2026, 06:00 levels (warning, danger and highest flood levels of the CWC sites in Bihar; datum not stated), as posted by WRD's Flood Management Improvement Support Centre. https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar, Flood Management Improvement Support Centre. Daily Flood Information Bulletin, 31 October 2026 (issued generally from 15 June to 15 October). https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/Flood%20Bulletin.pdf ; https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar. Order No. 143, 6 March 2025, *Implementation of Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers within Bihar State* (in Hindi), with the correspondence on the NIH study of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari (MoU of 3 August 2025), annexed to the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, dated 12 January 2026, in NGT O.A. 200/2014, *M.C. Mehta v. Union of India*. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, *Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme* (report number and tabling date not confirmed). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- *Bihar Municipal Act, 2007*, ss.193, 195 and 196. https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- *Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017* (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311, 5 April 2018. https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- *Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026* (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120, 16 September 2026, Schedule V. https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2026/Act32of2026BR.pdf
- *Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997* (offences relating to embankments and irrigation works; seen only in legal-database extracts).
- Central Water Commission (1987). *Flood Estimation Report for Sone Subzone 1(d)*, S/15/1987 (the Punpun and the Phalgu among the subzone's rivers).
- India Meteorological Department (2011). *Climate of Bihar*, Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18, Table VII (storms and depressions, 1891–2010). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/patna/mcdata/climateofbihar.pdf ; and *Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012)*, Bihar pages (Patna (A), 20 September

1967). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- Ramsar Convention (2020). *Ramsar Information Sheet: Kabartal Wetland*, site 2436 (designated 21 July 2020; 18 interconnected wetlands; drainage through the Bagras maun to the Burhi Gandak). https://rsis.ramsar.org/RISapp/files/RISrep/IN2436RIS_2010_en.pdf
- Lok Sabha. Statement on the Patna flood of August 1975, 16 January 1976 (seen only as an extract; text partly illegible). https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/857276/1/05_XV_16-01-1976_p57_p59_PII.pdf
- Rajya Sabha. Reply of 27 November 2024 on drainage pumping stations ("56 permanent Drainage Pumping Stations and 28 Temporary"; seen only as an extract; scope unclear).
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan v. Government of Bihar, application to the National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone), 2025 (Darbhanga storm water drainage and canal-lining projects; allegations of the applicant). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755167303.pdf
- Press reports on the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat above its highest flood level on 5 September 2026 (PTI via ThePrint), https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/ , and on 6 September 2026 (DT Next), https://www.dtnext.in/news/national/bihar-downstream-areas-on-alert-as-ganga-water-level-rises-in-patna-19-lakh-affected-by-floods ; on the closing of the sluice gates on the Ganga and the Punpun and the drainage pumping stations of Patna (Patna Press, 2025–2026), including the Saidpur nala, https://patnapress.com/?p=63534 ; on the Patna waterlogging inquiry of 2019 (Business Standard/ANI, 14 October 2019), https://business-standard.com/article/news-ani/show-cause-notices-served-to-officials-responsible-for-patna-water-logging-says-chief-secretary-119101401451_1.html ; on the sump houses of Patna in 2019 (The Wire, Millennium Post); on the Patna town protection wall (Al Jazeera, 2016); and on the Kosi breach at Kusaha of 18 August 2008 (Down To Earth; Business Standard/IANS, 2 August 2014).
- Survey of India. Tidal Predictions: Geodetic and Research Branch. https://www.geographyandyou.com/survey-of-india/tidal-predictions-geodetic-and-research-branch-survey-of-india
- GLOSS. India national report (tide-gauge network and datums). https://gloss-sealevel.org/gloss/gloss/sites/gloss/files/publications/documents/india_ge9.pdf
- Adani Ports (2025). Tide Table 2025, Dahej (notes on NHO INP-12 coverage and data sources). https://www.adaniports.com/-/media/Project/Ports/PortsAndTerminals/Dahej-Port/Marine-Documents/Tide-Table-2025-Dahej.pdf
- INCOIS. Storm-surge and swell-surge warning services. https://incois.gov.in/
- FHWA. HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (current edition), Table 7.3 (coincident frequencies).
- Purdue University JTRP (2023). Development of a Multiple Water Course Joint Probability Analysis Procedure for Indiana Watersheds, FHWA/IN/JTRP-2023/09. https://docs.lib.purdue.edu/jtrp/1820
- PUB Singapore (2025). Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., Addendum No. 3. https://info.corenet.gov.sg/docs/default-source/pub-circulars/pub-circular_cop-7th-ed-addendum-no-3_16-apr-2025.pdf?sfvrsn=5a2c1e1a_2

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
5A	Tidal datums (MSL, MHWS, HAT vs CD and Survey of India datum), surge allowances and 1% still-water levels by coastal segment
5B	Major drains, riverine outfall reaches, and river mouths subject to sand-bar closure; map
5C	Worked example: outfall-closed check for a site in south Patna behind the Punpun
Form 5-1	Downstream and Tailwater Report
Form 5-2	Simplified Downstream Statement (small sites)

CHAPTER 6

Minor and Major Drainage Systems

6.1 Purpose and scope

6.1.1 This chapter sets the level of service and the hydraulic criteria for the conveyance system that carries runoff from a development, a road or a public drainage scheme to a receiving waterway, tank or outfall. It covers:

- (a) the dual drainage concept: a minor system and a major system (Clause 6.3);
- (b) design return periods by land use and road class (Clause 6.4);
- (c) street hydraulics: spread, depth and flow hazard (Clause 6.5);
- (d) inlets, including clogging (Clause 6.6);
- (e) pipes and open and covered drains (Clause 6.7);
- (f) hydraulic grade line analysis (Clause 6.8);
- (g) overland flow paths, ponding at sags and building floor levels (Clauses 6.9 to 6.11);
- (h) culverts and road crossings (Clause 6.12); and
- (i) Bihar construction-practice requirements for covered drains, silt, solid waste, utilities and desilting access (Clause 6.13).

6.1.2 The detailed hydraulic design of individual structures (culverts, channels, energy dissipators, screens, pumps, gates, manholes) is in Chapter 9. Rainfall is in Chapter 2, runoff methods in Chapter 3, on-site storage in Chapter 4, tailwater in Chapter 5, waterbodies in Chapter 7 and water quality in Chapter 8.

6.1.3 This chapter applies to all public drains, all roads with kerbs or roadside drains, and all private drainage systems in developments that meet the applicability thresholds of Chapter 1. In Tier B local bodies, the simplified procedures and design aids referred to in Chapter 1 may be used for elements serving ≤ 16 ha, but the criteria of this chapter still apply.

> **Commentary.** Bihar's drains have been designed with no stated level of service and no plan for floods larger than the drain. No design return period, design storm or drainage master plan was found for any city in the State: not in the storm water drainage project of BUIDCO for Patna, reported as 103 drain lines in nine packages over about 185 km, nor for the 38 storm water drainage schemes reported in the State budget of 2026 (as reported). The drainage of Patna "was laid about 200 years ago and is in bad condition" (CAG, 2020). The storm that overwhelmed it in September 2019 was not exceptional as rainfall: about 210.8 mm over 26–29 September by one analysis of IMD data and about 226 mm by another report (as reported), less than a 50-year 24-hour depth spread over four days (Chapter 2). Yet Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony stayed under water for days, more than 4,000 people were rescued, 38 of the city's 39 sump houses were reported not working (as reported), and the Patna High Court called for the names of the officers and contractors responsible for cleaning the drains and for the sump houses that were working (order of 18 October 2019). Patna was waterlogged again after 175.4 mm in 24 hours on 29 July 2025 (as reported). Where the drains overflow, the water runs along the roads and collects in the low colonies, and Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh are reported to have been waterlogged in every monsoon since the 1970s (as reported). The drains are also divided among owners: PMC, the other Nagar Nigams, BUIDCO and WRD all build or run drains in the same city, and no rule divides them (see the Commentary to Clause 6.9). Fixing the rainfall (Chapter 2) is only half the answer. The other half is a second,

surface-level system that carries the flows the pipes cannot, without flooding buildings. That is the dual drainage concept of this chapter, taken from Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 (5601.8, Levels of Service), which requires every element to have a 1% AEP overflow path.

6.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Minor system	Inlets, pipes, covered drains and open drains that carry runoff up to the minor design AEP of Table 6.1 without surcharge above the limits of Clause 6.8.
Major system	The surface flow paths (streets, overland flow paths, open channels, floodways and storage) that carry flow above the capacity of the minor system, up to the 1% AEP (100-yr) event.
Overland flow path	A defined surface route, in public land or a recorded easement, that carries major-system flow to a receiving waterway.
Spread (T)	Width of flow in the gutter and carriageway, measured from the face of the kerb.
Sag	A low point on a road or flow path from which water can leave only through an inlet or by ponding to an overflow level. A trapped sag has no surface overflow route.
Clogging factor	The fraction of an inlet's clean hydraulic capacity assumed lost to debris (Clause 6.6.3).
Hydraulic grade line (HGL)	The line joining the free-surface levels in a conduit system, or the piezometric levels where the system is under pressure.
Covered drain	A rectangular drain, usually beside a road, closed by cast-in-situ or precast cover slabs that form a footpath.
Sediment allowance	The depth or area of a drain or pipe assumed filled with silt when its design capacity is computed (Clause 6.7.8).
Check event	An AEP rarer than the design AEP at which the combined minor and major system must still meet the limits of Table 6.2.
High-density area	An area notified as such by the approving authority under Clause 6.4.4.
Class I area	An urban local body with a population of 1 lakh or more (the CPHEEO definition).

6.3 The dual drainage concept

6.3.1 Every drainage system shall be designed as two systems that work together:

- (a) a **minor system** that carries the minor design flow of Table 6.1 below ground or in drains, keeping streets usable and spread within Table 6.2; and
- (b) a **major system** that carries all flow above the minor-system capacity, up to the 1% AEP (100-yr) flow, on the surface without entering buildings and within the depth and hazard limits of Clause 6.5.

6.3.2 **Every element has a 1% path.** Every inlet, sag, pipe, drain, culvert and storage element shall have an identified 1% AEP overland flow path to a receiving waterway, tank or outfall. The path shall be shown on the drainage plan (Clause 6.15).

6.3.3 **Major-system design flow.** The major system at any point shall carry the 1% AEP peak flow less the minor-system capacity at that point. The minor-system capacity used in this subtraction is the capacity of the inlets after the clogging factors of Clause 6.6.3, or the pipe capacity, whichever is less. At sags and at any location used to set building floor levels, the major system shall also be checked with the minor system **fully blocked** (Clause 6.10.3).

6.3.4 **Rainfall and method.** Design flows shall use the rainfall of Chapter 2 (including the climate factor of Clause 2.8) and the methods of Chapter 3:

- (a) the Rational Method only for catchments ≤ 16 ha and a single conveyance element. It shall not be used to accumulate flows down a network whose total catchment exceeds 16 ha;
- (b) a hydrograph method with hydraulic routing (for example SWMM, HEC-HMS with a hydraulic model, or an equivalent 1D/2D model) for networks above 16 ha and for any network with storage, pumping or a tidal outfall;
- (c) a minimum time of concentration of 10 minutes.

6.3.5 **No transfer between catchments.** Neither the minor nor the major system shall divert flow from one natural catchment to another unless the approving authority accepts a catchment-wide study showing no adverse effect.

> **Commentary.** The CPHEEO (2019) manual defines major and minor systems in its glossary but gives no return period for the major system. APWA 5600 (2006, 5601.8) requires the system to convey the 1% peak and, where in-system capacity is less, an overflow system to carry the remainder. Clause 6.3.3 subtracts only the *clogged* inlet capacity, not the full pipe capacity, because in practice the pipes cannot take more water than the inlets admit. The fully-blocked check at sags has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because of the Patna experience that drains under footpaths are often silted or blocked by solid waste when the heaviest rain arrives (CPHEEO 2019 Part A, Ch 1 and 2, Figures 1.2 and 2.1 on solid waste dumping in drains). The prohibition on inter-catchment transfer follows the DID Malaysia 2008 submission checklist, which prohibits inter-catchment diversion.

6.4 Design return periods

6.4.1 The minor system, roads and crossings shall be designed for the AEPs of Table 6.1. Where both a land-use row and a road-class row apply to an element, the **rarer** AEP (longer return period) governs.

Table 6.1 — Design AEPs for conveyance (matches Clause 2.4)

Element	Design AEP (return period)	Check event	Basis
Minor system: Patna, Gaya, Bhagalpur, Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga core and other high-density areas	10% (10-yr)	1% (100-yr) overland path	This Manual (see Commentary)
Minor system: other Class I areas	20% (5-yr)	1% overland path	This Manual; CPHEEO Table 4.1
Minor system: other areas	50% (2-yr)	1% overland path	This Manual; CPHEEO Table 4.1
Arterial road drainage and crossings	2% (50-yr) for arterials that are notified evacuation or emergency routes; 4% (25-yr) for other arterials	Next higher AEP: 1% for a 2% design; 2% for a 4% design	This Manual (25–50-yr); split set by this Manual
Collector road drainage and crossings	4% (25-yr)	2% (50-yr)	This Manual
Local road drainage and crossings	10% (10-yr)	4% (25-yr)	This Manual
Road underpasses and other trapped sags on public roads	2% (50-yr)	1% (100-yr)	This Manual (Clause 6.10.5)
Airports, railway stations, power stations and other critical infrastructure	1% (100-yr) in Class I areas; 2% (50-yr) elsewhere	—	CPHEEO 2019 Table 4.1
Major (overland) system, every element	1% (100-yr)	—	This Manual

Element	Design AEP (return period)	Check event	Basis
Building floor levels	1% level + 0.5 m freeboard	—	This Manual (Clause 6.11)

6.4.2 **Check events.** At the check event of Table 6.1, the combined minor and major system shall carry the check-event flow within the 1% AEP limits of Table 6.2 and without water entering any building. The 1% overland path requirement of Clause 6.3.2 applies in addition to the check event.

6.4.3 **Higher standards.** An approving authority may adopt a rarer AEP for any element, including through the high-powered committee route in Note 2 of CPHEEO Table 4.1. It shall not adopt a more frequent AEP than Table 6.1.

6.4.4 **High-density areas.** The approving authority shall notify, by map, the high-density areas to which the 10% AEP minor-system standard applies. Until it does, the 10% AEP standard applies to:

- (a) the old cities of Patna, Gaya, Bhagalpur, Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga: the older, densely built city within the Nagar Nigam's area that the applicable Master Plan or Development Plan identifies as the old city, core or heritage area, including Patna City (Patna Sahib) in the east of Patna, with the boundary of each to be confirmed by the Nagar Nigam and, in the Patna area, PMAA [TBC];
- (b) in every other Nagar Nigam, the area that the applicable Master Plan or Development Plan identifies as the old city or the central business district, and the old abadi of the villages that have been taken into the built-up area; and
- (c) any area in a Tier A body where the master plan permits a floor space index above the base value for the zone.

6.4.5 **Retrofit.** Where an existing drain cannot practicably be enlarged to the Table 6.1 AEP, the shortfall shall be made good by upstream storage (Chapter 4), regional storage (Chapter 7) or an improved major-system path. The approving authority shall record the residual level of service.

> Commentary. The values in Table 6.1 match the Clause 2.4 summary and add rows for underpasses and critical infrastructure. They exceed the CPHEEO (2019) national advisory minimums of 5-yr for Class I cities and 2-yr elsewhere (CPHEEO Part A, Table 4.1). Note 2 of that table allows a State committee to adopt higher values. The 10-yr tier for high-density areas follows Gupta (IIT Bombay), who recommends "1 in 10 year for residential-high density", and Malaysia's MSMA 2, which uses 10-yr minor and 100-yr major systems for link houses, apartments, commercial and industrial land. The road values resolve a conflict in Indian codes. IRC:SP:50-2013 recommends 1–2 years for urban road drains. IRC:SP:42-2014 suggests 25 years for urban roadside drains and a check flood at the next higher return period. APWA 5600 (2006) uses 50-yr for arterial, 25-yr for collector and 10-yr for residential street crossings. Table 6.1 adopts the APWA tiers and the IRC:SP:42 check-flood concept. Splitting arterials into 50-yr evacuation routes and 25-yr others has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual. The 50-yr standard for underpasses is likewise set by this Manual, because an underpass is a trapped sag where the failure mode is deep water on a live carriageway. The default high-density areas in Clause 6.4.4 are set by this Manual and apply until the approving authority notifies a map.

6.5 Street hydraulics: spread, depth and flow hazard

6.5.1 **Gutter flow.** Flow in a triangular kerb-and-gutter section shall be computed with the modified Manning (Izzard) equation:

> Q = (Ku / n) · Sx^(5/3) · SL^(1/2) · T^(8/3)

where Q is the gutter flow (m³/s), Ku = 0.376 (SI), n is the Manning roughness of the gutter (Table 6.6), Sx is the cross slope (m/m), SL is the longitudinal slope (m/m) and T is the spread (m). Composite and depressed gutter sections shall be analysed by the methods of FHWA HEC-22 (4th edition, 2024).

6.5.2 **Spread and depth limits.** Street flow shall not exceed the limits of Table 6.2.

Table 6.2 — Street flow limits

Road class	Minor design event (Table 6.1)	Check event and 1% AEP event
Arterial	Spread shall leave at least one through lane in each direction clear of water. No flow across the crown.	Depth ≤ 150 mm at the crown and ≤ 350 mm at the deepest point; hazard limits of Clause 6.5.3
Collector	Spread T ≤ 3 m. No flow across the crown except at a sag intersection.	As above
Local	Spread T ≤ 3 m. Flow shall not overtop the kerb.	As above
All classes, at intersections	Cross-flow over the crown ≤ 0.03 m³/s at sag intersections and superelevation transitions; none at mid-block sags.	As above

6.5.3 **Flow hazard limits.** In the check event and the 1% AEP event, the product of depth (D, m) and velocity (V, m/s) of street and overland flow shall not exceed the limits of Table 6.3.

Table 6.3 — Flow hazard limits for streets and overland flow paths

Location	Required hazard class (Table 6.4)	Limits
Carriageways of all roads	H2 or better	D·V ≤ 0.6 m²/s; D ≤ 0.35 m (Table 6.2); V ≤ 2.0 m/s
Footpaths, pedestrian crossings, school, hospital and transit-stop frontages	H1	D·V ≤ 0.3 m²/s; D ≤ 0.3 m; V ≤ 2.0 m/s
Notified evacuation and emergency routes	H1	D·V ≤ 0.3 m²/s; D ≤ 0.3 m; V ≤ 2.0 m/s
Overland flow paths in public open space or easements, away from roads	H3 or better, with warning signs	D·V ≤ 0.6 m²/s; D ≤ 1.2 m; V ≤ 2.0 m/s

Table 6.4 — Combined flood hazard vulnerability classes (reproduced for reference)

Class	Description	D·V limit (m²/s)	Depth limit D (m)	Velocity limit V (m/s)
H1	Generally safe for vehicles, people and buildings	≤ 0.3	0.3	2.0
H2	Unsafe for small vehicles	≤ 0.6	0.5	2.0
H3	Unsafe for vehicles, children and the elderly	≤ 0.6	1.2	2.0
H4	Unsafe for vehicles and people	≤ 1.0	2.0	2.0
H5	Unsafe for vehicles and people; buildings vulnerable to structural damage	≤ 4.0	4.0	4.0
H6	Unsafe for vehicles and people; all buildings vulnerable to failure	> 4.0	—	—

Source: AIDR Guideline 7-3, *Technical flood risk management guideline: Flood hazard* (2014), Tables 1 and 2, modelled after Smith and Wasko (2012).

6.5.4 Depth and velocity for Clause 6.5.3 shall be taken from the gutter-flow calculation for simple sections, or from a 1D or 2D hydraulic model where flow leaves the kerb-and-gutter section.

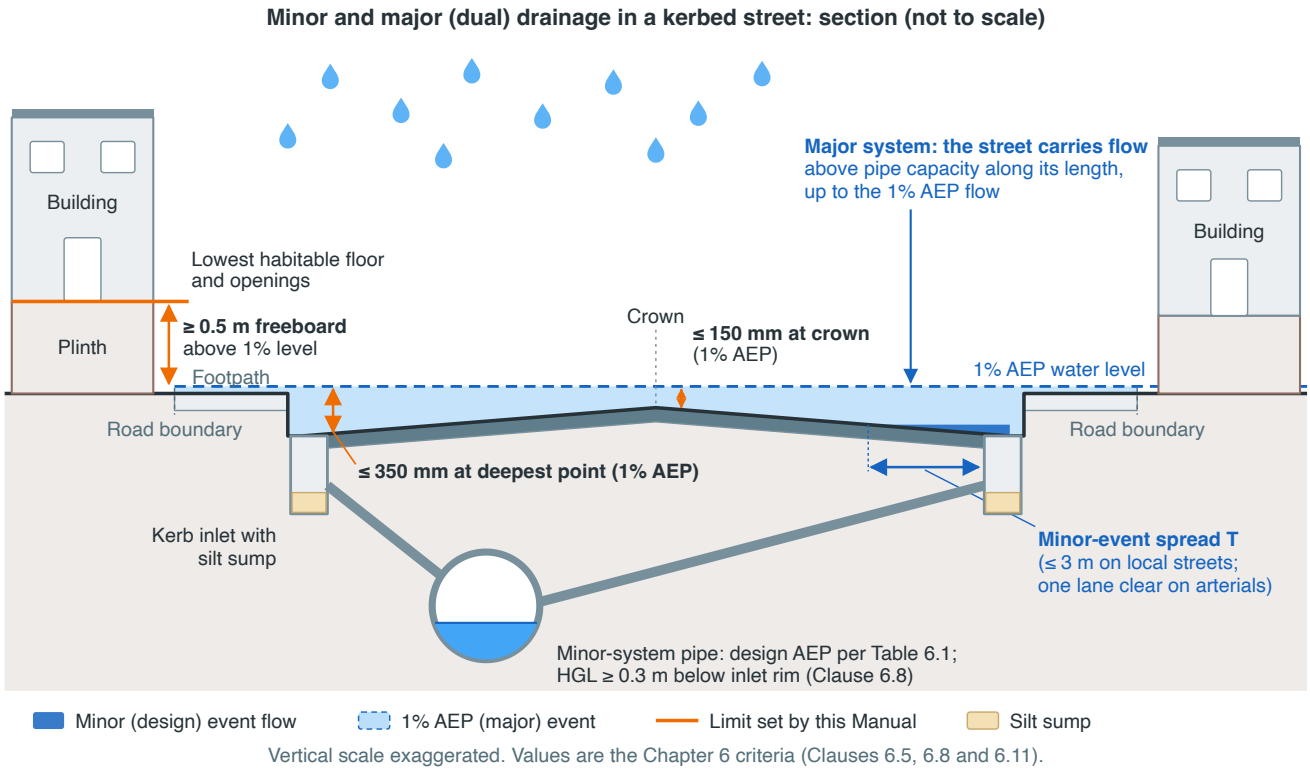


Figure 6.1 — Minor and major drainage in a kerbed street. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Kansas City Metro APWA, Section 5600 (2006, 5601.8) and FHWA, HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (4th ed., 2024).

Commentary. The Izzard form of Manning's equation with Ku = 0.376 is used both in FHWA HEC-22 and in the CPHEEO (2019) manual (Part A, Example 5.5, where the constant is written Kc = 0.376). The arterial spread rule (one lane clear) and the 3 m spread for local and collector streets are close to the APWA 5600 (2006, 5604.2) limit of 12 ft (3.66 m) from the back of kerb in each outside lane. The cross-flow limit of 0.03 m³/s is the SI equivalent of the APWA limit of 1.0 cfs at intersection sumps and superelevation transitions, with no cross-flow at mid-block sumps. The 150 mm and 350 mm depth limits are close to the APWA 5600 limits for 1% overflow at road crossings (7 in, about 180 mm, at the crown; 14 in, about 360 mm, at the deepest point). Mumbai's criterion of no flooding above 15 cm (IRC:SP:50-2013, §6.4.1) is a local precedent for the 150 mm crown value.

The hazard classes of Table 6.4 are the combined hazard curves published by the Australian Institute for Disaster Resilience (AIDR Guideline 7-3, 2014), which are modelled after Smith and Wasko (2012). Requiring H2 or better on carriageways means the 1% depth limit of 350 mm (Table 6.2) governs the depth, and the D·V product controls fast, shallow flow on steep streets. H2 is described as "unsafe for small vehicles". Two-wheelers are the dominant vehicles on Bihar streets, so the 1% event must be treated as a road-closure event on all roads except notified evacuation routes, which must meet H1. The assignment of hazard classes to locations in Table 6.3 has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual.

6.6 Inlets

6.6.1 **Inlet types.** Inlets may be kerb-opening inlets, grate inlets, combination inlets (a grate with a kerb opening) or slotted and trench drains. On public streets:

- (a) kerb-opening or combination inlets shall be used, unless the approving authority accepts grate-only inlets for a specific location;
- (b) inlet openings shall be set at road level, with a gutter depression where practicable, so that water is not held on the carriageway by a raised kerb or footpath;
- (c) grates in carriageways, cycle lanes and footpaths shall be of a bicycle- and pedestrian-safe pattern (Chapter 9, Clause 9.11).

6.6.2 **Inlet capacity.** The clean capacity of inlets on grade and in sags shall be computed by the methods of FHWA HEC-22 (4th edition, 2024), or from tested ratings published by the manufacturer for the exact grate and kerb-opening geometry. The empirical kerb-inlet equations of CPHEEO (2019) Part A §5.6.2 may be used as a cross-check only.

6.6.3 **Clogging factors.** The design capacity of every inlet shall be its clean capacity reduced by the clogging factors of Table 6.5:

Table 6.5 — Inlet clogging factors (share of clean capacity assumed lost)

Inlet type	On grade	In a sag
Grate	50%	50%
Kerb opening	10%	20%
Combination	Apply the grate and kerb factors to each part separately	Apply the grate and kerb factors to each part separately

Design capacity = (1 − clogging factor) × clean capacity.

6.6.4 **Inlet spacing.** Inlets shall be located by a sequential calculation that starts at the top of each gutter run. At each inlet, the intercepted flow is computed, and the bypass flow is added to the gutter flow arriving at the next inlet. Spacing shall be such that the spread limits of Table 6.2 are met everywhere in the minor design event. In addition:

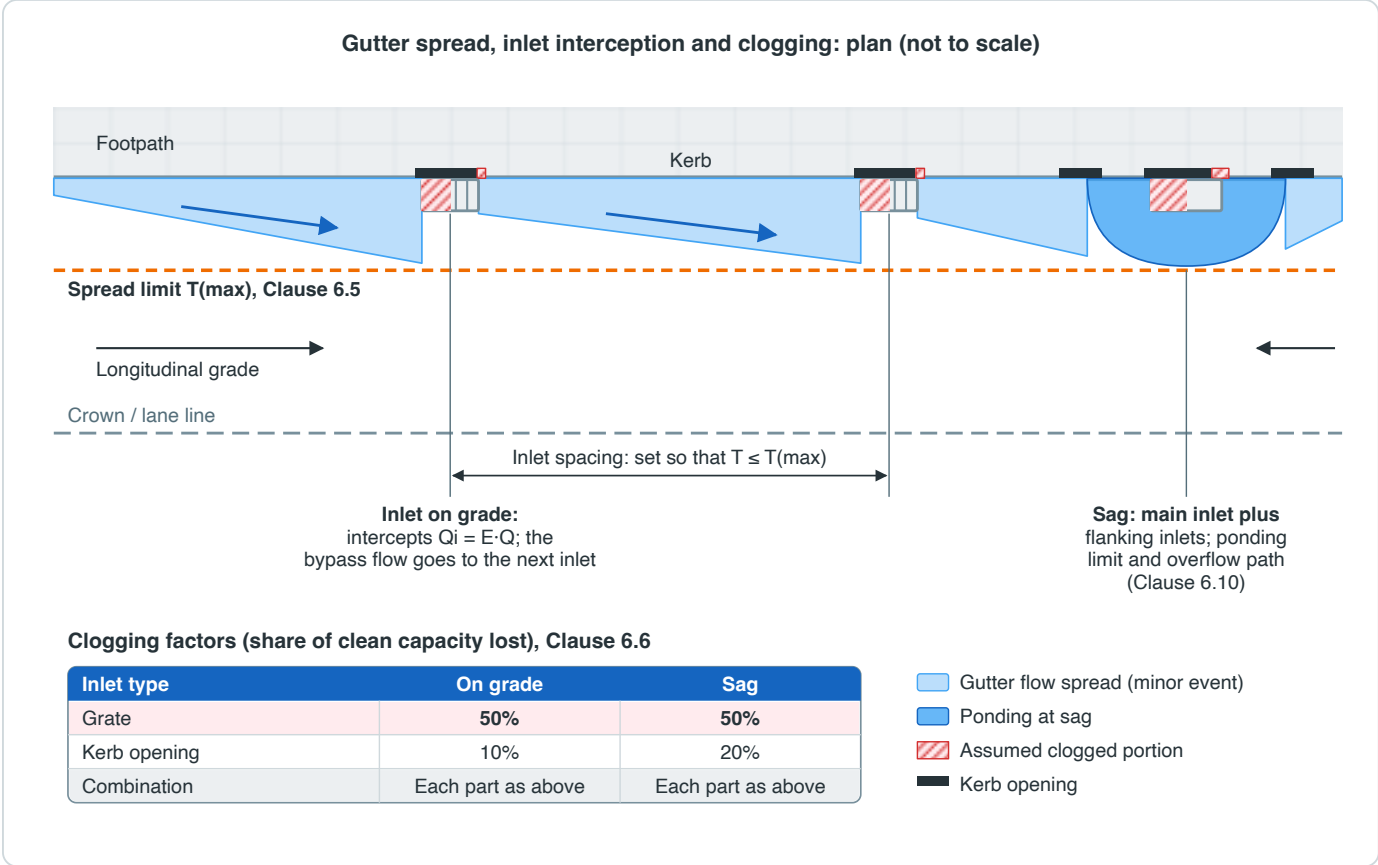
- (a) inlet spacing shall not exceed 30 m on kerbed roads, whatever the calculation gives;
- (b) inlets shall be provided at every sag, immediately upstream of pedestrian crossings and intersections, upstream of bridge decks and superelevation transitions, and at the end of every gutter run;
- (c) bypass flow from the last inlet of a run shall not be passed onto a road of a higher class or into private land.

6.6.5 **Sag inlets.** At a sag on a kerbed road:

- (a) the sag inlet's design capacity (after clogging) shall be not less than the total minor design flow arriving at the sag;
- (b) flanking inlets shall be placed on each side of a sag on any road where ponding could spread beyond the Table 6.2 limits, and at every underpass;
- (c) the ponding at the sag shall comply with Clause 6.10.

6.6.6 **Inlet connections.** The pipe connecting an inlet to the main drain shall have a diameter of at least 300 mm and shall be laid at a gradient that gives at least 0.9 m/s at the inlet's design flow.

6.6.7 **Silt sumps.** Every inlet chamber on a public road shall have a silt sump at least 300 mm deep below the invert of its outlet pipe, accessible for cleaning from the surface.



Inlet type	On grade	Sag
Grate	**50%**	**50%**
Kerb opening	10%	20%
Combination	Each part as above	Each part as above

Figure 6.2 — Gutter spread, inlet interception and clogging. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (3rd ed., 2009; 4th ed., 2024) and CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019).

> Commentary. The clogging factors are more severe than the APWA 5600 (2006, 5604.2) rating of sump inlets at 80% of theoretical capacity (a 20% reduction), because grates in Bihar streets are routinely blinded by plastic and leaves. CPHEEO (2019) Part A shows solid waste dumped in drains as a primary cause of drain failure (Figures 1.2 and 2.1). APWA 5600 (2006) allows only kerb-opening inlets on public streets; Clause 6.6.1(a) is less strict because combination inlets are useful on flat roads. The 30 m maximum spacing and the treatment of combination inlets in Table 6.5 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Roads on the Bihar plain are very flat (the CWC 1(f) worked example on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli line has a channel slope of 0.048 m/km), which shortens the calculated spacing anyway. A fixed cap stops a single blocked inlet from leaving a long dry gutter run. The 300 mm silt sump is set by this Manual. It matches the 0.3 m sump shown on the CPHEEO catch-basin detail (CPHEEO 2019, Figure 5.9).

6.7 Pipes and open and covered drains

6.7.1 **Uniform flow.** Pipe and drain capacity shall be computed with Manning's equation:

> V = (1/n) · R^(2/3) · S^(1/2); Q = A · V

where V is the mean velocity (m/s), n is the Manning roughness (Table 6.6), R is the hydraulic radius (m), S is the friction slope (m/m), A is the flow area (m²) and Q is the discharge (m³/s). Where backwater from a tailwater, a junction or a structure affects the water level, a gradually varied flow (standard step) or hydraulic network model shall be used, and the HGL requirements of Clause 6.8 apply.

6.7.2 **Manning roughness.** Design values of n shall be taken from Table 6.6. For concrete pipes and masonry or concrete drains, the design value shall be not less than the "fair" or "rough" condition value listed, to allow for sediment, biofilm and ageing.

Table 6.6 — Manning's n for design (from CPHEEO 2019)

Material	Condition	n (CPHEEO)	Minimum design n in this Manual
Cement concrete pipe (collar joints)	Good / fair	0.013 / 0.015	0.015
Spun concrete pipe (RCC, PSC) with S/S joints	Manufacturer's design value	0.011	0.013
HDPE / uPVC pipe	—	0.010	0.011
Plastic (smooth), asbestos cement	—	0.011	0.011
Concrete drain, steel trowelled / wood trowelled	—	0.014 / 0.015	0.015
Sand and cement plaster	—	0.015	0.015
Brick masonry	Good / rough	0.015 / 0.017	0.017
Masonry	Bad condition	0.020	0.020
Rubble set in cement	—	0.017	0.017
Earth channel	Regular, good / ordinary	0.020 / 0.025	0.025
Earth channel	With stones and weeds / poor	0.030 / 0.035	0.035
Earth channel	Partly obstructed by debris or weeds	0.050	0.050
Gutter: concrete	—	0.013	0.013
Gutter: hot-mix asphalt	—	0.015	0.015
Gutter: sprayed seal	—	0.018	0.018

Source of the CPHEEO column: CPHEEO (2019) Part A, Table 5.1 (itself from the CPHEEO Manual on Sewerage and Sewage Treatment Systems, 2013) and Table 5.8 (gutters).

6.7.3 **Velocity limits.** At the minor design flow:

- (a) minimum (self-cleansing) velocity: **0.6 m/s** in open and covered drains and **0.9 m/s** in pipes;
- (b) maximum velocity: **3.0 m/s** in lined drains and in pipes, unless the drain or pipe is designed as a chute under Chapter 9. CPHEEO permits up to 6.0 m/s in plastic or plastic-lined pipes in hilly regions; this may be used in Rajgir and the towns of the plateau fringe in the Kaimur, Rohtas, Gaya, Jamui and Banka districts and other hill towns with the approving authority's agreement;
- (c) maximum velocity in unlined and vegetated channels: Chapter 9, Table 9.2;

- (d) the Froude number of flow in open and covered drains shall not exceed 0.8 at the design flow, unless the drain is designed for supercritical flow under Chapter 9.

6.7.4 **Gradient.** Each pipe and drain shall be laid at a gradient that achieves Clause 6.7.3(a). Where flat terrain or a fixed outfall level makes this impossible, the designer shall:

- (a) report the velocity achieved;
- (b) double the sediment allowance of Clause 6.7.8; and
- (c) provide access for mechanical desilting at the spacing of Clause 6.13.2.

6.7.5 **Pipe flow condition.** Pipes shall be sized so that the minor design flow does not exceed the pipe-full capacity. The greater discharge that a circular pipe carries at about 0.95 of its depth shall not be relied on.

6.7.6 **Minimum sizes.**

- (a) Pipes: 300 mm internal diameter; **450 mm** for public mains.
- (b) Open drains: bed width 0.3 m.
- (c) Covered public drains (drains closed by cover slabs): clear internal width **0.6 m** and clear internal depth **0.6 m**.

6.7.7 **Cover to pipes.** Pipes shall have at least 0.6 m of cover to finished level, and at least 0.9 m under carriageways unless a structural design for the traffic load is submitted. Where the seasonal high groundwater table is within 1 m of the pipe crown, the pipe shall be checked for flotation with the pipe empty (CPHEEO 2019, Table 11.2) and anchored where necessary.

6.7.8 **Sediment allowance.** The design capacity of open drains, covered drains and pipes of 600 mm diameter or more shall be computed with the following depth of sediment at the invert:

- (a) open and covered drains: the greater of **75 mm** and **10%** of the clear internal depth;
- (b) pipes of 600 mm diameter or more: **5%** of the internal diameter;
- (c) pipes below 600 mm: no allowance, but Clause 6.7.3(a) shall be met.

The Manning n for the reduced section shall be that of the drain material in Table 6.6.

6.7.9 **Freeboard in open and covered drains.** At the minor design flow, the water surface (computed with the sediment allowance) shall be below the top of the drain wall, or below the soffit of the cover slab in a covered drain, by at least the freeboard of Table 6.7.

Table 6.7 — Minimum freeboard in open and covered drains

Drain	Minimum freeboard	Source
Bed width up to 300 mm	100 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.3 (from IRC:SP:50-2013)
Bed width 300–900 mm	150 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.3
Bed width 900–1,500 mm	300 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.3
Wider drains and engineered channels, Q < 3 m³/s	450 mm	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.12 (from IS 7784 (Part 1): 1993)
Q 3 to < 30 m³/s	600 mm	As above
Q 30 to < 300 m³/s	900 mm	As above
Q 300 to < 3,000 m³/s	1,200 mm	As above
Q ≥ 3,000 m³/s	1,500 mm	As above
Any roadside drain	Not less than 150 mm	IRC:SP:42-2014
Steep (supercritical) channels	Equal to the flow depth	CPHEEO 2019 §5.3.2

At bends, the freeboard shall be measured from the water level on the outside of the bend, including the superelevation $\Delta y = V^2 T / (2\,g\,r_c)$, where T is the top width and r_c the centreline radius (CPHEEO 2019, Eq. 5.29).

6.7.10 **Bends and junctions.**

- (a) The centreline radius of a bend in a drain shall be at least 3 times the drain width (CPHEEO 2019 §5.3.3). In engineered channels it shall be at least 2 times the top width and not less than 30 m (CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11).
- (b) Where drains meet, a junction sump shall be provided with an internal width of at least twice the width of the outgoing drain. Incoming drains shall enter at less than a right angle to the outgoing flow, and the outgoing invert shall be below the sump floor so that water does not stand in the sump (CPHEEO 2019 §5.3.4).

6.7.11 **Manholes and access chambers on pipes.** Manholes shall be provided at every junction, change of size, alignment or gradient, and at the head of every pipe. Spacing on straight runs shall not exceed Table 6.8.

Table 6.8 — Maximum spacing of manholes on straight pipe runs

Pipe diameter	Maximum spacing
300–600 mm	40 m
700–1,000 mm	100 m
1,050–1,400 mm	150 m
1,500 mm and above	300 m

Source: CPHEEO 2019 Table 11.5. Manhole sizes, drops and covers: Chapter 9, Clause 9.12.

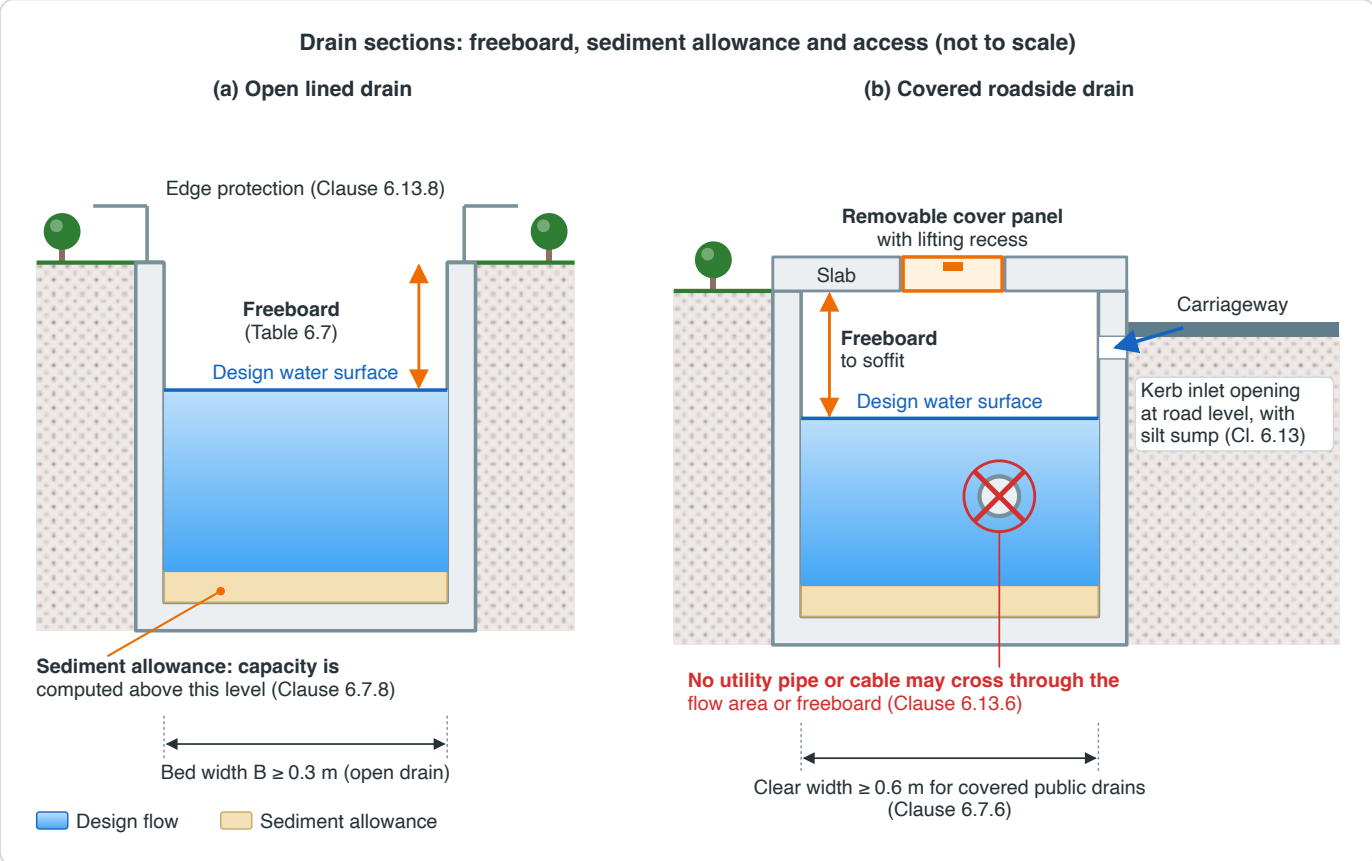


Figure 6.3 — Drain sections: freeboard, sediment allowance and access. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Tables 5.3 and 5.12, and IRC:SP:50-2013.

Commentary. The n values are those of CPHEEO (2019) Table 5.1. The higher minimum design values have no direct precedent; this Manual sets them because CPHEEO notes that the 0.011 value for spun pipes "may be taken as given by the manufacturer". That is a clean-pipe value, and Bihar drains carry heavy silt and solid waste. The 0.6 m/s minimum velocity is CPHEEO's (Table 5.2), based on carrying 0.09 mm sand (§5.3.1). The 0.9 m/s value for pipes is stricter, because a silted pipe cannot be cleaned as easily as an open drain. The 3.0 m/s maximum is from CPHEEO Table 5.2 (WPCF/ASCE 1982). The Froude limit of 0.8 is from CPHEEO §5.3, which advises avoiding critical flow because the water surface becomes unstable.

The 0.6 m × 0.6 m minimum for covered drains has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual. A covered drain narrower than this cannot be desilted by hand or by small machines through a cover opening, and silted, inaccessible drains were a recurring finding after the Patna waterlogging of September 2019, when the State's inquiry was reported to have found that the drains had not been cleaned and the pumps not started on time (as reported) and the Patna High Court asked the State to name the contractors engaged in cleaning the nalas (order of 18 October 2019), and in Darbhanga, where an application to the NGT alleges that the new storm drains have been built closed and connected to the sewage system (Talab Bachao Abhiyan, 2025). The 0.6 m minimum cover is the value used in the CPHEEO (2019) worked pipe-design computation sheet (Part A, Chapter 5). The 0.9 m cover under carriageways is set by this Manual.

The sediment allowance values (75 mm or 10% for drains, 5% for large pipes) are set by this Manual. No Indian standard sets a sediment allowance for design. Patna's experience is that drains run partly full of silt for much of the year, so a capacity computed for a clean section overstates the real capacity.

The CPHEEO freeboard table (Table 5.3) prints the first row as "Beyond 300 mm bed width". Read with the second row ("Beyond 300 mm & up to 900 mm"), the first row must mean "up to 300 mm"; Table 6.7 is written that way. The CPHEEO manhole spacing table (Table 11.5) gives overlapping ranges (700–1,050 mm and 1,000–1,400 mm); Table 6.8 removes the overlap by assigning 1,050 mm to the 150 m class.

6.8 Hydraulic grade line

6.8.1 **HGL analysis.** For every pipe and covered-drain network, the designer shall compute the HGL for the minor design event and for the check event, starting at the outfall and working upstream. The analysis shall include friction losses and losses at junctions, manholes, bends, inlets, outlets and gates.

6.8.2 **Starting water level.** The starting (tailwater) level at the outfall shall be the higher of:

- (a) the tailwater level of Chapter 5: mean high water springs (MHWS) plus the sea-level allowance of +0.3 m for minor-system design at tidal outfalls, and the level in the receiving drain, river or tank for the coincident event at other outfalls; and
- (b) the level computed at the outlet pipe from the critical depth and the pipe diameter, (dc + D)/2, where the receiving water is lower.

6.8.3 **Minor-event limit.** In the minor design event, the HGL shall be at least **0.3 m below** the rim of every inlet and the cover level of every manhole and access chamber.

6.8.4 **Check-event and 1% limit.** In the check event and the 1% AEP event, the HGL may rise above the inlet rims. Water that leaves the minor system shall then be carried by the major system within the limits of Table 6.2 and shall not enter any building. Manholes that can surcharge above ground in these events shall have bolted or locked covers (Chapter 9, Clause 9.12).

6.8.5 **Structure losses.** Losses at manholes and junctions shall be computed by the energy-based access-hole method of FHWA HEC-22 (2009 or 2024 edition), or by an equivalent method in an approved hydraulic model. A simplified loss-coefficient method ($h = K V^2/2g$) with coefficients from HEC-22 may be used for Tier B networks below 16 ha.

6.8.6 **Invert and soffit levels.** Where pipe size increases at a manhole, the soffits (crowns) of the incoming and outgoing pipes shall be matched, or the outgoing soffit set lower. The outgoing invert shall not be higher than the lowest incoming invert. Vertical drops in manholes shall follow Chapter 9, Clause 9.12.

6.8.7 **Gates and valves.** The head loss through flap gates and non-return valves in the open position shall be included in the HGL (Chapter 9, Clause 9.10).

6.8.8 **Private connections.** Building drainage that connects to a public drain whose 1% HGL is above the building's lowest drainage fitting shall have a non-return valve.

> Commentary. The 0.3 m clearance between the minor-event HGL and the inlet rim is set by this Manual. It keeps a margin for losses that a model underestimates, and it stops water from bubbling out of inlets in the event the system is designed for. In Bihar most city drains end at a river that can stand above the outfall for days, through a sluice or a pump in an embankment or the town protection wall: when the Ganga and the Punpun rise, Patna's sluices are closed and the city drains only through its pumping stations (as reported), and the Punpun's highest recorded level at Sripalpur stands 3.31 m above its danger level (CWC, 2026) (Clause 5.8.5). Within the city the levels are not continuous either: pumping stations discharge into other drains, and the Saidpur nala is reported to carry the runoff of nine drainage pumping stations and one sewage treatment plant (as reported), so its level is set by the pumps above it as much as by the river below it. A drain whose HGL is started from a free outfall, or computed one length at a time without the pumped inflows and the river, fails in exactly that way. An HGL computed from the outfall, with the tidal tailwater of Chapter 5, exposes those errors at design stage. The MHWS plus 0.3 m starting level is from CPHEEO (2019) Table 6.2. The access-hole method is described in HEC-22 from the 2009 edition onward.

6.9 Major system: overland flow paths, easements and drainage reserves

6.9.1 **Streets as the primary major system.** Streets shall be graded so that the 1% AEP major-system flow is carried along the road reserve to a receiving waterway without being trapped, except at sags designed under Clause 6.10.

6.9.2 **Overland flow paths outside streets.** Where a major-system path leaves the road reserve, it shall be:

- (a) in public land, in the open space of a layout, or in an easement recorded on the layout approval and the title;
- (b) at least as wide as the 1% AEP flow top width plus 0.5 m on each side, and not less than 3.0 m;
- (c) kept free of buildings, compound walls, fences, fill, stored materials and planting that would obstruct flow;
- (d) graded to a continuous fall with no sag that lacks an outlet; and
- (e) within the hazard limits of Table 6.3.

6.9.3 **Compound walls.** A compound wall or fence shall not be built across a mapped overland flow path. Where a wall must cross one, it shall have openings with a total area that passes the 1% AEP flow with a 50% blockage, without raising the upstream water level above the limits of this chapter.

6.9.4 **Access along open drains.** Open drains with a top width of 2 m or more shall have a maintenance access strip at least 3.5 m wide along one bank, connected to a public road at intervals of not more than 500 m.

6.9.5 **Supply channels, surplus courses and tanks.** Tank supply channels and surplus courses are part of the major system and shall be protected under Chapter 7.

6.9.6 **Drainage reserves.** A drainage reserve is a strip of land, including the drain, kept free of buildings so that the drain can be maintained, widened and used as a flood path. A drainage reserve shall be provided:

- (a) along every public drain or channel with an internal width of 1.0 m or more that runs through or along a layout or site being developed or redeveloped;
- (b) along every drain or channel shown in an adopted Basin Stormwater Master Plan (Chapter 11), at the width of the future drain in that plan; and
- (c) along every new public drain with an internal width of 1.0 m or more built by a public body.

6.9.7 **Width.** The reserve shall be not less than the width in Table 6.9, measured from the drain's internal width W. The width is based on the **required** drain size (for a planned drain, the size in the master plan), not the existing size. Where the access strip of Clause 6.9.4 is wider than the margin in Table 6.9, the wider governs.

Table 6.9 — Minimum drainage reserve width (adopted from PUB Singapore)

Internal width of drain, W	Open drain	Closed (covered) drain
1.0 m to 1.2 m	3.0 m	W + 0.6 m
more than 1.2 m to 3.0 m	W + 2.6 m	W + 1.6 m
more than 3.0 m to 4.5 m	W + 3.5 m	W + 1.6 m
more than 4.5 m to 6.0 m	W + 4.5 m	W + 3.0 m
more than 6.0 m to 9.0 m	W + 6.0 m	W + 3.0 m
more than 9.0 m to 25.0 m	W + 7.5 m	W + 3.0 m
more than 25.0 m	W + 12.0 m	W + 3.0 m

For an open drain, the larger part of the margin shall be on the side used for maintenance access.

6.9.8 **Use and protection.**

- (a) The reserve shall be shown as a separate plot on the layout or site plan and transferred to the Approving Authority free of cost, as roads and open space reservations are. Where the drain is a WRD channel, the reserve is transferred to WRD.
- (b) No building, compound wall, fence, ramp, step, fill or other structure shall be built in the reserve. Compound walls and boundary fences shall stand outside it.
- (c) The access strip in the reserve shall be level and continuous, and connected to a public road. Bollards or posts and chains may be used at entrances to keep out vehicles other than maintenance vehicles.
- (d) Where the reserve is not fenced off, its edge shall be marked with concrete markers at not more than 50 m spacing.
- (e) Services shall cross under the drain, with at least 1.0 m clearance below the invert, or over it on an approved structure. Services shall not run along the reserve inside the drain section.
- (f) A structure within 2 m of the edge of the reserve shall be designed to remain stable when the drain is excavated to 1.0 m below its invert. The design shall be signed by a qualified structural engineer.
- (g) The reserve counts toward the site's open space requirements only where the Approving Authority's rules allow it; it does not reduce any setback required by Chapter 7.

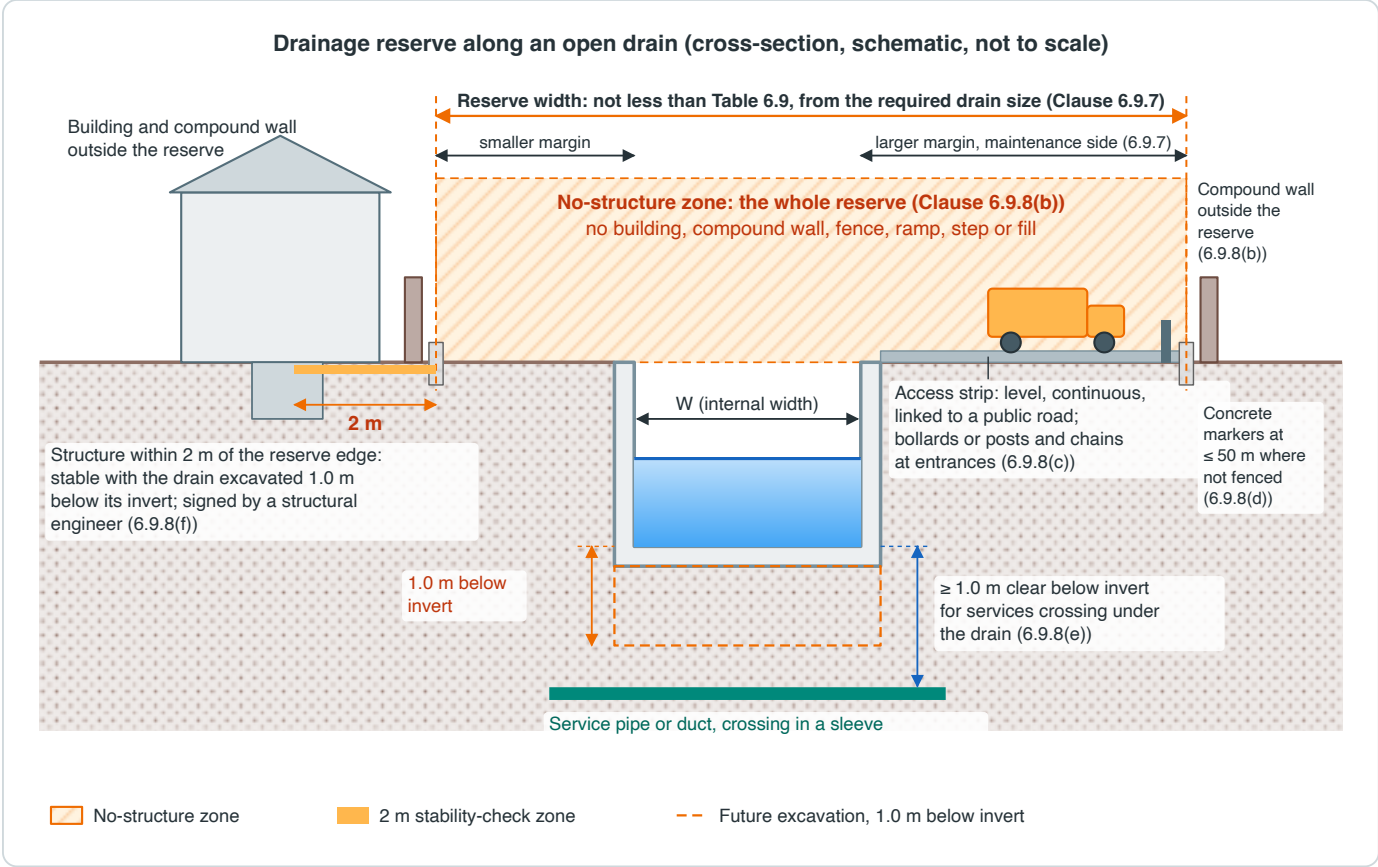


Figure 6.4 — Drainage reserve along an open drain: reserve width from Table 6.9, no-structure zone, access strip on the maintenance side, the 1.0 m service clearance below the invert and the 2 m stability-check zone (Clauses 6.9.6 to 6.9.8). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from PUB Singapore, Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage (7th ed., with Addendum No. 3, 2025), clauses 5.1, 5.3, 9.6 and 9.7 and Appendix 1.

Commentary. Drainage reserves follow Singapore, where "the width of a drainage reserve is based on the required drain size" and the reserve is set aside as a separate plot, "kept free of all encumbrances" (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed. with Addendum No. 3, 2025, cl. 1.1). Table 6.9 reproduces PUB's Appendix 1 widths. Clauses 6.9.8(b) to (f) follow PUB clauses 5.1 (no structure within a drain or drainage reserve), 5.3 and 5.3.1 (stability for excavation 1.0 m below the invert; engineer's calculations within 2 m of the reserve), 9.6 (level, continuous access, with bollards or posts and chains) and 9.7 (markers at a maximum of 50 m). The 1.0 m clearance for services crossing under a drain is from PUB's development-plan guidance. In Bihar, buildings and compound walls are often built up to the edge of a drain, so it cannot be widened or desilted by machine. Reserving the land when a plot is developed or redeveloped is the cheapest time to secure it, because widening later needs land acquisition. Basing the width on the master-plan drain size (6.9.6(b)) protects the land a future drain will need. Bihar has no statutory width for a reserve along a nala in the rules read for this Manual. The Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 refuse permission "In areas of natural waterways or drains, as detailed in the Development Plan, and drainage plan as modified from time to time" (29(A)) and for a building "constructed over or under a municipal drain" (29(D)), and require the foundation of an external wall along a street to stand at least 1 m from the edge of the street or road margin "including the drain" (29(E)). None of these gives a width along a nala. The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, which had not been notified when research was done, define a watercourse as a natural or artificial channel "meant for carrying storm and wastewater" (def. 151), but set no buffer along it. The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 vests all public drains in the Municipality (s.195). The only metre values found are for tanks, embanked rivers and wetlands: 9 m from the highest water mark of a tank (BBL 2014, 30(B)), the Flood Plain Zone of WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (the land between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank where only one bank is embanked, with temporary structures allowed only beyond 250 m from the river bank), and 50 m from the mean high flood level of a notified wetland (Wetlands Rules 2017, r.4(2)(vi)) (Chapter 7). This Manual therefore gives the reserve a width, as its own proposal and not as a statutory

width: a **hydraulic corridor** made up of the reserve of Table 6.9, based on the drain size needed to carry the design flow (Clause 6.9.7), the access strip of Clause 6.9.4 on the access bank, and, along a natural drain or a drain of WRD that drains 8 ha or more, the setbacks of Clause 7.4 measured from its top of bank, with a Zone 1 of at least 15 m; where a 1% AEP flood extent has been mapped, such as the 100-year zone of the NIH study of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari once it is published, it governs Zone 2, and where the Flood Plain Zone of WRD Order No. 143 applies, it governs in addition. The corridor is set by this Manual. It should be shown in the Development Plans and drainage plans, including the Patna Master Plan 2031 and the plans made under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012, so that the bar of bye-law 29(A) on building in the natural waterways and drains shown in those plans applies to it, rather than made a new NOC; the Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act 2026 lists a "Storm Water Drains NOC" as "Not required" for enterprises (Schedule V, item 15).

The reserve matters because the drains of Bihar's cities are divided among owners, and no rule divides them. The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 vests the public drains in the Municipality (s.195) and lets it make a drain over to another authority with the State's approval (s.196); the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018) merged the assets, projects and staff of the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad, which used to run Patna's sump houses, into BUIDCO; and BUIDCO now runs drainage pumping stations in Patna and builds storm water drainage schemes in Patna and other towns (as reported), while PMC is reported to have told a court that the city's drainage system "is not directly under" it (counter-affidavit of 20 May 2025, seen only as an extract). No order under s.196, and no UDHD order dividing Patna's drains and sump houses between PMC and BUIDCO, was found during research, so the split between them is unconfirmed [TBC]. For the purposes of this Manual, and until the State issues such a rule [TBC], the drains are assigned as follows: rivers, floodplains, embankments, canals and flood-control drainage channels to WRD; ahars, pynes and minor irrigation tanks to the Minor Water Resources Department; trunk drains, sump houses and drainage pumping stations that BUIDCO has built or taken over from the Jal Parshad, and the drains of its storm water drainage schemes until they are handed over, to BUIDCO; the nalas, road drains and lane drains within the limits of an urban local body to its Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat; sewers, interceptors and the tapping of drains to BUIDCO; highway drains to RCD or NHAI; and the drains of industrial areas to BIADA (set by this Manual). Under Clause 6.9.8(a), the reserve along a WRD drain is transferred to WRD. Where a channel's status is disputed, the corridor follows the channel and not its name. No approved city drainage master plan with a design return period was found for any Bihar city. Until a Basin Stormwater Master Plan is adopted (Clause 6.9.6(b)), the required drain size of Clause 6.9.7 is the size computed by the designer under this chapter. This Manual does not prescribe a lined or an unlined section. It requires the section to meet the velocity limits of Clause 6.7.3 and Chapter 9, and a reserve wide enough for an unlined or vegetated section is a reserve that keeps both options open.

Commentary. Requirements 6.9.2(b)–(e), 6.9.3 and 6.9.4 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Compound walls around individual plots are almost universal in Bihar and are one of the most common ways that overland flow paths get blocked. The 50% blockage assumption for wall openings is set to match the grate clogging factor of Clause 6.6.3. The 3.5 m access width is set by this Manual, sized for a small excavator or desilting vehicle. For comparison, APWA 5600 (2006, 5608.4) requires a 15 ft (about 4.6 m) maintenance access strip for detention facilities.

6.10 Ponding at sags and low points

6.10.1 **Minor event.** At every sag, the minor design flow shall be removed by inlets (after clogging) with ponded spread within Table 6.2.

6.10.2 **1% AEP event.** At every sag:

- (a) the ponded depth shall not exceed 350 mm at the deepest point of the carriageway;

- (b) a surface overflow route shall be provided (for example over a lowered kerb and footpath into a designated overland flow path), so that the ponding level cannot rise above the overflow level; and
- (c) building floor levels around the sag shall comply with Clause 6.11.

6.10.3 **Fully-blocked check.** At sags, the 1% AEP ponding level shall also be computed with the minor system fully blocked and all flow leaving by the surface overflow route. Floor levels around the sag shall be set from the higher of the two ponding levels.

6.10.4 **Trapped sags.** Where a sag has no surface overflow route, the inlets and conduits (after clogging) shall carry the 1% AEP flow, and the approving authority shall agree the arrangement.

6.10.5 **Road underpasses.** Underpasses and other trapped sags on public roads shall:

- (a) be drained by a minor system (with pumping under Chapter 9, Clause 9.9, where gravity drainage is not possible) designed for the 2% AEP (50-yr) flow, checked at the 1% AEP flow;
- (b) have flanking inlets at both approaches to intercept flow before it reaches the low point;
- (c) be protected from inflow from surrounding streets by raised approach crests where practicable; and
- (d) have depth markers and automatic warning or closure signals that operate at 150 mm depth on the carriageway.

> Commentary. The fully-blocked check, the trapped-sag rule and the underpass requirements have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. No record of an underpass flooding in Bihar was found during research. Road levels and drainage in Patna were the subject of a petition in the Patna High Court (CWJC 1664/2012, order of 16 May 2013, as listed in a later NGT filing), and in September 2019 the roads of Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh carried water knee- to waist-deep for days (as reported). Clause 6.10.5(d) links the 150 mm crown depth limit of Table 6.2 to the point at which traffic should stop.

6.11 Building floor levels

6.11.1 The lowest habitable floor, and every opening through which water could enter a building (doors, ventilators, basement ramps, lift pits and service entries), shall be at least **0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level**.

6.11.2 The 1% AEP flood level is the highest of:

- (a) the 1% AEP major-system water level in the street or overland flow path next to the building (Clauses 6.9 and 6.10, including the fully-blocked check at sags);
- (b) the 1% AEP flood level of any river, channel, tank or waterbody (Chapter 7); and
- (c) the 1% AEP level with the tailwater of Chapter 5; and
- (d) where the Approving Authority has adopted a 1% AEP flood depth map under Clause 7.3.4, the ground level at the plot plus the mapped 1% AEP depth.

6.11.3 **Default where no level has been computed.** For a plot below the Chapter 1 thresholds, or where no 1% AEP level has been computed for the plot, the lowest habitable floor and openings shall be at least the higher of:

- (a) **0.65 m above the highest crown level of the road on which the plot fronts**; and
- (b) where an adopted 1% AEP flood depth map covers the plot, **the ground level plus the mapped 1% AEP depth plus 0.5 m**.

The Approving Authority may adopt a regional map, such as a State-approved map or a published national map of modelled 1% AEP flood depth (for example the India Flood Atlas), until a local study replaces it. A map that does not model storm surge shall not be used in place of Clause 6.11.6.

6.11.4 **Basements.** The crest of every basement ramp and the sill of every basement opening shall meet Clause 6.11.1. Basement drainage shall be pumped to the surface drain through a non-return valve.

6.11.5 **Services.** Electrical panels, transformers, standby generators, lift machinery and pumps that serve a building shall meet Clause 6.11.1.

6.11.6 **Coastal band.** The coastal band is the land within **500 m** landward of the High Tide Line along the sea front, as defined by the CRZ Notification, 2019, with the High Tide Line as demarcated in the approved Coastal Zone Management Plan. Where the Survey of India Hazard Line lies further inland than 500 m, the band extends to the Hazard Line. Within the coastal band, in addition to Clauses 6.11.1 to 6.11.5:

- (a) the lowest habitable floor and every opening shall also be at least **0.5 m above the coastal flood level**, which is the 1% AEP still-water level (Clause 5.7.3(b), Annex 5A) plus **twice** the sea-level allowance of Clause 5.7.4 (so at least 0.6 m), because buildings have a design life of more than 50 years (Clause 5.7.4(c));
- (b) where the plot fronts the open beach, the coastal flood level shall include wave set-up from a site study;
- (c) no habitable room, electrical service room or plant listed in Clause 6.11.5 shall be placed in a basement; and
- (d) every basement opening, ramp crest and ventilation opening shall meet Clause 6.11.6(a).

Clause 6.11.6 does not authorise any construction that the CRZ Notification prohibits. Where both apply, the stricter governs.

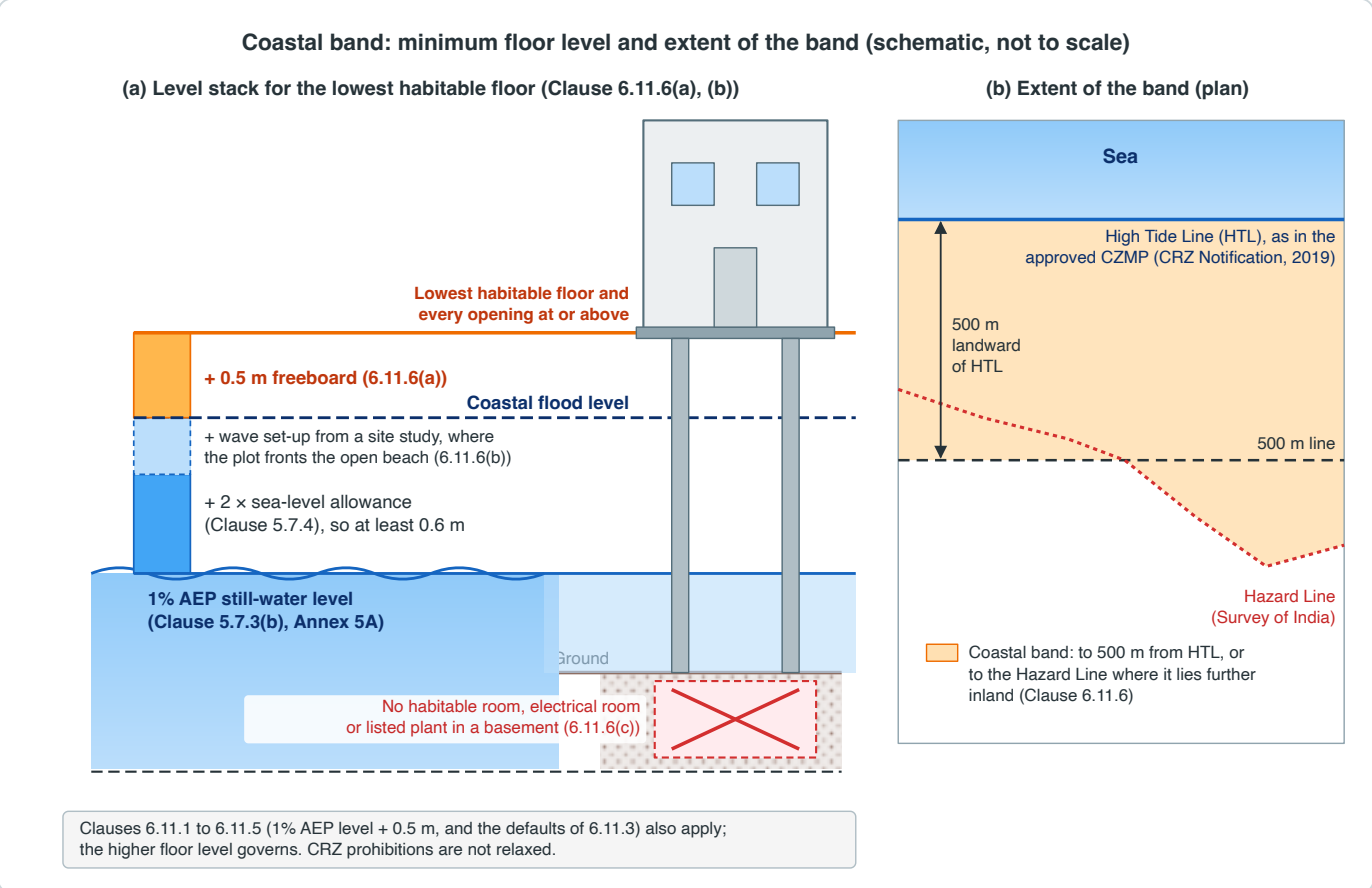


Figure 6.5 — Coastal band: the minimum floor level built up from the 1% AEP still-water level, twice the sea-level allowance, wave set-up where the plot fronts the open beach and 0.5 m freeboard; and the extent of the band, to 500 m from the High Tide Line or to the Hazard Line where it lies further inland (Clause 6.11.6). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the CRZ Notification, 2019 (para 1(i) and Annexure IV) and PUB Singapore, Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage (7th ed.), cl. 2.1.1.

Commentary. The 0.5 m freeboard above the 1% AEP level follows the DID Malaysia 2008 checklist (platform and lowest floor at 100-yr ARI + 0.5 m). It is more than the APWA 5600 (2006, 5601.8 A2) requirement of 1 ft (about 0.3 m) above the 1% stage. The 0.65 m default in Clause 6.11.3 is derived from the other limits of this chapter, not separately sourced: the 1% water level at the crown may be up to 150 mm (Table 6.2), plus the 0.5 m freeboard. It has no direct precedent and applies to plots where no flood level exists. URDPFI (2015) also links minimum plinth levels to flood frequency in its flood-plain zoning, which is covered in Chapter 7.

Clause 6.11.3(b) lets a small plot use a mapped 1% AEP depth where no local study exists, instead of guessing from the road level alone. Modelled national maps are coarse (about 30 m), and most model rainfall and river flooding but not storm surge, which is why 6.11.3 keeps the road-crown check and Clause 6.11.6 sets a separate coastal rule.

The coastal band of Clause 6.11.6 uses the 500 m line of the CRZ Notification, 2019 (G.S.R. 37(E), para 1(i): "the land area from High Tide Line ... to 500 meters on the landward side"), because every coastal authority already maps it and it needs no new survey. The Hazard Line, demarcated by the Survey of India to show the extent of flooding and shoreline change, extends the band where it lies further inland (CRZ Notification, 2019, Annexure IV). The band takes the coastal level from the joint-case still-water level of Chapter 5 rather than from the rainfall map. The higher standard reflects the setting: a coastal flood rises with the sea, cannot be drained while the tide is up, and will rise further with the sea. Singapore takes the same approach with a fixed minimum platform level of 4.0 m above datum on its southern coast and 4.5 m on its northern coast, whatever the rainfall flood level (PUB Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed., cl. 2.1.1). Each coastal State's tide and surge levels vary too much along its coast for one fixed level, so this Manual uses the computed still-water level instead. Using twice the sea-level allowance applies the sensitivity case of Clause 5.7.4(c) as the design case, because a building, unlike a drain, cannot easily be raised later. The basement restriction in 6.11.6(c) is set by this Manual: a basement in the coastal band fills from the sea as well as from rain, and cannot be pumped out to a tide-locked outfall. Bihar has no coast, no High Tide Line and no Coastal Regulation Zone, so the coastal band is empty in the State and Clause 6.11.6 does not apply there. Clauses 6.11.3 and 6.11.4 matter instead. The Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 state that "Basement shall not be allowed in flood prone areas" and that basements shall not be permitted in a low-lying area without adequate drainage (47(1)), require that "surface drainage does not enter the basement" (47(6)(D)), and allow the ceiling of an upper basement to stand 1.20–1.5 m above the average surrounding ground (47(6)(C)). They set a floor level against flooding only near a tank, where the Authority may require the lowest floor "to be raised above the normal maximum flood level of the adjoining ground" (30(B)), and they do not define a flood-prone area. The plinth height of the 2014 Byelaws was not read for this Manual [TBC]; the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, which had not been notified when research was done, give a plinth of 0.45 m minimum and 0.9 m maximum (Table 6), keep the bar on basements in low-lying and flood-prone areas (cl.23(12)(1)) and require site plans to show the normal flood-affected areas (cl.6). Clause 6.11.3, which sets the lowest habitable floor and every opening 0.65 m above the road crown where no flood level has been computed, and Clause 6.11.4, which applies the same level, or 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level, to the crest of every basement ramp and the sill of every basement opening, are set by this Manual and add to the Byelaws; where the Byelaws bar a basement, the bar governs. Between the embankments of an embanked river, and within 500 m beyond the far bank where only one bank is embanked, WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 prohibits permanent construction altogether (Chapter 7).

6.12 Culverts and road crossings

6.12.1 **Design AEP.** A culvert or bridge that carries a road over a drain or waterway shall pass the design AEP flow of Table 6.1 for that road class without overtopping the road, and with the headwater limits of Chapter 9, Clause 9.4. Where the waterway is a State highway or national highway crossing, the design AEP shall also be not less than that of IRC:SP:42-2014 §7.1.4 for the span. The rarer AEP governs.

6.12.2 **Check event and 1% AEP.** At the check event and at the 1% AEP event, the crossing and the road together shall pass the flow:

- (a) with overtopping depth ≤ 150 mm at the road crown and ≤ 350 mm at the deepest point of the road;
- (b) within the hazard limits of Table 6.3;
- (c) with no overtopping at all of arterial roads that are notified evacuation routes; and
- (d) without raising the 1% AEP flood level at any upstream building or property boundary above the level for the existing condition, unless the affected owners and the approving authority agree.

6.12.3 **Where overtopping is not permitted.** Overtopping in the 1% AEP event is permitted only where the structure span is less than 6 m **and** the 1% AEP peak flow is not more than 7 m³/s, unless a guard rail is installed downstream of the overtopping section. Otherwise, the crossing shall pass the 1% AEP flow without overtopping.

6.12.4 **Blockage check.** The 1% AEP check shall be repeated with a blocked inlet:

- (a) 50% of the inlet area blocked for culverts with a span or diameter below 1.5 m; and
- (b) 20% blocked for larger culverts.

The results of this check shall meet Clause 6.12.2(a) and (d).

6.12.5 **Minimum size.** Culverts under public roads shall be at least 900 mm in diameter, or 900 mm × 900 mm for box culverts.

6.12.6 **Hydraulic design.** Culvert hydraulics, including inlet and outlet control, tailwater, road overtopping and outlet protection, shall follow Chapter 9, Clauses 9.4 and 9.6.

> Commentary. The design AEPs are those of Table 6.1. The overtopping limits are the street-depth limits of Table 6.2. The span and flow threshold in Clause 6.12.3 is the SI conversion of APWA 5600 (2006): overtopping allowed only where the structure span is under 20 ft and the 1% peak is 250 cfs or less, unless a downstream guard fence is installed. IRC:SP:42-2014 (§7.1.4) sets 25-yr for NH/SH culverts up to 2 m span and 50-yr for 2–6 m spans. The blockage percentages in Clause 6.12.4 and the 900 mm minimum size have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 50% value matches the grate clogging factor.

6.13 Bihar construction-practice requirements

6.13.1 **Covered roadside drains.** Where a roadside drain is covered by slabs that form a footpath:

- (a) it shall be designed as an open channel with the freeboard of Table 6.7 measured to the soffit of the cover slab, and its HGL shall meet Clause 6.8 measured to the footpath and inlet levels;
- (b) road runoff shall enter through openings in the drain wall at road level (Clause 6.6.1(b)), each with a silt sump (Clause 6.6.7), at the spacing of Clause 6.6.4;
- (c) footpath runoff shall enter through slots or grated openings in the cover, not by ponding on the footpath; and
- (d) the clear section shall meet Clause 6.7.6(c).

6.13.2 **Removable covers and access openings.** Covered drains shall have:

- (a) removable cover panels at not more than **10 m** centres, each at least 0.6 m long and spanning the full clear width, with recessed lifting points, liftable by two workers or by a hand-operated lifting device, and flush with the footpath;
- (b) access chambers with a clear opening of at least 0.6 m × 0.6 m at every junction, bend and change of section, and at not more than **30 m** centres on straight runs; and
- (c) covers rated for the traffic or pedestrian load at their location (Chapter 9, Clause 9.11).

6.13.3 **Silt traps.** In addition to the inlet sumps of Clause 6.6.7, silt trap chambers shall be provided:

- (a) upstream of every culvert under an arterial road;
- (b) upstream of every pump station and detention facility; and
- (c) at every outfall to a tank, river or other waterbody (with the gross pollutant trap required by Chapter 8).

Each silt trap shall be sized to hold the sediment expected between scheduled cleanings, using the sediment yield in Annex 6B, and shall be reachable by a desilting vehicle.

6.13.4 **Garbage and gross pollutant screens.** Screens shall be provided where an open drain enters a covered drain, a pipe or a culvert, and at outfalls under Chapter 8. Each screen shall:

- (a) be designed under Chapter 9, Clause 9.8;
- (b) have a bypass or overflow, so that a fully blinded screen does not flood properties or the road beyond the limits of this chapter; and
- (c) be checked hydraulically with 50% of its area blocked.

6.13.5 **No building over drains.** No structure other than an approved crossing or a removable cover shall be built over a public drain. Shop frontages, ramps and steps that cross a drain shall be removable or shall leave access openings that meet Clause 6.13.2.

6.13.6 **Utilities.** No water main, sewer, power or telecom cable, gas pipe or duct shall be laid along, or pass through, the flow area or freeboard of any drain. A utility that must cross a drain shall:

- (a) cross above the cover soffit or below the drain invert, inside a sleeve; and
- (b) be shown on the drainage plan with its level.

Where an existing utility crossing obstructs a drain, its area shall be deducted from the drain section, with a 50% blockage allowance for the debris it traps, until the utility is relocated. The utility owner shall relocate it when the drain is rebuilt.

6.13.7 **Sewage.** No sewage connection is permitted to a storm drain (Chapter 8). Covered drains shall be built with sealed joints where they run next to sewers.

6.13.8 **Edge protection.** Open drains deeper than 1.0 m beside a footpath, a carriageway or a public open space shall have railings or barriers. Open drains of any depth shall not be left uncovered across a footpath.

6.13.9 **As-built levels.** The as-built invert levels of every public drain, pipe and manhole shall be surveyed and submitted (Chapter 10). Inverts shall be within ±15 mm of design. An HGL re-check shall be submitted where they are not.

6.13.10 **Desilting.** Public drains shall be desilted before the south-west monsoon each year, as set out in Chapter 10.

> **Commentary.** Clause 6.13 has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it on the basis of Bihar practice. Most urban drains in the State are covered roadside drains under footpaths. They are often built with continuous cast-in-situ slabs and few openings, so they cannot be cleaned and fill with silt and solid waste within a season. CPHEEO (2019) notes that uncovered channels "are prone to the dumping of garbage" (Part A, Ch 2), which is why the drains are covered. Covering without access openings simply moves the problem out of sight. NDMA (2010) recommends that pre-monsoon desilting be complete by 31 March. In Bihar the south-west monsoon normally sets in at Purnea on 13 June, at Patna and Gaya on 16 June and at Chhapra on 18 June, and normally withdraws between 6 and 10 October (IMD, new normals). May is already wet in the north-east, with May normals of 166.5 mm in Kishanganj and 127.4 mm in Purnea (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*), and pre-monsoon days of more than 200 mm have fallen, such as 271.8 mm at Motihari on 29 May 2006 and 214.6 mm at Sabour on 22 April 1971 (IMD). So Clause 6.13.10 refers to the south-west monsoon, and Chapter 10 requires desilting and drain works to be complete by 15 May in sub-areas BR-B (Mithila and Kosi plain) and BR-C (Seemanchal), the date by which WRD is reported to complete its anti-erosion works, and by 31 May elsewhere, the desilting deadline reported for PMC (as

reported; extended in 2026 by a drain-cleaning campaign to 15 June); the sump houses, pumps, sluices, gates and standby generators are certified ready and test-run by 1 June (Clauses 5.11.5 and 5.12.9), before the onset; and pumps and sluices stay on standby until 15 October, the end of the period in which WRD's flood centre issues its daily flood bulletin (FMISC). No desilting order of UDHD was found during research [TBC], so these dates are set by this Manual.

The Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 bar a building "over or under a municipal drain" (29(D)), require the foundation of an external wall along a street to stand at least 1 m from the edge of the street or road margin "including the drain" (29(E)), and allow the Authority to require the land within a building's curtilage to be "effectively drained by surface water drains", with its written approval needed to connect a surface water drain to a sewer (30(D)); the Bihar Municipal Act 2007 bars the occupation of premises without a drain of the size, level and fall that the Chief Municipal Officer requires (s.201). Natural drains and the drains of WRD are open channels with a drainage reserve (Clause 6.9), and should not be covered, decked or built over; bye-law 29(A) already bars building in the natural waterways and drains shown in the Development Plan and the drainage plan. Where a drain is covered, Clause 6.13.2 applies to it in full. In Darbhanga an application to the NGT alleges that the new storm drains have been built closed, concrete-lined and connected to the sewage system (Talab Bachao Abhiyan, 2025).

Clause 6.13.7 is not yet the practice. Patna's nalas carry sewage to the Ganga and the Punpun: in 2020 the Bihar State Pollution Control Board identified 19 drains in Patna discharging 628.5 MLD, against six sewage treatment plants of 350 MLD sanctioned under Namami Gange (CAG, 2020), and on 5 March 2025 the NGT recorded the recommendation that "steps should be taken to ensure that stormwater remains separate from sewage" and that BUIDCO plan the diversion of the sewage to the nearest treatment plant (O.A. 188/2024/EZ, as quoted). The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 already lets the Chief Municipal Officer require separate drains for sewage and for rain water (s.198). Clause 8.9 sets how dry-weather flow in storm drains is surveyed and intercepted until the connections are removed, including the rule that interception shall not reduce the capacity of the drain (Clause 8.9.5(b)).

The 10 m and 30 m spacings and the ±15 mm tolerance have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Clause 6.13.6 responds to the common sight of water mains and cables running through drains. Each one traps debris and reduces the section. Mechanical cleaning through cover openings, rather than manual entry, is assumed throughout, consistent with the Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013.

6.14 Outfalls

6.14.1 Outfalls shall be designed for the tailwater conditions of Chapter 5. Outfalls below the 1% AEP still-water level shall have flap or tide gates or non-return valves (Chapter 5 and Chapter 9, Clause 9.10).

6.14.2 Outfall protection and energy dissipation shall be designed under Chapter 9, Clause 9.6. Outfalls to tanks and waterbodies shall also meet Chapters 7 and 8.

6.15 Submittal requirements

Every conveyance submittal shall include a **Conveyance Design Report** (Form 6-1) containing:

1. a catchment plan showing sub-catchments, the minor system, inlet locations and the major-system overland flow paths for the 1% AEP event (Clause 6.3.2);
2. the land-use and road-class AEP adopted for each element (Table 6.1), and the high-density area status;
3. design flows, with the rainfall sheet of Chapter 2 and the method of Chapter 3;
4. gutter spread, depth and D·V checks for the minor, check and 1% events (Tables 6.2 and 6.3);
5. an inlet schedule with clean capacity, clogging factor, design capacity and bypass flow (Clause 6.6);

6. pipe and drain design tables with n, velocity, sediment allowance and freeboard (Clause 6.7);
7. HGL profiles for the minor and check events, with the tailwater used (Clause 6.8);
8. sag ponding levels, including the fully-blocked check (Clause 6.10);
9. a floor-level schedule for every building (Clause 6.11);
10. culvert and crossing calculations (Clause 6.12 and Chapter 9); and
11. a utilities-crossing schedule and access-opening layout for covered drains (Clause 6.13).

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems*, Volume I, Part A: Engineering Design. Tables 4.1, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.8, 5.11, 5.12, 6.2, 11.2, 11.5; §5.3, §5.6.2, Fig. 5.9. https://www.mohua.gov.in/static/uploads/2025/10/8a2456c722036d78c72a698898ef846d.pdf
- PUB Singapore (2018, with Addendum No. 3, April 2025). *Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage*, 7th edition. Clauses 1.1, 2.1.1, 5.1, 5.3, 9.6, 9.7 and Appendix 1 (Drainage Reserve Requirements). https://www.pub.gov.sg/-/media/PUB/PDF/Code-of-Practices-and-Submission-Guidelines/Surface-Water-Drainage/Code-of-Practice-on-Surface-Water-Drainage.pdf
- Indian Roads Congress (2013). IRC:SP:50-2013, *Guidelines on Urban Drainage* (First Revision). https://law.resource.org/pub/in/bis/irc/irc.gov.in.sp.050.2013.pdf
- Indian Roads Congress (2014). IRC:SP:42-2014, *Guidelines on Road Drainage* (First Revision). https://law.resource.org/pub/in/bis/irc/irc.gov.in.sp.042.2014.pdf
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 7784 (Part 1): 1993, *Code of practice for design of cross drainage works, Part 1: General features* (as cited in CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.12).
- Federal Highway Administration (2024). *Urban Drainage Design Manual*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 22, 4th edition, FHWA-HIF-24-006. (3rd edition 2009, FHWA-NHI-10-009.)
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). *Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities* (5601.8, 5604.2, 5608.4). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf ; and Version 2025.01 (Dec 2025).
- Australian Institute for Disaster Resilience (2014). *Australian Disaster Resilience Guideline 7-3: Technical flood risk management guideline: Flood hazard*. Tables 1 and 2. https://knowledge.aidr.org.au/media/1891/guideline-7-3-technical-flood-risk-management.pdf
- Smith, G.P. and Wasko, C.D. (2012). *Australian Rainfall and Runoff Revision Project 15: Two-dimensional modelling in urban and rural floodplains*. Engineers Australia.
- Ball, J. et al. (eds) (2019). *Australian Rainfall and Runoff: A Guide to Flood Estimation*, Book 6 (Chapters 6 and 7). Commonwealth of Australia (Geoscience Australia).
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). *Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management*; and (2012) *Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA)*, 2nd edition.
- Gupta, K. *Return Period and Rainfall Intensity for Drainage Design in India*. IIT Bombay. https://www.civil.iitb.ac.in/~kgupta/drainagedesign.pdf
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, *Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme* (drainage of Patna; 19 drains of 628.505 MLD; six STPs of 350 MLD; report number and tabling date not confirmed). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- Patna High Court. CWJC No. 15027 of 2018 with connected writ petitions (*Navin Kumar Singh v. State of Bihar*), order of 18 October 2019 (waterlogging of Patna; sump houses; cleaning of nalas). https://slic.org.in/uploads/2019/10/Vishal-PIL-ORDER.pdf
- National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone). O.A. 188/2024/EZ, *Saurav Narayan v. Bihar State Pollution Control Board*, order of 5 March 2025, as quoted in the supplementary affidavit of the District Magistrate, Patna, of 19 August 2025. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755756412_pagenumber.pdf
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan v. Government of Bihar, application to the National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone), 2025 (Darbhanga storm water drainage and canal-lining projects; allegations of the applicant). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755167303.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2020). Press release of 15 May 2020, *New normal dates of onset/progress and withdrawal of southwest monsoon* (Pai et al.), Table 2 (Purnea, Patna, Gaya, Chhapra). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20200515_pr_804.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2011). *Climate of Bihar*, Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18, Table V (district normals, 1951–2000). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/patna/mcdata/climateofbihar.pdf ; and *Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012)*, Bihar pages.

https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar, Flood Management Improvement Support Centre. Daily Flood Information Bulletin (issued generally from 15 June to 15 October). https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/
- Central Water Commission. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin for Bihar, 31 October 2026 (Punpun at Sripalpur). https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- Press reports on the Patna waterlogging of September 2019 (Hindustan Times, 1 October 2019), https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-lucknow/20191001/281797105729423 , (CBS News/AFP, 30 September 2019), https://www.cbsnews.com/news/monsoon-season-flooding-india-heavy-late-rains-kills-more-than-100-in-several-days-2019-09-30 , and the inquiry (Business Standard/ANI, 14 October 2019), https://business-standard.com/article/news-ani/show-cause-notices-served-to-officials-responsible-for-patna-water-logging-says-chief-secretary-119101401451_1.html ; on the rain of 29 July 2025 at Patna (Patrika), https://www.patrika.com/en/state-news/patna-breaks-28-year-old-rainfall-record-city-inundated-19820889 ; on the Patna storm water drainage project (NBMCW), https://www.nbmcw.com/news/infra-development/construction-begins-on-stormwater-drainage-project-in-patna-to-prevent-floods.html ; on the Saidpur nala (Patna Press), https://patnapress.com/?p=63534 ; on the State budget of 2026 for storm water drainage (Patna Press), https://patnapress.com/bihar-budget-urban-development-drainage-waste-management-2026/ ; on PMC's drain-cleaning drive of 2026 (Patna Press), https://patnapress.com/patna-special-drain-cleaning-drive-monsoon-2026/ ; on WRD's anti-erosion deadline (Prabhat Khabar), https://www.prabhatkhabar.com/state/bihar/bhagalpur/date-for-completion-of-anti-erosion-works-has-been-extended ; and on the waterlogging of Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh since the 1970s (Dialogue Earth).
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). *National Guidelines: Management of Urban Flooding*.
- MoHUA / TCPO (2015). *URDPFI Guidelines*, Volume I.
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (2019). *Coastal Regulation Zone Notification, 2019*, G.S.R. 37(E), 18 January 2019. Para 1(i) and Annexure IV. https://crz.elaw.in/crz2019.html
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar. *Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014* (Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text), bye-laws 29, 30 and 47. https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/PlanningPortals/images/Bihar%20Building%20Bylaw%20English%20Dec-2014.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar. *Bihar Building Byelaws 2026*, draft posted on 5 June 2026 (not notified when research was done), def. 151, cl.6, cl.23(12) and Table 6. https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2026/Jun/05-Jun-2026/19/LatestNews/0424d72a-9e14-4227-8221-8adb08c0c009.pdf
- *Bihar Municipal Act, 2007*, ss.195, 196, 198 and 201. https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- *Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017* (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311, 5 April 2018. https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- *Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026* (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120, 16 September 2026, Schedule V. https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2026/Act32of2026BR.pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar. Order No. 143, 6 March 2025 (Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers), annexed to the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, of 12 January 2026 in NGT O.A. 200/2014. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (2017). *Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017*, r.4(2)(vi).
- Government of India. *The Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013*.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
6A	Standard inlet types for Bihar with capacity curves (on grade and sag)
6B	Sediment yield for silt-trap sizing and calibration of the sediment allowance
6C	Standard drawings: covered roadside drain with removable covers, access chamber, inlet with silt sump
Form 6-1	Conveyance Design Report checklist

CHAPTER 7

Waterbodies, Pokhars (Ponds) and Setbacks

7.1 Purpose and scope

7.1.1 This chapter treats waterbodies as part of the drainage system. It sets the rules for:

- (a) identifying and mapping every waterbody that a development or public work affects;
- (b) the setback zones around waterbodies, and the uses allowed in each zone;
- (c) fill in flood-prone land, and the compensatory storage needed where fill is allowed;
- (d) counting tank (pokhar) storage, including tank cascades, as design storage;
- (e) restoring and desilting tanks and ponds;
- (f) protecting supply channels, surplus courses, inlets and outlets;
- (g) wetlands, marshes and estuaries, which in Bihar, with no coast and no tidal water, means the six Ramsar sites, such as Kabartal in Begusarai, the wetlands notified under the 2017 Rules, the chaurs and mauns (oxbow lakes) of the north Bihar plain, the tals of the south bank of the Ganga, such as the Mokama group of tals, and the pokhars, talabs and ahars recorded in the Revenue records;
- (h) the interface with encroachment and its removal;
- (i) fee-in-lieu contributions to regional tank storage (with Chapter 4); and
- (j) the safety of tank bunds and other embankments.

7.1.2 This chapter applies to every development and public work to which this Manual applies under Chapter 1 and that:

- (a) adjoins a waterbody or lies wholly or partly within its setback (Clause 7.4);
- (b) discharges to a waterbody, directly or through a drain, within the downstream analysis extent of Chapter 5; or
- (c) alters a waterbody, its bund, sluice, surplus weir, supply channel or surplus course.

7.1.3 Where a statute or statutory rule sets a wider setback or a stricter restriction, the statute governs (Clause 1.3.3). Nothing in this chapter authorises any work that the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 (sections 177, 183 and 252), the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956, the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012 and BBL 2014, the Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997, WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, the River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, or any other law, prohibits.

> Commentary. Bihar has no Act for the protection of tanks or ponds as such. Its pokhars, talabs and ahars are protected instead by municipal law, encroachment law, the building bye-laws, the courts and a State campaign. Inside a municipal area, "all public tanks, reservoirs, … and any adjacent land, not being private property, appertaining to any such water-source" vest in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s. 177), and no person may dig or construct a new tank or pond without the permission of the Chief Municipal Officer (ss. 183 and 252). The same Act keeps older sanitary powers that run the other way: where piped supply exists the Municipality may require an owner "to fill up such well, tank or other water area" (s. 184), and the Chief Municipal Officer may "direct the filling up of any well, pool, ditch, tank, pond, pit or undrained ground … which appears to him to be, or likely to become, injurious to health" (s. 251(e)). **This Manual treats every recorded pokhar as drainage infrastructure.** A pokhar is storage and conveyance in the drainage system, and filling one, under these sections or otherwise, removes that storage; no design under this Manual shall assume or rely on the filling of a recorded pokhar unless a drainage assessment under Chapters 3 to 5 shows where its storage goes, and the lost storage is replaced

under Clause 7.6.4 (see "Recorded pokhar" in the definitions after Clause 7.2). A pond that is a health risk is to be treated (desilting, inlet screening and exclusion of sewage, Clauses 7.9 and 8.9), not filled. Outside the municipal areas, land "managed by or vested in" the State, a local authority or a Gram Panchayat, and land over which the public or the community has a right of user "such as right of way, burials, cremation, pasturage or irrigation", is public land under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956, from which encroachment can be removed after notice and hearing; the right of irrigation brings community ahars and pynes within it. BBL 2014 bars permission for building "within nine (9) meters of the highest water mark of a tank" unless domestic drainage is kept out of the tank (bye-law 30(B)), and "In areas of natural waterways or drains, as detailed in the Development Plan, and drainage plan" (bye-law 29(A)), and keeps ponds, lakes, wetlands and "Water logged/marshy area" in a Water Bodies Use Zone. The State's Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan, led by the Rural Development Department with fifteen departments, takes the "Identification and removal of encroachment from public water bodies" and the "Restoration and rejuvenation of public water bodies such as Ponds/Aahars/Payeens" as its first two components; it is an executive campaign, and no statute or notified scheme for it was found. The National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone) has ordered encroachment around three ponds of Darbhanga removed (O.A. 155/2022/EZ, order of 23 March 2023, as listed). Wetlands notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, and the State's six Ramsar sites, are regulated by the **Bihar State Wetland Authority**, and the embanked rivers by WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025. This chapter gives the design rules that protect waterbody storage and conveyance. It does not replace the municipal, revenue, planning, wetland and floodplain procedures that record and protect waterbodies in law, or the directions of the Patna High Court and the National Green Tribunal.

7.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Waterbody	A river (such as the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun, the Gandak, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati, the Kosi and the Mahananda), natural drain or nala, canal, lake, tal or jheel, pokhar or pond (pokhar, pokhra, talab), ahar (the rain- and flood-water reservoir of south Bihar) and its pyne, chaur or maun (seasonal floodplain depression or oxbow lake), marsh or low wet land, floodplain wetland or depression (in the diara or behind an embankment), abandoned quarry or borrow pit, supply channel or surplus course, perennial or seasonal (as in Chapter 1).
Tank (pokhar)	A waterbody impounded by an earthen bund, fed by its own catchment and/or a supply channel, with a surplus weir and one or more sluices.
Tank cascade	A chain of tanks in which the surplus or sluice outflow of one tank feeds the next (as in Chapter 3).
Full tank level (FTL)	The crest level of the surplus weir (overflow, outlet or spillway) of a tank, or the permanent crest of its regulating structure. The tank holds water up to FTL without spilling.
Maximum water level (MWL)	The highest water level in a tank when the surplus weir passes the tank's design flood. For this Manual, it is the greater of the level recorded by the WRD and the level computed for the 1% AEP (100-yr) inflow with the climate factor of Clause 2.8 (Clause 7.7.4).
Top bund level (TBL)	The crest level of the tank bund.
Waterspread	The area of a tank submerged at FTL.
Foreshore	The land around a tank between the FTL contour and the MWL contour. Foreshore land is flooded whenever the tank surpluses, and is part of the tank's flood storage.
Supply channel (pyne, feeder channel, nala or canal)	A channel that brings water from a river, anicut or upstream tank into a tank.
Surplus course	The channel that carries the overflow of a surplus weir to the next tank, a river, a drain or the sea.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Sluice (sluice, regulator or flap gate)	A controlled outlet through a tank bund, usually to an irrigation channel.
Top of bank	For a channel, the break in slope at the edge of the channel. Where it cannot be identified, the edge of the water surface at the 50% AEP (2-yr) flow.
1% AEP flood extent	The land flooded by the 1% AEP (100-yr) flood with the climate factor of Clause 2.8, from a hydraulic model that meets Chapter 3 and Chapter 5, or from a map adopted by the Authority under Clause 7.3.4.
Floodway	The waterbody and the adjoining land that must be kept free of obstruction to pass the 1% AEP flood without raising the 1% AEP water level by more than **0.1 m** at any point (Clause 7.6.1). For a tank, all land below MWL.
Flood fringe	The part of the 1% AEP flood extent outside the floodway.
Zone 1 (waterbody protection zone)	The inner setback zone defined in Clause 7.4.3.
Zone 2 (flood fringe setback)	The outer setback zone defined in Clause 7.4.4.
Setback	Zone 1 and Zone 2 together.
Compensatory storage	Excavated storage that replaces flood storage lost to fill, under Clause 7.6.4.
Flood cushion	Storage below FTL kept empty, under a documented operating rule, to absorb a flood (Clause 7.8).

Bihar terms. The following terms are used in this chapter in addition to those above (see also Annex 7E):

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Pokhar (पोखर; pokhra, talab)	A natural or excavated depression that stores rainfall runoff: "A pond, pool, tank, lake" in Platts (Annex 7E). Talab is a synonym. A pokhar is a tank or pond under Clause 7.2. Most pokhars have no surplus weir or sluice; where a pokhar has none, its FTL is the level at which it spills to a nali, a nala or low ground, found by survey. A public pokhar in a municipal area is a public tank vested in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s. 177).
Recorded pokhar	A pokhar, talab or ahar shown in the Revenue records, the Municipality's records, a Development Plan or drainage plan, or the lists of the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan. A recorded pokhar is part of the drainage system for this Manual. Where it is proposed to be filled, in whole or part, including under an order under section 184 or 251(e) of the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, a drainage assessment under Chapters 3 to 5 shall show the storage and flow paths lost and their effect upstream and downstream, and the lost storage shall be replaced under Clause 7.6.4 before any design relying on the filling is approved. This definition and rule are set by this Manual.
Monsoon water line	The outer edge of a pokhar's, ahar's or chaur's water in the monsoon: the larger of the edge shown by dated imagery or survey of the monsoon (July to September) in recent years and the edge recorded in the Revenue records, and where neither is available, the MWL contour. The boundary of a pokhar, ahar or chaur under Clauses 7.3.3 and 7.13.1 is the largest of its Revenue record boundary, its surveyed FTL and its monsoon water line, and setbacks are measured from that boundary. The "highest water mark of a tank" of bye-law 30(B) of BBL 2014 is taken to be no lower than the monsoon water line. This definition is set by this Manual.
Ahar; pyne	An ahar is a reservoir that collects rain or flood water for irrigation; a pyne (pain, payeen) is the channel that feeds an ahar from a river or leads water from it to the fields (Annex 7E). They form the ahar-pyne systems of south Bihar, especially around Gaya, for which this Manual takes the Minor Water Resources Department as the working custodian (its mandate for them was not read for this Manual). An ahar is a tank under Clause 7.2, and a pyne a supply channel or surplus course under Clause 7.10. No Act and no published engineering description of ahar geometry was found for this Manual.
Chaur; maun; tal	A chaur is a low tract in which rainwater stands for a long time (Annex 7E), the seasonal floodplain depression of north Bihar, such as Haldia Chaur in Saran; a maun is an oxbow lake, as the Bagras maun of the Kabartal complex (Annex 7E; the term is not yet verified in a dictionary); a tal is a large shallow lake or seasonally flooded low land, as Kabartal and the Mokama group of tals. Each is a lake or a wetland for this chapter, and Clause 7.12 applies to it.

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Diara	Riverine land of alluvium, an island or the land exposed when a river shifts (Annex 7E). Diara land is floodplain for this chapter, and where it lies within the Flood Plain Zone of an embanked river, WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 also applies.
Nala; nali	A nala is a watercourse or drain, natural or cut (Annex 7E), such as the Saidpur, Bakarganj or Kurji nalas of Patna; a nali is a small street or house drain. Every nala that drains 8 ha or more is a natural channel under Clause 7.4.1(b), whoever maintains it and whether or not it is lined or covered.
Flood Plain Zone (WRD Order 143)	For a river embanked on both banks, the land between the embankments; for a river embanked on one bank, the land from the embankment across the river to 500 m beyond the other bank (WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025). It is kept within a Prohibited Zone, where permanent construction is not permitted and fully temporary or movable structures only beyond 250 m from the current river bank. It is a wider statutory line under Clause 7.4.5 for the uses the Order restricts in it. It is not the design extent: the 1% AEP extent of Clause 7.3.4, with the climate factor, sets Zone 2 wherever it is wider.
River-locked outfall; sump house	A drain or nala outfall through a river bank or embankment that cannot discharge by gravity while the river is high, such as the outfalls of Patna to the Ganga and the Punpun, whose sluices are closed at high river stage (Figure 7.3). A sump house, or drainage pumping station, is the sump and pumps that lift the drain's flow to the river while the sluice is shut. The sluice is a controllable outlet under Clause 7.8 only where it is operated to a written rule; the tailwater of the outfall is the river stage (Chapter 5).

7.3 Inventory and mapping of waterbodies

7.3.1 **Statewide inventory.** The Authority, with the WRD and the Revenue and Land Reforms Department, shall maintain a GIS layer of every waterbody in its area (Annex 7A). For each waterbody it shall record:

- (a) its type (Clause 7.2), name and survey numbers;
- (b) its custodian (the Nagar Nigam, Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat (in which public tanks vest under section 177 of the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007), BUIDCO (for the storm water drains and drainage pumping stations it has built or took over from the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad), the PMAA or another planning authority under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, the WRD (for its rivers, embankments, canals and drains), the Minor Water Resources Department (for ahars, pynes and minor irrigation tanks), the Gram Panchayat, the Revenue and Land Reforms Department (through the Collector and the Circle Officer), the Bihar State Wetland Authority (for a notified wetland), BIADA (for its industrial areas), a private owner, or another body);
- (c) its boundary as recorded in Revenue records;
- (d) for tanks: FTL, MWL, TBL, the surplus weir crest length and type, sluices, the supply channel and the surplus course, each with its datum;
- (e) its position in any tank cascade, with the upstream and downstream tanks;
- (f) the 1% AEP flood extent, where mapped; and
- (g) known encroachments, with the date recorded.

7.3.2 **Project mapping.** Every drainage report shall include a Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1) showing all waterbodies:

- (a) within the site;
- (b) within 100 m of the site boundary; and
- (c) downstream, to the extent of the downstream analysis of Chapter 5.

The sheet shall show, on a plan at a scale of 1:1,000 or larger for (a) and (b):

- the Revenue record boundary;
- the surveyed FTL or top of bank;
- the MWL contour (tanks) and the 1% AEP flood extent;
- Zone 1 and Zone 2 (Clause 7.4); and
- every supply channel, surplus course, sluice and surplus weir.

7.3.3 **Sources.** Waterbodies shall be identified from all of the following. Where they conflict, the larger waterbody extent governs:

- (a) Revenue records and village maps of the Revenue and Land Reforms Department, in which pokhars, talabs, ahars, pynes, nalas and land covered by water are recorded, and in which public land, including land over which the community has a right of irrigation, is protected under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956; the public tanks and their adjacent land vested in the Municipality under section 177 of the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007; the natural waterways and drains shown in a Development Plan or drainage plan, on which BBL 2014 bars building (bye-law 29(A)), and the Water Bodies Use Zone of the Patna Master Plan 2031 and other plans; the Flood Plain Zone of the embanked rivers under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (the land between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank); the boundary of every wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 and of the six Ramsar sites; and the lists of public ponds, ahars and pynes identified, restored or freed of encroachment under the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan;
- (b) Minor Water Resources Department and Gram Panchayat tank registers and records of FTL and MWL;
- (c) the Authority's inventory (Clause 7.3.1) and any list published under court directions;
- (d) historical topographic maps and satellite imagery, including the ISRO National Wetland Inventory and Assessment; and
- (e) a site survey by a licensed surveyor, levelled to the datum stated in Clause 7.3.5.

7.3.4 **Flood extent maps.** The Authority may adopt 1% AEP flood extent or flood depth maps for its area. A depth map adopted under this clause also sets floor levels under Clause 6.11. Where a map has been adopted, it shall be used unless a site hydraulic study under Chapters 3 and 5 shows a larger extent. Where no map has been adopted, the Applicant shall determine the 1% AEP extent by a hydraulic study for:

- (a) any site in a flood-sensitive catchment (Chapter 1);
- (b) any site of 1 ha or more adjoining a waterbody; and
- (c) any site where the Authority so requires.

For other sites, the fixed-width setback of Clause 7.4.6 may be used.

7.3.5 **Datum.** All levels in this chapter shall be stated to one datum, stated on every drawing. Where Minor Water Resources Department records use a local or older datum, the conversion to the project datum shall be surveyed and stated.

> **Commentary.** No 1% AEP flood map of any Bihar city was found, and no design return period for urban drainage has been published for any Bihar city. Along the rivers, Bihar has begun statutory floodplain zoning, in two phases. In the first, WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 zones the embanked rivers by embankment geometry, not by a return period: where both banks are embanked, the land between the embankments is the Flood Plain Zone, and where only one bank is embanked, the land from the embankment across the river to 500 m beyond the other bank; the zone is a Prohibited Zone, monitored by the district administration. The Order records that about 68.80 lakh ha of the State's 94.16 lakh ha (about 73%) is flood-prone, and that about 3,800.41 km of embankments protect 39.96 lakh ha. The Kosi is embanked on both banks, so the whole of its inter-embankment land is a Prohibited Zone under the Order. In the second phase, for the un-embanked rivers, the National Institute of Hydrology, Roorkee is to delineate zones on the 5-, 25- and 100-year floods for the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari, under a memorandum of 3 August 2025 for a one-year study (WRD, as filed by the Chief Secretary in NGT O.A. 200/2014); the result was not available for this Manual. For mapping, the Survey of India supplied a 10 m digital elevation model of the State (2 January 2025), and the WRD has asked again for 1 m contours (6 January 2026). The River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016 defines the floodplain of the Ganga and its tributaries by "a flood of frequency once in hundred years" (cl. 3(l)). The building rules ask for flood information but supply none: under BBL 2014 no permission is granted where, in "areas which get flooded, the Structural Plans are not prepared taking this into account" (bye-law 29(G)), and basements "shall not be allowed in flood prone areas" (bye-law 47(1)), but "flood prone" is not mapped; the Draft Bihar Building

> Byelaws 2026 would require site plans to show "the approximate location and size of water body, normal flood-affected areas" and 0.5 m contours where the slope is steeper than 1 in 20 (cl. 6; a draft, not notified). Clause 7.3.4 lets the Authority adopt flood maps once they are issued; until then the Applicant must produce the 1% AEP extent for larger and flood-sensitive sites, and the Flood Plain Zone of an embanked river, and the NIH lines on the Ganga once issued, are minimums that the 1% AEP extent of this Manual, with the climate factor, may exceed but never reduce. Clause 7.3.3 makes the larger of the recorded and surveyed extents govern, because the Revenue boundary and the surveyed water edge often differ, and either may have been reduced by encroachment. The 100 m search band in Clause 7.3.2 is set by this Manual.

7.4 Setbacks

7.4.1 **Waterbodies to which setbacks apply.** Setbacks apply to:

- (a) every waterbody recorded under Clause 7.3.1 or found under Clause 7.3.3, whatever its size; and
- (b) every natural channel, whether recorded or not, that drains **8 ha** or more at the site.

7.4.2 **Two zones.** The setback has two zones, shown in Figure 7.1:

- **Zone 1 (waterbody protection zone)**, next to the waterbody; and
- **Zone 2 (flood fringe setback)**, outside Zone 1.

7.4.3 **Zone 1 width.** Zone 1 is measured outward from the FTL contour (tanks, lakes and ponds) or from the top of bank (channels). Where both apply, use whichever gives the wider zone. Zone 1 extends to the **greatest** of:

- (a) **15 m**, the minimum set by this Manual (no Bihar statute, rule or bye-law read for this Manual sets a setback in metres from nalas, pynes or chaurs: BBL 2014 sets 9 m only from the highest water mark of a tank (bye-law 30(B)), WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 applies only to embanked rivers, and the 50 m of the Wetlands Rules, 2017 applies only around notified wetlands; see the Disclosure below);
- (b) the outer edge of the floodway (Clause 7.6.1); and
- (c) for a tank, the MWL contour.

7.4.4 **Zone 2 width.** Zone 2 extends from the outer edge of Zone 1 to the **1% AEP flood extent plus 10 m**. Where the 1% AEP flood extent lies inside Zone 1, Zone 2 is 10 m wide.

7.4.5 **Statutory and approval setbacks.** Where a statute, a statutory rule, a condition of planning permission or the approval of the WRD for a work on or next to one of its rivers, embankments, canals or drains (including the Prohibited Zone of an embanked river under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025), the permission of the Bihar State Wetland Authority for a regulated activity in a notified wetland, or a direction of the Patna High Court or the National Green Tribunal sets a setback wider than Zone 1 or Zone 2, the wider setback governs for the uses it restricts.

7.4.6 **Fixed-width setback where no 1% AEP extent is available.** Where Clause 7.3.4 does not require a hydraulic study and no map has been adopted, the setback (Zone 1 plus Zone 2) shall be not less than the following, measured as in Clause 7.4.3:

Table 7.1 — Fixed-width setback where no 1% AEP extent is available

Waterbody	Total setback (Zone 1 + Zone 2)	Of which Zone 1
Channel draining 8 ha to 65 ha	25 m	15 m
Channel draining 65 ha to 20 km²	40 m	15 m
Channel draining more than 20 km², and rivers	50 m	20 m

Waterbody	Total setback (Zone 1 + Zone 2)	Of which Zone 1
Tank, lake or pond	MWL contour + 25 m	to MWL contour, and not less than 15 m from FTL
Marsh, estuary or backwater	as notified by the Authority, and not less than 50 m	15 m

This table is the alternative S-3 of the Policy Supplement (Annex 1C) and may be adopted under Clause 1.7.

7.4.7 **Minimum in all cases.** No setback under this chapter, and no variance under Clause 1.10, shall reduce Zone 1 below 15 m (Clause 1.10.3(c)).

Commentary. The 15 m minimum is set by this Manual. Bihar's only statutory distance from a pond is the 9 m of BBL 2014, under which no permission is granted for a building "within nine (9) meters of the highest water mark of a tank" unless the owner satisfies the Authority that the building's domestic drainage will not pass into the tank (bye-law 30(B)); the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, which would repeal BBL 2014 if notified, prohibit "All permanent construction within the water body boundary" but carry no distance (Table 5; a draft, not notified as of September 2026). Along embanked rivers, WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 makes the land between the embankments, or from an embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank, a Prohibited Zone, and around a wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 no permanent construction is permitted within 50 m of the mean high flood level (rule 4(2)(vi)). No distance from a nala, pyne or chaur was found. This Manual's 15 m, wider than the 9 m tank line, gives every pokhar, nala, pyne and chaur a hydraulic corridor, and is this Manual's proposal, not a statutory width (see the Disclosure below). Extending the setback to the mapped 1% AEP extent plus a margin follows the Kansas City Metro APWA Section 5600 (2025.01) two-zone structure:

- APWA Zone 1 (streamside) is measured from top of bank, and only utility and road crossings are allowed in it.
- APWA Zone 2 is the 1% AEP flood extent plus 10 ft (about 3 m), for streams draining 20–40 acres.
- APWA lowered the trigger for stream setbacks from 40 acres to 20 acres (about 8 ha) in 2025.01.

(MARC, APWA 5600 Policy Supplement, Nov 2025.) Clause 7.4.1(b) adopts the 8 ha trigger. This Manual's 10 m margin is wider than APWA's 10 ft and has no direct precedent. This Manual sets it because Bihar flood maps are mostly coarser than US maps, the plains of Bihar are very flat and low (the worked example of the CWC Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(f), on a north Bihar bridge catchment, has a channel slope of 0.048 m/km) (so a small error in level moves the flood edge a long way), and the margin gives room for maintenance access along the waterbody.

The fixed-width table in Clause 7.4.6 is set by this Manual. Its channel widths are scaled from the 2006 APWA default stream buffers, which were 40 ft, 60 ft, 100 ft and 120 ft (12, 18, 30 and 37 m) for drainage areas of less than 40 acres, 40–160 acres, 160–5,000 acres and more than 5,000 acres (KC APWA 5600, 2006, §5605.3). They are rounded up and floored at the 15 m minimum. APWA offered a fixed-width table for the same reason: communities objected that the 1% extent is often unmapped for small drainage areas (MARC Supplement, 2025). The table should be replaced by mapped extents as soon as the Authority adopts them.

URDPFI (2015) reserves the area flooded at a 10-year frequency for parks and playgrounds, and allows residential use in the 25-year flood zone only on stilts, with minimum plinth levels and no basements. This chapter is stricter. It keeps habitable buildings out of the whole 1% AEP extent plus margin, because the 1% AEP (100-yr) event is the major-system standard of this Manual (Chapter 6).

Bihar's rules protect waterways and drains of record, and give one distance in metres from tanks, but none from nalas, pynes or chaurs. BBL 2014 grants no permission for a building "within nine (9) meters of the highest water mark of a tank, unless the owner satisfies the Authority that he will take such measures as will prevent any risk of the domestic drainage of the building passing into the tank", and lets the Authority require the lowest floor to be

"raised above the normal maximum flood level of the adjoining ground" (bye-law 30(B)); it bars building "In areas of natural waterways or drains, as detailed in the Development Plan, and drainage plan" (bye-law 29(A)) and "over or under a municipal drain" (bye-law 29(D)), keeps the foundation of an external wall at least 1 m from the edge of the street or road margin "including the drain" (bye-law 29(E)), and bars basements in flood-prone and low-lying areas (bye-law 47(1)). The 9 m is measured from a tank's highest water mark and protects the tank from domestic drainage; it is not a flood corridor, and it applies to tanks only. The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 would replace it with a prohibition of "All permanent construction within the water body boundary" in the Water Body zone (Table 5, item 8), with no distance beyond the boundary; the draft was posted on 5 June 2026 and had not been notified as of September 2026, and whether the 9 m rule will be restored after objections is not known. Along embanked rivers, WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 makes the Flood Plain Zone (between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank) a Prohibited Zone in which permanent construction, any increase in the floor area or height of an existing structure, and "construction that obstructs the natural course of the river channel" are prohibited, and fully temporary or movable structures are allowed only beyond 250 m from the current river bank. The un-embanked Ganga awaits the NIH study (Clause 7.3, Commentary). Around a notified wetland, no permanent construction is permitted within 50 m of the mean high flood level (Wetlands Rules, 2017, r. 4(2)(vi)). The Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 lists, as "Not required" for enterprises, the "Storm Water Drains NOC", the "Revenue Department NOC for land near water bodies or nalas", the "District Collector NOC for development on wet land" and the "Irrigation Department NOC for sites near canals" (Schedule V); the setbacks of this chapter are therefore to be checked within building-plan sanction, not through a separate NOC. Clause 7.4.7 makes 15 m the floor of Zone 1 everywhere.

Disclosure. Bihar has **no statutory setback in metres from nalas, pynes or chaurs** in the Acts, rules and bye-laws read for this Manual, and its one distance from ponds is narrow and may lapse. BBL 2014 sets **9 m from the highest water mark of a tank** (bye-law 30(B)); the **Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026**, a draft not yet notified, would drop it and protect only the land within the water body boundary. WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 applies only to embanked rivers, and the Wetlands Rules, 2017 set 50 m only around notified wetlands. The **15 m minimum** Zone 1 of Clauses 7.4.3 and 7.4.7, and every value derived from it in Table 7.1, is **set by this Manual** as a hydraulic corridor, to give every nala, pyne, pokhar and chaur a protected width. It is **this Manual's proposal, not a statutory width**, and no government has adopted it. Along embanked rivers, the Flood Plain Zone of Order 143 is a **statutory line, not the design extent**: the 1% AEP extent of this Manual, with the climate factor, governs Zone 2 wherever it is wider. Away from the embanked rivers, Bihar has no statutory flood lines yet, and the 1% AEP extent, where it has been mapped (Clause 7.3.4), is the only flood-based line. The setback is applied as **the larger of the corridor and any statutory line**, so the Manual is **stricter than statute** along nalas, pynes, chaurs and pokhars, and no less strict anywhere. What does exist, and governs wherever it is wider or stricter (Clause 7.4.5), is:

- **Embanked rivers.** The Prohibited Zone of WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025: the land between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank, with no permanent construction, and temporary or movable structures only beyond 250 m from the current river bank.
- **The Ganga.** The floodplain of "a flood of frequency once in hundred years" under the Ganga Order of 2016 (cl. 3(l)), and the 5-, 25- and 100-year zones of the NIH study from Chausa to Manihari once issued.
- **Wetlands.** No permanent construction within 50 m of the mean high flood level of a notified wetland (Wetlands Rules, 2017, r. 4(2)(vi)); only draft notifications of Bihar wetlands were seen for this Manual.
- **Tanks.** No building within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank without measures to keep domestic drainage out (BBL 2014, bye-law 30(B)). This is narrower than Zone 1 and never governs alone.
- **Waterways and drains of record.** No building in natural waterways or drains shown in a Development Plan or drainage plan (bye-law 29(A)) or over or under a municipal drain (bye-law 29(D)); public tanks and their adjacent land vest in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s. 177); and public land, including land with a community right of irrigation, is protected from encroachment (Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956). These protect the waterbody, not a strip around it; the whole recorded and monsoon extent is a waterbody for this chapter.
- **WRD embankments and canals.** Works on or next to them need the WRD's approval, and the Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997 makes a new embankment without the Collector's permission, and the obstruction of or encroachment on an irrigation work, offences (as extracted).

This Manual sets 15 m as the floor because no width at all exists for nalas, pynes and chaurs; because it is wider than the 9 m tank line, which was written to keep domestic drainage out of a tank, not to pass a flood; because it is above the smallest APWA default stream buffer (12 m) from which Table 7.1 is scaled; and because it leaves room for the maintenance track and desilting machinery that Bihar's nalas need. The reasons for the corridor are the record: Patna's drainage system "was laid about 200 years ago and is in bad condition" (CAG, year ended March 2020); the State is reported to have lost more than 100,000 ponds in three decades (as reported); and construction by BUIDCO in the buffer of two protected ponds of Darbhanga, Harahi and Digghi, is before the National Green Tribunal (M.A. 18/2024 in O.A. 155/2022/EZ, as listed). Until a statute, rule, notification or Master Plan adopts it, the 15 m minimum is this Manual's recommended standard and the statutory controls above remain the only legal minimum. Approving authorities should state in each approval which was applied.

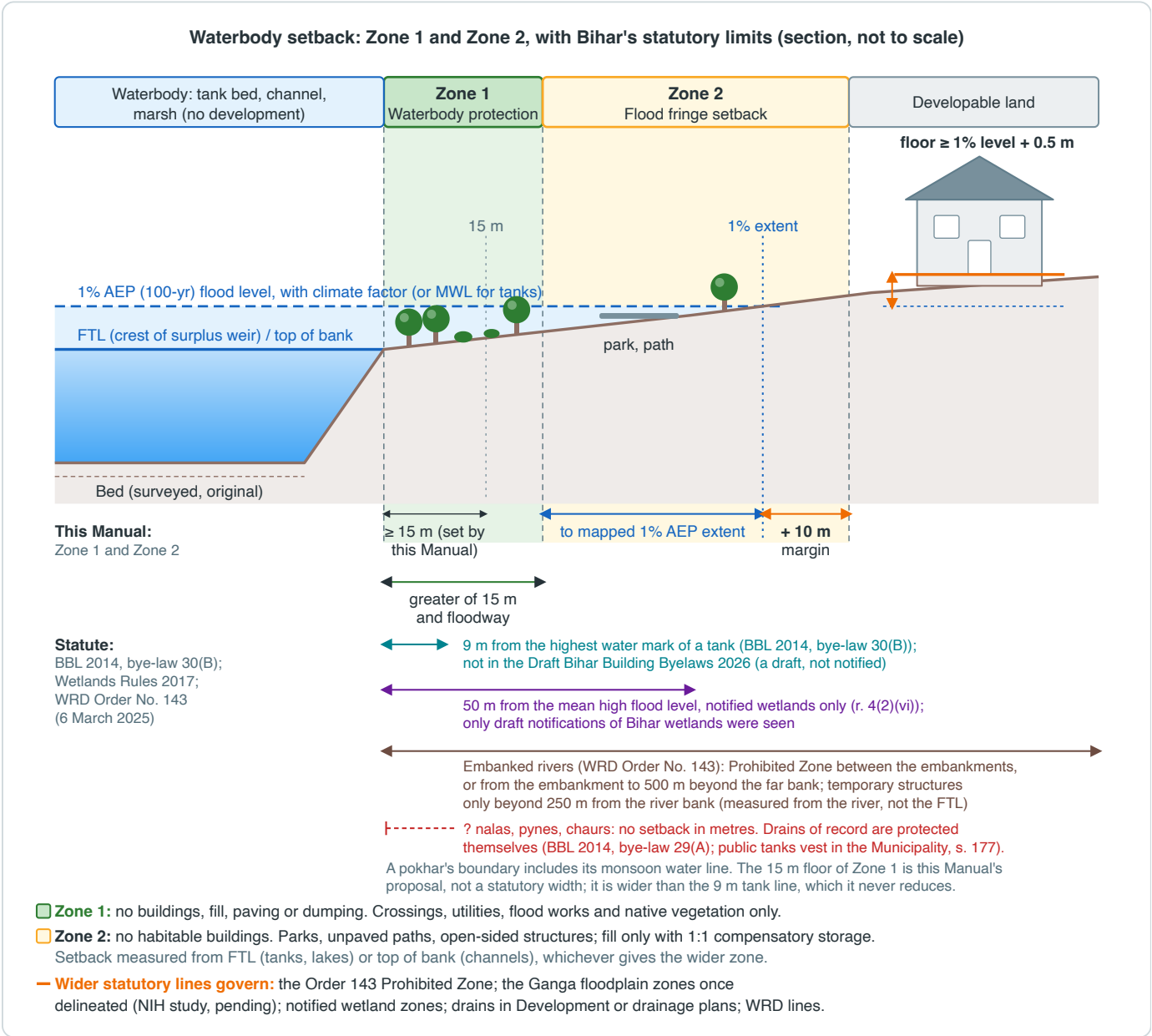


Figure 7.1 — Waterbody setback zones: section through a tank or channel showing FTL, the 1% AEP flood level, the 15 m minimum line, Zone 1 and Zone 2. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Kansas City Metro APWA, Section 5600 Version 2025.01 and Policy Supplement (MARC, 2025).

7.5 Uses permitted in each zone

7.5.1 **Zone 1.** No building, fill, paving, retaining wall, boundary wall, compound wall, dumping of earth, debris or solid waste, storage of materials, or construction-stage stockpile shall be placed in Zone 1. Only the following are permitted, each subject to the custodian's NOC:

- (a) road, rail and utility crossings that meet Clause 7.10.3;
- (b) flood and drainage works: outfalls, inlet structures, gross pollutant traps, sluices, surplus weirs, bund strengthening and bank protection;
- (c) native vegetation, planting and habitat works;
- (d) unpaved or permeable footpaths and maintenance tracks at existing ground level; and
- (e) waterbody restoration under Clause 7.9.

7.5.2 **Zone 2.** No habitable building, basement, school, hospital, fuel store or hazardous-material store shall be placed in Zone 2. The following are permitted:

- (a) all uses permitted in Zone 1;
- (b) parks, playgrounds, open-air sports fields and urban agriculture;
- (c) open-sided structures (shelters, pavilions) with no walls that obstruct flow;
- (d) surface parking with permeable surfacing at existing ground level, where the 1% AEP flood depth is not more than 0.3 m;
- (e) retention, detention and water quality facilities under Chapters 4 and 8, provided they are outside the floodway and their storage is not counted twice (Clause 7.6.5); and
- (f) fill, only for (a) to (e) or for essential public infrastructure, and only with compensatory storage under Clause 7.6.4.

7.5.3 **Fences.** Fences in Zone 1 and Zone 2 shall be open (chain-link or railing) with no plinth wall above existing ground level, so that they do not obstruct flow or trap debris.

7.5.4 **Open space reservation.** Zone 2 land may be counted toward the open space required by the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014, where the Authority agrees. Zone 1 land shall be handed over to the custodian or kept free of private use, as the Authority decides.

> **Commentary.** The permitted uses follow APWA 2025.01: in Zone 1, only utility and road crossings; in Zone 2, linear utilities, trails and open-sided structures; no clearing, grading, fill or paving in either zone without approval (MARC Supplement, 2025). Clause 7.5.2 adds parks and playgrounds, the uses URDPFI (2015) allows in the 10-year flood zone. The ban on walls in Clauses 7.5.1 and 7.5.3 responds to urban Bihar practice: compound walls along channels and tanks act as dams in floods, and are often the first step toward encroachment. The 0.3 m depth limit for parking in Clause 7.5.2(d) has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual.

7.6 Floodway, flood fringe and compensatory storage

7.6.1 **Floodway delineation.** The floodway shall be delineated by a hydraulic model of the 1% AEP flood (with the climate factor), using the encroachment method: the conveyance of the flood fringe is removed equally from both banks until the 1% AEP water level rises by 0.1 m. Where the floodway has not been delineated, the whole 1% AEP flood extent shall be treated as floodway. For a tank, all land below MWL is floodway.

7.6.2 **No fill in the floodway.** No fill, building, embankment, raised road or other obstruction shall be placed below the 1% AEP flood level within the floodway, except the works permitted in Zone 1 under Clause 7.5.1(a) and (b). Those works shall be shown by hydraulic analysis to raise the 1% AEP water level by no more than 0.01 m, upstream or downstream, outside the Applicant's land.

7.6.3 **Fill in the flood fringe.** Fill below the 1% AEP flood level in the flood fringe is permitted only:

- (a) for uses permitted under Clause 7.5.2, or outside the setback where the Authority has notified a developed-fringe area under Clause 7.6.6; and
- (b) with compensatory storage under Clause 7.6.4.

7.6.4 **Compensatory storage.** Where fill is placed in the flood fringe, compensatory storage shall be provided that (Figure 7.2):

- (a) replaces at least **1.0 m³ of storage for each 1.0 m³ of fill** placed below the 1% AEP flood level;
- (b) is provided at **equivalent levels**: the volume lost and the volume replaced shall be balanced in each elevation band of not more than **0.3 m**, from the normal water level (or the 50% AEP level, where higher) up to the 1% AEP flood level;
- (c) is in the same reach of the same waterbody, hydraulically connected to it, and not further downstream than the fill;
- (d) drains freely by gravity back to the waterbody as the flood recedes, with no pumping and no permanent pool below the normal water level;
- (e) is built before, or at the same time as, the fill is placed; and
- (f) is secured by a covenant or handover so that it is never filled later.

7.6.5 **No double counting.** Compensatory storage shall not be counted as detention or retention storage under Chapter 4. Detention and retention storage placed within the 1% AEP flood extent shall be counted only for the volume above the 1% AEP flood level, unless a model of the joint event (Clause 2.12) shows that it is available.

7.6.6 **Developed-fringe areas.** The Authority may notify, by map, areas of existing built-up land within the 1% AEP flood extent but outside the floodway, where it is impractical to apply Zone 2 to redevelopment. In a notified developed-fringe area:

- (a) redevelopment may be approved without the Zone 2 restriction;
- (b) the lowest habitable floor and all openings shall be at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level (Chapter 6);
- (c) basements are not permitted;
- (d) the redevelopment shall cause no net loss of flood storage below the 1% AEP flood level (Clause 7.6.4), and stilt construction may be used for this; and
- (e) Zone 1 continues to apply in full.

> **Commentary.** The 1:1 compensatory storage at equivalent levels is set by this Manual. A simple volume balance is not enough: storage excavated below the normal water level is full before the flood arrives and gives no flood benefit. Storage gained high up does not replace storage lost low down, because the low storage is used in every flood and the high storage only in the largest. Balancing volume within each elevation band avoids both problems. The 0.3 m band, the 0.01 m allowance for crossings, and the use of the encroachment method in Clause 7.6.1 are set by this Manual; the encroachment method is the standard way to delineate a floodway in a one-dimensional hydraulic model. The 0.1 m limit on the rise in the 1% AEP water level is tighter than the 1 ft (about 0.3 m) used by the US National Flood Insurance Program. The plains of Bihar are flat, and the rivers meander in wide and shallow channels (CWC, Flood Estimation Report for subzone 1(f), 1985); about 73% of the State's area is flood-prone (WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025), so a small rise in level spreads flooding over a wide area, and many small encroachments along the same channel add up.
>
> In Bihar the only statutory line around a pond is measured from its wet-season edge: BBL 2014 measures its 9 m from "the highest water mark of a tank", not from the dry-season water line (bye-law 30(B)). The Ramsar Information Sheet for Kabartal takes the wetland's boundary as its maximum inundation in the post-monsoon season, and records that the whole complex "gets inundated with the monsoon to a maximum depth of 1.5 m". This Manual gives the same rule a level for every pokhar, ahar and chaur: its monsoon water line (definitions after Clause 7.2) is part of its boundary, and the foreshore up to MWL is its flood storage. The Draft Bihar Building

Byelaws 2026 would prohibit permanent construction "within the water body boundary" (Table 5, item 8; a draft, not notified), which on this definition includes the foreshore. Treating all land below MWL as floodway (Clause 7.6.1) means that no new building or fill is approved in a tank foreshore.

The developed-fringe mechanism of Clause 7.6.6 is set by this Manual. Large parts of Patna (which the Sone and Ganga flood of August 1975 entered over the Patna canal, and whose low wards, such as Rajendra Nagar and Kankarbagh, have faced waterlogging in every monsoon since the 1970s, as reported) and the riverside wards of the north Bihar towns on embanked rivers, such as Muzaffarpur on the Burhi Gandak and Darbhanga on the Bagmati already lie within the 1% AEP extent. A blanket Zone 2 ban on redevelopment there would stop the replacement of older, lower buildings with buildings raised above flood level. The mechanism follows the URDPFI (2015) approach for the 25-year flood zone (stilts, minimum plinth, no basements), applied here to the 1% AEP extent.

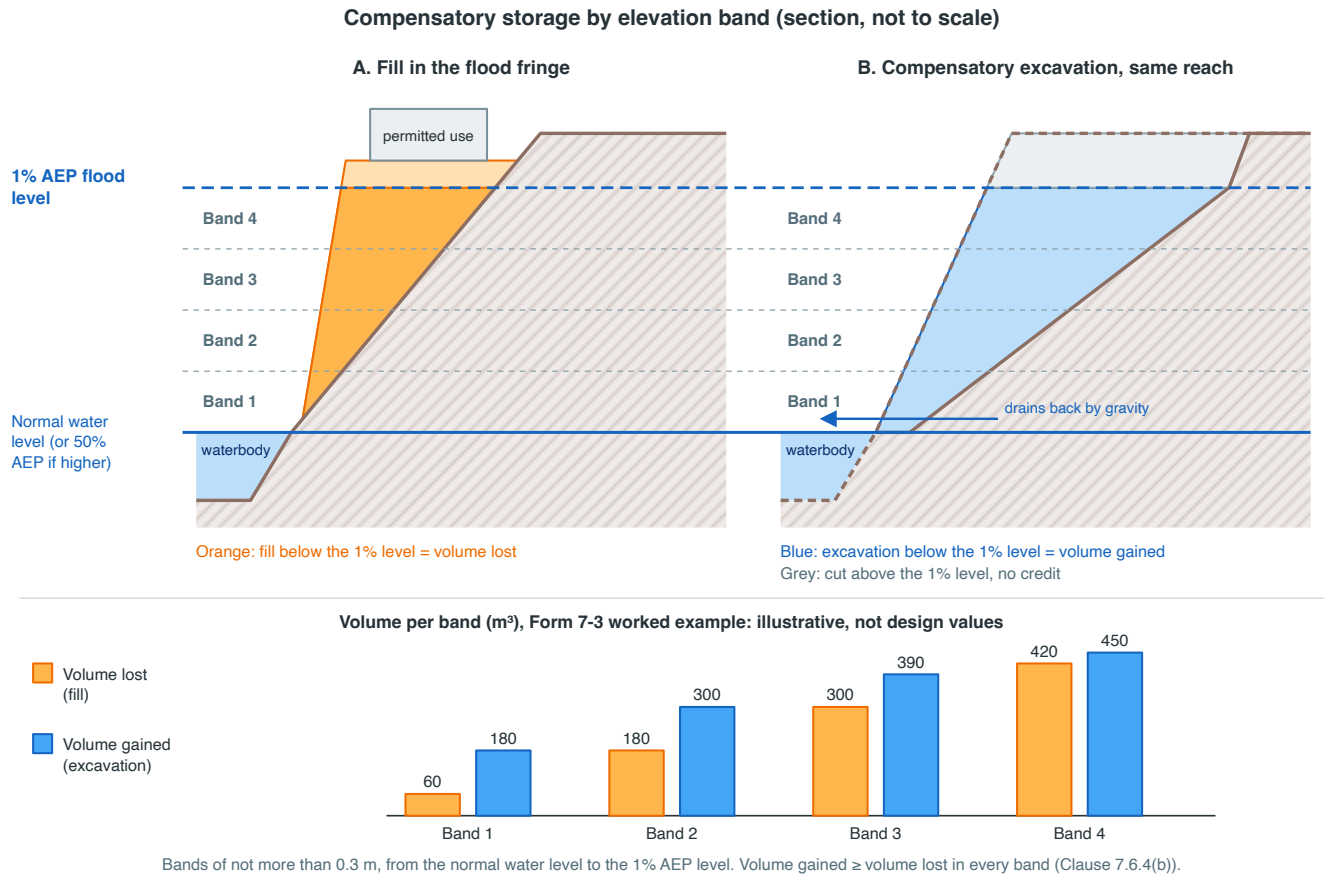


Figure 7.2 — Compensatory storage by elevation band: section through the flood fringe showing fill placed below the 1% AEP flood level and an equal or greater volume excavated within each band of not more than 0.3 m, from the normal water level (or 50% AEP level) up to the 1% AEP level, with the excavation draining back to the waterbody by gravity. Band-by-band calculation on Form 7-3. Original drawing for this Manual, illustrating the method of Clause 7.6.4, which is set by this Manual.

7.7 Tank cascades as design storage

Bihar has no tank Act, and few of its pokhars have the full set of an earthen bund, a surplus weir and irrigation sluices. The storages that matter for urban drainage are of five kinds. The first is the urban and village pokhar or talab, usually with no outlet structure, recorded in the Revenue records and, inside a municipal area, vested in the Municipality as a public tank (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s. 177); the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan reports 26,381 ponds restored (State

portal, as reported). The second is the ahar and its pynes in south Bihar, especially around Gaya, which store rain and flood water for irrigation; the campaign reports 78,090 ahars and pynes restored (as reported), but no Act and no engineering description of ahar bunds, outlets or depths was found for this Manual. The third is the large floodplain wetland: the chaurs and mauns of north Bihar, such as Kabartal, a complex of 18 interconnected wetlands that drains through the Bagras maun to the Burhi Gandak (Ramsar Information Sheet), and the tals of the south bank, such as the Mokama group of seven connected tals (Fatuha, Bakhtiarpur, Barh, More, Mokama, Barahiya and Singhaul), about 1,062 km² of low land in Patna, Nalanda and Munger waterlogged by excessive rainfall, which drain slowly to the Ganga (NIH and Lok Sabha, both as reported). The fourth is the pumped city, such as Patna, ringed by the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun, which drains by gravity when the rivers are low and must store in its nalas, pokhars and low ground, or pump through its sump houses, when they are high, as a polder does (Figure 7.3). The fifth is the WRD's system of embankments, canals and drainage channels, including the Flood Plain Zone of the embanked rivers (WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025). Clauses 7.7 and 7.8 apply to any of these whose storage is counted; any ahar or tal whose storage is to be counted is subject to Clause 7.7.1 in full, with the Minor Water Resources Department or other custodian. The river embankments and barrages are not tanks for these clauses: river stages and releases enter a design as inflow and tailwater (Chapter 5).

7.7.1 **When tank storage may be counted.** The storage of a tank or tank cascade may be counted as design storage (in a basin plan, a regional facility or a fee-in-lieu scheme under Clause 7.11) **only** where all of the following are met:

- (a) **Surveyed levels.** FTL, MWL, TBL, the surplus weir crest and length, and the sluice sill levels have been surveyed to the datum of Clause 7.3.5 within the previous 5 years.
- (b) **Stage–storage curve.** A stage–storage curve has been derived from a bathymetric and topographic survey of the waterspread and foreshore within the previous 5 years, or after the last desilting, whichever is later.
- (c) **Operating rule.** A documented operating rule has been agreed with the custodian (Clause 7.8).
- (d) **Maintained structures.** The surplus weir, sluices and bund are maintained under an O&M plan (Chapter 10), and the latest pre-monsoon inspection found them serviceable.
- (e) **Custodian concurrence.** Minor Water Resources Department, or the other custodian, concurs in writing.

Storage in a tank that fails any of (a) to (e) shall not be counted, though the tank shall still be modelled as an existing feature (Chapter 3).

7.7.2 **Modelling.** Tank cascades shall be modelled under Clause 3.12.5 (level-pool routing of each tank, with surplus weir and sluice ratings) and Clause 3.13 (continuous simulation). The whole cascade, from the uppermost tank whose surplus can reach the site or facility to the next river, major drain or sea outfall, shall be modelled together, including, in a city whose outfalls are shut by river stage, such as Patna between the Ganga and the Punpun, every colony drain, nala, pokhar, sluice through the river bank or embankment and drainage pumping station (sump house) by which the flow reaches the river, with the river stage as tailwater, as shown in Figure 7.3.

7.7.3 **Starting level.** The starting level in every tank shall be **FTL** for the design-storm analysis. A lower starting level may be used only under a flood-cushion operating rule that meets Clause 7.8.

7.7.4 **Design maximum level.** For the 1% AEP inflow with the climate factor, routed through the cascade:

- (a) the computed maximum level shall be not higher than MWL (as defined in Clause 7.2); and
- (b) the freeboard from the computed maximum level to the lowest point of the bund (TBL) shall be not less than Minor Water Resources Department's freeboard standard for the tank.

Where (a) or (b) fails, the tank storage above FTL shall not be counted until the surplus weir capacity is increased or the bund raised under Clause 7.7.6.

7.7.5 **Creditable volume.** The creditable design storage of a tank is the volume between the starting level (Clause 7.7.3) and the computed maximum level of Clause 7.7.4, less any volume already committed to another facility or scheme.

7.7.6 **Changes to FTL, weirs and bunds.** No surplus weir crest shall be raised or lowered, no shutters or falling boards shall be added, and no bund shall be raised, cut or breached except under a design approved by the custodian that:

- (a) routes the cascade under Clause 7.7.2;
- (b) shows the effect on flood levels in the foreshore and upstream, and on flows in the surplus course and downstream; and
- (c) checks the bund under Clause 7.14.

> Commentary. This Manual allows tank cascades to be used as design storage subject to three basic conditions (surveyed FTL, a documented operating rule and maintained surplus weirs). Clause 7.7.1 adds the stage–storage survey and the custodian's concurrence, because the storage a tank actually offers depends on its silt level and on who controls the sluices. The 5-year survey interval is set by this Manual.
>
> The FTL starting level follows Clause 3.12.5. Bihar's worst urban floods have come when the rivers were already high. In August 1975 the combined waters of the Sone and the Ganga crossed the Patna canal and entered Patna, and ground floors stayed under water for 5 to 7 days (Lok Sabha record of 16 January 1976, as reported); the highest levels at Dighaghat on the Ganga (52.52 m, 1975) and at Sripalpur on the Punpun (53.91 m, 1976) date from that period. In August 2016 the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, set its highest recorded level of 50.52 m against a danger level of 48.60 m, and on 5 and 6 September 2026 it was reported at 50.53 m to 50.57 m, above that level, while the CWC bulletin of 31 October 2026 still lists 50.52 m (2016) (the two conflict; CWC confirmation is awaited). At the CWC gauges of Patna, Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Purnia and Bhagalpur the highest flood level is 1.2 to 3.3 m above the danger level, and on the Punpun at Sripalpur, which receives the drains of south Patna, it is 3.31 m above (CWC bulletin of 31 October 2026). When the rivers rise, Patna's sluices on the Ganga and the Punpun are closed (as reported), so an outfall set below the highest flood level can stay shut for days; no hydrograph showing how long Bihar's rivers stay above outfall levels was obtained for this Manual. While the river is high, the city's nalas, pokhars and low ground hold whatever rain falls, and storage downstream that is already full gives no relief. A tank cascade passes floods from one tank to the next, so a design that counts storage in one tank and ignores the surplus arriving from the tank above it will overstate the benefit. That is why Clause 7.7.2 requires the whole cascade to be modelled.

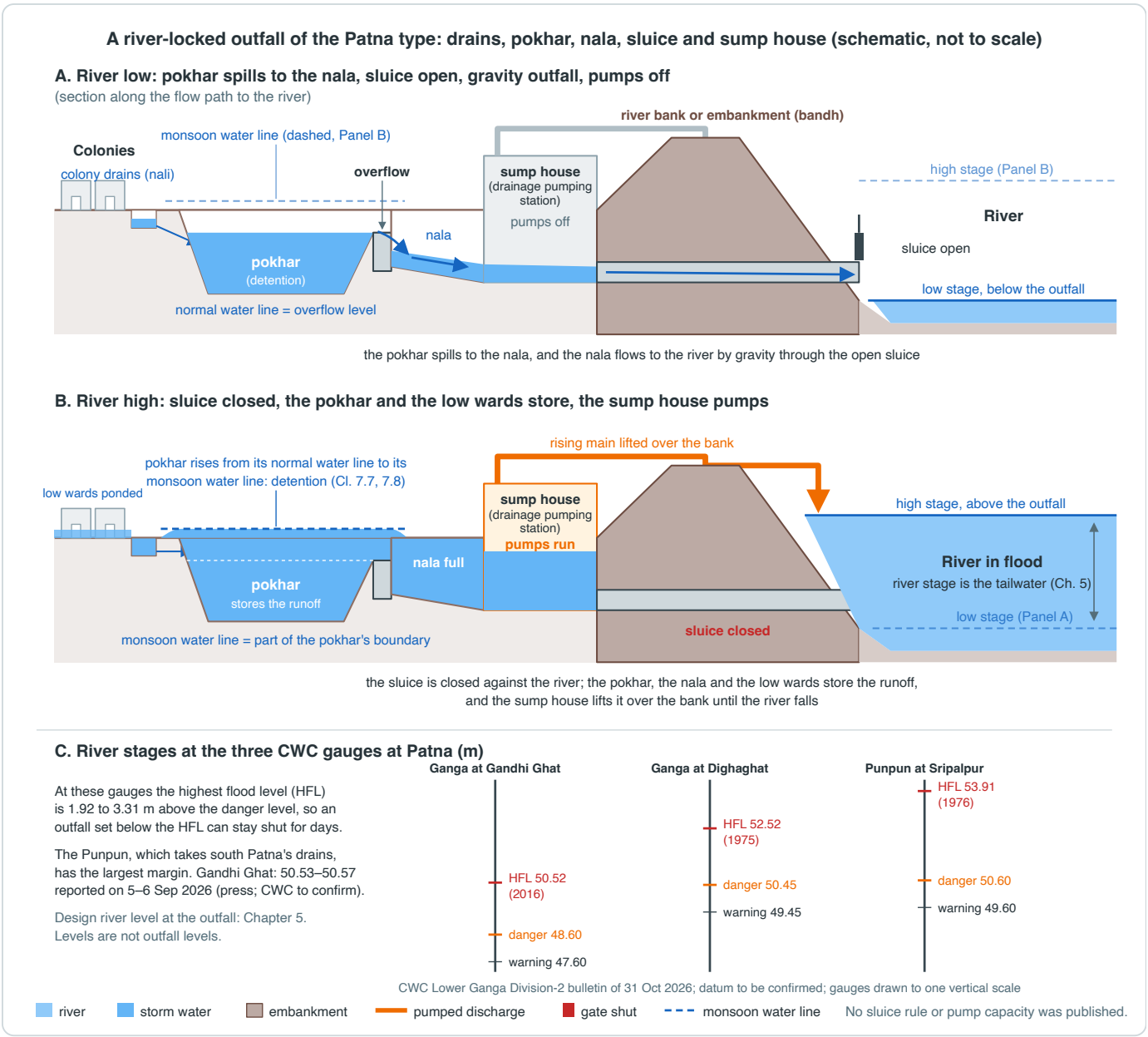


Figure 7.3 — A river-locked outfall of the Patna type (schematic, not to scale). A: with the river low, the colony drains (nali) feed a pokhar used as detention, which spills to the nala; the nala flows by gravity through the open sluice in the river bank or embankment, and the pumps of the sump house are off. B: with the river high, the sluice is closed; the nala, the pokhar and the low wards store the runoff, and the sump house (drainage pumping station) lifts the nala's flow over the bank until the river falls. The river stage is therefore the tailwater of the whole chain (Chapter 5), and the drains, the pokhar, the nala, the sluice and the pumps are modelled together (Clause 7.7.2); the pokhar's monsoon water line is part of its boundary (definitions after Clause 7.2). C: warning and danger levels and highest flood levels at the three CWC gauges at Patna, from the CWC Lower Ganga Division-2 bulletin of 31 October 2026 (datum to be confirmed); they are not levels at any outfall. The Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported at 50.53 m to 50.57 m on 5 and 6 September 2026, above the listed highest level (as reported). Patna's outfalls are pumped (56 permanent and 28 temporary drainage pumping stations, in a Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 whose scope is unclear), but no sill level, sluice operating rule, pump capacity or design river level for any Bihar outfall was published. Original drawing for this Manual.

7.8 Operating rules and pre-monsoon flood cushion

7.8.1 **Operating rule content.** Every tank whose storage is counted under Clause 7.7 shall have a written operating rule, agreed by the custodian and kept with the O&M plan (Chapter 10). It shall state:

- (a) the levels and dates for filling, holding and drawdown through the year;
- (b) the sluice and regulator settings at each level;
- (c) who operates the sluices and regulators, and who may order a release;
- (d) the maximum release rate, set so that the release, added to the flow from the downstream catchment, does not cause flooding of buildings downstream;
- (e) the forecast and warning triggers (IMD district warnings, BSDMA alerts, and city forecast systems where available) and the actions taken at each trigger;
- (f) communication with downstream ULBs and residents before any release; and
- (g) the records to be kept: daily levels in the SW monsoon, releases, and gate settings.

7.8.2 **Flood cushion.** A tank may be operated with a flood cushion (a level below FTL during part of the SW monsoon), and the cushion counted under Clause 7.7.3, only where:

- (a) the tank has a gated sluice, regulator or other controllable outlet able to draw the tank down to the cushion level in the time stated in the rule;
- (b) the operating rule fixes the cushion level and the dates it applies;
- (c) continuous simulation (Clause 3.13) shows that the cushion is available at the start of a design storm in at least **90%** of SW monsoon seasons in the record, allowing for the rain that usually comes before the peak storm;
- (d) the custodian accepts any loss of irrigation or water-supply yield, and any agreed compensation is recorded; and
- (e) the release needed to create or restore the cushion meets Clause 7.8.1(d).

7.8.3 **No storage credit without control.** Where a tank has no controllable outlet, no flood cushion shall be assumed, whatever the past practice.

7.8.4 **Coordination.** For tanks under Minor Water Resources Department control, the operating rule shall be Minor Water Resources Department's rule. This Manual does not authorise any other body to operate a Minor Water Resources Department tank.

> **Commentary.** No operating rule for a Bihar pokhar or ahar that keeps a flood cushion was found, and most pokhars have no controllable outlet, so Clause 7.8.3 applies to them. The controlled flows that matter in the cities are at the river outfalls: the sluices through the river banks and embankments, closed when the Ganga and the Punpun rise (as reported), and the sump houses behind them. Patna's sump houses passed from the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad to BUIDCO with its other assets under the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017; in the waterlogging of September 2019 about 38 of the 39 were reported not to be working, and the State's inquiry found that pumps were not started on time and drains not cleaned (as reported). BUIDCO now monitors nine major sump houses from the Patna Smart City control centre and posted night-shift staff at seven drainage pumping stations in July 2026 (as reported). The WRD's daily flood bulletin runs from 15 June to 15 October. Without an agreed rule with dates, levels and a named operator, storage behind a sluice cannot be relied on. Clause 7.8.2 turns that principle into a rule that can be checked, with a reliability test, because a cushion that is usually refilled by the early monsoon rain gives no protection in a July to September monsoon depression. The 90% reliability in Clause 7.8.2(c) has no direct precedent and is set by this Manual.
>
> Many pokhars and ahars have other users. Ahars and pynes store water for irrigation, and the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan restores them for that purpose; and fisheries are a use permissible on application in the Water Bodies Use Zone of BBL 2014. Drawing an ahar or a pokhar down before a storm has a cost to those who use it, which is why Clause 7.8.2(d) requires the custodian to accept it.

7.9 Restoration, desilting and deepening

7.9.1 **Pre-works survey.** Before any desilting or restoration, the proponent shall:

- (a) survey the waterspread, foreshore, bund, weirs and sluices (Clause 7.7.1(a) and (b));
- (b) find the original bed level by test pits or augering on a grid, and from historical records where available; and
- (c) where the tank receives urban runoff or sewage, test the silt for heavy metals and other contaminants before disposal is planned.

7.9.2 **Desilting limit.** Desilting shall remove accumulated sediment down to the original bed level. It shall not deepen the tank below the original bed, except under Clause 7.9.3.

7.9.3 **Deepening.** Deepening below the original bed is permitted only where a hydrogeological report shows that:

- (a) it will not cut through a clay or silt layer that holds water in the tank or protects an aquifer from polluted water;
- (b) in coastal areas, it will not draw saline water into the tank or the aquifer; and
- (c) the extra storage will be refilled and used, and will not stand stagnant below the sluice sill.

Storage created below the lowest sluice sill shall not be counted as flood storage.

7.9.4 **Safe edges.** Where the public has access to the waterbody edge:

- (a) side slopes shall be no steeper than **1V:4H** from 0.5 m above FTL down to 1.2 m below FTL, or a level safety bench at least 3 m wide shall be provided between 0.3 m and 0.5 m below FTL; and
- (b) no isolated deep pit or vertical cut shall be left in the bed.

7.9.5 **Storage not to be reduced.** Restoration shall not reduce the storage below MWL. Islands, walkways, bund widening into the waterspread, ring roads, parking, buildings and "lake-front" platforms within the waterspread or foreshore shall be counted as lost storage and shall be offset under Clause 7.6.4.

7.9.6 **Silt disposal.** Desilted material shall not be placed within the setback, on the bund (except for approved bund strengthening), or on any flood path. Silt found to be contaminated shall be disposed of as the Bihar State Pollution Control Board (BSPCB) directs.

7.9.7 **Inlet treatment.** Every restoration of a tank that receives urban runoff shall include sediment and gross pollutant control at each inlet: a sediment forebay, a constructed wetland inlet zone, or a gross pollutant trap (Chapter 8), so that the restored storage does not silt up again.

7.9.8 **Timing.** Desilting shall be completed, and the waterbody made safe, by **31 May** each year (Chapter 10).

> Commentary. No statewide order of the UDHD for the pre-monsoon desilting of nalas or pokhars was found. In Patna, PMC set 31 May for desilting its drains in 2026 and then ran a citywide cleaning campaign to 15 June after complaints (as reported); the WRD's anti-erosion works are reported to be due by 15 May (as reported). This Manual keeps 31 May as the general deadline, and Chapter 10 brings it forward to 15 May in the Mithila and Kosi plain (BR-B) and Seemanchal (BR-C), where May is already wet and the monsoon arrives first (Purnea's onset normal is 13 June); both dates are set by this Manual. The Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan reports 26,381 ponds and 78,090 ahars and pynes restored (State portal, as reported), but no specification for that work was found. Excavation to "increase capacity" is governed by Clause 7.9.3. The 31 May deadline matches the pre-monsoon inspection date of Chapter 10. The limits on deepening are set by this Manual. Deepening tanks to "increase capacity" is common, but it can breach the silt and clay layer that holds water in the tank, it can let polluted urban

water reach the aquifer, it can draw salt water toward the coast, and it creates storage below the sluice sill that never empties and gives no flood benefit. Deep pits with steep sides are also a drowning hazard. The slope and bench values in Clause 7.9.4 are adapted from common pond-safety practice; they have no Bihar precedent.

7.10 Supply channels, surplus courses, inlets and outlets

7.10.1 **Part of the major system.** Supply channels and surplus courses are part of the major drainage system (Chapter 6). They shall be protected as waterbodies, with Zone 1 and Zone 2 setbacks under Clause 7.4.

7.10.2 **No closure or covering.** No supply channel or surplus course shall be closed, filled, diverted, covered, culverted along its length, or converted into a road or a closed drain, except under a design approved by the custodian that keeps or increases its 1% AEP capacity and its access for maintenance.

7.10.3 **Crossings.** Every road, rail, utility or access crossing of a waterbody, supply channel or surplus course shall:

- (a) pass the 1% AEP flow (with the climate factor), or the surplus of the upstream tank at its MWL, whichever is greater, with the freeboard required by Chapter 9;
- (b) not reduce the waterway width at the crossing below the full channel width as recorded in Revenue records or as surveyed, whichever is greater;
- (c) keep the channel bed level and grade; and
- (d) not raise the 1% AEP water level by more than the limit in Clause 7.6.2.

7.10.4 **Capacity.** The design capacity of a surplus course shall be the greater of the surplus weir discharge at MWL and the 1% AEP flow from its own catchment, combined as the cascade model (Clause 7.7.2) shows.

7.10.5 **Protection at structures.** Outlets of surplus weirs and sluices, and drain outfalls into waterbodies, shall have energy dissipation and scour protection designed under Chapter 9, so that the flow leaving them does not erode the bund, the bank or the channel bed.

7.10.6 **Drain outfalls into waterbodies.** A storm drain outfall into a tank, channel or wetland shall:

- (a) have its invert at or above the normal water level of the receiving waterbody, unless the drain is designed for submerged outfall under Chapter 5;
- (b) be located and aligned so that it does not cut through or weaken a tank bund;
- (c) have a gross pollutant trap and first-flush treatment (Chapter 8); and
- (d) not carry sewage or dry-weather flow (Chapter 8).

Commentary. This Manual protects supply channels and surplus courses as part of the major system. In urban areas they are often the first to be lost. Surplus courses are narrowed by culverts and compound walls, and supply channels are covered and turned into roads, which cuts the tank off from its source or leaves its surplus with nowhere to go. In Bihar the nalas are split among owners, and the split has not been written down. The Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 vests "all public drains" in the Municipality (s. 195) and lets it make a drain over to another authority with the State's approval (s. 196); the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 merged the assets and projects of the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad, which had run Patna's sump houses, into BUIDCO; and a counter-affidavit of PMC's Chief Municipal Engineer of 20 May 2025 is reported to say that the "drainage system is not directly under the Patna Municipal Corporation" (as extracted; not read for this Manual). No order under section 196, and no UDHD order dividing Patna's drains and sump houses between PMC and BUIDCO, was found for this Manual, so the exact split is unconfirmed. In practice rivers, embankments, canals and flood-control drainage channels lie with the WRD; trunk drains, sump houses and the new storm water drainage schemes with BUIDCO; road-side and lane drains, and their cleaning, with the Nagar Nigam; and ahars and pynes with the Minor Water Resources Department. This Manual uses that division as its working assignment, not as a statement of

law. The CAG found that "The drainage system of Patna town was laid about 200 years ago and is in bad condition", a "hierarchy of natural and man-made drains that ultimately discharge surface run off and sewage to River Ganga and Punpun" (year ended March 2020); PMC's records are reported to list 535 drains connected to 38 or 39 sump houses (as reported); and BUIDCO's new Patna scheme of 103 drain lines and about 185 km is being built catchment by catchment (as reported). In Darbhanga, an old storm water canal is being lined with concrete, which a petitioner has challenged before the National Green Tribunal (Talab Bachao Abhiyan, 2025, an allegation). BBL 2014 bars building in natural waterways or drains shown in a Development Plan or drainage plan (bye-law 29(A)) and over or under a municipal drain (bye-law 29(D)), and the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 define a watercourse as "a natural channel or an artificial channel formed by draining or diversion of a natural channel meant for carrying storm and wastewater" (definition 151; a draft). None of these keeps a nala at its recorded width once it has been narrowed or covered, which is the failure Clauses 7.10.2 and 7.10.3 are written to prevent. Clause 7.10.3(b) prevents a crossing from narrowing a channel to its current, encroached width.

7.11 Fee-in-lieu and regional tank storage

7.11.1 Where a basin plan has been notified, and the Authority has adopted alternative S-5 of the Policy Supplement (Clause 1.7), a development may pay a fee in lieu of on-site detention under Chapter 4. The fee shall be applied to restoring or creating storage in a tank, pond or regional facility in the same basin.

7.11.2 Tank storage funded by fee-in-lieu shall:

- (a) meet Clause 7.7.1 in full before it is counted;
- (b) be downstream of the contributing development and upstream of the flood-prone area it is meant to protect;
- (c) be created, or under construction, before the development it serves is occupied, or within a period the basin plan fixes; and
- (d) be recorded in the register of Clause 10.17 with the developments that funded it, so that the same volume is not sold twice.

7.11.3 Fee-in-lieu does not replace:

- (a) the retention requirement of Chapter 4, which is always met on site; or
- (b) the water quality requirement of Chapter 8, which is met on site or in a regional facility treating the same runoff before it reaches the tank.

Commentary. Chapter 4 provides for fee-in-lieu toward restored pokhar or tank storage in master-planned basins. Malaysia's 2008 DID checklist allowed on-site detention only for small sites and required community ponds for larger areas (DID, 2008). In Bihar no shared form of storage is required by the building rules: the recharge pits of BBL 2014 are plot-level (bye-law 51), and neither BBL 2014 nor the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 has a detention, peak-flow or "zero runoff" rule. The public ponds, ahars and pynes restored under the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan, and the storm water drainage schemes of BUIDCO (38 schemes in the State budget of 2026, as reported), are the nearest existing forms of shared storage and conveyance. None of these sets a technical standard for counting storage. Clause 7.11.2(b) matters because a tank downstream of the flood-prone area protects nothing. Clause 7.11.3 keeps retention on site: it is the volume-control layer of this Manual, and a regional tank cannot recharge the aquifer under the developed site.

7.12 Wetlands, marshes and estuaries

7.12.1 **Scope.** This clause applies to marshes, swamps, backwaters, estuaries, and tidal creeks and lagoons, including:

- (a) wetlands notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 or listed by the Bihar State Wetland Authority;
- (b) the six Ramsar sites of Bihar listed by the Bihar State Wetland Authority (Kabartal in Begusarai, designated on 21 July 2020 over 2,620 ha, with the interconnected maun, chaur and tal wetlands of its complex; the Nagi and Nakti bird sanctuaries in Jamui; Gokul Jalashay in Buxar; Udaipur Jheel in West Champaran; and Gogabil in Katihar), each to its boundary at maximum post-monsoon inundation, and the wetlands for which draft notifications under the 2017 Rules have been issued, such as Haldia Chaur, Devkhal Chaur and Badka Tal;
- (c) the chaurs and mauns (oxbow lakes) of the north Bihar plain, the tals of the south bank of the Ganga, such as the Mokama group of tals, and the marshy low land and depressions of the diara, within the Flood Plain Zone of an embanked river under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 or the 1% AEP extent of Clause 7.3.4, whichever is larger (the river channel itself is a waterbody under the rest of this chapter); and
- (d) any other marsh, wetland, chaur, maun or tal that the Authority notifies, that the wetland authority lists, or that a court or the National Green Tribunal directs to be protected.

7.12.2 **No drainage of wetlands.** No drain, channel, cut or pump shall be designed to drain a wetland, to lower its normal water level, or to reduce the period for which it is wet, except under a plan approved by the wetland authority.

7.12.3 **Inflows.** Every drain discharging into a wetland in Clause 7.12.1 shall:

- (a) meet Clause 7.10.6;
- (b) pass through water quality treatment for the WQv of its catchment (Chapter 8) before entering the wetland; and
- (c) where practicable, spread its flow across a vegetated margin rather than discharge at one point.

7.12.4 **Hydraulic connectivity.** Roads, embankments and utility corridors across or along a wetland shall have openings that:

- (a) pass the 1% AEP flow without raising the 1% AEP water level by more than the limit in Clause 7.6.2; and
- (b) keep the wetland's normal water exchange, including tidal exchange in estuaries, with openings spread along the crossing so that no part of the wetland is cut off.

7.12.5 **Storage counted at basin scale only.** Wetland storage shall be included in basin and regional models. It shall not be counted as detention for any individual development.

7.12.6 **Tidal wetlands and estuaries.** For estuaries and tidal wetlands:

- (a) tailwater shall be taken from Chapter 5 (Clause 2.12 joint cases);
- (b) works shall also comply with the Coastal Regulation Zone Notification in force; and
- (c) mouth-opening works, training walls and dredging are outside the scope of this Manual and need their own studies.

7.12.7 **No dumping.** No solid waste, construction debris or dredged material shall be placed in a wetland or its setback.

> **Commentary.** Bihar's wetlands are regulated by the Bihar State Wetland Authority, constituted under the 2017 Rules in the Environment, Forest and Climate Change Department. The Authority lists six Ramsar sites: Kabartal in Begusarai, the Nagi and Nakti bird sanctuaries in Jamui, Gokul Jalashay in Buxar, Udaipur Jheel in West Champaran and Gogabil in Katihar. Kabartal, designated on 21 July 2020 over 2,620 ha, is "part of an extensive floodplain wetland complex formed in the lower reaches of Gandak – Kosi interfan", "the largest of a complex of 18 interconnected wetlands", "Locally known as maun, chaur, and taal", inundated in the monsoon to a maximum depth of 1.5 m, and drains through the Bagras maun to the Burhi Gandak (Ramsar Information Sheet); its

boundary is its maximum post-monsoon inundation. Under the 2017 Rules only draft notifications were seen for this Manual, inviting objections for, among others, Gokul Jalashay, Haldia Chaur (Saran), Bagharbeel (Katihar) and Devkhal Chaur (Samastipur) (7 June 2024), Chauki and Dargahpur (Begusarai, 2025), and Durgapur Jola (Purnia), Motijheel and Sarottar Jheel (Motihari) and Badka Tal (Bhojpur) (10 February 2026); no final notification under rule 7 was seen, and the Authority is reported to have approved the notification of 36 wetlands in September 2024 (as reported). The National Wetland Atlas counts 21,998 wetlands in Bihar over 4,03,209 ha, 4,416 of them larger than 2.25 ha (as cited by the Authority). The Mokama group of tals, about 1,062 km² of seasonally waterlogged land on the south bank of the Ganga (as reported), was not researched for this Manual and its status is unknown. Under the Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026, the "District Collector NOC for development on wet land" is listed as "Not required" for enterprises (Schedule V). A drain outfall, desilting, diversion or pumping station in or near a notified wetland or Ramsar site therefore needs the Wetland Authority's permission where the notification or the Rules regulate it, as well as compliance with this chapter; for the chaurs and tals that are not notified, this chapter is the only control. Clause 7.12.2 targets a specific risk: drains built to relieve flooding next to a marsh can drain the marsh itself, and once it is dry it is encroached. Sewage reaches Bihar's rivers, pokhars and wetlands through the nalas (Clause 8.9, Commentary). In Patna, 19 drains were identified as discharging 628.5 MLD to the Ganga and the Punpun (CAG, year ended March 2020); in Darbhanga, a petitioner alleges before the National Green Tribunal that municipal sewage has been linked to the newly built storm water drains (Talab Bachao Abhiyan, 2025, an allegation). WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 permits, within the Prohibited Zone, only the "discharge of treated domestic wastewater from cities or towns to prescribed standards" (para 7, as translated). Clauses 7.10.6(d) and 7.12.3 therefore cannot yet be met by many existing outfalls. In Bihar they apply in full to every new outfall, and every existing outfall to a river, pokhar, chaur, tal or wetland that carries dry-weather flow comes under the annual survey and the interception of Clauses 8.9.4 and 8.9.5 until its sources are removed.

7.13 Encroachment interfaces

7.13.1 **Boundary.** For design under this Manual, the boundary of a waterbody is the larger of its Revenue record boundary and its surveyed FTL (or top of bank), as in Clause 7.3.3. Setbacks are measured from that boundary.

7.13.2 **No reliance on encroached land.** No design shall:

- (a) count, as storage or conveyance, land within a waterbody boundary that is occupied by encroachment, unless its removal is ordered and funded; or
- (b) treat the encroached width of a channel as its design width.

7.13.3 **Public works in encroached reaches.** Where a public drainage work passes through an encroached reach:

- (a) it shall be designed for the full waterbody width (Clause 7.13.1);
- (b) where the full width cannot be cleared before the work is built, the design report shall state the interim capacity and the flood risk until it is cleared; and
- (c) the work shall be built so that the full width can be restored later without rebuilding it.

7.13.4 **Boundary marking.** Every development adjoining a waterbody shall, before the completion certificate:

- (a) mark the outer edge of Zone 1 on the ground with permanent survey markers at intervals of not more than 30 m and at every change of direction; and
- (b) show the setback zones on the approved layout plan and in the sale documents of every plot that includes setback land.

7.13.5 **Retaining walls.** No retaining wall, bund or embankment shall be built along the edge of a waterbody, within Zone 1, to protect or reclaim land, except to protect existing public infrastructure under the custodian's approval.

Commentary. Bihar's main controls on filling and building in ponds are the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956, municipal law and the courts. The 1956 Act defines public land to include land vested in the State, a local authority or a Gram Panchayat and any land over which the community has "a right of user, such as right of way, burials, cremation, pasturage or irrigation"; it provides for a notice (s. 3), a hearing (s. 5) and a final order (s. 6), and the burden of proof lies on the person who says the land is not public. The Patna High Court treats the procedure as two-stage, a declaration that the land is public (s. 6(1)) followed by a notice to remove (s. 6(2)), and has often sent pond cases back to the Circle Officer or the Collector (as extracted). The Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan reports encroachment removed from 28,685 ponds, ahars, pynes and wells (State portal, as reported), while other counts differ widely, and the State is reported to have lost more than 100,000 ponds in three decades (Down To Earth, as reported); the figures measure different sets. In Darbhanga, the National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone) stayed construction around the Harahi, Digghi and Ganga Sagar ponds (8 December 2022) and directed removal of encroachment within three months (23 March 2023); the State's compliance affidavit of 30 July 2024 says the Patna High Court stayed demolition around one pond, and the petitioner's objection of 23 November 2024 says no work was done (O.A. 155/2022/EZ, as listed). Against these, sections 184 and 251(e) of the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 still allow a pond to be ordered filled where piped supply exists or where it is "injurious to health"; this Manual treats a recorded pokhar as drainage infrastructure (definitions after Clause 7.2). The encroachment sections of the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 beyond those cited, and the Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997 in full, were not read for this Manual. This Manual cannot evict anyone. It can stop designs from treating encroachment as permanent (Clause 7.13.2), make public works restorable to full width (Clause 7.13.3), and make the setback visible on the ground and in property documents so that new buyers know it is there (Clause 7.13.4). The 30 m marker interval is set by this Manual.

7.14 Safety of tank bunds and embankments

7.14.1 **Dam Safety Act screening.** For every tank, and every embankment built or altered under this Manual, the designer shall determine whether it is a "specified dam" under the Dam Safety Act, 2021. Under the Act, a specified dam is a dam:

- (a) more than 15 m high, measured from the lowest point of the general foundation area to the top of the dam; or
- (b) between 10 m and 15 m high, where the crest length is not less than 500 m, or the reservoir capacity is not less than one million m³, or the maximum flood discharge dealt with by the dam is not less than 2,000 m³/s, or the dam has specially difficult foundation problems, or the dam is of unusual design.

Where it is a specified dam, the Act and the requirements of the State Dam Safety Organisation govern, in addition to this Manual.

7.14.2 **Hazard class.** Every tank bund and detention embankment that is not a specified dam shall be given a hazard class:

- **High hazard:** a breach could flood a habitable building, a school, a hospital, an arterial road or critical infrastructure.
- **Low hazard:** any other case.

7.14.3 **High-hazard embankments.** For high-hazard tank bunds and embankments:

- (a) the surplus weir or spillway shall pass the 1% AEP inflow at MWL with the freeboard of Clause 7.7.4(b), and shall be checked for the 0.2% AEP (500-yr) inflow without overtopping the bund (as for detention basins in Chapter 4);
- (b) a breach analysis shall map the area flooded by a breach at MWL;
- (c) an emergency action plan shall be prepared, with the warning and evacuation arrangements for the breach area; and

- (d) the design shall be certified and independently checked under Clause 10.6.

7.14.4 **Inspection.** Every tank whose storage is counted under Clause 7.7, and every high-hazard embankment, shall be inspected before the SW monsoon (by 31 May) and after every heavy-rainfall event (Chapter 10) for seepage, slips, cracks, animal burrows, trees on the bund, and blockage of the weir and sluices.

7.14.5 **No unauthorised cutting.** No person shall cut, lower or breach a tank bund or surplus weir during a flood except under the custodian's emergency procedure.

> Commentary. The definition of a specified dam is quoted from the Dam Safety Act, 2021 (Act 41 of 2021). The Act defines a "dam" as an artificial barrier constructed across rivers or tributaries to impound or divert water. It excludes flood embankments, dikes and guide bunds. The banks of most pokhars are low and are not expected to make them specified dams, but each shall be screened under Clause 7.14.1. The ahars of south Bihar have earthen bunds whose heights and lengths were not found for this Manual; each ahar whose storage is counted shall be screened. The WRD's river embankments, about 3,800 km of them (WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025), and the town protection wall of Patna built after the floods of 1975 (as reported) are flood embankments, which the Act excludes. Where the storage of a pokhar, ahar or tal is counted under Clause 7.7, its bank or bund is a tank bund for Clause 7.14.2. Whether a tank bund that is not across a river or tributary is a "dam" under the Act is not clear from its text. Bihar's embankment failures have come at the rivers. On 18 August 2008 the Kosi breached its eastern afflux bund at Kusaha in Nepal and shifted its course across north Bihar, leaving about 3 million people homeless; the commission of inquiry under Justice Rajesh Balia is reported to have found that pressure on the spur from 31 July was not tackled, that anti-erosion work was poor and that warnings were ignored (as reported). In August 2017, floods in north Bihar are reported to have killed 514 people in 19 districts (as reported). No breach map or emergency action plan for a Bihar embankment, sluice or ahar was found. A failed embankment or sluice floods the colonies it was meant to protect, which is why Clause 7.14.3 asks for breach mapping of high-hazard embankments. The hazard classes, the breach analysis and the emergency action plan for high-hazard tanks are set by this Manual. They extend the Chapter 4 requirement for detention basins (1% AEP spillway with outlet blocked, 0.2% AEP for high-hazard basins) to tanks that are counted as design storage.

7.15 Submittal requirements

Every drainage report for a development or work under Clause 7.1.2 shall include:

1. the **Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1)** under Clause 7.3.2, with the setback zones and their basis (mapped extent, hydraulic study or fixed width);
2. the hydraulic study of the 1% AEP extent and floodway, where Clause 7.3.4 requires it;
3. the **Compensatory Storage Calculation (Form 7-3)**, by elevation band, where fill is proposed in the flood fringe;
4. for any tank storage counted: the **Tank Storage Credit Sheet (Form 7-2)**, with the survey, stage–storage curve, operating rule, cascade model results and custodian concurrence of Clause 7.7.1;
5. for any crossing, outfall or work in Zone 1: the custodian's NOC and the hydraulic analysis of Clause 7.6.2 or 7.10.3;
6. for restoration or desilting: the pre-works survey, silt tests and hydrogeological report of Clause 7.9; and
7. for any embankment: the Dam Safety Act screening and hazard class of Clause 7.14.

7.16 Review and update

7.16.1 This chapter shall be reviewed with the rest of the Manual (Chapter 1). The fixed-width table of Clause 7.4.6 shall also be reviewed within 2 years of the Authority adopting 1% AEP flood maps for its area.

7.16.2 Where the Authority adopts new 1% AEP flood maps, they apply to new submittals **6 months** after adoption, unless the Authority notifies otherwise.

References (chapter)

- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar. Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014 (English text "Dec-2014"; Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text) (bye-laws 29, 30, 32, 47 and 51, and the Water Bodies Use Zone of the zoning table). https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/PlanningPortals/images/Bihar%20Building%20Bylaw%20English%20Dec-2014.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar. Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, posted on 5 June 2026 (a draft, not notified as of September 2026) (definition 151, cls. 6, 23 and 41, and Table 5). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2026/Jun/05-Jun-2026/19/LatestNews/0424d72a-9e14-4227-8221-8adb08c0c009.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 (ss. 177, 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 198, 251 and 252). https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956 (as published by the Bihar State Wetland Authority). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/Downloads/BIHAR%20PUBLIC%20LAND%20ENCROACHMENT%20ACT,%201956.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act, 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311 of 5 April 2018. https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act, 2026 (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120 of 16 September 2026, Schedule V. https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2026/Act32of2026BR.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012). https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2012/2012Bihar20.pdf ; Bihar Irrigation Act, 1997 (offences relating to embankments and irrigation works; read only through legal-database extracts).
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar. Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, Implementation of Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers within Bihar State (Hindi), with the Department's correspondence with the Survey of India and NIH, annexed to the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, of 12 January 2026 in NGT O.A. 200/2014, *M.C. Mehta v. Union of India*. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone). Application by Talab Bachao Abhiyan against the Darbhanga storm water drainage and canal-lining projects (O.A. of 2025), https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755167303.pdf ; and objection of 23 November 2024 in M.A. 18/2024 in O.A. 155/2022/EZ, *Talab Bachao Abhiyan v. Government of Bihar* (Harahi, Digghi and Ganga Sagar ponds), https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1732521637_pagenumber.pdf
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme (report number and date of tabling [TBC]). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (components and progress). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/jaljivan.aspx
- Bihar State Wetland Authority. Home page (Ramsar sites, National Wetland Atlas figures) and Acts, Rules and Notifications (draft notifications under the 2017 Rules). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ ; https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ActRulesandNotification.aspx
- Ramsar Convention. Ramsar Information Sheet, Kabartal Wetland, India (site 2436). https://rsis.ramsar.org/RISapp/files/RISrep/IN2436RIS_2010_en.pdf
- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna. Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin of 31 October 2026 (warning, danger and highest flood levels). https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf ; Water Resources Department, FMISC, Daily Flood

Information Bulletin. https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/
- Central Water Commission (1985). Flood Estimation Report for Middle Ganga Plains, Subzone 1(f), GP/10/1984 (§1.6 and the worked example).
- Government of India. The Dam Safety Act, 2021 (Act 41 of 2021). https://www.casemine.com/act/in/626f9167714d58ef62b50d09 ; CWC, Specified Dam. https://rrssd.cwc.gov.in/specified-dam
- MoHUA (2015). Urban and Regional Development Plans Formulation and Implementation (URDPFI) Guidelines, Vol I. https://web.archive.org/web/2022/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/URDPFI%20Guidelines%20Vol%20I(2).pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement (Section 5600, Version 2025.01). https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities (§5605.3 stream buffers). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management. https://www.water.gov.my/jps/resources/auto%20download%20images/5844dfbba8fc1.pdf
- Reports of floods and floodplains (secondary): Lok Sabha debates of 12 and 16 January 1976 on the Patna flood of 1975 (read only through search extracts), https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/857276/1/05_XV_16-01-1976_p57_p59_PII.pdf ; ThePrint on the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat (5 September 2026), https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/ ; DT Next (6 September 2026), https://www.dtnext.in/news/national/bihar-downstream-areas-on-alert-as-ganga-water-level-rises-in-patna-19-lakh-affected-by-floods ; Business Standard on the Patna waterlogging inquiry (14 October 2019), https://business-standard.com/article/news-ani/show-cause-notices-served-to-officials-responsible-for-patna-water-logging-says-chief-secretary-119101401451_1.html ; Business Standard / IANS on the Kosi inquiry report (2 August 2014) and PTI on the floods of 2017 (28 August 2017). Rajya Sabha, reply of 27 November 2024 on drainage pumping stations (seen only in a search extract).
- Reports of ponds, drains and pumping (secondary): Down To Earth on the encroachment of Bihar's ponds, https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/over-20-000-water-bodies-freed-from-encroachment-in-bihar-for-rainwater-harvesting-78741 , https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/nearly-3-years-since-campaign-only-5-public-ponds-free-of-encroachment-in-bihar-76044 ; Patna Press on drain cleaning and sump houses (2026), https://patnapress.com/patna-special-drain-cleaning-drive-monsoon-2026/ ; NBMCW on the Patna storm water drainage project, https://www.nbmcw.com/news/infra-development/construction-begins-on-stormwater-drainage-project-in-patna-to-prevent-floods.html ; Patna Press on the State budget of 2026, https://patnapress.com/bihar-budget-urban-development-drainage-waste-management-2026/ ; the NIH study of the Mokama tal area, as summarised by India Water Portal, https://www.indiawaterportal.org/articles/waterlogged-area-mapping-and-hydrological-data-analysis-mokama-tal-area-research-report
- Platts, J. T. (1884). *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English*. London: W. H. Allen; and Dasa, Syamasundara (1965–1975). *Hindi Shabdasagara*. Kashi: Nagari Pracarini Sabha; both online at the Digital South Asia Library, University of Chicago (accessed 6 November 2026). https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/platts/ ; https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/dasa-hindi/
- Government of India. Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017; Coastal Regulation Zone Notification, 2019.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
7A	Statewide waterbody GIS layer and inventory fields

Annex / Form	Content
7B	Fixed-width setback table (alternative S-3, with Annex 1C)
7C	Template tank operating rule, with flood cushion
7D	Desilting and restoration specification
7E	Glossary of Hindi and Urdu waterbody terms and regional variants
Form 7-1	Waterbody Sheet
Form 7-2	Tank Storage Credit Sheet
Form 7-3	Compensatory Storage Calculation (by elevation band)

CHAPTER 8

Water Quality and Recharge

8.1 Purpose and scope

8.1.1 This chapter sets the requirements for the quality of stormwater leaving a site or a public drainage system, and for groundwater recharge. It covers:

- (a) the water quality volume (WQv) and the water quality design flow;
- (b) the treatment train, and the selection and design of best management practices (BMPs);
- (c) the criteria for infiltration and recharge;
- (d) the exclusion of sewage and dry-weather flow from storm drains;
- (e) gross pollutant traps, first-flush treatment and screens at outfalls to waterbodies;
- (f) how rainwater harvesting (RWH) fits with retention and detention;
- (g) erosion and sediment control during construction; and
- (h) monitoring.

8.1.2 This chapter applies to every development and public work to which Chapter 4 applies (Chapter 1). Clauses 8.9 (sewage) and 8.12 (construction erosion and sediment control) apply to every development that needs a building permit or layout approval, and to every public drainage work, whatever its size.

8.1.3 Retention under Chapter 4 is the first and preferred form of water quality control. Runoff retained on site is treated in full. The rest of this chapter applies to the part of the WQv that is not retained.

> Commentary. CPHEEO (2019) is the only Indian manual that covers stormwater quality in any detail. Its Chapter 9 reproduces US event mean concentrations, but cautions that "in an Indian context the values would be much higher" because drains receive night soil, urine and food waste, and it sets no Indian numeric criteria (CPHEEO 2019, Part A §9.5). Its Chapter 10 describes water-sensitive urban design, LID and SuDS treatment trains (CPHEEO 2019, Part A Ch. 10). This chapter turns that guidance into requirements. It follows the treatment approach of the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), now merged into APWA 5600 (2025.01), with the Malaysian 3-month ARI water quality storm (MSMA 2, 2012) and the Georgia water quality volume (GSMM, 2016) as tropical and US benchmarks.

8.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Water quality volume (WQv)	The runoff volume that must be retained or treated, from the water quality rainfall depth (Clause 8.4).
Water quality rainfall depth (P_wq)	The greater of the retention depth (Annex 2E, Clause 2.10) and the 24-hour 3-month ARI depth (Annex 8A).

Term	Meaning in this Manual
3-month ARI depth	The 24-hour rainfall depth equalled or exceeded on average four times a year, from a partial-duration series of the long-term daily record.
Water quality design flow (Q_wq)	The peak flow from the 3-month ARI storm, used to size flow-through devices and diversion structures (Clause 8.4.5).
Runoff coefficient for WQv (Rv)	The volumetric runoff coefficient for small storms, Rv = 0.05 + 0.009·I.
BMP	A best management practice: a structural or non-structural measure that reduces pollutant loads or runoff volume.
Treatment train	Two or more BMPs in series, from source to site to regional scale (Clause 8.5).
Pretreatment	A BMP that removes coarse sediment, litter and oil before runoff reaches a filter or infiltration BMP.
First flush	The early part of a runoff event, which usually carries the highest concentrations of sediment, litter and oil.
Gross pollutant trap (GPT)	A device that captures litter, plastics, vegetation and coarse sediment, typically above about 5 mm.
Dry-weather flow (DWF)	Flow in a storm drain when it has not rained for at least 72 hours. In a separate storm system, DWF is evidence of sewage, sullage, groundwater infiltration or illicit discharge.
Cross-connection	Any pipe, channel or opening that lets sewage or sullage (grey water from kitchens, bathrooms and laundries) enter a storm drain.
Infiltration facility	A facility designed to store runoff below the ground surface, or in a depression, and let it soak into the soil: infiltration trenches and basins, unlined bioretention, permeable pavement with an open base, soakaways, recharge pits and recharge wells.
Seasonal high groundwater table	As defined in Clause 3.10.2: the highest level in the SW monsoon season.
Hotspot	A land use with a high risk of spills or contaminated runoff (Clause 8.8.8).
Level of Service (LoS) / Value Rating (VR)	The scoring system of Clause 8.6, from the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012).

8.3 Objectives and pollutants of concern

8.3.1 Stormwater treatment under this Manual shall aim to:

- (a) remove litter, plastics and other gross pollutants before they reach a waterbody;
- (b) remove suspended sediment, and the metals, nutrients and oil carried on it;
- (c) keep sewage and sullage out of storm drains and waterbodies;
- (d) recharge groundwater where soils and groundwater depth allow, without polluting it; and
- (e) prevent erosion and sediment discharge during construction.

8.3.2 The design shall address the following pollutants for every site, and the hotspot pollutants of Clause 8.8.8 where they apply:

Table 8.1 — Pollutants of concern, sources and primary controls

Pollutant	Main sources in Bihar towns	Primary control
Gross pollutants (plastics, litter, vegetation)	Streets, markets, open dumping in drains	Source collection; GPTs and screens (Clause 8.10)

Pollutant	Main sources in Bihar towns	Primary control
Suspended sediment	Construction sites, unpaved roads and verges, road wear, drain silt	Erosion and sediment control (Clause 8.12); pretreatment; filtration
Oil, grease and fuel	Roads, parking, fuel stations, workshops, bus depots	Oil-grit separators at hotspots; bioretention
Pathogens and organic load (BOD)	Sewage and sullage cross-connections, animal waste	Exclusion and DWF interception (Clause 8.9)
Nutrients (N, P)	Sewage, fertiliser, food waste, detergents	Exclusion; bioretention; wetlands
Heavy metals	Roads, roofs, industrial yards	Filtration; sedimentation

> **Commentary.** Gross pollutants and sewage come first in Clause 8.3 because they dominate the pollution of urban waterbodies in Bihar, and because no treatment BMP works for long if they are not removed. CPHEEO (2019) notes that Indian drains carry night soil, urine and food waste (Part A §9.5). In its WSUD procedure it lists TSS, total nitrogen, total phosphorus and gross pollutants as the key pollutants (Part A Ch. 10). AMRUT 2.0 funds the harvesting of rainwater "through storm water drains into water body (which is not receiving sewage/effluent)" (Lok Sabha unstarred question AU1419), which only works if sewage is first kept out of the drains.

8.4 Water quality volume and design flow

8.4.1 **Water quality rainfall depth.** The water quality rainfall depth is:

$$P_{wq} = \max(P_{ret}, P_{3m})$$

where:

- P_{ret} = the retention depth for the site's zone (Annex 2E, Clause 2.10), mm; and
- P_{3m} = the 24-hour 3-month ARI depth for the site's zone (Annex 8A), mm.

8.4.2 **Water quality volume.** The WQv shall be computed as:

$$WQv = (P_{wq} / 1000) \times Rv \times A$$

where:

- WQv is in m³;
- A = the contributing area, m²;
- $Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 \cdot I$; and
- I = the impervious percentage of the contributing area (0–100), after the connectivity rules of Clause 3.9.

The Rv form above may be used only for sites under 0.5 ha and under the Tier B simplified method (Clause 4.14). This is the same limit as for the retention volume (Clause 4.4.2). For all other sites the WQv shall be computed with the SCS-CN method, as the retention volume is: WQv (m³) = 10 × Q_{wq} × A, where Q_{wq} (mm) is the SCS-CN runoff from P_{wq} for each sub-area and A is in ha.

8.4.3 **Climate factor.** The climate factor of Clause 2.8 shall not be applied to P_wq. P_ret and P_3m are frequency statistics of ordinary rainfall, not AEP design depths.

8.4.4 **WQv met by retention.** The volume retained on site under Chapter 4 counts toward the WQv in full. Where the retained volume is equal to or greater than the WQv, no further treatment is required for that area, except:

- (a) pretreatment of inflows to each retention facility (Clause 8.5.3);
- (b) hotspot controls (Clause 8.8.8); and
- (c) the outfall requirements of Clause 8.10, where the site discharges to a waterbody.

8.4.5 **Water quality design flow.** Flow-through devices (swales, filter strips, oil-grit separators, GPTs) and diversion weirs for off-line BMPs shall be sized for Q_wq. Q_wq shall be computed from the 3-month ARI intensity at the time of concentration of the contributing area:

- (a) by the Rational Method, where Chapter 3 allows it (a single element draining no more than 16 ha); or
- (b) as the peak of a hydrograph method using the 3-month ARI 24-hour depth with the alternating-block pattern of Clause 2.9.1.

8.4.6 **Bypass.** Flows above Q_wq shall bypass flow-through and off-line treatment devices without washing out the material already captured. The bypass shall be part of the minor or major system (Chapter 6).

8.4.7 **Drawdown.** Where the WQv is held in an extended-detention BMP (wet pond, constructed wetland or dry extended-detention basin), it shall be released over **24–48 hours** (Chapter 4).

> Commentary. The WQv depth is the runoff from the 3-month ARI storm or the retention depth, whichever is greater. The 3-month ARI is the Malaysian water quality design storm (MSMA 2, 2012). The Malaysian 2008 checklist gave its depth as about 40 mm and said it captures 90% or more of 24-hour storm runoff volume (DID, 2008). The Bihar value must be computed (Annex 8A). Georgia sets its WQv as the runoff from 1.2 inches (about 30 mm), the depth that covers 85% of storms in an average year, and requires 80% removal of the average annual post-development TSS load (GSMM 2016, Vol 1, Standard #4). Kansas City's water quality storm is the 1.37-inch (about 35 mm) event that produces up to 90% of the runoff from all 24-hour storms in a year (MARC BMP Manual, 2012).
>
> The Rv formula is from the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), which computes WQv = P × Rv with Rv = 0.05 + 0.009·I. Rv is used instead of the SCS curve number because the CN method greatly understates runoff from small storms on pervious ground. Not applying the climate factor (Clause 8.4.3) has no direct precedent; this Manual does so because it treats P_wq like the retention depth, as a statistic of ordinary rainfall. Bypass of larger flows and the 24–48 hour drawdown follow Chapter 4; MARC (2012) required at least 40 hours of extended detention of the WQv.
>
> **Illustrative — not design values.** For a 1.0 ha site with 80% impervious cover and an assumed P_wq of 50 mm:
>
> - Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 × 80 = 0.77
> - WQv = (50 / 1000) × 0.77 × 10,000 = 385 m³

8.5 Treatment train and pretreatment

8.5.1 **Treatment train.** Water quality control shall be designed as a treatment train, in the order shown in Figure 8.1:

- (a) **source controls** on the plot: roof runoff to RWH, rain gardens, permeable paving, disconnection of impervious areas, and silt traps at inlets;

- (b) **site controls**: bioretention, swales, filter strips, infiltration, oil-grit separators at hotspots, wet ponds and extended detention; and
- (c) **regional controls**, for public drainage: GPTs and DWF interceptors at outfalls, constructed wetlands at tank inlets, and regional ponds.

8.5.2 A development shall meet the WQv on site, through (a) and (b). Regional controls under (c) may count toward a development's WQv only where a regional facility treating the same runoff has been built under a notified basin plan (Clause 7.11).

8.5.3 **Pretreatment.** Every bioretention cell, infiltration facility, permeable pavement receiving run-on, wet pond and constructed wetland shall have pretreatment at each concentrated inflow. Pretreatment shall be a sediment forebay, grass filter strip, silt trap or proprietary device that holds at least **10% of the WQv** of its contributing area, or that is sized for Q_wq for flow-through devices.

8.5.4 Pretreatment shall be accessible for cleaning without entering or disturbing the main BMP.

> **Commentary.** The treatment train follows CPHEEO (2019, Part A §10.2.3, SuDS treatment train) and CIRIA C753 *The SuDS Manual* (2015). It is also the order of priorities of this Manual: preserve, retain, detain, convey (Chapter 1). The 10% forebay volume has no Indian precedent; it is a common sizing rule for forebays in US manuals. In Bihar, unpaved verges, construction sites and drain silt deliver a heavy sediment load. Bioretention and infiltration facilities without pretreatment clog, often within a year or two.

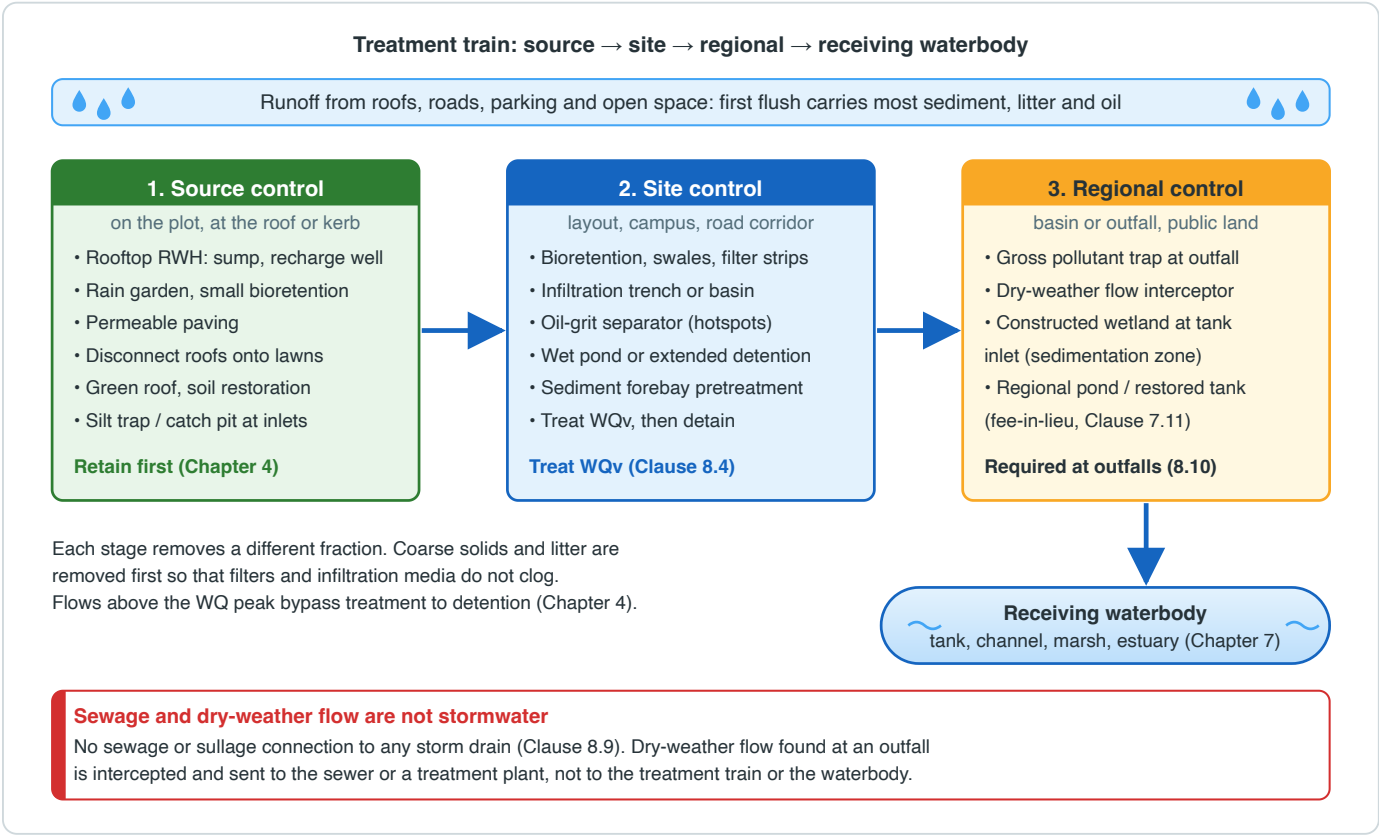


Figure 8.1 — Treatment train: source, site and regional controls before the receiving waterbody, with sewage and dry-weather flow kept out of the system. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015, and MARC/APWA, Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality, 2012.

8.6 BMP selection: Level of Service and Value Rating

8.6.1 **Method.** In Tier A areas, the BMPs for each site shall be selected by the Level of Service (LoS) method of this Clause. In Tier B areas, the simplified route of Clause 8.6.5 may be used.

8.6.2 **Required Level of Service.** For a site that is not redevelopment, the required LoS depends on the change in curve number (ΔCN) from pre- to post-development (Chapter 3):

Table 8.2 — Required Level of Service for sites that are not redevelopment

ΔCN	Impact	Required LoS
17 or more	High	8
7 to 16	Moderate	7
4 to 6	Low	6
1 to 3	Minimal	5

For redevelopment (existing impervious cover of 20% or more of the site), the required LoS shall be taken from Annex 8B.

8.6.3 **Value Rating.** Each BMP treating the WQv has a Value Rating (VR) from Table 8.3. The site's composite VR is the area-weighted average of the VRs of the BMPs serving each part of the site. Treatment trains get a composite VR under Annex 8B. The composite VR shall be equal to or greater than the required LoS.

8.6.4 **Conditions for a Value Rating.** A BMP earns its VR only if:

- (a) it is sized for the WQv (or Q_wq for flow-through devices) of the area credited to it;
- (b) it meets the design requirements of Clause 8.7 and, for infiltration, Clause 8.8; and
- (c) it has pretreatment under Clause 8.5.3.

8.6.5 **Tier B simplified route.** In Tier B areas, the requirement of Clause 8.6.3 is deemed met where the whole WQv of the site is either:

- (a) retained on site under Chapter 4; or
- (b) treated by a bioretention cell, rain garden or infiltration facility designed under Clauses 8.7 and 8.8, with pretreatment.

Table 8.3 — BMP Value Ratings and suitability in Bihar

BMP	VR (MARC 2012)	Main pollutants removed	Volume reduction / recharge	Sandy alluvium (diara, Kosi sands)	Laterite / hard rock	Tal or chaur clay / high water table	Bihar notes
Native vegetation (preserved)	9.25	All	High	Suited	Suited	Suited	Counts only for preserved, undisturbed area
Rain garden / infiltration	9.0	Sediment, metals, oil, nutrients	High	Suited if 1.0 m separation met	Conditional (test)	Not suited	Mosquito control: drain within 48 h
Bioretention	8.5	Sediment, metals, oil, nutrients	Medium–high (unlined); low (lined)	Suited	Suited, with underdrain	Lined, with underdrain	Media source and phosphorus content to be specified

BMP	VR (MARC 2012)	Main pollutants removed	Volume reduction / recharge	Sandy alluvium (diara, Kosi sands)	Laterite / hard rock	Tal or chaur clay / high water table	Bihar notes
Permeable pavement	7.5	Sediment, metals, oil	Medium–high	Suited	Conditional	Lined only	Not where run-on carries heavy silt
Extended detention wetland	7.0	Sediment, nutrients, metals	Low	Conditional (water balance)	Suited	Suited	Good at tank inlets (Clause 7.9.7)
Media / sand filter	6.0	Sediment, metals	Low	Suited	Suited	Suited (lined)	Needs frequent cleaning
Extended wet detention (wet pond)	5.0	Sediment, metals, some nutrients	Low	Conditional (water balance)	Suited	Suited	Dry-season water balance (Clause 8.7.8)
Vegetated filter strip	5.0	Sediment	Low–medium	Suited	Suited	Suited	Mostly as pretreatment
Native vegetation swale	4.0	Sediment, oil	Low–medium	Suited	Suited	Suited	Not where Q_wq velocity is high
Extended dry detention	4.0	Coarse sediment	Low	Suited	Suited	Suited	Combine with detention (Chapter 4)
Proprietary / hydrodynamic devices	3.0–5.0	Coarse sediment, oil, litter	None	Suited	Suited	Suited	VR from verified test data only
Signage (public education)	+0.25	—	—	—	—	—	Added to composite VR

The VR column is from the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), Table 4.4. The suitability columns and notes have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

> **Commentary.** The LoS and VR method is from the MARC/APWA Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality (2012), Tables 4.2 and 4.4. The VRs combine a water quality score, based on effluent TSS concentrations in the International Stormwater BMP Database, with scores for volume reduction, temperature, and oils and floatables. The method suits Bihar for two reasons. It rewards volume reduction and preservation, which also serve recharge. It can also be checked by a reviewer without water quality modelling. Its weakness is that the scores come from US data. Bihar stormwater carries more litter and more sewage than the US runoff behind the scores (CPHEEO 2019, §9.5), so this Manual requires GPTs and DWF exclusion separately (Clauses 8.9 and 8.10) and does not let a VR stand in for them.

8.7 BMP design summaries

8.7.1 **General.** Each BMP shall be designed to the requirements below and to Annex 8D (BMP design sheets). The dimensions given are **recommended starting values** where marked; the designer shall justify any departure. Every BMP shall be designed for safe passage of flows above Q_wq (Clause 8.4.6) and shall have access for maintenance (Chapter 10).

8.7.2 **Bioretention and rain gardens** (Figure 8.2).

- (a) Surface ponding depth not more than **300 mm** above the mulch, with an overflow at the maximum ponding level.
- (b) Surface ponding drained within **48 hours**.
- (c) Filter media 600–900 mm deep: an engineered sandy loam with low fines and low phosphorus content (Annex 8D), with a 50–75 mm mulch layer.
- (d) A transition (choker) layer and a gravel drainage layer below the media.
- (e) A perforated underdrain where the design infiltration rate of the native soil (Clause 8.8.4) is below the rate needed to meet (b), or where the cell is lined.
- (f) Unlined cells shall meet the infiltration criteria of Clause 8.8. Cells that cannot meet them, and cells at hotspots, shall be lined.
- (g) Plants: native or naturalised species tolerant of both waterlogging and long dry spells.

8.7.3 **Vegetated swales.**

- (a) Trapezoidal or parabolic section, with side slopes no steeper than 1V:3H.
- (b) Longitudinal slope 0.5% to 4%, with check dams where steeper.
- (c) Flow depth at Q_wq not more than the height of the grass, and velocity at Q_wq not more than 0.3 m/s.
- (d) The 1% AEP flow (or the bypass) shall not erode the swale (Chapter 9 permissible velocities).
- (e) Where longitudinal slopes are below 1% or the subsoil is poorly drained, an underdrained ("dry") swale with filter media.

8.7.4 **Vegetated filter strips.**

- (a) Receive sheet flow only, with a level spreader where flow arrives concentrated.
- (b) Length in the direction of flow at least 5 m, and slope 1% to 8%.
- (c) Used mainly as pretreatment for bioretention, infiltration and swales.

8.7.5 **Permeable pavement.**

- (a) Run-on from impervious areas not more than twice the permeable area, and no run-on from unpaved or eroding areas.
- (b) Base reservoir of clean, open-graded aggregate, sized to hold its share of the WQv in its voids.
- (c) An open base (infiltrating) only where Clause 8.8 is met; otherwise lined with an underdrain, and then counted as filtration only.
- (d) Structural design for the traffic loading by the road authority's standards.
- (e) Not at hotspots, and not where the surface will be resurfaced with impermeable material.

8.7.6 **Infiltration trenches and basins** (Figure 8.3).

- (a) Pretreatment under Clause 8.5.3 in every case.
- (b) Trenches filled with clean washed aggregate, with a void ratio confirmed by test, wrapped in geotextile on the sides and top, on a sand base.
- (c) An observation well to the base of each trench.
- (d) Storage volume = WQv (or the retention volume of Chapter 4, where greater) held in the voids; emptied within 72 hours at the design infiltration rate.
- (e) An overflow to the minor or major system at grade.
- (f) Not brought into service until the contributing area is stabilised (Chapter 10).

8.7.7 **Wet ponds (extended wet detention).**

- (a) A permanent pool of at least the WQv, plus extended detention of the WQv above the pool, released over 24–48 hours.
- (b) A sediment forebay at each inlet (Clause 8.5.3).
- (c) Length-to-width ratio of the flow path at least 3:1, with no short-circuiting.

- (d) Permanent pool depth 1.0–2.5 m, with a safety bench (Clause 7.9.4).
- (e) A dry-season water balance (Clause 8.7.8).
- (f) The detention storage of Chapter 4 may sit above the extended detention level.

8.7.8 **Water balance for permanent pools.** Wet ponds and wetlands shall be shown, by a monthly water balance using IMD rainfall and pan evaporation, to keep at least 50% of the permanent pool volume (or the minimum wetland depth) through the driest year in 10. They shall not be topped up with groundwater, potable water or sewage. Where the balance fails, a dry extended-detention basin or a constructed wetland with a smaller permanent pool shall be used instead.

8.7.9 **Constructed wetlands.**

- (a) An inlet sedimentation pond (forebay) followed by a shallow vegetated macrophyte zone.
- (b) Extended detention of the WQv above the normal water level, released over 24–48 hours, with an extended detention depth not more than 0.5 m.
- (c) A flow path length-to-width ratio of at least 3:1, with deep zones across the flow path to spread the flow.
- (d) A high-flow bypass so that floods do not scour the macrophyte zone.
- (e) Where built at a tank inlet, the wetland shall sit within the tank's setback but outside its waterspread, and its storage shall not be counted as tank storage.

8.7.10 **Gross pollutant traps.**

- (a) Sized to treat Q_wq, with all flows up to the 1% AEP passing without washing out captured material.
- (b) Capture of gross pollutants down to about 5 mm.
- (c) Head loss included in the hydraulic grade line of the drain (Chapter 9), with the screen assumed **50% blocked**.
- (d) Storage for captured material sized for the cleaning interval of the O&M plan, and not less than the 3-monthly cleaning of Chapter 10.
- (e) Vehicle access for cleaning by suction or grab.

8.7.11 **Oil-grit separators.**

- (a) Required at the hotspots of Clause 8.8.8 that involve fuel or oil: fuel stations, vehicle workshops and washing bays, bus and truck depots, and parking areas of more than 50 spaces.
- (b) Sized for Q_wq, with a high-flow bypass.
- (c) Not to be used as the only treatment: they shall be followed by a filtering BMP where the site needs a VR above 5.

8.7.12 **Silt traps and catch pits.**

- (a) At every inlet that receives runoff from unpaved ground, and at the inlet of every drain discharging to a BMP or waterbody.
- (b) A sump at least 300 mm below the outlet invert.
- (c) Silt traps are pretreatment only and earn no VR.

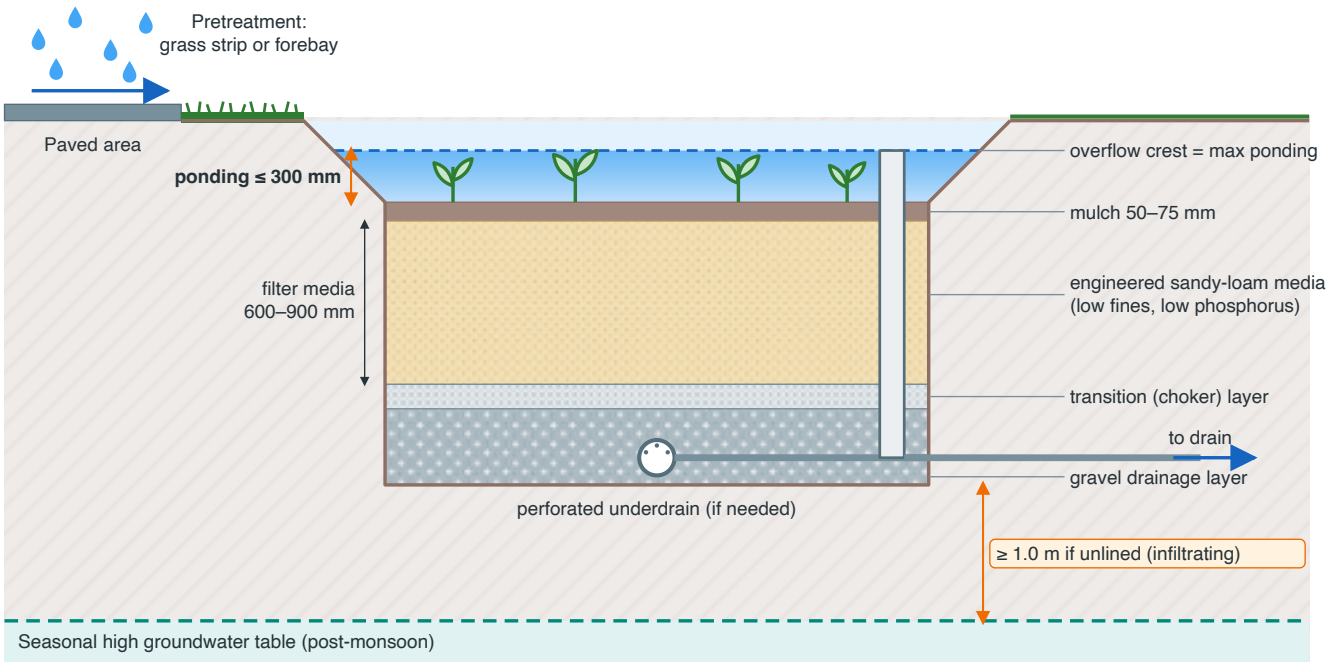
> **Commentary.** The design summaries draw on the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012), the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual (2016, Vol 2), CIRIA C753 *The SuDS Manual* (2015) and PUB Singapore's ABC Waters Design Guidelines. The dimensions are typical of those manuals but have not been calibrated in Bihar. Three local issues drive changes from the source manuals:
>
> - **Mosquitoes.** Dengue is endemic in Bihar. Surface ponding in bioretention and rain gardens must drain within 48 hours (Clause 8.7.2(b)), well inside the time mosquito larvae need to develop. This is consistent with the 24–48 hour WQv drawdown of Clause 8.4.7.
> - **Dry seasons.** Most of Bihar's rain falls in the south-west monsoon: about 86% of the annual total falls from June to September, against a State annual normal of 1,191.2 mm, ranging from 2,215.0 mm in Kishanganj to 857.9 mm in Arwal, with 984.7 mm at Patna (IMD, *Climate of Bihar*, 2011, normals of 1951–2000). The

monsoon now sets in at Purnea on about 13 June and at Patna and Gaya on about 16 June, and withdraws by 6–10 October (IMD, new normal dates, 2020). From October to the monsoon, pokhars, ahars and chaurs fall unless they are fed, and in the cities the feed is often sewage, because the nalas carry it (Clause 8.9, Commentary). Clause 8.7.8 applies to BMPs, which shall not be topped up with sewage; pokhars, ahars, chaurs and tals are waterbodies under Chapter 7 and are not to be used as treatment for a development. Wet ponds that dry out turn into stagnant pools or are used for dumping. Clause 8.7.8 requires a water balance and bans topping up with sewage, which is a common practice for keeping urban ponds "full".

- **Litter and silt.** GPTs and silt traps are treated as essential, not optional, because Bihar drains carry heavy litter and silt loads. The 50% blockage factor for screens matches the grate clogging factor of Chapter 6.

The 50-space threshold for oil-grit separators, the 5 mm GPT capture size, the 0.3 m/s swale velocity and the other dimensions in this Clause have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

Bioretention cell (rain garden): section, not to scale



Lined version (no infiltration): impermeable liner below the gravel layer. Required at pollution hotspots and wherever the 1.0 m separation to seasonal high groundwater cannot be met.

Dimensions as set in Clause 8.7.2.

Figure 8.2 — Bioretention cell (rain garden) in section: pretreatment, surface ponding, filter media, transition and gravel layers, underdrain, overflow, and the 1.0 m separation to seasonal high groundwater for an unlined cell. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from MARC/APWA, Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality, 2012, and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

8.8 Infiltration and recharge criteria

8.8.1 **Groundwater separation.** An infiltration facility is permitted only where the **seasonal high groundwater table is at least 1.0 m below the base** of the facility. There is no exception in Bihar, which has no coastal sand areas (Clause 8.8.9). In the following, no infiltration facility, recharge pit, recharge well or recharge shaft shall receive runoff of any kind, and the exception for roof water in Clause 8.11.3(c) does not apply; roof water there goes to storage for use, and retention is met by storage for use and surface measures: (i) diara and other active floodplain land, and land within the

Flood Plain Zone of WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025; (ii) chaur, maun and tal land, and the beds and foreshores of pokhars and ahars; (iii) the north Bihar plain (sub-areas BR-A, BR-B and BR-C), where the water table lies about 1.5 to 5.7 m below ground before the monsoon and rises toward the surface in it; and (iv) any other site where the seasonal high groundwater table is within this separation of the base. Elsewhere, recharge is permitted only where the seasonal high groundwater table, from current data, is deep enough to meet this Clause, as in parts of south Bihar and of the peri-urban blocks of Patna. In the arsenic belt of the Ganga plain (the districts in which the CGWB reports arsenic above 0.01 mg/L, and in any case every district on the Ganga), untreated runoff of any kind, including roof water, shall not be led into a recharge well, borewell, recharge shaft or injection well; recharge there is only by surface infiltration through at least the soil and filter media of Clause 8.7.2, or the runoff is detained instead, unless a hydrogeologist's report confirms that the target aquifer is not arsenic-affected and will not be harmed. These limits are set by this Manual. The seasonal high groundwater table shall be determined under Clause 3.10.2.

8.8.2 **Other separation.** The base of an infiltration facility shall also be at least 1.0 m above bedrock or any impermeable layer, unless the facility is designed to recharge a fractured or weathered rock aquifer under Clause 8.8.10.

8.8.3 **Infiltration tests.** The infiltration rate shall be measured at the proposed base level of the facility:

- (a) by a double-ring infiltrometer test (ASTM D3385) for basins, bioretention and permeable pavement;
- (b) by a falling-head borehole or trial-pit soakage test (for example BRE Digest 365) for trenches, soakaways, recharge pits and recharge wells;
- (c) with at least **2 tests per facility**, and at least 1 test per 100 m² of infiltration base area or per 50 m of trench length; and
- (d) by a person competent in geotechnical testing, with the results reported on the Infiltration Test Record (Form 8-2).

Tests made in the dry season shall be reported with the groundwater level at the time of test and the seasonal high level of Clause 8.8.1.

8.8.4 **Design infiltration rate.** The design infiltration rate is the measured rate divided by a safety factor:

- (a) **2.0** where the tests meet Clause 8.8.3(c) and the results vary by no more than a factor of 2; and
- (b) **3.0** otherwise.

8.8.5 **Minimum rates.**

- (a) Full infiltration (no underdrain) only where the design rate is at least **13 mm/h**.
- (b) Partial infiltration, with an underdrain, where the design rate is 3 mm/h to 13 mm/h. Only the volume that infiltrates within 72 hours is credited as retention.
- (c) No infiltration credit where the design rate is below 3 mm/h.

8.8.6 **Setbacks for infiltration facilities.** Infiltration facilities receiving runoff from roads, parking or other paved surfaces shall be at least:

- (a) **3 m** from building foundations, and **5 m** from a basement;
- (b) **1.5 m** from a property boundary, unless the neighbour agrees in writing;
- (c) **30 m** from a drinking-water well or borewell;
- (d) **15 m** from a septic tank or soak pit; and
- (e) **6 m** from the crest of a slope steeper than 1V:3H, unless a geotechnical report shows the slope remains stable.

Roof-only runoff to recharge structures is subject to (a) and (b) only, and to Clause 8.11.3.

8.8.7 **Drawdown and verification.** Every infiltration facility shall empty within **72 hours** at the design rate (Chapter 4), and shall be tested after construction (Clause 10.9.3).

8.8.8 **Hotspots.** Runoff from the following shall not be infiltrated without treatment, and shall not be infiltrated at all where (d) or (e) applies:

- (a) fuel stations;
- (b) vehicle workshops, washing bays, and bus and truck depots;
- (c) industrial yards and loading areas where hazardous materials are handled or stored;
- (d) solid waste transfer stations and landfill areas; and
- (e) land known or suspected to be contaminated.

Treatment for (a) to (c) shall include an oil-grit separator and a lined filtering BMP before any infiltration.

8.8.9 **Sandy coastal aquifers.** This Clause applies only to coastal sand aquifers. Bihar has none, so the Clause has no effect in the State; it is kept only so that the clause numbers stay unchanged. The sandy diara of the rivers and the sandy deposits of the Kosi plain are not coastal sand areas: Clause 8.8.1 applies there in full, and the reduced separation of item (d) does not. In coastal sand areas:

- (a) infiltration is the preferred means of meeting retention and the WQv wherever Clause 8.8.1 is met;
- (b) storm drains shall not be designed to lower the groundwater table: inverts below the seasonal high groundwater table shall be watertight, with no weep holes or subsoil drains that discharge groundwater to the outfall, unless a hydrogeological report shows no harm to the freshwater aquifer;
- (c) no long-term pumping of groundwater into storm drains shall be approved (for example basement dewatering); and
- (d) in notified coastal sand areas, **roof-only runoff** may be infiltrated with a separation of not less than **0.5 m** to the seasonal high groundwater table, provided a groundwater mounding check shows that the mound stays at least 0.3 m below the facility base and does not reach adjacent foundations or basements. No other runoff may use this reduced separation;
- (e) where neither the 1.0 m separation nor clause (d) can be met, the site shall use surface retention that does not infiltrate below ground (for example shallow vegetated depressions, disconnection of roofs onto lawns, and reuse), and detention under Chapter 4.

8.8.10 **Laterite and hard-rock areas.** In laterite and hard-rock terrain (for example the granite-gneiss of the Chotanagpur fringe in Banka, Jamui and south Munger, the Vindhyan sandstone of the Kaimur and Rohtas plateaus, and the Rajgir and Kharagpur hills):

- (a) tests shall be made at the facility base, below any surface crust or hardpan;
- (b) recharge into weathered or fractured rock is permitted only for roof runoff, or for runoff that has passed through a filtering BMP, because fractures give little treatment; and
- (c) infiltration on or above slopes shall be checked for slope stability.

8.8.11 **Delta clays and black cotton soils.** In the heavy clays of the tal lands of south Bihar, such as the Mokama group of tals, the clay beds of the chaurs and mauns of north Bihar, and the silted beds of pokhars, talabs and ahars, and in expansive black cotton soils:

- (a) infiltration facilities will usually fail Clause 8.8.5 and need not be tested where the soil survey (Chapter 3) shows HSG D; and
- (b) where infiltration is used near buildings on expansive soils, the setback of Clause 8.8.6(a) shall be doubled.

> **Commentary.** The 1.0 m groundwater separation is a core requirement of this Manual. The other values in this Clause (the 1.0 m bedrock separation, test numbers, safety factors, minimum rates and setbacks) are typical of US and UK practice and have no Bihar precedent. The well setback in Clause 8.8.6(c) applies to runoff from paved surfaces, not to roof water. Bihar RWH practice routes roof water into open wells and recharge wells, and Clause 8.11 keeps that practice.

No statewide map of hydrologic soil groups for Bihar was found, and the CGWB's groundwater yearbook and quality reports for the State could not be reached during research for this Manual; the depths and categories below are from CGWB district profiles and assessments read through search summaries, and from the State's report to the National Green Tribunal, and every infiltration design needs the tests of Clause 8.8.3. The State's ground falls into three parts. The north Bihar plain, of newer and calcareous alluvium with the sandy deposits of the Kosi, has a shallow water table: about 1.9 to 5.7 m below ground before the monsoon in the Kosi districts and 1.2 to 4.6 m after it (CGWB district profiles of 2011, as reported), and in one Supaul block the water table was seen in a pit "hardly 1.5 m deep during November" (as reported). The south Bihar plain, of older alluvium with kankar and the clays of the tal lands, has deeper water in places, but no current depth for Patna city was found. The plateau fringe of the south (the Chotanagpur granite-gneiss of Banka and Jamui and the Kaimur sandstone) holds water in weathered and fractured rock. Of 535 assessment units in 2024, 4 were over-exploited, 9 critical, 49 semi-critical and 473 safe (CGWB, as reported), so recharge is not the State's general need that it is where water tables are deep. Quality is the stronger constraint: groundwater with arsenic above 0.01 mg/L is reported in 27 districts, chiefly along the Ganga, and with fluoride above 1.5 mg/L in 19, chiefly in the south (CGWB, December 2023, as cited in the Government of Bihar's report to the National Green Tribunal in O.A. 728/2023). In the arsenic belt the shallow aquifer is the one that recharge reaches, and runoff injected through a well or shaft bypasses the soil that would otherwise treat it, which is why Clause 8.8.1 bars untreated injection there unless a hydrogeologist confirms the target aquifer. In the fluoride districts dilution by recharge is often recommended, but it was not researched for this Manual, and no recharge credit is given for it. This Manual's interim soil groups follow from these: diara and active floodplain A or B by texture but D in the monsoon; north Bihar newer and calcareous alluvium C, and D in chaurs and wherever the water table before the monsoon is within 3 m; the Kosi sands A or B by texture but D from July to September; south Bihar older alluvium B or C, and C or D in tal land; the plateau fringe D on rock and thin red soils and C on deeper red sandy loam; and made ground C unless tested. **Infiltration is therefore the exception in Bihar, not the rule.** On the north Bihar plain, in diara, chaur and tal land, and in the arsenic belt without a hydrogeologist's confirmation, retention is met by storage for use and surface measures, and detention, not by recharge (Clause 8.8.1); recharge is used first only where current data show a deep seasonal water table, as in parts of south Bihar and of Patna's peri-urban blocks. Section 18(1) of the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006 empowers the State's Ground Water Authority to "identify the recharge worthy areas in the State and issue necessary guidelines"; whether the Act has been brought into force, and whether any area has been notified, was not verified for this Manual, and once such areas are identified they are the natural limit of recharge-first design. Everywhere, runoff from roads and open land goes to surface systems and never directly to a recharge well, borewell or shaft (Clause 8.11.3(b)). Clause 8.8.9 has no effect in Bihar, which has no coast.

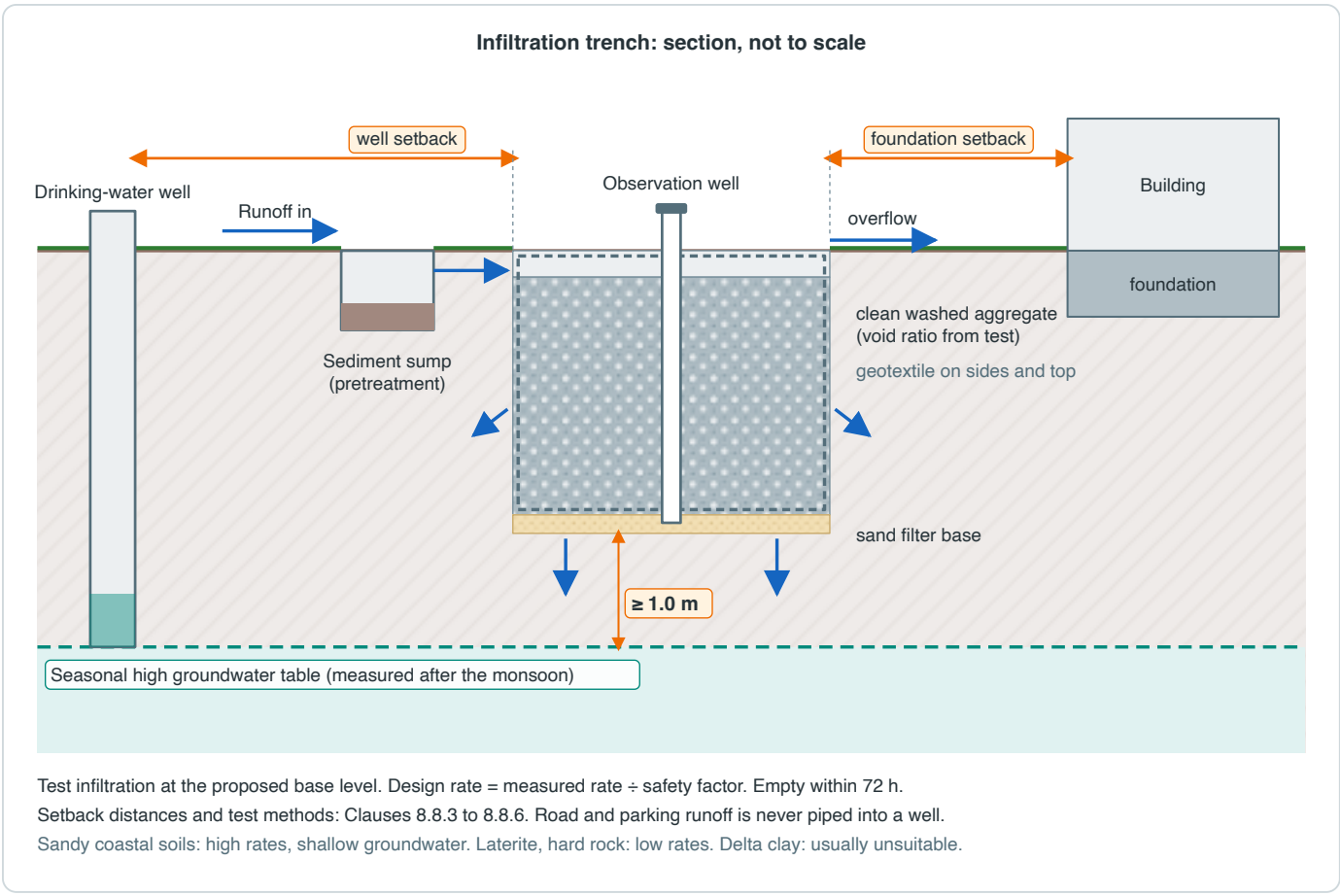


Figure 8.3 — Infiltration trench in section: pretreatment sump, aggregate-filled trench in geotextile, observation well, overflow, the 1.0 m minimum separation to the seasonal high groundwater table, and setbacks to wells and foundations. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, 2016 (Vol 2), and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

8.9 Sewage cross-connections and dry-weather flow

8.9.1 **No sewage in storm drains.** No sewage or sullage (grey water from kitchens, bathrooms and laundries), septic tank effluent, or trade effluent shall be connected to, or discharged into, any storm drain, by any pipe, channel or opening.

8.9.2 **Condition of approval.** Before the completion certificate, the Applicant shall show, by a dye or smoke test witnessed by the Authority or the sewerage agency, that every sewage and sullage outlet on the site discharges to a sewer or to an approved on-site system, and that none discharges to a storm drain. Any existing cross-connection on the site shall be removed as a condition of approval, including on redevelopment and on additions to existing buildings.

8.9.3 **Where no sewer exists.** Where no sewer is available, sewage and sullage shall go to an approved on-site or decentralised treatment system. The treated effluent of such a system may be discharged to a storm drain only with the written consent of the Bihar State Pollution Control Board (BSPCB) and the drain owner.

8.9.4 **Public drains: DWF survey.** Every ULB in a Tier A area shall survey its storm drain outfalls to waterbodies for dry-weather flow at least once a year, before the SW monsoon, and record:

- (a) the outfalls with DWF;
- (b) the estimated DWF rate; and
- (c) the upstream sources found by tracing, CCTV, dye or smoke testing.

The results shall be published in the register of Clause 10.17.

8.9.5 **DWF interception.** Until the sources are removed, every outfall to a waterbody that carries DWF shall have a DWF interceptor that:

- (a) diverts the DWF to a sewer or a treatment plant;
- (b) does not reduce the capacity of the storm drain for the minor or major event (Chapter 6), with its weir or diversion head losses included in the hydraulic design (Chapter 9);
- (c) has a screen ahead of the diversion; and
- (d) is not a substitute for removing the source connections.

8.9.6 **Sewage overflows.** No new sewage overflow, emergency bypass or pumping station overflow shall be designed to discharge into a storm drain or waterbody, except where the sewerage agency shows that no alternative exists, and then only with screening and with the overflow frequency stated.

> **Commentary.** The prohibition of sewage connections and the removal of existing cross-connections as a condition of approval are core requirements of this Manual, and Clause 1.10.3 allows no variance from them. Sewage in storm drains is the single largest water quality problem of urban drainage in Bihar. It defeats every other measure in this chapter: BMPs designed for stormwater are overloaded, GPTs fill with sludge, and the receiving tanks and channels become sewage lagoons. CPHEEO (2019) notes that Indian drains carry night soil and urine (Part A §9.5). DWF interception (Clause 8.9.5) is an interim measure. It protects the waterbody while the sources are traced and removed, but it can become permanent if the source work is not done, which is why the annual survey and publication of Clause 8.9.4 are required. The annual survey frequency is set by this Manual.
>
> In Bihar the drains of the cities carry sewage in practice. In Patna the Bihar State Pollution Control Board identified 19 drains discharging 628.5 MLD, 566.5 MLD of it to the Ganga and 62 MLD to the Punpun, against six sewage treatment plants of 350 MLD sanctioned under Namami Gange, with sewers covering about 20% of the PMC area (a CAG report on Patna sewerage under Namami Gange, for the year ended March 2020). The Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 already lets the Chief Municipal Officer require "an entirely separate drain for rain water" (s. 198), and the National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone) recorded on 5 March 2025 that "steps should be taken to ensure that stormwater remains separate from sewage", with BUIDCO to plan the diversion of sewage to the nearest plant (O.A. 188/2024/EZ, as quoted by the District Magistrate, Patna). The State's main remedy is interception and diversion ("tapping") of the ghat drains by BUIDCO under Namami Gange: BUIDCO's table of December 2025 lists Patna's 19 Ganga ghat drains, most as tapped and some, such as Ghagha Ghat and Bhadra Ghat, as untapped, and the drains to the Punpun at Fatuha as untapped (as filed before the Tribunal in O.A. 200/2014). These are DWF interceptors under Clause 8.9.5, and Clause 8.9.5(b) applies to them in full: an interceptor at a ghat outfall shall not reduce the nala's capacity for the minor and major events, nor back it up into the city when the Ganga is high and the sluices are shut. New storm drains are covered by Clause 8.9.1 from the start: in Darbhanga it is alleged before the Tribunal that sewage has been linked to the newly built storm water drains (Talab Bachao Abhiyan, 2025, an allegation not decided).

8.10 Outfalls to waterbodies: first flush, gross pollutant traps and screens

8.10.1 **Requirement.** Every new storm drain outfall to a waterbody, and every existing outfall on a drain that is rebuilt, widened or extended, shall have:

- (a) a GPT designed under Clause 8.7.10; and
- (b) first-flush treatment: treatment of the WQv (or Q_wq) of the contributing catchment by the BMPs of Clause 8.7, either on the contributing sites or at the outfall.

8.10.2 **Where treatment at the outfall is impracticable.** Where land is not available at a public outfall, first-flush treatment may be provided by:

- (a) a proprietary first-flush or hydrodynamic device sized for Q_wq; or
- (b) a treatment wetland or forebay within the waterbody setback (Clause 7.5.1(b)), outside the waterspread.

8.10.3 **Screens and trash racks.** Screens at outfalls, culvert inlets and pump sumps shall:

- (a) be designed with **50% blockage** for hydraulic capacity;
- (b) have an overflow or bypass path so that a fully blocked screen does not flood property;
- (c) have bar spacing chosen for the hazard: closer spacing for litter capture, wider spacing where blockage would cause flooding; and
- (d) be cleanable from a safe platform, with vehicle access.

8.10.4 **Existing outfalls.** Each ULB shall prepare a programme to fit GPTs and DWF interceptors to its existing outfalls to waterbodies, starting with outfalls to tanks used for drinking water supply and to notified wetlands (Clause 7.12), and shall report progress in the register of Clause 10.17.

> Commentary. This Manual requires first-flush treatment and gross pollutant traps at outfalls to waterbodies. Gross pollutants are the most visible form of pollution in Bihar waterbodies, and plastics also block drains and culverts, which links water quality to flooding. The 50% screen blockage matches the grate clogging factor of Chapter 6. Clause 8.10.3(c) warns against fine screens on large drains, which block in the first hour of a storm and cause the flooding they were meant to prevent.

8.11 Rainwater harvesting integration

8.11.1 **RWH mandate continues.** The rainwater harvesting required by the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 (bye-law 51, which makes RWH "mandatory for all sizes of plots" and sets recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ for every 100 m² of roof area), together with any condition for rooftop RWH that a Municipal Corporation or other local authority imposes on a building plan of 1,000 m² or more under section 18(2) of the Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006 (whose commencement was not verified for this Manual), continues to apply, subject to the limits of Clause 8.8.1 (Chapter 1). This Clause sets how RWH structures are counted under this Manual.

8.11.2 **Three different functions.** The designer shall keep apart, on the drawings and in the calculations:

- (a) **harvesting**: storage for use (sumps and tanks);
- (b) **recharge**: recharge pits, trenches, shafts and wells that put water into the ground; and
- (c) **detention**: storage with an orifice outlet that is empty at the start of a storm (Chapter 4).

8.11.3 **Recharge structures.**

- (a) Roof runoff may be led to recharge wells, open wells, recharge pits and shafts after a filter or settling chamber.
- (b) Runoff from roads, parking and other paved areas shall not be led directly into any well, borewell or recharge shaft. It may be recharged only through an infiltration facility that meets Clause 8.8, with pretreatment.
- (c) Recharge structures shall meet the groundwater separation of Clause 8.8.1, measured from the base of the pit or the bottom of the filter media, except recharge wells that receive filtered roof water only.

8.11.4 **Credit toward retention and WQv.** A recharge structure counts toward the retention volume of Chapter 4 and the WQv only where:

- (a) its infiltration rate has been tested under Clause 8.8.3;
- (b) it empties within 72 hours at the design rate; and
- (c) it has pretreatment.

A harvesting sump counts toward retention only where its contents are used, by a demand stated in the drainage report, within 72 hours (Chapter 4).

8.11.5 **No credit as detention.** RWH storage does not count as detention unless it is a dedicated volume that is empty when a storm arrives, with an outlet. RWH sumps are assumed **full** at the start of every SW monsoon (JJAS) design storm (Chapter 4).

8.11.6 **Overflow.** Every RWH structure shall have an overflow that discharges at grade to the site drainage, never onto a neighbouring plot or into a sewer.

8.11.7 **Surface-runoff recharge in public spaces.** Recharge trenches, shafts and percolation pits in roads, medians, parks and other public spaces shall meet Clause 8.8 in full, including the hotspot rules for roads with heavy traffic, and shall have a GPT or silt trap at each inlet.

> **Commentary.** The rule that RWH storage does not count as detention is set in Chapter 4. Bihar's building rules make rainwater harvesting mandatory, but none of them sets a detention rule. BBL 2014 provides that "Provision of rainwater harvesting shall be mandatory for all sizes of plots. The dimension of recharging pits/trenches shall be at least 6 cubic meters for every 100 Sq. m. of roof area", with percolation pits "filled with small pebbles or brick jali or river sand and covered with perforated concrete slabs"; terrace collection to a sump or well through a filtering tank, with a valve to discharge the first, dirty part of the rain, and the replacement of topsoil with river sand on open ground, are optional (bye-law 51). The pit volume corresponds to about 60 mm of roof runoff, but it is a pit volume, not an infiltration rate, and BBL 2014 puts no limit on recharge where the water table is shallow. The Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 would require "the complete proposal of rainwater harvesting" for plots of 100 m² or more and drop the 6 m³ sizing (cl. 24; a draft, not notified). The Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006 lets the Ground Water Authority direct RWH structures on premises of 1,000 m² or more in urban areas of notified areas, and lets a Municipal Corporation or other local authority impose rooftop RWH conditions on building plans of 1,000 m² or more, with permanent water and electricity connections "extended only after compliance" (s. 18); its commencement, and any notified area, were not verified for this Manual. Under the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan, 15,129 rooftop RWH structures are reported (State portal, as reported). The UDHD's guidebook for BBL 2014 asks for a "Recharging pit & Rain Water harvesting Plan" and a "Drain Section" with the building plans. None of these rules sets a filter standard, requires any storage to be empty before a storm, or limits peak flow. On the north Bihar plain, in diara, chaur and tal land and in the arsenic belt, the recharge pits that bye-law 51 requires would stand in or near the water table or reach an arsenic-affected aquifer, and Clause 8.8.1 governs: harvesting for use comes first, and recharge is not used there; where the water table is deep, recharge is the main function of RWH (Clause 8.11.2(b)). RWH serves water supply and recharge. It is usually full, or its soil saturated, by the time a July to September monsoon depression arrives after weeks of rain, which is why it cannot be counted as detention.
>
> Clause 8.11.3(b) has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because road runoff carries oil, metals and pathogens. A recharge shaft or borewell bypasses the soil that would otherwise filter it and delivers it straight to the aquifer that supplies wells nearby. The CGWB *Manual on Artificial Recharge of Ground Water* (2007) gives recharge structure types and filter designs; this Manual adds the source-water restrictions.

8.12 Construction-stage erosion and sediment control

8.12.1 **ESC plan.** Every development with land disturbance of **0.1 ha** or more, and every public drainage or road work, shall have an Erosion and Sediment Control (ESC) plan, approved with the drainage report. It shall show:

- (a) the sequence of clearing, earthworks and stabilisation;
- (b) the area exposed at each stage;
- (c) the measures of Clause 8.12.3, with their locations and sizes;
- (d) the protection of infiltration and retention areas (Chapter 10);
- (e) stockpile, concrete washout and fuel storage locations; and
- (f) the inspection and maintenance schedule.

8.12.2 **Monsoon timing.** Earthworks shall be planned so that:

- (a) the area exposed during the SW monsoon (June to September) is as small as practicable;
- (b) all completed earthworks are stabilised by vegetation, mulch, matting or paving by **31 May**; and
- (c) any area exposed between 15 June and 15 October has sediment controls in place before it is cleared.

8.12.3 **Measures.**

- (a) **Silt fences** along the downslope edge of disturbed areas receiving sheet flow, with the area draining to each fence limited as set in Annex 8E.
- (b) **Sediment traps** for concentrated flow from disturbed areas of up to 2 ha.
- (c) **Sediment basins** for disturbed areas of more than 2 ha. The storage volume below the outlet shall be at least the greater of the runoff from the 50% AEP (2-yr) 24-hour storm and **250 m³ per hectare** of drainage area, with a dewatering outlet that draws water from the surface.
- (d) **Inlet protection** at every existing drain inlet that receives runoff from the site.
- (e) **Stabilised construction exits**, with wheel washing where vehicles enter public roads.
- (f) **Stockpiles** outside Zone 1 of any waterbody setback (Chapter 7), at least 10 m from any drain, and covered during the SW monsoon.
- (g) **Dewatering** discharges passed through a sediment basin, settling tank or filter bag, never pumped directly into a drain or waterbody.
- (h) **Concrete washout** in a lined pit, never into a drain.

8.12.4 **Design storm for temporary works.** Temporary ESC measures use the rainfall of Chapter 2 with a climate factor of 1.0 (Clause 2.8.2).

8.12.5 **Inspection.** ESC measures shall be inspected weekly and within 24 hours after every heavy-rainfall event (as defined in Chapter 10), repaired within 48 hours, and cleaned when half full of sediment.

8.12.6 **Removal.** Temporary measures shall be removed only after the area draining to them is stabilised. Sediment shall be removed from any permanent facility used for sediment control before its as-built survey (Chapter 10).

> **Commentary.** The 0.1 ha threshold is the applicability threshold of Chapter 1. The sediment basin volume of 250 m³/ha is the US EPA Construction General Permit minimum of 3,600 ft³ per acre drained, converted to SI (US EPA, 2022 CGP); the CGP allows the alternative of the 2-year, 24-hour runoff. This Manual requires the greater of the two, because Bihar's 2-year 24-hour depths are high and construction sites are commonly left exposed through the SW monsoon. The 2 ha division between traps and basins, the 31 May stabilisation date, the 10 m stockpile distance and the inspection frequency have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The 31 May date matches the pre-monsoon deadline of Chapter 10. Construction sediment is a direct flood hazard as well as a pollutant: it fills drains, culverts and tanks, and in Bihar the restoration of public ponds, ahars and pynes is the second component of the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (Clause 7.9, Commentary).

8.13 Monitoring

8.13.1 **Outfall monitoring.** Each Tier A authority shall monitor water quality at a representative set of its outfalls to waterbodies, including every outfall to a drinking-water tank or notified wetland. Monitoring shall include:

- (a) dry-weather sampling (Clause 8.9.4), at least once a year before the SW monsoon; and
- (b) wet-weather sampling of at least three events each SW monsoon at a set of index outfalls.

8.13.2 **Parameters.** At minimum: TSS, BOD, COD, faecal coliform, total nitrogen, total phosphorus, oil and grease, and, for industrial catchments, heavy metals. Results shall be compared with the CPCB water quality criteria for the designated best use of the receiving waterbody.

8.13.3 **Gross pollutant records.** The mass or volume of material removed from each GPT and screen at each cleaning shall be recorded in the O&M records (Chapter 10).

8.13.4 **BMP performance monitoring.** The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall run a BMP performance calibration programme and shall revise Table 8.3 and Annex 8C from its results.

8.13.5 **Publication.** Monitoring results shall be published in the register of Clause 10.17.

> Commentary. No Bihar programme of stormwater quality monitoring was found during research for this Manual, and CPHEEO (2019) sets no Indian targets. The monitoring in Clause 8.13 is the minimum needed to calibrate Table 8.3 and to show whether DWF interception and source removal are working. The parameter list follows the key pollutants named in CPHEEO's WSUD procedure (TSS, nitrogen, phosphorus and gross pollutants), with BOD and faecal coliform added because of sewage contamination. The monitoring frequencies are set by this Manual.

8.14 Submittal requirements

Every drainage report under this chapter shall include:

1. the **Water Quality Sheet (Form 8-1)**: P_ret, P_3m and P_wq; the WQv and Q_wq for each drainage area; the volume retained under Chapter 4; and the BMP serving each area;
2. for Tier A: the LoS calculation (ΔCN, required LoS) and the composite VR (Clause 8.6);
3. the design of each BMP to Clause 8.7 and Annex 8D, with pretreatment;
4. for infiltration and recharge: the **Infiltration Test Record (Form 8-2)**, the seasonal high groundwater level and its source, the design rate, the drawdown time, and the setbacks of Clause 8.8.6;
5. the sewage and sullage connection plan and the dye or smoke test record of Clause 8.9.2;
6. the GPT and first-flush design for any outfall to a waterbody (Clause 8.10);
7. the RWH layout, separating harvesting, recharge and detention (Clause 8.11); and
8. the ESC plan (Clause 8.12).

8.15 Review and update

8.15.1 This chapter shall be reviewed with the rest of the Manual (Chapter 1). Table 8.3 shall also be reviewed when the calibration programme of Clause 8.13.4 reports, and in any case within 5 years of notification.

References (chapter)

- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems, Part A: Engineering Design (§9.5, Ch. 10). https://web.archive.org/web/2024/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/VolumeI-Part%20A-Engineering-Design.pdf
- Mid-America Regional Council and Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2012). Manual of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Quality (Tables 4.2–4.6). https://www.marc.org/sites/default/files/2022-05/Best_Management_Practices_for_Stormwater_Quality.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01; MARC factsheet and Supplement. https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-5600-manual-factsheet ; https://www.marc.org/document/apwa-stormwater-standards-supplement
- Atlanta Regional Commission / Georgia EPD (2016). Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, 2016 Edition, Vols 1–2. https://documents.atlantaregional.com/gastormwater/GSMM_2016%20EDITION_FINAL_V1.pdf
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2012). Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA), 2nd Edition. https://did.sarawak.gov.my/web/attachment/show/?docid=clRsMlRycU1lNnFRcnl3eDZnNkJMdz09OjpY0au0UPvQ9zUHVWRMbCKX
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2008). Submission Checklist for Stormwater Management. https://www.water.gov.my/jps/resources/auto%20download%20images/5844dfbba8fc1.pdf
- CIRIA (2015). The SuDS Manual (C753). London: CIRIA.
- PUB, Singapore's National Water Agency. Active, Beautiful, Clean Waters Design Guidelines (current edition).
- Central Ground Water Board (2007). Manual on Artificial Recharge of Ground Water. Ministry of Water Resources, Government of India.
- US Environmental Protection Agency (2022). NPDES Construction General Permit (sediment basin sizing).
- ASTM D3385. Standard Test Method for Infiltration Rate of Soils in Field Using Double-Ring Infiltrometer.
- BRE Digest 365. Soakaway Design. Building Research Establishment, UK.
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar. Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014 (bye-law 51) (Chapter 7 references); Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 (cl. 24; a draft, not notified) (Chapter 7 references); and *Guidebook on Application, Approval & Occupancy Procedure under Bihar Building Bye Laws, 2014*. https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2024/May/07-May-2024/19/DyPage/cd47e267-11d1-4671-a56a-b63a6c83a779.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act, 2006 (ss. 1(3), 2, 5 and 18; Act number and commencement [TBC]). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND197019.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Bihar Municipal Act, 2007 (ss. 193 and 198) (Chapter 7 references).
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1 (Patna sewerage under Namami Gange) (Chapter 7 references).
- District Magistrate, Patna. Supplementary affidavit of 19 August 2025 in NGT (EZ) O.A. 188/2024/EZ, *Saurav Narayan v. Bihar Pollution Control Board* (quoting the Tribunal's order of 5 March 2025). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755756412_pagenumber.pdf
- BUIDCO. Drain-status table of 13 December 2025, annexed to the supplementary affidavit of the Chief Secretary, Bihar, of 12 January 2026 in NGT O.A. 200/2014 (Chapter 7 references).
- Central Ground Water Board. Dynamic Ground Water Resources assessment, 2024, and district groundwater profiles for Supaul, Saharsa, Katihar and Sitamarhi, 2011 (read only through search summaries); Government of Bihar, report in NGT O.A. 728/2023 (arsenic and fluoride districts, citing CGWB, December 2023; read only through an extract). https://www.cgwb.gov.in/cgwbpnm/public/uploads/documents/17435848198417103 60file.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2011). *Climate of Bihar*, Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18 (Table V, district normals 1951–2000). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/patna/mcdata/climateofbihar.pdf ; IMD (2020), new normal dates of onset and withdrawal of the southwest monsoon (Table 2). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20200515_pr_804.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan (Chapter 7 references).
- Platts, J. T. (1884). *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English* (plant names in Annex 8D, pp. 39, 229, 372, 489, 531, 740, 801, 828, 849, 926, 1132, 1152 and 1168). https://dsal.uchicago.edu/dictionaries/platts/

- Parliament reply AU1419 on AMRUT 2.0 admissible components. https://eparlib.sansad.in/bitstream/123456789/2988692/1/AU1419_tzClvw.pdf

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
8A	3-month ARI 24-hour depth and IDF by zone
8B	Redevelopment LoS table and treatment-train composite VR
8C	Bihar BMP performance calibration
8D	BMP design sheets, media specification, plant lists
8E	Erosion and sediment control standard details
Form 8-1	Water Quality Sheet
Form 8-2	Infiltration Test Record

CHAPTER 9

Hydraulic Design of Structures

9.1 Purpose and scope

9.1.1 This chapter sets the hydraulic design methods for the structures used in the minor and major systems (Chapter 6), in retention and detention facilities (Chapter 4), at outfalls (Chapter 5) and at waterbodies (Chapter 7). It covers:

- (a) pipes and box drains (Clause 9.3);
- (b) culverts (Clause 9.4);
- (c) open channels (Clause 9.5);
- (d) energy dissipators, outlet protection and drop structures (Clause 9.6);
- (e) detention outlet structures (Clause 9.7);
- (f) trash racks and screens (Clause 9.8);
- (g) pumps and sumps (Clause 9.9);
- (h) tide gates, flap gates and non-return valves (Clause 9.10);
- (i) inlets and gratings (Clause 9.11);
- (j) manholes, junction chambers and access (Clause 9.12); and
- (k) materials and durability, including coastal and saline exposure (Clause 9.13).

9.1.2 **Structural design is outside the scope of this Manual.** Structures shall be designed structurally to the applicable Indian Standards and IRC codes, for example IS 456 (plain and reinforced concrete), IS 458 (concrete pipes), IRC:SP:13 (small bridges and culverts) and the IRC bridge codes. Where this chapter refers to a structural standard, it does so only for durability (Clause 9.13) or hydraulic performance.

9.1.3 Design flows, design AEPs and level-of-service limits come from Chapters 2 to 7. This chapter does not change them.

> **Commentary.** APWA Section 5600 places most structure hydraulics in its sections on inlets and manholes (5604), enclosed pipe systems (5606), engineered channels (5607) and detention (5608). CPHEEO (2019) spreads them across Chapters 5, 6, 8 and 11. This chapter gathers them in one place and points to the US Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) hydraulic circulars for methods that Indian codes do not cover in enough detail: HDS-5 for culverts, HEC-14 for energy dissipators, HEC-22 for inlets and access holes, and HEC-24 for pump stations. The FHWA editions cited are those listed in the FHWA hydraulics library as of October 2026.

9.2 General requirements

9.2.1 **Tailwater.** Every structure that discharges to a river, nala, pokhar, chaur or other water body whose level can rise above the outfall invert shall be analysed with the tailwater conditions of Chapter 5: the non-tidal tailwater of Clause 5.6 for minor- and major-system design; the riverine backwater of Clause 5.8, including the flood from any barrage or dam upstream and from the catchments in Nepal; the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 wherever the river can rise above the outfall invert, which is the normal case for the city drains that outfall to the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun at

Patna, and to the Ganga at Bhagalpur, the Burhi Gandak at Muzaffarpur and the Bagmati and the Adhwara group at Darbhanga, and for the drains behind river embankments, which reach the river only through sluices or by pumping; the level held in a drain by any sluice, interception structure or drainage pumping station (sump house) downstream of the outfall, taken as a fixed control at its gate-closed level, its weir crest or the start level of its pumps; and the joint case of Clause 2.12. No document found sets a design river level at any outfall in Bihar; until one is published, the levels of Chapter 5 apply.

9.2.2 **Climate factor.** Design flows shall include the climate factor of Clause 2.8.

9.2.3 **Maintenance access.** Every structure shall be accessible for inspection and cleaning by the methods in Clause 9.12 and Chapter 10, without manual entry into confined spaces wherever practicable.

9.2.4 **Design life.** Structures shall be designed for a service life of at least 50 years for concrete and masonry works, and at least 25 years for mechanical and electrical equipment, unless the approving authority agrees otherwise.

9.2.5 **Blockage.** Where a structure can be blocked by debris, it shall be checked in the blocked condition set out in this chapter, and a safe overflow route shall exist for that condition (Chapter 6, Clause 6.3.2).

> Commentary. The design-life values in Clause 9.2.4 have no direct precedent; this Manual sets them because they are needed to decide when the climate factor applies (Clause 2.8.2 applies it to elements with a design life over 25 years).

9.3 Pipes and box drains

9.3.1 **Capacity and roughness.** Pipe and box-drain capacity shall be computed by Manning's equation with the design n of Chapter 6, Table 6.6. For precast or cast-in-situ RCC box drains, the design n shall be at least 0.015.

9.3.2 **Partly full flow.** Depth, velocity and discharge in partly full circular pipes shall be computed from the hydraulic-element relationships for circular sections (for example CPHEEO 2019, Table 5.5). The minimum velocity of Clause 6.7.3 applies at the design flow.

9.3.3 **Pressure flow.** Where a pipe runs full or surcharged, the HGL shall be computed under Chapter 6, Clause 6.8, with friction and structure losses.

9.3.4 **Steep pipes.** Where the design flow in a pipe is supercritical (Froude number above 1), the designer shall:

- (a) locate any hydraulic jump and show that it occurs in a structure designed to contain it, not in a pipe run;
- (b) provide air venting where the jump can seal the pipe; and
- (c) meet the maximum velocity of Clause 6.7.3(b).

9.3.5 **Changes of size and direction.**

- (a) Pipe size shall not decrease downstream.
- (b) Pipes shall join only at manholes or junction chambers, except that inlet connections may join pipes of 1,200 mm or more through a factory-made junction.
- (c) Changes of direction greater than 90° in a single structure are not permitted.

9.3.6 **Flotation.** Pipes and box drains in high groundwater shall be checked for flotation (Chapter 6, Clause 6.7.7).

> Commentary. The design n of 0.015 for box drains is set by this Manual to match the "fair" concrete value in Table 6.6. Clauses 9.3.4 and 9.3.5 follow common practice in FHWA HEC-22 and other manuals. A jump inside a pipe

run causes pressure surges and can blow off manhole covers.

9.4 Culverts

9.4.1 **Method.** Culverts shall be designed by the methods of FHWA *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, HDS-5, 3rd edition (2012), or by software that implements them (for example FHWA HY-8). The design headwater is the **greater** of the headwater under inlet control (HWi) and the headwater under outlet control (HWo).

9.4.2 **Inlet control.** HWi shall be computed from the HDS-5 inlet-control equations or nomographs for the barrel shape, material and inlet edge condition actually built.

9.4.3 **Outlet control.** HWo shall be computed as:

> HWo = ho + H − L·S

> H = [1 + ke + (19.63 n² L) / R^1.33] · V² / 2g (SI units, full barrel)

> ho = the greater of TW and (dc + D)/2

where ho is the outlet water depth used for control (m), H is the total head loss through the barrel (m), L is the barrel length (m), S is the barrel slope (m/m), ke is the entrance loss coefficient (Table 9.1), n is the barrel roughness, R is the hydraulic radius (m), V is the barrel velocity (m/s), TW is the tailwater depth above the outlet invert (m), dc is the critical depth (m) and D is the barrel rise (m). Part-full barrels under outlet control shall be analysed by backwater calculation as set out in HDS-5.

Table 9.1 — Entrance loss coefficients ke (outlet control, full or partly full)

Barrel and inlet	ke
Concrete pipe, projecting from fill, socket (groove) end	0.2
Concrete pipe, projecting from fill, square-cut end	0.5
Concrete pipe, headwall or headwall with wingwalls, socket end	0.2
Concrete pipe, headwall or headwall with wingwalls, square edge	0.5
Concrete pipe, headwall, rounded entrance (radius = D/12)	0.2
Concrete pipe, mitred to conform to fill slope	0.7
Concrete pipe, bevelled edges	0.2
Corrugated metal pipe, projecting from fill	0.9
RCC box, headwall parallel to embankment, square edge on three sides	0.5
RCC box, headwall parallel to embankment, three edges rounded or bevelled	0.2
RCC box, wingwalls at 30°–75° to barrel, square-edged crown	0.4

Barrel and inlet	ke
RCC box, wingwalls at 10°–25° to barrel, square-edged crown	0.5
RCC box, wingwalls parallel (extension of sides), square-edged crown	0.7

Source: FHWA HDS-5 (2012), entrance loss coefficient table (Appendix C).

9.4.4 **Tailwater.** TW shall be the higher of:

- (a) the normal or backwater depth in the downstream channel at the design flow; and
- (b) the tailwater level of Clause 9.2.1, for culverts within tidal or river backwater reach.

9.4.5 **Headwater limits.** At the design AEP of Chapter 6, Table 6.1:

- (a) HW/D shall not exceed 1.2;
- (b) the headwater shall be at least 0.3 m below the edge of the road shoulder at the upstream face; and
- (c) the headwater shall not raise water levels at any upstream building or property boundary above the limits of Chapter 6, Clause 6.12.2(d).

9.4.6 **Road overtopping.** Flow over the road in the check and 1% AEP events shall be computed with the broad-crested weir equation:

> Qr = Cd · L · h^1.5

where Qr is the overtopping flow (m³/s), L is the length of the overtopping section (m) and h is the depth of the headwater above the road crest (m). Cd shall be taken from HDS-5 for the road surface and the ratio of h to road width, and shall not exceed 1.66 (SI). The culvert and overtopping flows shall be balanced at a common headwater. The overtopping depths and hazard shall meet Chapter 6, Clause 6.12.

9.4.7 **Outlet velocity.** The outlet velocity at the design AEP and at the 1% AEP shall be computed and the outlet protected under Clause 9.6.

9.4.8 **Barrels and debris.**

- (a) Multi-barrel culverts shall be avoided in debris-prone urban drains. Where they are used, one barrel shall carry the dry-weather flow, and the inlet shall have a debris fin or deflector.
- (b) Culverts shall meet the minimum size and blockage checks of Chapter 6, Clauses 6.12.4 and 6.12.5.
- (c) Culvert inverts shall match the bed of the drain. They shall not be set above the bed, which traps silt and water upstream.

9.4.9 **Headwalls and cut-offs.** Inlets and outlets shall have headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls designed to prevent piping and undermining.

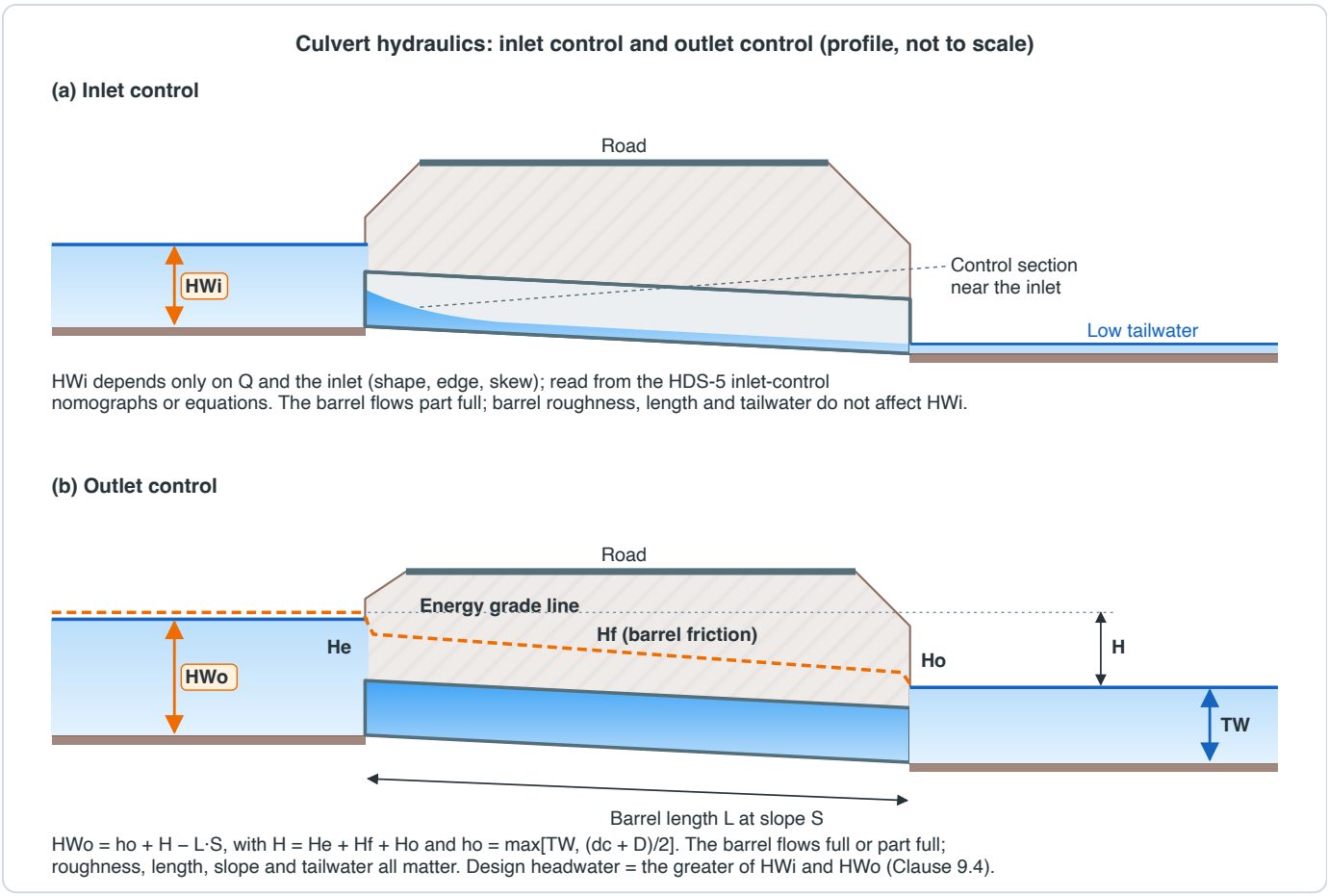


Figure 9.1 — Culvert hydraulics: inlet control and outlet control. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts, HDS-5 (3rd ed., 2012).

> **Commentary.** HDS-5 (3rd ed., FHWA-HIF-12-026, April 2012) merged the culvert design material of HEC-5, HEC-10 and HEC-13 and is the current FHWA culvert manual. The outlet-control equation in Clause 9.4.3 is the HDS-5 energy equation in SI units: the friction coefficient 19.63 equals 2g. The ke values in Table 9.1 are reproduced from HDS-5. The weir coefficient cap of 1.66 (SI) is the conversion of the APWA 5600 (2006) limit of C ≤ 3.0 (US units) for overtopping calculations. The headwater limits of Clause 9.4.5 are set by this Manual: HW/D ≤ 1.2 keeps the inlet from operating far into submerged-orifice flow at the design event, where small increases in flow give large increases in headwater. Clause 9.4.8(c) has no direct precedent; it is included because raised culvert inverts are common in Bihar where a road is rebuilt on top of an old culvert, and they hold standing water and silt upstream.

9.5 Open channels

9.5.1 **Flow computation.** Open channels shall be designed by Manning's equation for uniform flow, with the n of Table 6.6. Water levels shall be computed by gradually varied flow (standard step) analysis where tailwater, bridges, culverts, bends or changes of section affect them, which on the city drains that outfall to the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun at Patna and to the Ganga, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati and the other rivers of the State's cities, whose outfalls a river in flood can hold up, and on the drains behind the river embankments, which reach the river through sluices or by pumping, is the normal case.

9.5.2 **Flow regime.** At the design flow, the Froude number shall not exceed 0.8 (CPHEEO 2019, §5.3), unless the channel is designed as a supercritical chute. Flows with a Froude number between 0.8 and 1.2 are not permitted at the design flow in any channel.

9.5.3 **Permissible velocities.** Mean velocity at the design flow shall not exceed the limits of Table 9.2.

Table 9.2 — Maximum permissible mean velocities in channels

Lining or soil	Maximum velocity (m/s)	Source
Concrete lining	3.0	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11
Riprap lining	1.8	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11
Grassed lining	1.2	CPHEEO 2019 Table 5.11
Stabilised earthen channel (modified natural channel)	2.0, or the critical velocity if less	CPHEEO 2019 §5.10.3
Unlined, fine sand	0.46	Fortier and Scobey (1926), clear water
Unlined, sandy loam	0.53	As above
Unlined, silt loam	0.61	As above
Unlined, firm loam	0.76	As above
Unlined, stiff clay	1.14	As above
Unlined, fine gravel	0.76	As above
Unlined, coarse gravel	1.22	As above

Flexible linings (vegetation, riprap, geosynthetics) may instead be designed by the permissible shear stress method of FHWA HEC-15, *Design of Roadside Channels with Flexible Linings*, 3rd edition (2005).

9.5.4 **Longitudinal slope.** In engineered channels, the longitudinal slope shall not exceed 0.4% for natural linings and 0.2% for concrete linings, unless drop structures (Clause 9.6.6) or a chute are provided (CPHEEO 2019, Table 5.11).

9.5.5 **Freeboard and bends.** Freeboard shall meet Chapter 6, Table 6.7, measured above the water level that includes superelevation at bends. Bend radii shall meet Chapter 6, Clause 6.7.10.

9.5.6 **Side slopes.** Unless a structural or geotechnical design supports a steeper slope:

- (a) unlined earth channels shall have side slopes no steeper than 1V:2H; and
- (b) grassed channels that are mown shall have side slopes no steeper than 1V:3H.

9.5.7 **Low-flow channel.** Channels with a bed width of 3 m or more shall have a defined low-flow channel that carries the dry-weather flow at the self-cleansing velocity of Clause 6.7.3.

9.5.8 **Transitions.** Changes of section shall use gradual transitions. Abrupt expansions and contractions are not permitted in supercritical flow.

9.5.9 **Linings in high groundwater.** Lined channels in areas of high groundwater or tidal influence shall have weep holes with filters, or shall be designed to resist uplift with the channel empty.

9.5.10 **Natural channels.** Natural channels shall be preserved where possible (CPHEEO 2019, §5.10.3 note; Chapter 7). Where a natural channel must be modified, its capacity shall meet the design AEP of Chapter 6 and its velocities shall meet Table 9.2.

Commentary. The lined-channel velocities and slopes are CPHEEO (2019) Table 5.11 values. The unlined-soil values are the classic Fortier and Scobey (1926) permissible velocities for clear water, as reproduced in Chow (1959). They are given for soils common in Bihar (the sandy and silty diara alluvium of the active floodplains of the Ganga, the Gandak and the Kosi, the newer and calcareous alluvium of the north Bihar plain, the sandy deposits of the Kosi, the older alluvium with kankar of the south Bihar plain, the heavy clays of the tal lands, and the thin red soils over the rock of the Kaimur and Chotanagpur plateau fringe). The ban on Froude numbers between 0.8 and 1.2 extends CPHEEO's advice to avoid critical flow, where the water surface "becomes unstable and wavy" (§5.3). This extension is made by this Manual. The side slopes and the low-flow channel are also set by this Manual, because many Bihar urban channels carry sewage-mixed dry-weather flow until the cross-connections of Chapter 8 are removed. A wide flat bed then deposits sludge across its whole width, and a low-flow channel keeps the dry-weather flow concentrated.

9.6 Energy dissipators, outlet protection and drop structures

9.6.1 **When required.** Outlet protection or an energy dissipator shall be provided at every pipe, culvert and channel outlet where the outlet velocity at the design AEP or the 1% AEP exceeds the permissible velocity of the receiving channel in Table 9.2, and at every outlet to an unlined channel, tank or waterbody.

9.6.2 **Method.** Energy dissipators and outlet protection shall be designed by the methods of FHWA HEC-14, *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels*, 3rd edition (2006), selecting the dissipator type by its range of application.

9.6.3 **Riprap aprons.** For a circular outlet discharging to a flat apron, the median riprap size shall be computed with the HEC-14 apron equation:

$$D50 = 0.2 \cdot D \cdot [Q / (g^{0.5} \cdot D^{2.5})]^{(4/3)} \cdot (D / TW)$$

where D50 is the median stone size (m), D is the culvert diameter or rise (m), Q is the design discharge (m³/s), g = 9.81 m/s² and TW is the tailwater depth (m). Where TW is not known, it shall be taken as 0.4D.

Apron length and thickness shall follow the HEC-14 riprap-class table (Table 9.3). The apron width at the outlet shall be at least 3D and shall flare to the downstream channel.

Table 9.3 — Riprap classes and apron dimensions (HEC-14)

Class	D50 (mm)	Apron length	Apron thickness
1	125	4D	3.5 D50
2	150	4D	3.3 D50
3	250	5D	2.4 D50
4	350	6D	2.2 D50
5	500	7D	2.0 D50
6	550	8D	2.0 D50

Source: FHWA HEC-14 (2006), §10.2 and Table 10.1, as reproduced in state-agency design worksheets. Where the computed D50 exceeds Class 6, a riprap basin or a structural stilling basin shall be used.

9.6.4 **Riprap filter and grading.** Riprap shall be placed on a granular filter or a geotextile. Stone shall be angular, durable and graded so that the D50 of Clause 9.6.3 is met.

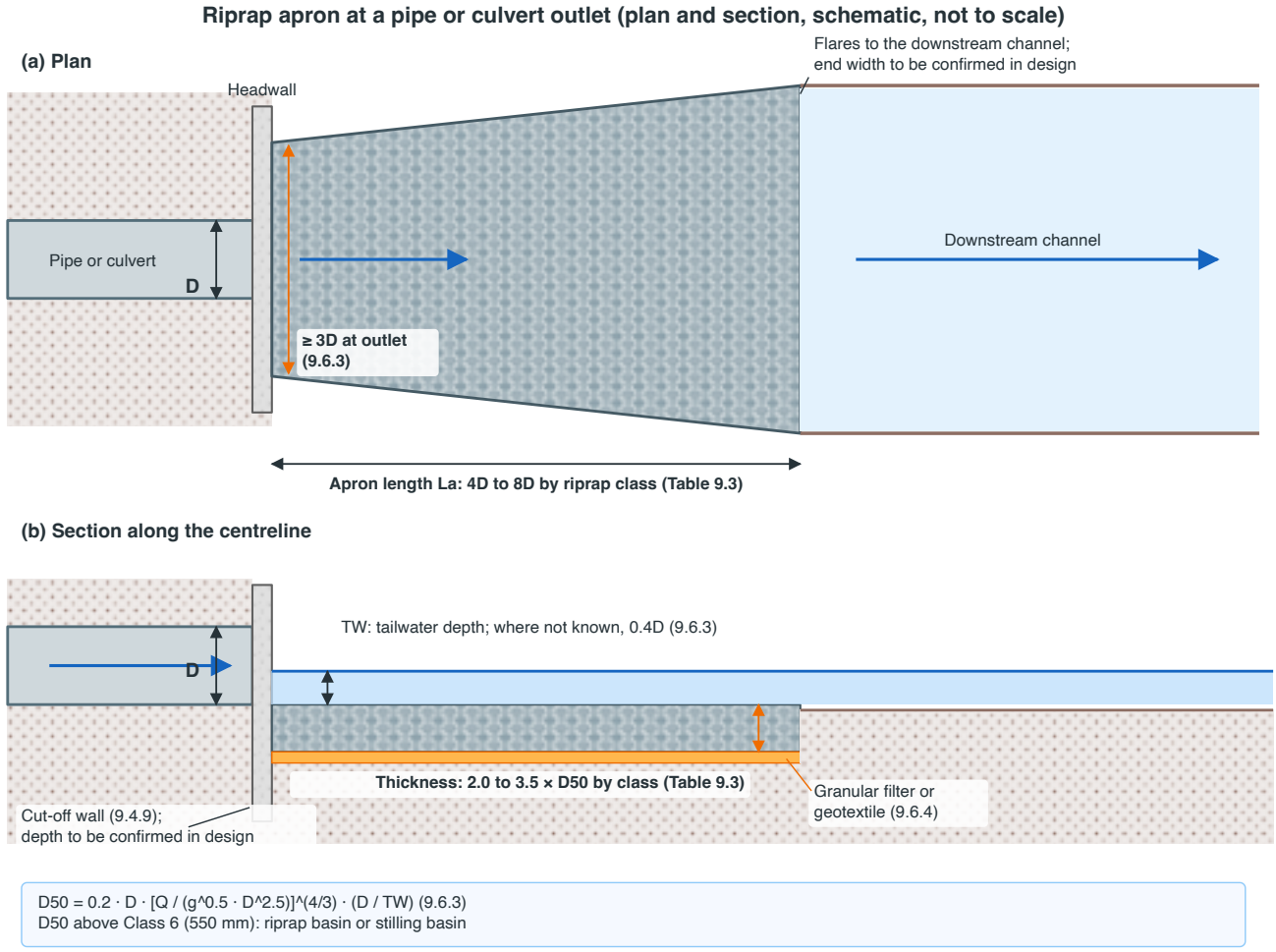


Figure 9.2 — Riprap apron at a pipe or culvert outlet: apron width at least 3D at the outlet, flaring to the downstream channel; length and thickness from Table 9.3; stone on a granular filter or geotextile (Clauses 9.6.3 and 9.6.4). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels, HEC-14 (3rd ed., 2006), §10.2.

9.6.5 **Stilling basins.** Where velocities or Froude numbers are above the range of riprap aprons and basins, a structural stilling basin or impact basin shall be designed from HEC-14 or from the US Bureau of Reclamation basin types it describes.

9.6.6 **Drop structures.** Drop structures shall be used where the channel slope would otherwise exceed Clause 9.5.4 or the velocity limit of Table 9.2.

- (a) For a straight vertical drop, the drop number $D = q^2 / (g\,h^3)$ shall be computed, where q is the unit discharge (m^2/s) and h is the drop height (m). The pool geometry shall be set from the Rand (1955) relationships: drop length Ld/h = 4.30 D^0.27; pool depth Yp/h = 1.00 D^0.22; sequent depths y1/h = 0.54 D^0.425 and y2/h = 1.66 D^0.27.
- (b) Baffled chutes and stepped drops shall be designed by HEC-14 or US Bureau of Reclamation methods.
- (c) The height of a single vertical drop in a public drain shall not exceed 1.5 m. Drops shall have edge protection under Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.8.

9.6.7 **Coastal and beach outfalls.** Outfalls onto beaches or into estuaries shall be protected against wave action and scour. Where littoral sand can close the outfall, the outfall shall be designed so that it can be reopened by machine, and the drainage system shall be checked with the outfall closed under Chapter 5.

> Commentary. HEC-14 (3rd ed., FHWA-NHI-06-086, July 2006) is the current FHWA energy-dissipator manual. The apron equation and the class table are from HEC-14 §10.2 (Equation 10.4 and Table 10.1). The equation and table are given here as reproduced in secondary design documents (a Tennessee handbook and a state-agency riprap worksheet). The 3D apron width is from the same sources. A Purdue study (JTRP) found the HEC-14 apron method somewhat conservative within its range of application. The Rand (1955) drop relationships are standard and are reproduced in Chow (1959). The 1.5 m limit on a single vertical drop has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it for public safety in urban drains.

9.7 Detention outlet structures

9.7.1 **Primary outlet.** The primary outlet of a detention facility shall:

- (a) produce the release rates and drawdown times of Chapter 4;
- (b) work without mechanical parts or operator action, except in pumped facilities (Clause 9.9);
- (c) have no orifice smaller than **50 mm**, and every orifice shall be protected by a trash screen (Clause 9.8.5); and
- (d) be accessible for cleaning from the surface.

9.7.2 **Orifices.** Orifice flow shall be computed as:

> Q = Cd · A · (2 g h)^0.5

where A is the orifice area (m²) and h is the head (m) on the centroid of the orifice, or the difference between the upstream and downstream water levels where the orifice is submerged. Cd shall be 0.60 for a sharp-edged orifice in a thin plate. Other edge conditions shall use published tested values.

9.7.3 **Weirs.** Weir flow shall be computed as Q = Cw · L · H^1.5, with:

- (a) sharp-crested rectangular weirs: Cw = 1.84 (SI), with the effective length reduced by 0.1 H for each end contraction;
- (b) V-notch weirs: Q = 1.38 · tan(θ/2) · H^2.5 (SI), where θ is the notch angle; and
- (c) broad-crested weirs and spillway crests: Cw = 1.44 to 1.70 (SI), selected from published tables for the crest shape and head.

Submerged weirs shall be corrected for submergence from published relationships.

9.7.4 **Stage–discharge rating.** For multi-stage outlets (orifices and weirs in a riser, with an outlet pipe), the designer shall compute, at each stage, the discharge under every possible control (each orifice, each weir, riser crest, and the outlet pipe under inlet and outlet control) and use the **smallest** combined value. The rating shall be tabulated from the outlet invert to the emergency spillway crest plus the design head.

9.7.5 **Tailwater.** Ratings shall be computed with the tailwater of Clause 9.2.1. Where the receiving water can rise above the outlet, the outlet shall have a flap gate or non-return valve under Clause 9.10, and the storage shall meet the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

9.7.6 **Emergency spillway.** The emergency spillway shall pass the 1% AEP inflow with the primary outlet assumed blocked and the basin full at the start, with **0.3 m** freeboard to the embankment crest. High-hazard basins shall also be checked for the 0.2% AEP inflow (Chapter 4).

9.7.7 **Outlet pipes through embankments.** Outlet pipes through embankments shall have a filter diaphragm or seepage collars to prevent piping along the pipe, and a flared or headwalled inlet.

9.7.8 **Anti-vortex.** Riser outlets with a design head above the riser crest greater than the riser diameter shall have an anti-vortex plate.

> Commentary. The 50 mm minimum orifice with a trash screen, the emergency-spillway criterion and the drawdown times are core criteria of this Manual (Chapter 4). The minimum orifice is smaller than the APWA 5600 (2006, 5608.4) minimum of 3 in (about 75 mm). It allows the low release rates of the Chapter 4 mixed-frequency rule on small sites, and it relies on a good screen (Clause 9.8.5). The "no mechanical parts" rule follows APWA 5600 (2006, 5608.4), which requires the primary outlet to function unattended. The orifice and weir coefficients are standard textbook values (for example Brater and King, *Handbook of Hydraulics*; Chow 1959). The 1.84 sharp-crested coefficient and the 0.1H end-contraction correction are the Francis formula in SI units. The broad-crested range 1.44–1.70 is the SI equivalent of the US range 2.6–3.1 commonly tabulated. Clauses 9.7.7 and 9.7.8 follow common dam and detention practice.

9.8 Trash racks and screens

9.8.1 **Where required.** Trash racks or screens shall be provided:

- (a) where an open drain enters a pipe, covered drain or culvert longer than 30 m (Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.4);
- (b) at every detention outlet orifice (Clause 9.7.1);
- (c) at the inlet of every pump sump (Clause 9.9); and
- (d) at outfalls to waterbodies, as part of the gross pollutant trap of Chapter 8.

9.8.2 **Conduit-entrance racks.** Racks at the entrance to conduits and culverts shall have:

- (a) clear bar spacing not less than 75 mm and not more than half the smallest internal dimension of the conduit;
- (b) a gross area at least 4 times the conduit's cross-sectional area;
- (c) a mean velocity through the rack at the design flow, with 50% of the rack blocked, of not more than 1.0 m/s; and
- (d) an inclination no steeper than 1V:2H where the rack is to be raked by hand, with a working platform and handrail.

9.8.3 **Head loss.** Head loss through a clean rack shall be computed with the Kirschmer equation:

$$h_r = \beta \cdot (t / b)^{4/3} \cdot (V^2 / 2g) \cdot \sin\theta$$

where t is the bar thickness, b is the clear bar spacing, V is the approach velocity, θ is the angle of the rack from the horizontal, and β is the bar shape factor (2.42 for sharp-edged rectangular bars; 1.79 for circular bars). The HGL and headwater shall be checked with the rack **50% blocked** (head loss computed with half the open area).

9.8.4 **Overflow when blocked.** Every rack shall have an overflow route so that a fully blocked rack does not flood buildings or exceed the limits of Chapter 6.

9.8.5 **Detention outlet screens.** Screens over detention orifices shall have openings smaller than the orifice they protect, and an open area at least 10 times the orifice area.

9.8.6 **Pump sump screens.** Bar screens at pump-station inlets shall have a clear spacing smaller than the largest solid the pumps can pass, as stated by the pump manufacturer. Screens shall be built in removable modules, and a mechanically raked screen shall be used where the design inflow exceeds 1 m³/s.

9.8.7 **Safety.** Racks at the entrance to long conduits shall prevent people from being drawn in. They shall be designed for the hydrostatic load of a fully blocked rack.

> Commentary. CPHEEO (2019, §8.3.1.3) describes pump-station bar screens with a spacing of "approximately 58 mm", built in modules, with an emergency overflow in case of clogging. Clause 9.8.6 follows that approach but links the spacing to the pump's solids-passing size, which varies by pump. The 50% blockage check matches the grate clogging factor of Chapter 6. The Kirschmer equation and its shape factors are standard (Kirschmer 1926, as reproduced in hydraulic handbooks). The rack spacing, area ratio, through-velocity, the 30 m conduit length trigger, the 10× screen area for orifices and the 1 m³/s trigger for mechanical raking have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

9.9 Pumps and sumps

9.9.1 **When pumping is used.** Pumping shall be used only where gravity drainage cannot meet the requirements of Chapters 5 and 6, for example at road underpasses (Chapter 6, Clause 6.10.5), basements, low-lying areas and outfalls that are tide-locked under the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

9.9.2 **Design inflow and storage.** The station shall be designed with the inflow hydrograph routed through the catchment and any upstream storage. Pump capacity and storage shall be chosen together:

- (a) the station shall meet the design AEP of the element it serves (for underpasses, the 2% AEP with a 1% AEP check);
- (b) where the station serves a tidal outfall, storage plus pumps shall hold the 48 h design volume with the outfall throttled for the tidal-lock duration (default: two consecutive high tides of 6 h each), as required by Chapter 5; and
- (c) the pumps shall be selected for the full range of static head between the lowest sump level against the lowest tailwater, and the highest tailwater (HAT plus surge plus 0.3 m).

9.9.3 **Wet-well volume.** The effective wet-well volume (between the pump-stop and the lowest pump-start level) shall be the greatest of:

- (a) where variable-speed drives and automatic controls are installed, 5 minutes of the minimum inflow (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.3);
- (b) otherwise, 10 to 15 minutes of the peak inflow, or the volume needed for the pump manufacturer's minimum cycle time, from $V = Q \cdot t$ (CPHEEO 2019, Eq. 8.1); and
- (c) for constant-speed pumps, the volume $V = \Theta \cdot q / 4$ for each pump, where Θ is the minimum cycle time recommended by the motor manufacturer and q is the pump capacity (FHWA HEC-24, 2001).

9.9.4 **Duty and standby.**

- (a) Duty pumps shall be of the same size where practicable (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.3).
- (b) Standby capacity shall be at least equal to the largest duty pump, and not less than 50% of the number of duty pumps.
- (c) Duty and standby roles shall alternate automatically.

9.9.5 **Pump type.** Pumps shall be solids-handling (non-clog) types suited to stormwater with sand and debris. Axial-flow pumps shall be used only behind a screen that meets Clause 9.8.6, because they cannot handle debris (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.2).

9.9.6 **Sump and intake design.** Sump geometry, pump spacing, minimum submergence and approach flow conditions shall follow the pump manufacturer's requirements and ANSI/HI 9.8 (Rotodynamic Pumps for Pump Intake Design). A physical hydraulic model study shall be carried out where any pump exceeds 1 m^3/s, or where the sump does not follow standard ANSI/HI 9.8 geometry. The minimum clear space between adjacent pumps or motors is 0.6 m for small and medium units and 1.0 m for large units (CPHEEO 2019, §8.2.5).

9.9.7 **Silt and screens.** A silt trap and a bar screen shall be provided upstream of the wet well (Clause 9.8.6; Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.3).

9.9.8 **Controls and monitoring.**

- (a) Pumps shall be controlled by a primary level sensor (ultrasonic, radar or pressure) with an independent float-switch back-up.
- (b) High-level and pump-fault alarms shall be sent by telemetry to the local body's control room.
- (c) Sump levels, pump run hours and power status shall be logged and kept for at least 5 years.

9.9.9 **Power supply.**

- (a) The station shall have two independent power sources: the grid supply and a standby generator (or a second independent grid feeder) able to run all duty pumps at once (CPHEEO 2019, §2.4.2.3(j)).
- (b) Fuel for at least **72 hours** of continuous operation of all duty pumps shall be stored on site, above the flood level of Clause 9.9.10.
- (c) Changeover to standby power shall be automatic.

9.9.10 **Flood protection of the station.** The floor of the electrical and control room, the generator and the transformer shall be at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level at the station (Chapter 6, Clause 6.11). Access to the station for maintenance vehicles shall remain usable in the 1% AEP event.

9.9.11 **Discharge.** Each pump shall have its own rising main, or a non-return valve and an isolating valve where mains combine. Rising mains shall discharge into a delivery chamber or outfall fitted with a flap gate or non-return valve under Clause 9.10. Discharge piping shall be sized by a recognised friction formula (CPHEEO 2019, §8.3.9).

9.9.12 **Emergency connections.** Every station shall have a hard-standing area and a quick-coupling connection for mobile pumps to discharge into the delivery chamber.

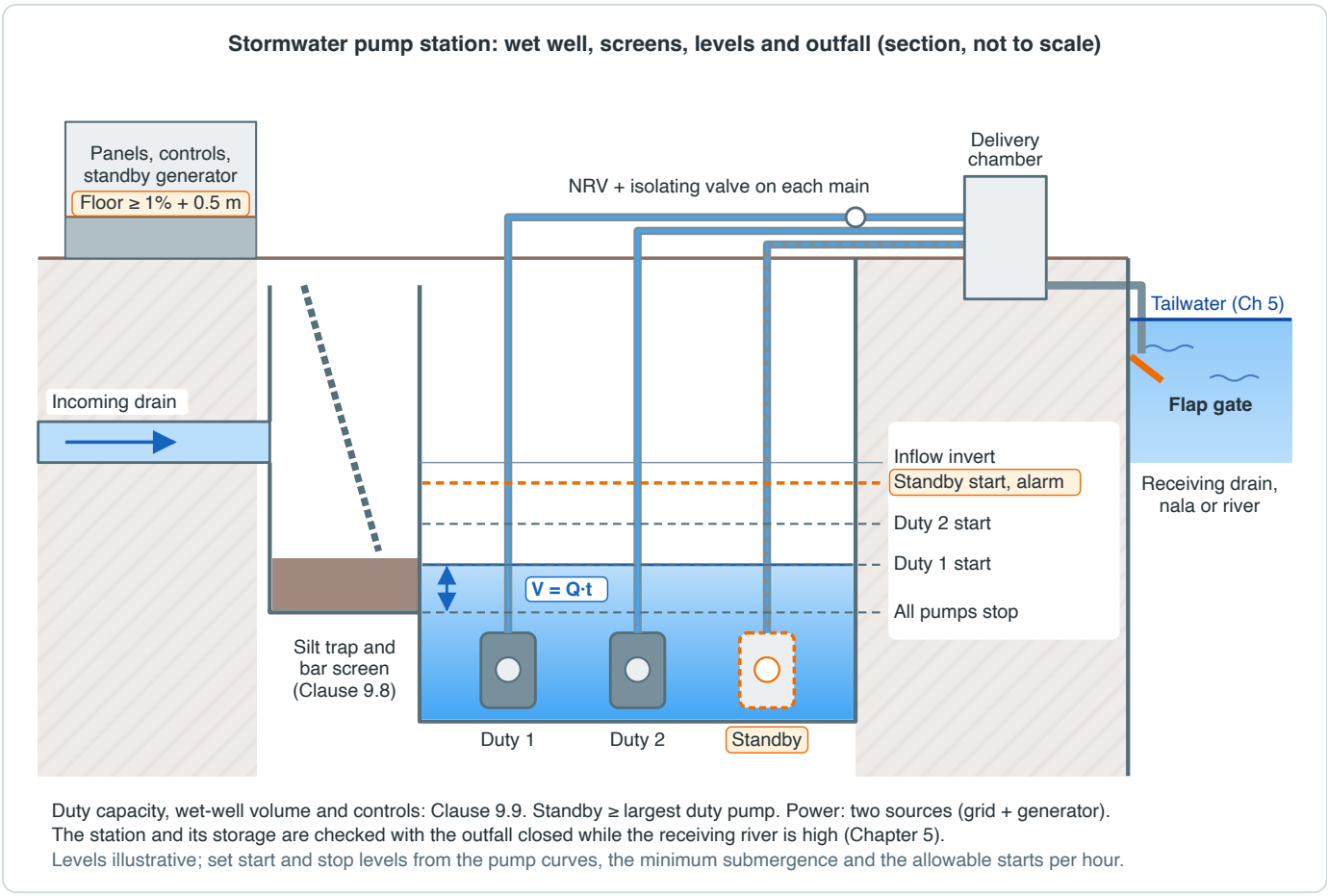


Figure 9.3 — Stormwater pump station: wet well, screens, levels and outfall. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Chapter 8, and FHWA, Highway Stormwater Pump Station Design, HEC-24 (2001).

> **Commentary.** CPHEEO (2019) Chapter 8 covers stormwater pumping: wet-well sizing (§8.3.3), pump types (§8.3.2), trash screens (§8.3.1.3), space requirements (§8.2.5) and the need for generator sets "as standby for emergency operation during failure of electricity" (§2.4.2.3). It recommends standby units of "minimum 50% of the duty pump units". Clause 9.9.4(b) is stricter: the standby must at least equal the largest duty pump, so the station still meets its design duty with its largest pump out of service. This stricter rule is set by this Manual. FHWA HEC-24 (*Highway Stormwater Pump Station Design*, FHWA-NHI-01-007, 2001) is the FHWA pump-station manual. The 72 h fuel storage is set by this Manual to match the 72 h design storm of Chapter 2. The model-study trigger, the telemetry and data-retention requirements, and the emergency connection have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

9.10 Tide gates, flap gates and non-return valves

9.10.1 **Where required.** Flap gates, tide gates or non-return valves shall be provided on every outfall whose invert is below the 1% AEP still-water level of the receiving water (Chapter 5).

9.10.2 **Types.** Acceptable devices are:

- (a) hinged flap gates (cast iron, ductile iron, stainless steel, HDPE or composite);
- (b) elastomeric in-line or end-of-pipe check valves (duckbill type); and
- (c) penstocks or sluice gates, manual or motorised, as a secondary closure.

9.10.3 **Secondary closure.** Outfalls of 900 mm or more, and every outfall serving a pumped or storage system, shall have a penstock or stop-log slot upstream of the flap gate so that the gate can be maintained, and as a back-up if the gate jams open.

9.10.4 **Hydraulics.** The head loss through the device in the open position shall be taken from the manufacturer's tested data and included in the HGL (Chapter 6, Clause 6.8.7). Flap gates shall open at a small head difference (CPHEEO 2019, §6.3.10.1).

9.10.5 **Sand and debris.** At beach, estuary and creek outfalls where sand or debris can hold a gate open or shut:

- (a) the gate shall be housed in a chamber with surface access, or elastomeric check valves shall be used; and
- (b) the gate shall be inspected after every high-tide or surge event during the monsoon season (Chapter 10).

9.10.6 **Materials.** Hinges, pins, links and fixings shall be of corrosion-resistant material (CPHEEO 2019, §6.3.10.1). In coastal and tidal locations this means stainless steel grade 316, bronze or a non-metallic material (Clause 9.13).

9.10.7 **Storage behind gates.** Where gates close during a storm, the storage or pumping behind them shall meet the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

> Commentary. CPHEEO (2019, §6.3.10.1) describes flap gates and flood gates at outfalls to tidal waters. It notes that "adequate storage may be necessary if pumping is to be avoided during the closure of the gate" and that hinge pins and links "should be of corrosion-resistant materials". Bihar has no coast, so no outfall in the State is closed by the tide, and the beach, estuary, tidal and coastal provisions of Clauses 9.6.7, 9.9.2(b), 9.10.5, 9.13.3 and 9.13.6, and the coastal and tidal rows of Table 9.5, do not arise; in Clause 9.9.2(c) the highest tailwater is the highest river level of Chapter 5. Gates are still required below the 1% still-water level, because the outfalls of the larger cities are closed by the rivers in flood. At the CWC sites that govern them the high flood levels stand well above the danger levels: the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat, Patna, 50.52 m (2016) against 48.60 m, and at Dighaghat 52.52 m (1975) against 50.45 m; the Punpun at Sripalpur, the backwater that holds up the drains of south Patna, 53.91 m (1976) against 50.60 m; the Sone at Maner 53.79 m (1976) against 52.00 m; the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur, Muzaffarpur, 54.29 m (1987) against 52.53 m; and the Bagmati at Hayaghat, Darbhanga, 48.96 m (1987) against 45.72 m (CWC Lower Ganga Division-2 bulletin of 31 October 2026; datum to be confirmed). On 5–6 September 2026 the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported at 50.53–50.57 m, above the high flood level the CWC bulletin still lists (as reported). Patna is ringed by the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun; when they rise, the sluices on the Ganga and the Punpun are closed and the city's drains reach the rivers only through its sump houses, the drainage pumping stations (as reported). A Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 is reported to list 56 permanent and 28 temporary drainage pumping stations, without making clear whether for Patna or for the State (as reported; not read), and nine major sump houses are reported to be monitored in real time from the integrated command and control centre (ICCC) of Patna Smart City (as reported). In the waterlogging of 27–30 September 2019, 38 of the city's 39 sump houses were reported not working, and the State's inquiry was reported to find that pumps were not started on time and drains not cleaned (as reported). The sump houses were run by the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad, whose assets and projects passed to BUIDCO under the Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act 2017; how Patna's drains and sump houses are now divided between PMC and BUIDCO was not confirmed. Screens matter as much as gates, because the nalas carry silt, solid waste and sewage: 19 Patna drains were found to discharge 628.5 MLD to the Ganga and the Punpun against six treatment plants of 350 MLD (CAG, Patna sewerage under Namami Gange), and the remedy in use is to tap the drains at their outfalls and divert the dry-weather flow to a treatment plant. An interception weir in a drain takes up part of its section, so its effect on the storm capacity is checked under Clause 8.9.5 and the HGL of Chapter 6. No inventory of the sluices, flap gates, interception structures and drainage pumping stations on the drains of any Bihar city, with their pump capacities, sump volumes and operating rules, no rule linking the closing of a sluice to a river stage, and no design river level at any outfall was found in the public domain. Clauses 9.10.3 and 9.10.5 are set by this Manual because a flap gate or sluice that fails, or is jammed open by silt, solid waste or debris, lets a river in flood back into the drain network, and one jammed shut blocks it. The city nalas of Bihar carry silt, solid waste and sewage to their outfalls, and at Patna most reach the Ganga and the Punpun through sluices and sump houses, so a gate, its

> screen and the pump sump behind it are exposed to the same debris and must be kept clear together; and because the high flood levels of the rivers stand 1.9–3.3 m above their danger levels at Patna and Darbhanga (CWC), a gate that leaks or jams can be exposed for the whole of a river flood.

9.11 Inlets and gratings

9.11.1 **Hydraulics.** Inlet capacity, spacing and clogging shall follow Chapter 6, Clause 6.6.

9.11.2 **Load class.** Gratings, covers and frames shall be rated for the traffic at their location. Load classes shall be those of IS 1726 (cast iron manhole covers and frames) or EN 124 (gully tops and manhole tops), at least:

- (a) carriageways and medians: EN 124 class D400 or the equivalent heavy-duty IS class;
- (b) kerb-side channel inlets within 0.5 m of the kerb: class C250 or equivalent; and
- (c) footpaths and cycle tracks: class B125 or equivalent.

9.11.3 **Grate pattern.**

- (a) Grates in carriageways, cycle tracks and footpaths shall not have openings parallel to the direction of travel wider than 25 mm.
- (b) Grate types without tested capacity data shall be rated by the weir and orifice methods of FHWA HEC-22 (2024), with the clogging factors of Chapter 6.

9.11.4 **Kerb openings.** Kerb-opening inlets shall have a clear opening height of at least 100 mm and a length of at least 1.0 m. Where a kerb inlet discharges through the wall of a covered drain (Chapter 6, Clause 6.13.1), the opening shall be at road level.

9.11.5 **Security.** Gratings and covers on public land shall be hinged or locked to their frames, so that they cannot be removed without a tool.

9.11.6 **Inlet chambers.** Inlet chambers shall have the silt sump of Chapter 6, Clause 6.6.7, and shall be sized so that the sump can be emptied by a suction or grab machine.

> Commentary. NDMA (2010, §4.13) cites IS 5961 for cast-iron gratings for drainage inlets. The load classes are based on the EN 124 classes used internationally. The 25 mm limit on parallel openings is set for cyclist and pedestrian safety. APWA 5600 (2006, 5604.2) requires kerb openings of at least 4 ft (about 1.2 m) long and 6 in (about 150 mm) clear height. Clause 9.11.4 sets smaller minimums suited to the narrower roads and lower kerbs common in Bihar towns.

9.12 Manholes, junction chambers and access

9.12.1 **Location and spacing.** Manholes shall be provided at the locations and spacings of Chapter 6, Clause 6.7.11 and Table 6.8. Where pipes are too large for a standard manhole, a junction chamber with a riser to the surface shall be used (CPHEEO 2019, §11.3.7.3).

9.12.2 **Minimum internal size.** Manholes shall have at least the internal dimensions of Table 9.4 (CPHEEO 2019, §11.3.7.6):

Table 9.4 — Minimum internal size of manholes

Shape and depth	Minimum internal size
Rectangular, depth below 0.9 m	900 mm × 800 mm
Rectangular, depth 0.9–2.5 m	1,200 mm × 900 mm
Circular, depth above 0.9 m and up to 1.65 m	900 mm diameter
Circular, depth above 1.65 m and up to 2.30 m	1,200 mm diameter
Circular, depth above 2.30 m and up to 6.0 m	1,500 mm diameter
Circular, depth above 6.0 m and up to 9.0 m	1,800 mm diameter

The manhole shall also be large enough to fit the largest pipe connected plus the benching on each side.

9.12.3 **Access openings.** The clear access opening of manholes and access chambers on public drains shall be at least 600 mm, so that cleaning equipment can be lowered.

9.12.4 **Drops.** Where the difference between incoming and outgoing inverts exceeds 0.6 m, a drop connection shall be provided. Below 0.6 m, the difference shall be taken up by adjusting the slope of the incoming pipe or the benching (CPHEEO 2019, §11.3.7.5). The invert drop across a manhole where pipe size changes shall be at least the following fraction of the difference in diameters (CPHEEO 2019, Table 11.6):

- conduits below 400 mm: one-half;
- 400 mm to 900 mm: two-thirds;
- above 900 mm: four-fifths.

9.12.5 **Benching.** Manhole floors shall be benched to at least the crown of the outgoing pipe, with channels shaped to guide flow from each incoming pipe.

9.12.6 **Surcharge.** Manholes on mains where the 1% AEP HGL can rise above the cover (Chapter 6, Clause 6.8.4) shall have bolted, locked or hinged covers designed for that pressure.

9.12.7 **Mechanical cleaning.** Manholes, chambers and covered drains shall be designed for cleaning by machine (suction, jetting, grab or robotic equipment) from the surface. Fixed ladders shall be of corrosion-resistant, encapsulated material where provided.

> **Commentary.** The size and drop requirements are from CPHEEO (2019) Chapter 11. The 600 mm access opening, the benching rule and the bolted covers are set by this Manual. Designing for mechanical cleaning supports the prohibition on hazardous manual cleaning under *The Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013*.

9.13 Materials and durability

9.13.1 **Exposure classes.** Concrete structures shall be designed for the exposure class of IS 456: 2000, Table 3. In Bihar the minimum classes of Table 9.5 apply unless a site investigation shows a more severe condition:

Table 9.5 — Minimum IS 456 exposure classes for Bihar locations

Location	Minimum IS 456 exposure class
Inland drains and structures	Moderate

Location	Minimum IS 456 exposure class
Drains and structures in the coastal environment, and any drain that carries or may carry sewage-mixed flow	Severe
Structures exposed to sea-water spray, or in contact with saline or aggressive groundwater	Very severe
Structures in the tidal zone	Extreme

9.13.2 **Concrete.** Minimum concrete grade, maximum water–cement ratio, minimum cement content and nominal cover to reinforcement shall be those of IS 456 for the exposure class. For the reader's convenience, IS 456 sets the minimum reinforced-concrete grades as M25 (moderate), M30 (severe), M35 (very severe) and M40 (extreme), and the nominal covers as 30, 45, 50 and 75 mm respectively.

9.13.3 **Aggressive ground.** Groundwater and soil at every structure in coastal and delta areas shall be tested for chlorides and sulphates. Cement type and concrete mix shall be chosen to suit the results under IS 456.

9.13.4 **Sewage-mixed flow.** Pipes and covered drains that carry, or may carry, sewage-mixed flow shall be protected against sulphide (crown) corrosion, by a sacrificial concrete thickness, a corrosion-resistant lining or a non-concrete pipe material.

9.13.5 **Pipes.** Concrete pipes shall comply with IS 458, with the class selected by structural design. Other pipe materials (for example ductile iron, HDPE or structured-wall plastic pipes) shall comply with the applicable Indian Standard and be approved by the approving authority.

9.13.6 **Metalwork.** Within 5 km of the coast, and in all tidal and saline locations:

- (a) fixings, hinges, ladders, handrails and screen frames shall be stainless steel grade 316, or hot-dip galvanised steel with a protective coating, or a non-metallic material; and
- (b) dissimilar metals shall be isolated from each other.

9.13.7 **Masonry.** New public drains in Tier A bodies shall be in reinforced or plain concrete. Brick or stone masonry may be used for drains in Tier B bodies only if it is plastered on the wetted face and meets the n value of Table 6.6.

> **Commentary.** The IS 456 exposure classes and the grade and cover values are quoted from IS 456: 2000 (Tables 3, 5 and 16) for convenience. The standard governs, and designers shall use its current amendment. Assigning Bihar locations to exposure classes, the sulphide-corrosion requirement and the ban on new masonry drains in Tier A bodies have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. Drains that receive sewage cross-connections (a common condition, Chapter 8) generate hydrogen sulphide, which attacks unprotected concrete above the water line.

9.14 Submittal requirements

Every structure design shall be submitted with a **Hydraulic Structures Report** (Form 9-1) containing, as applicable:

1. culvert calculations (HDS-5 or HY-8 output) with HWi, HWo, outlet velocity, tailwater, overtopping and the blockage check;
2. channel water-surface profiles, velocities, Froude numbers and freeboard;
3. outlet protection and dissipator design, with riprap sizing;
4. detention outlet stage–discharge tables and the emergency spillway check;
5. screen and rack design with the 50% blocked check;

6. a pump station design report: inflow hydrograph, storage, pump curves and system curves, wet-well volume, controls, power supply and the Chapter 5 outfall-closed check;
7. gate and valve selection with head-loss data;
8. inlet, grate and cover load classes; and
9. an exposure class and materials statement (Clause 9.13).

References (chapter)

- Federal Highway Administration (2012). *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, Hydraulic Design Series No. 5, 3rd edition, FHWA-HIF-12-026.
- Federal Highway Administration (2006). *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipators for Culverts and Channels*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 14, 3rd edition, FHWA-NHI-06-086.
- Federal Highway Administration (2005). *Design of Roadside Channels with Flexible Linings*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 15, 3rd edition, FHWA-IF-05-114.
- Federal Highway Administration (2024). *Urban Drainage Design Manual*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 22, 4th edition, FHWA-HIF-24-006.
- Federal Highway Administration (2001). *Highway Stormwater Pump Station Design*, Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 24, FHWA-NHI-01-007.
- FHWA Hydraulics Engineering publications listing. https://www.fhwa.dot.gov/Engineering/hydraulics/library_listing.cfm
- MoHUA / CPHEEO (2019). *Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems*, Volume I, Part A: Engineering Design. §2.4.2.3, §5.3, Tables 5.5, 5.11, 5.12, §6.3.10.1, Chapter 8, Chapter 11. https://www.mohua.gov.in/static/uploads/2025/10/8a2456c722036d78c72a698898ef846d.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). *Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities* (5604.2, 5608.4); and Version 2025.01 (Dec 2025).
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 456: 2000, *Plain and Reinforced Concrete — Code of Practice* (Tables 3, 5 and 16).
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 458, *Precast Concrete Pipes (with and without Reinforcement) — Specification* (current revision).
- Bureau of Indian Standards. IS 1726, *Cast Iron Manhole Covers and Frames*; IS 5961, *Cast Iron Gratings for Drainage Purposes*; IS 12592, *Precast Concrete Manhole Covers and Frames* (current revisions).
- European Committee for Standardization. EN 124, *Gully tops and manhole tops for vehicular and pedestrian areas*.
- Hydraulic Institute. ANSI/HI 9.8, *Rotodynamic Pumps for Pump Intake Design* (current edition).
- Indian Roads Congress. IRC:SP:13, *Guidelines for the Design of Small Bridges and Culverts* (current revision).
- Chow, V.T. (1959). *Open-Channel Hydraulics*. McGraw-Hill. (Fortier and Scobey 1926 permissible velocities; Rand 1955 drop relationships.)
- Fortier, S. and Scobey, F.C. (1926). Permissible canal velocities. *Transactions of the ASCE* 89.
- Rand, W. (1955). Flow geometry at straight drop spillways. *Proceedings of the ASCE* 81.
- Brater, E.F. and King, H.W. *Handbook of Hydraulics*. McGraw-Hill.
- Tennessee Department of Environment and Conservation (2026). *Erosion Prevention and Sediment Control Handbook*, §4.3.6 Riprap Apron (reproduces the HEC-14 apron equation and table). https://www.tn.gov/content/dam/tn/environment/water/stormwater/epsc-handbook/dwr-npdes-sop-g-16-erosion-prevention-sediment-control-handbook-01092026-4.3.6%20-riprap-apron.pdf
- Purdue University Joint Transportation Research Program. Study of riprap apron design at culvert outlets. https://docs.lib.purdue.edu/jtrp/1704
- CIRIA (2019). *Culvert, screen and outfall manual*, C786. London: CIRIA.
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). *National Guidelines: Management of Urban Flooding*, §4.13.
- Government of India. *The Prohibition of Employment as Manual Scavengers and their Rehabilitation Act, 2013*.

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
9A	HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients and worked culvert example in SI units
9B	Standard drawings: headwalls, riprap aprons, drop structures, trash racks, detention risers
9C	Pump station design checklist and standard control philosophy

Annex / Form	Content
Form 9-1	Hydraulic Structures Report checklist

CHAPTER 10

Submittals, Review, Operation & Maintenance and Enforcement

10.1 Purpose and scope

10.1.1 This chapter sets out how compliance with this Manual is shown, checked, built, kept working and enforced. It covers:

- (a) the submittal stages and their contents (Clauses 10.3–10.4);
- (b) the compliance calculator (Clause 10.5);
- (c) professional certification and review (Clauses 10.6–10.7);
- (d) construction inspection and as-built certification (Clauses 10.8–10.9);
- (e) maintenance declarations, O&M plans, inspection and access (Clauses 10.10–10.13);
- (f) handover of public assets (Clause 10.14);
- (g) enforcement (Clause 10.15); and
- (h) monitoring, post-event review and data publication (Clauses 10.16–10.17).

10.1.2 This chapter applies to every development and public work to which Chapters 4 and 5 apply under Clause 1.5.2. Clauses 10.3.1 (Stage 0), 10.15 and 10.17 also apply to development that is subject only to Clause 1.5.4.

Commentary. A criterion that is not checked at approval, built as approved, and maintained afterwards has no effect. In Bihar the failure is one of missing criteria and divided ownership. No document of UDHD, BUIDCO or a Nagar Nigam stating a design return period, intensity or runoff coefficient for urban storm drains was found. The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 makes the Municipality responsible for drains and a safe outfall (s.193) and vests the public drains in it (s.195), but lets it make a drain over to another authority with State approval (s.196); the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad, which ran Patna's trunk drains and sump houses, was merged into BUIDCO with its assets and projects (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), and no order dividing Patna's drains between PMC and BUIDCO was found. WRD keeps the rivers, the embankments and their sluices. The approval route shapes this chapter. Building permission is given under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 of UDHD (Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text), within the planning framework of the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012. UDHD's guidebook on the approval procedure lists a "Recharging pit & Rain Water harvesting Plan" and a "Drain Section" among the documents to be submitted and asks whether the plot is affected by a proposed drain or lake (UDHD guidebook). The bye-laws refuse permission in natural waterways or drains shown in the Development Plan or drainage plan, over or under a municipal drain, and within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank; require the curtilage to be drained by surface water drains where the Authority so requires, and its written approval to connect a surface water drain to a sewer; bar basements in flood-prone areas; and require rainwater harvesting on plots of all sizes (BBL 2014, bye-laws 29(A), 29(D), 30(B), 30(D), 47(1) and 51). The Municipal Act requires a drain to the Chief Municipal Officer's satisfaction before premises are erected or occupied (s.201), and his permission to connect to a municipal drain (s.204). A Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, posted on 5 June 2026 and not notified as of September 2026 (as reported), would repeal the 2014 bye-laws, introduce risk-based approvals with self-certification for low-risk buildings, third-party inspection for medium-risk ones and deemed approval after 30 days (as reported), and require site plans to show water bodies, flood-affected areas and 0.5 m contours where the slope is more than 1 in 20 (Draft 2026, cl. 6). The Bihar Ease of

> Doing Business Act 2026 lists the "Storm Water Drains NOC", the Revenue Department NOC for land near water bodies or nalas, the District Collector NOC for development on wetland and the Irrigation Department NOC for sites near canals as "Not required" for enterprises (Act 32 of 2026, Schedule V). No rule asks for a drainage report, limits peak runoff or requires on-site detention. Every stormwater item in this chapter is therefore written so that the architect or engineer on record can certify it on Forms 1-1, 2-1, 10-2 and 10-3, and the Authority can check it with the drain section and rainwater harvesting plan of the building plan and before the occupancy certificate. Because the drainage report is part of that building-plan check and not a separate NOC, it applies to an enterprise's site as to any other wherever an Authority adopts this Manual. This chapter is the process.

10.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this chapter
Submittal	A set of documents lodged with the Authority at one of the stages of Clause 10.3.
Drainage report	The preliminary (Stage 1) or final (Stage 2) report required by Clause 10.4.
Stormwater facility	Any retention, detention, water quality, conveyance, pumping, gate or outfall element required by this Manual, public or private.
Hold point	A construction stage at which work shall not proceed until the Authority or the certifying professional has inspected it (Clause 10.8).
As-built certificate	The certificate of Clause 10.9 that the facility was built as approved and performs as designed.
Owner	The person or body responsible for a facility under its maintenance declaration, or the ULB for a handed-over asset.
O&M plan	The operation and maintenance plan of Clause 10.11.
Facility register	The public register of facilities of Clause 10.17.

Other terms are defined in Clause 1.4.

10.3 Submittal stages

10.3.1 Submittals shall be made in the following stages, linked to the approval steps of the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 (Table 10.1):

Table 10.1 — Submittal stages and linked approvals

Stage	Submittal	When	Linked approval
0	**Pre-application** meeting and **Form 1-1** (Applicability Determination)	Before the planning permission or layout application	None (advisory record)
1	**Preliminary drainage report**	With the planning permission or layout application	Planning permission / layout approval
2	**Final drainage design**	Before building permit, or before commencement where the permit is issued with the planning permission	Building permit / commencement
3	**Construction inspections** at hold points	During construction	None (records filed)

Stage	Submittal	When	Linked approval
4	**As-built certificate** and verification tests	Before the completion certificate	Completion / occupancy certificate
5	**Maintenance declaration** registered, or **handover** of public assets	Before or with the completion certificate	Completion certificate; asset acceptance
6	**Annual declarations** and inspection reports	Every year after completion	Continuing compliance

10.3.2 **Stage 0 is mandatory** for:

- (a) sites of 2 ha or more;
- (b) sites in a flood-sensitive catchment;
- (c) sites proposing a variance, waiver, regional facility or fee-in-lieu; and
- (d) sites draining to a tidal outfall or adjoining a waterbody.

For other sites, Stage 0 is optional, and Form 1-1 is lodged with Stage 1.

10.3.3 **Combined stages.** For sites of less than 1 ha outside flood-sensitive catchments, the Authority may accept Stages 1 and 2 as one submittal.

10.3.4 **Public works.** For a public work, Stage 1 is the drainage section of the DPR and Stage 2 is the drainage section of the tender drawings. The sanctioning authority shall not sanction or tender the work until the relevant stage has been reviewed under Clause 10.7.

10.3.5 **Changes after approval.** Any change that alters impervious area, levels, storage, outlet or outfall after Stage 2 shall be resubmitted, with the compliance calculator re-run, before the change is built.

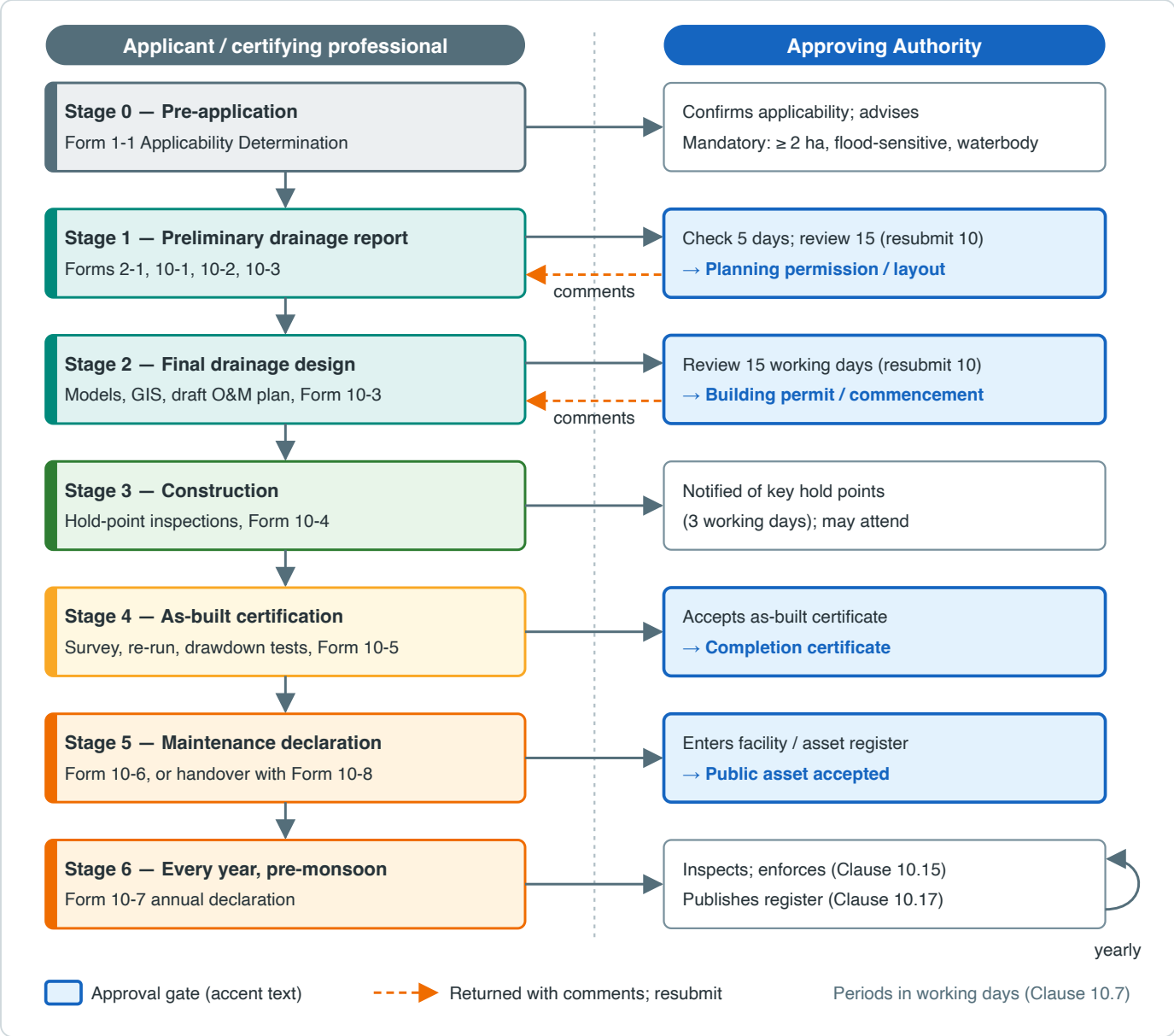


Figure 10.1 — Submittal, review and approval workflow (Clauses 10.3–10.10). Original drawing for this Manual.

> **Commentary.** The stages follow the APWA 5600 sequence of preliminary and final stormwater studies, construction inspection and maintenance agreements (APWA 5600, 2006, §5608 and §5609), mapped onto the BBL 2014 steps a Bihar applicant already follows. Linking Stage 4 to the completion certificate copies the MBBL 2016 RWH model, which requires inspection before the completion certificate (MBBL 2016, §9.6). The 2 ha and 1 ha limits in Clauses 10.3.2 and 10.3.3 have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual.

10.4 Required contents and checklists

10.4.1 **Preliminary drainage report (Stage 1).** The report shall contain at least:

- (a) Form 1-1 and, where applicable, Form 1-2 (Variance / Waiver Request);
- (b) a site plan with existing and proposed levels, impervious areas, and the catchment boundaries draining to and through the site;
- (c) soils (HSG), the seasonal high groundwater table, and infiltration test results or a test plan (Chapter 3);

- (d) the **Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1)**, completed as Clause 2.13 requires;
- (e) the pre-development condition and hydrologic method (Chapter 3);
- (f) how the hierarchy of Clause 1.2 has been applied: areas preserved, retention method, detention concept and conveyance;
- (g) preliminary retention, water quality and detention volumes, and release rates, from the compliance calculator (Clause 10.5);
- (h) the downstream extent and tailwater case (Chapter 5);
- (i) waterbodies, setbacks and the 1% AEP level (Chapters 6 and 7); and
- (j) the land reserved for facilities and maintenance access (Clause 10.13).

10.4.2 **Final drainage design (Stage 2).** The final design shall contain, in addition to updated Stage 1 contents:

- (a) the final calculations for every storage duration of Clause 2.5.2 and every AEP required by Chapter 4, including the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5;
- (b) stage–storage–discharge tables for each facility, and the emergency spillway design (Chapter 4);
- (c) hydraulic design of conveyance elements, inlets and structures (Chapters 6 and 9);
- (d) the water quality design and the first-flush or gross pollutant trap where required (Chapter 8);
- (e) construction drawings, details and specifications of every facility;
- (f) the construction sequence, including protection of retention and infiltration areas from sediment and compaction (Clause 10.8.3);
- (g) the hold-point schedule (Clause 10.8);
- (h) the draft O&M plan (Clause 10.11) and draft maintenance declaration (Clause 10.10);
- (i) the model input files and the GIS data of Clause 10.4.4; and
- (j) the certificates of Clause 10.6.

10.4.3 **Checklist.** Each submittal shall include the **Drainage Report Checklist (Form 10-1)**, showing for each item of Clauses 10.4.1–10.4.2 the page or sheet where it is addressed, or the reason it does not apply. The Authority shall not start technical review of a submittal without a completed Form 10-1.

10.4.4 **Digital submittal.**

- (a) Reports and drawings shall be submitted as searchable PDF.
- (b) Hydrologic and hydraulic models shall be submitted in their native, runnable format (for example SWMM .inp, HEC-HMS or HEC-RAS project files), with the version of the software used.
- (c) Facilities, outfalls, flow paths and catchment boundaries shall be submitted as GIS data (GeoPackage or shapefile) in WGS 84 (EPSG:4326) or the applicable UTM zone (45N statewide, including Kaimur, most of Buxar, the west of Rohtas and the Valmikinagar tip of West Champaran, which lie in zone 44N), with attributes as listed in Annex 10B.
- (d) Levels shall be stated relative to a named vertical datum. The relationship to the river datums of the CWC and WRD (FMISC) gauges on the receiving rivers and of WRD's embankment, sluice and drain levels used in Chapter 5 shall be stated.

10.4.5 **Summary of forms used in submittals** (Table 10.2):

Table 10.2 — Forms used in submittals

Form	Title	Stage
1-1	Applicability Determination	0 or 1
1-2	Variance / Waiver Request	1
2-1	Design Rainfall Sheet	1, 2
10-1	Drainage Report Checklist	1, 2
10-2	Compliance Calculator Summary	1, 2, 4

Form	Title	Stage
10-3	Professional Design Certificate	1, 2
10-4	Hold-Point Inspection Record	3
10-5	As-built Certificate	4
10-6	Maintenance Declaration	5
10-7	Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report	6
10-8	Asset Handover Certificate	5

> Commentary. Runnable models and GIS data cost the applicant little and let the Authority check the work, and later build a city-wide picture of private storage. Bihar has no notified design return period, runoff coefficient or design storm for its drains. No document of UDHD, BUIDCO, PMC or a Smart City company giving a return period, an intensity or a runoff coefficient for drain design was found; the design criteria of BUIDCO's storm water drainage project in Patna and of the Danapur–Khagaul drainage DPR are unpublished. No station IDF has been published for any Bihar city, and IMD's national IDF study (Das et al. 2022) has no Bihar station. The only sub-daily design values for the State are the short-duration ratios of the CWC Flood Estimation Reports for subzones 1(d), 1(f) and 1(g), derived from self-recording gauges of the 1970s and 1980s; an NIH report on short-interval rainfall in the Punpun basin is known but could not be obtained. Form 2-1 and Form 10-2 therefore carry the whole design basis of each submission. Form 2-1 and Form 10-2 ensure that every design states its inputs.

10.5 Compliance calculator

10.5.1 The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall issue and maintain a **compliance calculator**: a version-controlled spreadsheet or web tool that, for a given site:

- (a) applies the applicability tests of Clause 1.5;
- (b) computes the retention volume from the Annex 2E depth, and the water quality volume (Chapter 8);
- (c) applies the credits for preserved areas and retained volume against detention (Chapter 4);
- (d) on the design-aid route (Clause 1.7, S-1), gives retention and detention volumes from the unit-storage tables;
- (e) on alternative S-2, gives the permissible site discharge for each AEP; and
- (f) produces the **Compliance Calculator Summary (Form 10-2)**.

10.5.2 **Use.**

- (a) Every Stage 1, 2 and 4 submittal shall include Form 10-2 from the current version of the calculator.
- (b) On the design-aid route, the calculator may be the only storage calculation.
- (c) Outside the design-aid route, the calculator is a summary and a screening check. It does not replace the hydrograph analysis of Chapter 3. Where a model result differs from the calculator screen by more than the tolerance stated in the calculator guide, the report shall explain why.

10.5.3 **Version control.** The calculator shall record its version in every output. A new version applies to new submittals 6 months after release, in line with Clause 2.14.2. A submittal shall use one version throughout Stages 1 to 4, unless the Applicant elects a later one.

10.5.4 **Openness.** The calculator, its user guide, and the source of every table in it shall be published free of charge.

> Commentary. The Mid-America Regional Council issued a Compliance Calculator (.xlsm) and a Calculator Start-Up Guide with APWA 5600 Version 2025.01, together with a site activity plan template and the Policy Supplement (MARC stormwater management page, 2025). The calculator turns a layered standard with credits into one consistent set of numbers that a reviewer can check quickly. Singapore achieves a similar effect with a much simpler rule: a single allowable C value of 0.55 for 10-yr storms up to 4 h, applied by formula (PUB Code of Practice, cl. 7.1.5). A Bihar calculator serves Tier B authorities in particular, where it may be the whole calculation.

10.6 Professional certification

10.6.1 **Who may sign.** Drainage reports and designs shall be prepared and signed by a registered professional (Clause 1.4) competent in hydrology and hydraulics. For any of the following, the signatory shall be a civil engineer **empanelled as a Stormwater Design Professional** by the Authority or UDHD:

- (a) Tier A sites of 1 ha or more;
- (b) any site in a flood-sensitive catchment;
- (c) any facility with an embankment, or a high-hazard basin checked for the 0.2% AEP (Chapter 4); and
- (d) any pumped facility, tide gate or regional facility.

10.6.2 **Empanelment criteria** shall be issued by UDHD and shall include a civil engineering degree, relevant experience in drainage design, and completion of a training course on this Manual.

10.6.3 **Certificate.** The signatory shall complete the **Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3)**, certifying that:

- (a) the design complies with this Manual, except for variances listed and approved;
- (b) the rainfall, soils and tailwater inputs are as recorded in Forms 2-1 and 10-2; and
- (c) the models submitted reproduce the results reported.

10.6.4 **Independent check.** Facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d) shall be checked by a second empanelled professional who is independent of the designer. That professional shall sign Form 10-3 as checker.

10.6.5 **False certification.** A false or negligent certificate is an offence under Clause 10.15.

> Commentary. Singapore requires that its ABC Waters design features used for peak control be endorsed by an ABC Waters Professional who is also a Professional Engineer (Civil) (PUB Detention Tank Guide, 2024). India has no statutory register of professional engineers comparable to Singapore's, so this clause uses the BBL 2014 registration and adds empanelment for the higher-risk cases. The 1 ha limit is set by this Manual.

10.7 Review procedure and timelines

10.7.1 **Completeness check.** The Authority shall check each submittal against Form 10-1 within **5 working days** and either accept it for review or return it with a list of missing items.

10.7.2 **Technical review.** The Authority shall complete technical review and issue approval, conditional approval or a single consolidated list of comments within:

- (a) **15 working days** of acceptance for a first submittal; and
- (b) **10 working days** of acceptance for a resubmittal.

10.7.3 **No new comments.** On resubmittal, the Authority shall not raise new comments on matters that were unchanged and not commented on in the earlier review, unless the matter affects safety.

10.7.4 **Review capacity.** A Tier B authority, or a Tier A authority for overflow work, may use an empanelled reviewer from the UDHD list. The empanelled reviewer shall not have worked on the same site. The Authority remains the decision-maker.

10.7.5 **Concurrent clearances.** Where the permission of WRD for a work on, or a discharge to, one of its rivers, embankments, sluices or drains, the permission of the Chief Municipal Officer to connect to a municipal drain or to make a new tank or pond under the Bihar Municipal Act 2007 (ss.204 and 183), the approval of the Bihar State Wetland Authority for a regulated activity in a notified wetland, the consent of the body that owns or runs the receiving drain where that body is not the Authority (in Patna, PMC or BUIDCO), or another agency's concurrence is required (Chapter 7), the Authority shall forward the submittal on the day it is accepted for review, and the review periods shall run concurrently.

10.7.6 **Fit with permit timelines.** The periods in Clauses 10.7.1–10.7.2 run within, and do not extend, the overall time limits for planning permission and building permits set by the Government.

10.7.7 **Reasons.** Every refusal or condition shall state the clause of this Manual on which it is based.

> Commentary. The review periods have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. A single consolidated comment list and the "no new comments" rule follow common good practice for engineering review.

10.8 Construction inspection

10.8.1 **Hold points.** The approved hold-point schedule (Form 10-4) shall include at least:

- (a) the excavated base of each retention, infiltration and detention facility, before any media, liner or structure is placed;
- (b) the outlet structure, orifice and trash screen, before backfill or before the facility is first allowed to fill;
- (c) the infiltration tests of Clause 10.9.3;
- (d) the outfall, flap or tide gate and non-return valve, before the downstream connection is made; and
- (e) pumps and controls, at commissioning.

10.8.2 Each hold point shall be inspected by the certifying professional and recorded on Form 10-4 with dated, geotagged photographs. For sites under Clause 10.6.1, the Authority shall be given at least 3 working days' notice of hold points (a) and (b), and may attend.

10.8.3 **Protection during construction.**

- (a) Retention and infiltration areas shall be fenced off from construction traffic and stockpiles.
- (b) Infiltration facilities shall not be brought into service until the area draining to them is stabilised.
- (c) Sediment shall be removed from any facility used for temporary sediment control before the as-built survey.

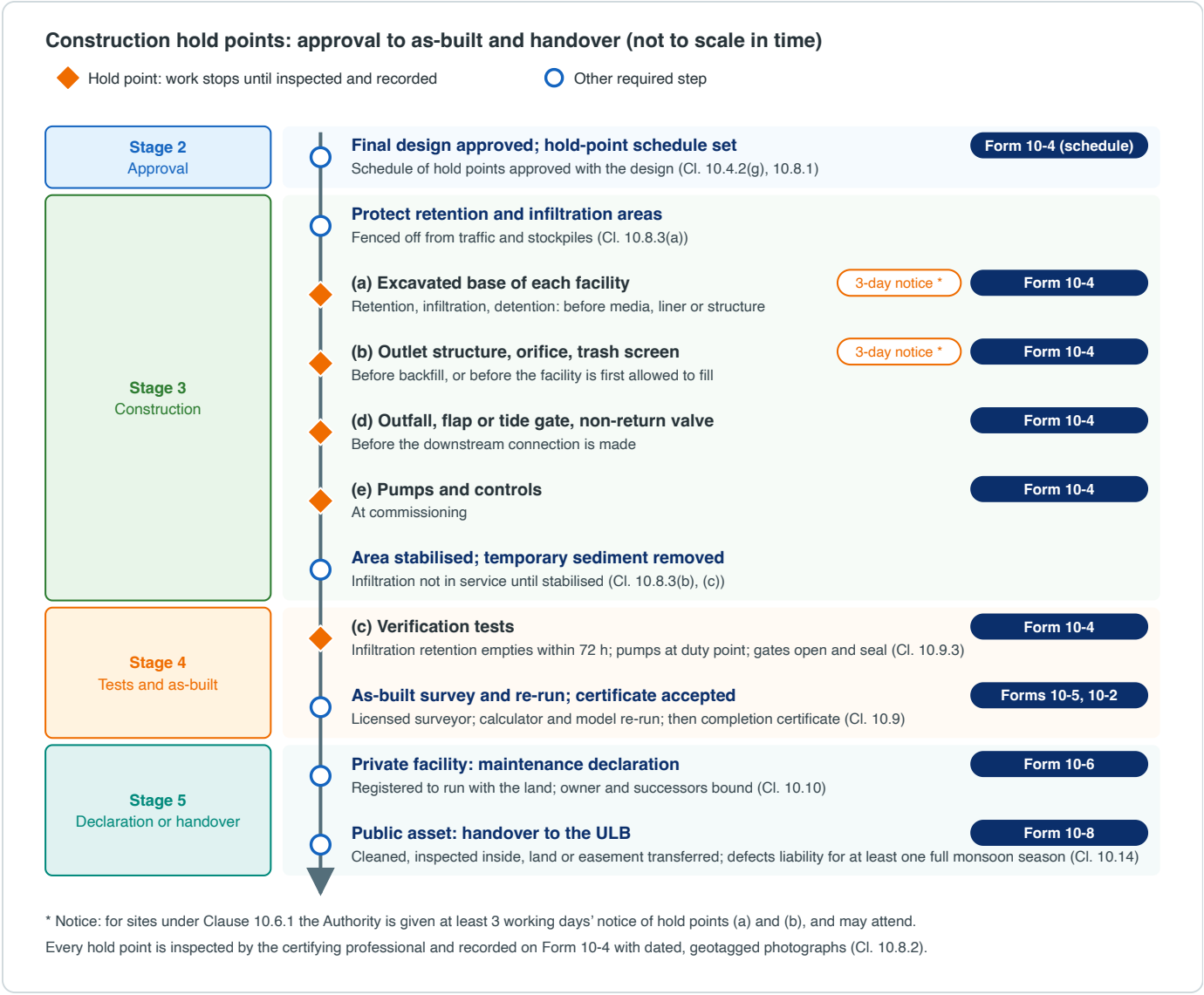


Figure 10.2 — Construction hold points from approval to as-built certification and handover, with the form used at each step (Clauses 10.8–10.10 and 10.14). Hold points are lettered as in Clause 10.8.1. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from the construction-inspection and maintenance-agreement sequence of APWA Section 5600 (2006), §5608.

> **Commentary.** Infiltration facilities fail most often in construction, when they are compacted or filled with silt before they ever operate. Hold points (a) and (c) target that failure. The 3-day notice is set by this Manual.

10.9 As-built certification

10.9.1 Before the completion certificate is issued, the certifying professional shall submit the **As-built Certificate (Form 10-5)** with:

- (a) an as-built survey by a licensed surveyor of each facility's levels, storage volume, outlet dimensions and inverts, and the outfall;
- (b) a re-run of the compliance calculator, and of the model where one was used, with as-built values;
- (c) the completed hold-point records (Form 10-4); and

- (d) the final O&M plan and the executed maintenance declaration or handover documents (Clauses 10.10 and 10.14).

10.9.2 **Acceptance.** The as-built facility is accepted where:

- (a) the as-built storage volume at each design level is not less than the volume required by Chapter 4;
- (b) the outlet dimensions and inverts match the approved design; and
- (c) the re-run shows compliance with every criterion of Chapters 4 and 5.

Any deviation shall be corrected, or re-certified as compliant under Clause 10.3.5.

10.9.3 **Verification tests.** Every retention facility that relies on infiltration shall be tested after construction to show that it empties within **72 hours**, as Chapter 4 requires. Pumped facilities shall be tested at their design duty point. Tide gates and non-return valves shall be shown to open and seal.

10.9.4 The Authority shall not issue the completion certificate until Form 10-5 is accepted.

> Commentary. The 72-hour retention drawdown is the criterion of Chapter 4. This Manual requires it to be tested after construction, rather than relying on pre-construction tests alone, because compaction during construction can cut infiltration rates far below the design values.

10.10 Maintenance declarations and covenants

10.10.1 **Declaration.** The owner of every private stormwater facility shall execute a **Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6)** before the completion certificate is issued. The declaration shall:

- (a) identify each facility, its location and the approved O&M plan;
- (b) bind the owner and successors in title to operate, inspect and maintain the facility under the O&M plan;
- (c) grant the Authority a right of entry to inspect, and to carry out works in default under Clause 10.15;
- (d) prohibit removal, filling, covering, reduction or change of use of the facility without the Authority's approval; and
- (e) be registered so that it runs with the land and is disclosed to purchasers.

10.10.2 **Multi-owner developments.** For apartments, layouts and gated communities, the declaration shall name the association or body responsible after handover by the developer. The developer remains responsible until that body is legally constituted and has accepted the declaration in writing.

10.10.3 **Annual declaration.** Every owner of a facility in a Tier A area, and of any pumped facility, tide gate or regional facility anywhere, shall submit an **Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report (Form 10-7)** by **31 May** each year. The report shall be signed by the owner and, for facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d), by an empanelled professional. It shall state that the pre-monsoon inspection of Clause 10.12 has been done and any defects corrected.

10.10.4 **Transfer.** On sale or transfer, the seller shall disclose the declaration and the latest Form 10-7. The purchaser takes on the obligations from the date of transfer.

> Commentary. Singapore requires owners of pumped detention systems to file yearly declarations and documents with PUB (PUB Detention Tank Guide, citing Code of Practice §13.2). Addendum No. 3 to the Code of Practice (16 Apr 2025) introduced annual maintenance declarations for flood barriers and pumped detention tanks, following amendments to the Sewerage and Drainage Act. APWA 5600 (2006, §5608) required easements and maintenance provisions for detention facilities. A registered declaration matters in Bihar because detention tanks

under podiums and in basements are easy to convert to parking or storage once the building is occupied. The 31 May date is set by this Manual to fall before the south-west monsoon (June–September), when most Bihar extreme rainfall occurs.

10.11 O&M plans

10.11.1 Every stormwater facility shall have an O&M plan, approved at Stage 2 and finalised at Stage 4. The plan shall include:

- (a) an inventory and a plan drawing of each facility, with design levels, volumes and outlet details;
- (b) routine tasks and their frequency: inspection, debris and sediment removal, vegetation care, screen cleaning;
- (c) the trigger for sediment removal, stated as a depth or a percentage of design volume;
- (d) inspection checklists matching Form 10-7;
- (e) for pumped systems, gates and valves: the operating rules, test schedule, standby power, and actions on a cyclone or heavy-rainfall warning;
- (f) actions to prevent standing water and mosquito breeding, consistent with the drawdown times of Chapter 4;
- (g) safety measures for confined spaces, deep water and public access;
- (h) access routes and equipment needed (Clause 10.13);
- (i) an annual cost estimate and who pays it; and
- (j) the records to be kept, and for how long.

10.11.2 **Public facilities.** For facilities owned by a ULB or department, the O&M plan shall be included in the asset register (Clause 10.14.3) and funded in the annual maintenance budget.

Commentary. Bihar runs its river flood season through WRD, whose Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC) issues a daily flood bulletin "generally from 15th June to 15th October" (FMISC) and whose anti-erosion works are due by 15 May (as reported). For the urban drains the orders found are local: PMC's deadline for desilting its drains was 31 May, followed in 2026 by a citywide drain-cleaning drive to 15 June (as reported), and no UDHD order setting a statewide deadline for desilting the nalas was found. BUIDCO is reported to run Patna's drainage pumping stations in shifts with a control room, to have posted night-shift engineers at seven of them in July 2026, and to monitor nine major sump houses in real time from the Patna Smart City ICCC (as reported). In September 2019, 38 of 39 sump houses were reported not working and the State's inquiry was reported to find that pumps were not started on time (as reported). No operating rule for any sluice, flap gate or drainage pumping station in a Bihar city, linking it to a river stage or a rainfall warning, was found in the public domain. Every gate and pump in this Manual needs a written rule for what happens when a warning is issued.

10.12 Inspection frequencies

10.12.1 **Owner inspections.** Owners shall inspect facilities at least as set out in Table 10.3:

Table 10.3 — Minimum owner inspection frequencies

Facility type	Routine	Pre-monsoon (by 31 May; 15 May in BR-B and BR-C)	After a heavy-rainfall event
Retention / infiltration (soakaways, trenches, bioretention, permeable paving)	Every 6 months	Yes	Yes

Facility type	Routine	Pre-monsoon (by 31 May; 15 May in BR-B and BR-C)	After a heavy-rainfall event
Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area	Every 6 months	Yes	Yes
Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet	Every 6 months	Yes	Yes
Pumped detention, pumps and controls	Monthly test run	Yes, with full duty test	Yes
Flap / tide gate, non-return valve	Every 3 months	Yes, with seal test	Yes
Gross pollutant trap / first-flush device	Every 3 months	Yes	Yes
Private drains and inlets	Every 6 months	Yes	—

A heavy-rainfall event, for this Clause, is a day on which the nearest approved gauge records rainfall at or above the IMD "heavy rainfall" category, or a day for which a red alert is issued for the district. In Bihar, the pre-monsoon inspection of sluices, flap gates, non-return valves and pumped facilities, including the sump houses (drainage pumping stations), with the pump duty and gate seal tests, shall be completed by **31 May**, and by **15 May** in sub-areas BR-B (Mithila and Kosi plain) and BR-C (Seemanchal), where May is already wet; these facilities, with their standby generators, shall be certified ready by **1 June**, with every gate on an outfall to a river operated through its full travel. Pumps, their standby power and the sluices shall then be kept on monsoon standby, with the monthly test run, until **15 October**, and at an outfall to a river until the river at the governing gauge has fallen below its danger level and the sluices have been reopened, if that is later.

10.12.2 **Authority inspections.** The Authority shall inspect:

- (a) every facility on a site of 1,000 m² or more, or under Clause 10.6.1(c) or (d), at least once every 2 years, and every year in a flood-sensitive catchment; and
- (b) a random sample of at least 10% of other facilities each year.

10.12.3 The results of Authority inspections shall be entered in the facility register (Clause 10.17).

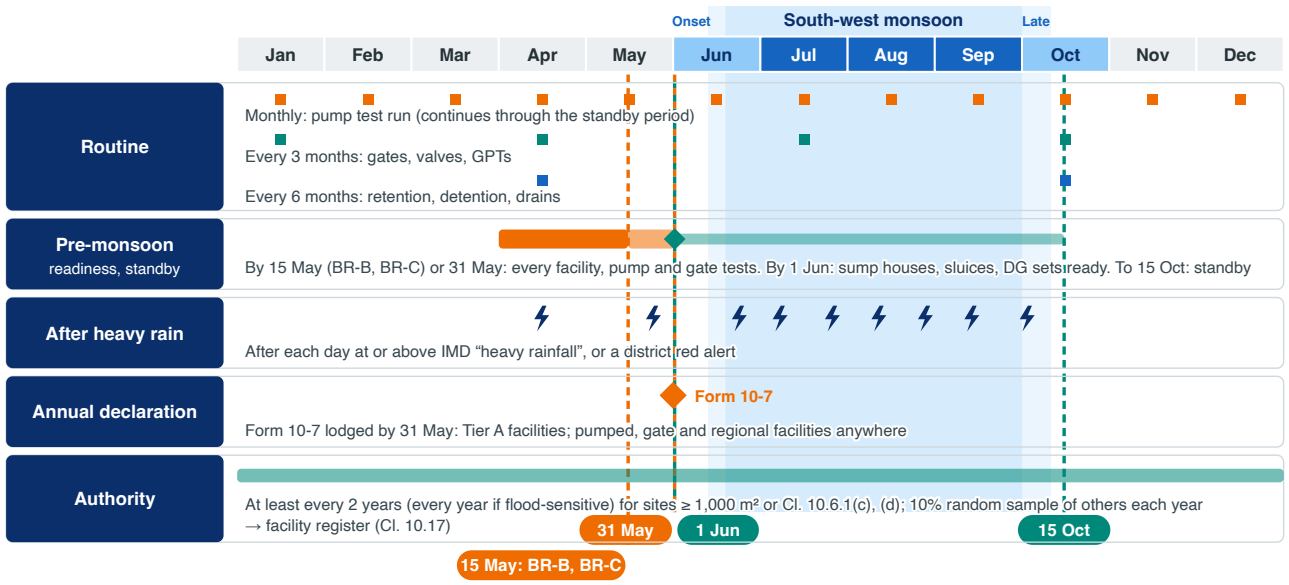


Figure 10.3 — Annual maintenance cycle and who is responsible: routine, pre-monsoon (by 31 May) and post-event inspections, the annual declaration (Form 10-7) and Authority inspections (Clauses 10.10–10.12 and 10.14). Original drawing for this Manual. The timing follows the south-west monsoon (June–September); tick positions within the year are illustrative.

Commentary. The split in Clause 10.12.2 follows the MBBL 2016 inspection regime for RWH, which requires 100% monitoring of buildings over 1,000 m² and a 10% random check below that (MBBL 2016, §9.6). The inspection intervals in Table 10.3 are set by this Manual. The 31 May deadline, and 15 May in sub-areas BR-B and BR-C, are set by this Manual for the onset of the south-west monsoon in mid-June; no UDHD order setting a statewide desilting deadline was found, though PMC's own deadline for desilting was 31 May (as reported). The normal onset is 13 June at Purnea, 16 June at Patna and Gaya and 18 June at Chhapra (IMD, 1961–2019 normals), and the north-east is already wet in May, with normals of 166.5 mm at Kishanganj and 127.4 mm at Purnea; pre-monsoon falls include 271.8 mm at Motihari on 29 May 2006, 220.5 mm at Purnea on 27 May 1887 and 214.6 mm at Sabour on 22 April 1971 (IMD). The earlier date in BR-B and BR-C also matches WRD's 15 May deadline for anti-erosion works (as reported). NDMA (2010) sets 31 March for pre-monsoon desilting nationally; this Manual allows until 31 May, or 15 May, so that dry-season work can be finished, and keeps 31 May for the annual declaration. Sump houses, pumps, sluices, gates and their standby generators must in addition be certified ready by 1 June, before the earliest normal onset. The normal withdrawal is 6–10 October (IMD), it came on 13 October in 2025 (as reported), and October storms include 458.2 mm at Buchaha (Muzaffarpur) on 4 October 1961 (IMD). Pumps and sluices are therefore kept on standby to 15 October, the end of the period of WRD's daily flood bulletin (Figure 10.3), and at an outfall to a river until the river has fallen below its danger level and the sluices are reopened, if that is later. The post-event inspections of Table 10.3 cover storms at any time of year.

10.13 Maintenance access

10.13.1 Every facility shall have permanent access for inspection and maintenance, shown on the approved drawings and protected by the maintenance declaration or, for public facilities, by an easement or land transfer.

10.13.2 **Surface facilities.** Basins, ponds and open channels shall have a vehicle access route to the inlet, the outlet and the base, and a maintenance strip along at least one side. Ramps into basins shall be suitable for the plant needed to remove sediment.

10.13.3 **Underground facilities.** Tanks shall have:

- (a) an access opening over the inlet, the outlet and each chamber;
- (b) fixed ladders or steps, and ventilation for confined-space entry;
- (c) a sump or low point for sediment removal; and
- (d) headroom sufficient for manual cleaning.

10.13.4 **Outlets.** Orifices and screens shall be reachable for cleaning without entering a full facility.

10.13.5 Access routes shall not be built over, fenced off or used for parking in a way that prevents access.

> Commentary. APWA 5600 (2006, §5608) required a 15-ft (about 4.5 m) maintenance access strip for detention facilities. Plot sizes in Bihar cities make a fixed width hard to apply to every site, so this Manual sets functional requirements. Annex 10C covers maintenance access dimensions.

10.14 Handover of public assets to the ULB

10.14.1 Drains, roads, open space facilities, regional facilities and other stormwater assets that a developer builds for transfer to a ULB shall be handed over only when:

- (a) the as-built certificate (Clause 10.9) has been accepted;
- (b) the facility has been cleaned, and pipes and culverts have been inspected internally (for example by CCTV or manual entry), with the record handed over;
- (c) the land, or an easement over it, has been transferred to the ULB;
- (d) the O&M plan, drawings, GIS data and warranties have been handed over; and
- (e) the **Asset Handover Certificate (Form 10-8)** has been signed by both parties.

10.14.2 **Defects liability.** The developer shall remain responsible for defects and for routine maintenance for a defects liability period that includes at least **one full monsoon season, from 15 June to 15 October,** after handover. The ULB may hold a security deposit for this period.

10.14.3 **Asset register.** On acceptance, the ULB shall enter the asset in its GIS drainage asset register and in the facility register of Clause 10.17.

10.14.4 **Private facilities.** A private facility remains the owner's responsibility under its maintenance declaration unless the ULB formally accepts it under this Clause.

> Commentary. NDMA (2010) calls for a GIS inventory of drains. Requiring the developer's GIS data at handover builds that inventory as the city grows, at no cost to the ULB. The defects period spans one monsoon because

many defects in Bihar drainage show up only in the first SW monsoon.

10.15 Enforcement

10.15.1 **Offences.** The following are contraventions of this Manual:

- (a) building without an approved drainage design where one is required;
- (b) building a facility other than as approved;
- (c) removing, filling, covering, reducing or changing the use of a facility without approval;
- (d) failing to maintain a facility, or to submit Form 10-7;
- (e) a sewage connection to a storm drain;
- (f) building or filling in a waterbody setback or no-fill zone (Chapter 7);
- (g) obstructing a natural drainage path or major-system flow path; and
- (h) false or negligent certification.

10.15.2 **Graduated response.** The Authority shall respond in the following order, moving to a later step where an earlier one fails or where the contravention is serious (Table 10.4):

Table 10.4 — Graduated enforcement response

Step	Action
1	Written notice stating the contravention, the clause breached, the remedy and a compliance period.
2	Stop-work order, or withholding of the completion certificate, for development not yet complete.
3	Penalty under the applicable Act or rules.
4	Works in default by the Authority, with the cost recovered from the owner.
5	Disconnection of the private drain connection to the public system, where this causes no hazard to others.
6	Report of the certifying professional to the registering authority, and suspension from the empanelled list.

10.15.3 **Immediate action.** Where a contravention puts life or property at risk during a monsoon, the Authority may carry out works in default at once and recover the cost later.

10.15.4 **Security deposits.** For sites under Clause 10.6.1, the Authority may require a security deposit or bank guarantee, released after the as-built certificate is accepted, to cover works in default.

10.15.5 **Record.** Every notice and action under this Clause shall be entered in the facility register.

Commentary. Penalties are referred to generically. This Manual cannot itself create offences or fines, and the powers come from the Acts under which the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 are made and from the municipal Acts. The graduated steps are set by this Manual. In Bihar the courts and the National Green Tribunal have become the working regulators of drains, ponds and floodplains. In the batch of public interest petitions led by CWJC No. 15027 of 2018 the Patna High Court recorded that "the water logging is a recurring problem which is happening everywhere in the city of Patna" (order of 18 October 2019). On 5 March 2025 the Eastern Zone bench of the Tribunal recorded the recommendation that "stormwater remains separate from sewage" and that BUIDCO plan the diversion of sewage to the nearest treatment plant (O.A. 188/2024/EZ, as quoted by DM Patna 2025); in O.A. 155/2022/EZ it directed the removal within three months of encroachment on three ponds in Darbhanga (order of 23 March 2023), which the petitioners say was not done (as alleged); and in O.A. 200/2014 it pressed the State on floodplain demarcation, to which WRD's floodplain zoning order of 6 March 2025 refers (Chief Secretary 2026). A CAG audit of sewerage in Patna under Namami Gange found 19 drains carrying 628.5 MLD of sewage against six

treatment plants of 350 MLD, and that the sewage discharge had been assessed from projected population rather than measured (CAG, Patna sewerage; report number and date to be confirmed); no CAG audit of urban drainage, AMRUT or Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali in Bihar was found. The statutes carry some powers: the Bihar Municipal Act 2007 lets the Chief Municipal Officer require separate drains for sewage and for rain water (s.198) and refuse occupation of premises without a drain (s.201), and the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act 1956 provides for the removal of encroachment from public land, which includes land over which the community has a right of irrigation; but the same Municipal Act also lets the Chief Municipal Officer direct the filling up of a tank or pond that appears injurious to health (ss.184 and 251(e)). This shows that a rule without routine enforcement does little. Professional accountability (step 6) is often more effective than fines on owners, because it acts on the person who signs the design.

10.16 Monitoring and post-event review

10.16.1 **Monitoring network.** Tier A authorities shall maintain, or have access to, recording rain gauges and water-level gauges at their main outfalls and regional facilities. Data shall be archived at intervals of 15 minutes or less.

10.16.2 **Event reports.** After any event that floods buildings within a ULB area, the ULB shall prepare a short event report within **3 months**, recording:

- (a) rainfall at the nearest approved gauges, by duration, compared with the design depths of Chapter 2;
- (b) the stage of the receiving river (the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati or another river) at the nearest CWC or WRD gauge and, where it is gauged, at the outfall, each on a named datum; the state of every sluice, flap gate, interception structure and drainage pumping station (sump house) on the outfall and on the drain upstream of it, with the hours each pump ran and any loss of power; and releases from any barrage or dam upstream;
- (c) flooded locations, depths and durations, with flood marks surveyed where possible;
- (d) the performance of public and inspected private facilities, including any blocked outlets, failed pumps or closed gates; and
- (e) recommended actions.

10.16.3 **Post-event review.** Where an event exceeds the 1% AEP 24-hour or 72-hour design depth at two or more approved gauges in the State (Clause 2.14.1), BSDMA, with the State Stormwater Technical Committee, shall lead a post-event review within **12 months**. It shall assess whether the criteria of this Manual were adequate, and shall feed into the review of Clause 1.12.

10.16.4 **Facility performance sampling.** The Authority shall, at least every 5 years, monitor a sample of private retention and detention facilities through a monsoon, to test whether they perform as designed.

Commentary. The post-event trigger is the review trigger already set in Clause 2.14.1. Bihar's urban floods have been examined by courts and administrative inquiries rather than by technical reviews. In the waterlogging of Patna of 27–30 September 2019, Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony stood under water for days and the NDRF rescued more than 4,000 people (as reported). The rain was about 177–226 mm over two to four days, the totals conflicting (as reported), which is below the 50-year 24-hour depth of the CWC Flood Estimation Report plates for Patna (this Manual's reading): the failure was of drainage and pumping, not of rainfall rarity. The State's inquiry was reported to find that pumps were not started on time and drains not cleaned, and to recommend 14 new pumping stations and 100 dewatering pumps (as reported); its report was not found. The Patna High Court asked the State to name the officers and contractors responsible for cleaning the drains, to say which sump houses had worked, and to say what was done after the meteorological forecast (order of 18 October 2019). No technical review was found of the rain of 29 July 2025 at Patna, reported as 175.4 mm in 24 hours (as reported), or of the Ganga flood of September 2026, and no record of flood extents, depths or durations kept by

any Nagar Nigam was found. NDMA (2010) called for automatic rain gauges at "1 in every 4 sq km" in Class I, II and III cities. Clause 10.16.1 asks only for gauges where they serve design and review. The report and sampling intervals are set by this Manual.

10.17 Data publication

10.17.1 Each Authority shall publish, on a public website, and update at least quarterly:

- (a) a **facility register**: location, type, design volume, release rate, owner, date of as-built acceptance, and the latest inspection result for every facility approved under this Manual;
- (b) a summary of each approved drainage report, with Forms 2-1 and 10-2;
- (c) the register of variances and waivers (Clause 1.10);
- (d) the alternatives adopted under the Policy Supplement (Clause 1.7);
- (e) enforcement actions (Clause 10.15.5); and
- (f) event reports and post-event reviews (Clause 10.16).

10.17.2 The State Stormwater Technical Committee shall publish the compliance calculator, all Annexes, the flood-sensitive catchment maps and the State-level summary of facility registers as open data.

10.17.3 Personal data other than the name of a corporate owner or association shall not be published. Security-sensitive details of critical infrastructure may be withheld, with the reason recorded.

10.17.4 Published data shall be machine-readable (for example CSV and GeoPackage) and released under the Government Open Data Licence – India or an equivalent open licence.

Commentary. Transparency is a design criterion in its own right here. Some of Bihar's drainage records are public: the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 and UDHD's guidebook on the approval procedure are on the State's portals, the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 was posted for comment, WRD's floodplain zoning order and BUIDCO's table of drains and their tapping status can be read as filed before the National Green Tribunal, and CWC and WRD publish daily river bulletins through FMISC. Much else could not be found in the public domain: the notification number and date of the 2014 bye-laws and of their amendments; the DPRs of BUIDCO's storm water drainage project in Patna, of the Danapur–Khagaul drains and of the Darbhanga scheme, with their design criteria; the drainage section of the Patna Master Plan 2031; any order dividing Patna's drains and sump houses between PMC and BUIDCO; an inventory of the sluices, flap gates and drainage pumping stations of any city, with pump capacities, sump volumes and operating rules; the Rajya Sabha reply of 27 November 2024 on the pumping stations; the report of the 2019 Patna inquiry; CWC's station sheets, gauge datums and hourly records for the Ganga, Sone and Punpun gauges at Patna; any design river level at an outfall; an urban flood plan or SOP of BSDMA; the commencement of the Bihar Ground Water Act 2006 and any area notified under it; final notifications of wetlands under the Wetlands Rules 2017; and the number and tabling date of the CAG report on Patna sewerage. Publishing inputs and facility records lets the public, researchers and other agencies check that the city's growing stock of private storage actually exists. The open-format requirement is set by this Manual.

10.18 Review of this chapter

10.18.1 This chapter shall be reviewed with the Manual under Clause 1.12. The forms and the compliance calculator may be revised by the State Stormwater Technical Committee between reviews, under Clause 10.5.3.

References (chapter)

- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, *Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme* (file labelled "Report No-5"; report number and tabling date to be confirmed). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2006). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, §5608 (easements, maintenance, submittals) and §5609 (plan requirements). https://www.kcwater.us/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/Design-Criteria-%E2%80%93-Section-5600-%E2%80%93-Storm-Drainage-Systems-and-Facilities.pdf
- Kansas City Metro Chapter APWA (2025). Section 5600 Storm Drainage Systems and Facilities, Version 2025.01.
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). Stormwater management page: 2025 Stormwater Standards Manual, Compliance Calculator, Calculator Start-Up Guide, Policy Supplement. https://www.marc.org/environment/environment-plans/stormwater-management
- PUB Singapore (2018, with Addendum No. 3 of 16 Apr 2025). Code of Practice on Surface Water Drainage, 7th ed. https://info.corenet.gov.sg/docs/default-source/pub-circulars/pub-circular_cop-7th-ed-addendum-no-3_16-apr-2025.pdf?sfvrsn=5a2c1e1a_2
- PUB Singapore (2024). On-site Stormwater Detention Tank Technical Guide. https://www.pub.gov.sg/-/media/PUB/PDF/detentionTank.pdf
- PUB Singapore (11 Nov 2024). Amendments to Sewerage and Drainage Act (press release). https://www.pub.gov.sg/Resources/News-Room/PressReleases/2024/11/Amendments-to-Sewerage-and-Drainage-Act
- MoHUA (2016). Model Building Bye-Laws, Chapter 9, §9.6. https://web.archive.org/web/2022/https://mohua.gov.in/upload/uploadfiles/files/MBBL.pdf
- National Disaster Management Authority (2010). National Guidelines on Management of Urban Flooding. https://sdma.goa.gov.in/sites/default/files/2022-05/management_urban_flooding.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2014). *Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014* (English, file "Dec-2014"; Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text) (bye-laws 29, 30, 47 and 51), on the PMC building plan approval portal. https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/PlanningPortals/images/Bihar%20Building%20Bylaw%20English%20Dec-2014.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar. *Guidebook on Application, Approval & Occupancy Procedure under Bihar Building Bye Laws, 2014* (posted May 2024). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2024/May/07-May-2024/19/DyPage/cd47e267-11d1-4671-a56a-b63a6c83a779.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2026). *Bihar Building Byelaws 2026*, draft posted on 5 June 2026 (not notified; cl. 6 and 41). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2026/Jun/05-Jun-2026/19/LatestNews/0424d72a-9e14-4227-8221-8adb08c0c009.pdf
- Bihar Municipal Act 2007, sections 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 198, 201, 204 and 251 (IELRC copy). https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 311 of 5 April 2018 (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- Bihar Ease of Doing Business Act 2026 (Act No. 32 of 2026), Bihar Gazette (Extraordinary) No. 1120 of 16 September 2026, Schedule V (PRS copy). https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2026/Act32of2026BR.pdf
- Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act 1956 (copy on the Bihar State Wetland Authority site). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/Downloads/BIHAR%20PUBLIC%20LAND%20ENCROACHMENT%20ACT,%201956.pdf
- Patna High Court (2019). Order of 18 October 2019 in CWJC No. 15027 of 2018 with connected writs, *Navin Kumar Singh v. State of Bihar*. https://slic.org.in/uploads/2019/10/Vishal-PIL-ORDER.pdf

- District Magistrate, Patna (2025). Supplementary affidavit of 19 August 2025 in National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone) O.A. 188/2024/EZ, *Saurav Narayan v. Bihar State Pollution Control Board*, quoting the order of 5 March 2025. https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755756412_pagenumber.pdf
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan (2024). Objection of 23 November 2024 in M.A. 18/2024 in National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone) O.A. 155/2022/EZ (Darbhanga ponds; reciting the order of 23 March 2023). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1732521637_pagenumber.pdf
- Chief Secretary, Government of Bihar (2026). Supplementary affidavit of 12 January 2026 in National Green Tribunal O.A. 200/2014, *M.C. Mehta v. Union of India*, annexing BUIDCO letter No. 4400 of 13 December 2025 (drain status) and WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (floodplain zoning of embanked rivers). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar, Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC). Home page (daily flood bulletin period) and CWC Lower Ganga Division-2 daily water level bulletin of 31 October 2026. https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/ ; https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- Das, S.K. et al. (2022). Isopluvial analysis and intensity–duration–frequency curves for different cities in India. *MAUSAM* 73(4), 887–898 (cited for the absence of a Bihar station). https://metnet.imd.gov.in/docs/mausamdocs/173412_F.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2020). Press release of 15 May 2020: new normal dates of onset and withdrawal of the south-west monsoon (Pai et al.). https://internal.imd.gov.in/press_release/20200515_pr_804.pdf
- India Meteorological Department (2011). *Climate of Bihar*, Climatological Summaries of States Series No. 18 (district normals 1951–2000; heaviest 24-hour rainfall by district). https://mausam.imd.gov.in/patna/mcdata/climateofbihar.pdf
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012) (Bihar stations). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- National Institute of Hydrology, Patna. *Characteristics of short interval rainfall in Punpun basin, Bihar*, research report (listing only; not obtained). https://oldiwp.indiawaterportal.org/articles/characteristics-short-interval-rainfall-punpun-basin-bihar-research-report-national
- Rajya Sabha (2024). Reply to a question of 27 November 2024 on storm water drainage and drainage pumping stations in Bihar (listing seen; not read). https://rsdebate.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/754718/1/PQ_266_27112024_S10_p23_p25.pdf
- Business Standard/ANI (14 October 2019). Show-cause notices served to officials responsible for Patna waterlogging, says Chief Secretary (secondary source). https://business-standard.com/article/news-ani/show-cause-notices-served-to-officials-responsible-for-patna-water-logging-says-chief-secretary-119101401451_1.html
- Hindustan Times (1 October 2019), analysis of IMD rainfall for Patna, 26–29 September 2019; CBS News/AFP (30 September 2019) (secondary sources). https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-lucknow/20191001/281797105729423 ; https://www.cbsnews.com/news/monsoon-season-flooding-india-heavy-late-rains-kills-more-than-100-in-several-days-2019-09-30
- Patna Press (2026). Patna special drain-cleaning drive for monsoon 2026; Bihar monsoon withdrawal 2025; Bihar building bye-laws 2026 self-certification draft (secondary sources). https://patnapress.com/patna-special-drain-cleaning-drive-monsoon-2026/ ; https://patnapress.com/bihar-monsoon-withdrawal-2025-31-percent-deficit/ ; https://patnapress.com/bihar-building-bye-laws-2026-self-certification-draft/
- Patna Press (2025–2026). Reports on BUIDCO's drainage pumping stations, their staffing and the real-time monitoring of nine major sump houses from the Patna Smart City ICCC (secondary sources; addresses not retained).
- GKToday (2026). Bihar drafts new building map approval rules (status of the 2026 draft; secondary source). https://www.gktoday.in/bihar-drafts-new-building-map-approval-rules/

- Prabhat Khabar. Date for completion of anti-erosion works extended (WRD's 15 May deadline; secondary source, year not shown). https://www.prabhatkhabar.com/state/bihar/bhagalpur/date-for-completion-of-anti-erosion-works-has-been-extended
- Patrika (2025). Patna rainfall of 29 July 2025 (secondary source). https://www.patrika.com/en/state-news/patna-breaks-28-year-old-rainfall-record-city-inundated-19820889

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
10A	Compliance calculator and user guide
10B	GIS data specification and attribute schema
10C	Maintenance access dimensions
10D	Model O&M plans by facility type
10E	Empanelment criteria for Stormwater Design Professionals and reviewers
Form 10-1	Drainage Report Checklist
Form 10-2	Compliance Calculator Summary
Form 10-3	Professional Design Certificate
Form 10-4	Hold-Point Inspection Record
Form 10-5	As-built Certificate
Form 10-6	Maintenance Declaration
Form 10-7	Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report
Form 10-8	Asset Handover Certificate
Form 2-1	Design Rainfall Sheet (Chapter 2)

CHAPTER 11

Basin and City Stormwater Master Plans

11.1 Purpose and scope

11.1.1 Chapters 2 to 10 control one project at a time. This chapter sets the requirements for the plan that ties those projects together: the **Basin Stormwater Master Plan (BSMP)**. A BSMP is prepared for each drainage basin of a city or urban area. A city's set of BSMPs makes up its **City Stormwater Master Plan**.

11.1.2 A BSMP shall:

- (a) map flood hazard for the basin under existing and future conditions;
- (b) set the level of service each part of the drainage system must achieve (Clause 11.6);
- (c) identify the works, storage and land needed to reach that level of service, and rank them (Clauses 11.7 and 11.8);
- (d) reserve land for regional storage, pokhar and tank restoration, and major flow paths in the statutory land-use plan (Clause 11.9);
- (e) set the basin-specific inputs that site designs under Chapter 4 depend on: regional facilities, the fee-in-lieu unit rate, and any basin release rate stricter than Chapter 4 (Clause 11.8.3); and
- (f) recommend catchments for notification as flood-sensitive (Clause 4.5.4).

11.1.3 **Relationship to site design.** Site criteria (Chapters 4 to 8) apply whether or not a BSMP exists. A BSMP may make the site criteria **stricter** for its basin. It shall not relax them, except through the regional detention and fee-in-lieu routes of Clauses 4.13 and 4.5.6.

> Commentary. Bihar is spending heavily on city storm drains, but no city drainage master plan or design standard has been published. The 2026 State budget was reported to provide about ₹3,559 crore for 38 storm water drainage schemes (as reported), and a Rajya Sabha reply is reported to cite State approval of storm water drainage projects worth ₹1,230.74 crore and of 22 new drainage pumping stations (as reported; not read). In Patna, BUIDCO's storm water drainage project is reported to cover 103 drain lines in nine packages, a network of 185 km, worked by catchment, with Catchment-1 and Catchment-2 works in Danapur, Khagaul and Phulwari (as reported); covered trunk drains are being built on the Kurji (Rajiv Nagar) nala, at ₹181 crore, and the Anandpuri nala, at ₹91.27 crore, both begun in August 2025 (as reported); and a DPR for 34.72 km of drains in Danapur and Khagaul, at about ₹197.72 crore, mooted after the floods of 2019, was awaiting Cabinet clearance in May 2022 (as reported). In Darbhanga a storm water drainage scheme of ₹245 crore is being carried out by BUIDCO (Patna High Court order of 20 June 2025, as cited), and petitioners before the Tribunal say that the same scheme of UDHD covers 19 other cities and towns and that the new drains are closed, concrete and connected to sewage (as alleged). The Patna Master Plan 2031, approved by the Cabinet in October 2016 (as reported) and taken forward by PMAA under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012, has a storm water drainage section that was not read. No published document sets a design return period for the drains of any Bihar city. This chapter supplies the design storm, levels of service, storage and buffer criteria that such a plan needs, with the design storms of Chapter 2 and the levels of service of Clause 11.6; it has not been adopted by UDHD, BUIDCO or any other body. A site-level manual cannot fix basin-level problems: lost tank storage, city outfalls to the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun and the rivers of north Bihar closed when the rivers are high, drains that then reach the river only through sump houses, nalas that carry sewage to interception structures at their outfalls, pokhars, ahars and

chaurs narrowed or filled by encroachment, single drains split between a Nagar Nigam, BUIDCO and WRD, and drains that are adequate on their own but overload the next reach. Comparable manuals pair site criteria with basin planning:

- Denver's Mile High Flood District prepares major drainageway master plans that set regional facilities and release rates.
- The Kansas City APWA criteria rest on regional watershed studies (MARC).
- England's Surface Water Management Plans (Defra, Surface Water Management Plan Technical Guidance, 2010) set a phased method of preparation, risk assessment, options and implementation.
- Malaysia's MSMA requires drainage master plans for urban areas.

This chapter adapts that method to Bihar: to city outfalls on the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun at Patna, and on the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati and the other rivers of the State, that the rivers close in flood, and to drains that then reach the river only through sluices and sump houses; to nalas that carry sewage to interception structures at their outfalls; to drains held by Nagar Nigams, BUIDCO and WRD without an order that divides them; to pokhars, ahars, chaurs and tals that the law and the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign protect but encroachment has reduced; to a State programme of storm water drainage schemes, carried out by BUIDCO, with no published design return period; to a water table so shallow over much of the State that infiltration is the exception; and to a south-west monsoon whose recorded days reach 1.5 to 2 times the 50-year depths of the CWC plates.

11.2 Definitions

Term	Meaning in this Manual
Basin	The land draining to one outfall to the sea, a river, or a major waterbody, as delineated under Clause 11.3.
Basin Stormwater Master Plan (BSMP)	The plan for one basin prepared under this chapter.
Lead Authority	The body responsible for preparing a BSMP (Clause 11.4).
Level of service (LoS)	The flood performance a part of the drainage system must achieve, expressed as an AEP and an outcome (Clause 11.6).
Flood hazard map	A map of flood extent, depth, velocity and hazard class (H1–H6, Chapter 6) for a stated AEP and scenario.
Regional facility	A storage, conveyance or outfall work serving more than one development, identified in a BSMP.
Capital Improvement Programme (CIP)	The ranked, costed list of works in a BSMP (Clause 11.8.4).

11.3 Planning unit: the basin, not the ward

11.3.1 BSMPs shall be prepared **by hydrological basin**, not by ward, zone or local-body boundary. Where a basin crosses local-body boundaries, one BSMP shall cover the whole basin.

11.3.2 Basin boundaries shall be delineated from the digital elevation model of Clause 11.5.2, checked against the drain network, road embankments, canals and tank supply channels. Diversions between basins, whether by canal, drain or surplus course, shall be mapped and represented in the model.

11.3.3 No basin delineation has been published for any Bihar city. For the urban areas where the evidence identifies them, the basins are at least the following:

- **Patna, Ganga:** the catchment of each drain that outfalls to the **Ganga** through its sluice or drainage pumping station, 19 ghat drains from Digha Ghat to Balu Ghat in BUIDCO's list (BUIDCO 2025), each as a basin with the Ganga level at Dighaghat or Gandhi Ghat as the boundary condition and the outfall-closed case of Chapter 5, with the capacity of its pumping station, as a design case;
- **Patna, Punpun and Sone:** the catchments of the city that drain south to the **Punpun**, among them those of the Badshahi and Bakipur Gorakh drains (BUIDCO 2025), with the Punpun level at Sripalpur as the boundary condition, and those that drain west to the **Sone**, with its level at Maner; in both the outfall-closed case is a design case;
- **Patna, trunk nalas:** the **Kurji** (Rajiv Nagar), **Anandpuri**, **Saidpur** and **Bakarganj** nalas now being rebuilt (as reported), each mapped within the basin of its outfall, with the Saidpur nala, which is reported to carry the discharge of nine drainage pumping stations and one treatment plant, and every other pumped transfer mapped as a link between basins (Clause 11.3.2); BUIDCO's Catchment-1 and Catchment-2, and the drains of Danapur, Khagaul and Phulwari, shall be reconciled with these basins;
- **Muzaffarpur, Burhi Gandak:** the catchments that drain to the **Burhi Gandak**, with its level at Sikandarpur as the boundary condition; and
- **Darbhanga, Bagmati and Adhwara:** the catchments that drain to the **Bagmati** and the **Adhwara** group, with their levels at Hayaghat and Ekmighat as boundary conditions, and the Harahi, Digghi and Ganga Sagar ponds, before the Tribunal in O.A. 155/2022/EZ, as storage to be kept.

Other Tier A bodies, including Gaya, Bhagalpur, Bihar Sharif, Purnia and Arrah, shall define their basins in the first BSMP that covers them. Where WRD or CWC has a high flood level, a Flood Plain Zone under WRD Order No. 143 of 2025, a 5-, 25- or 100-year line from the NIH study of the Ganga, an embankment crest level or an operating rule for a river, a barrage, a sluice or a pumping station, the BSMP shall take its boundary conditions from it and show those levels against its own 1% AEP map.

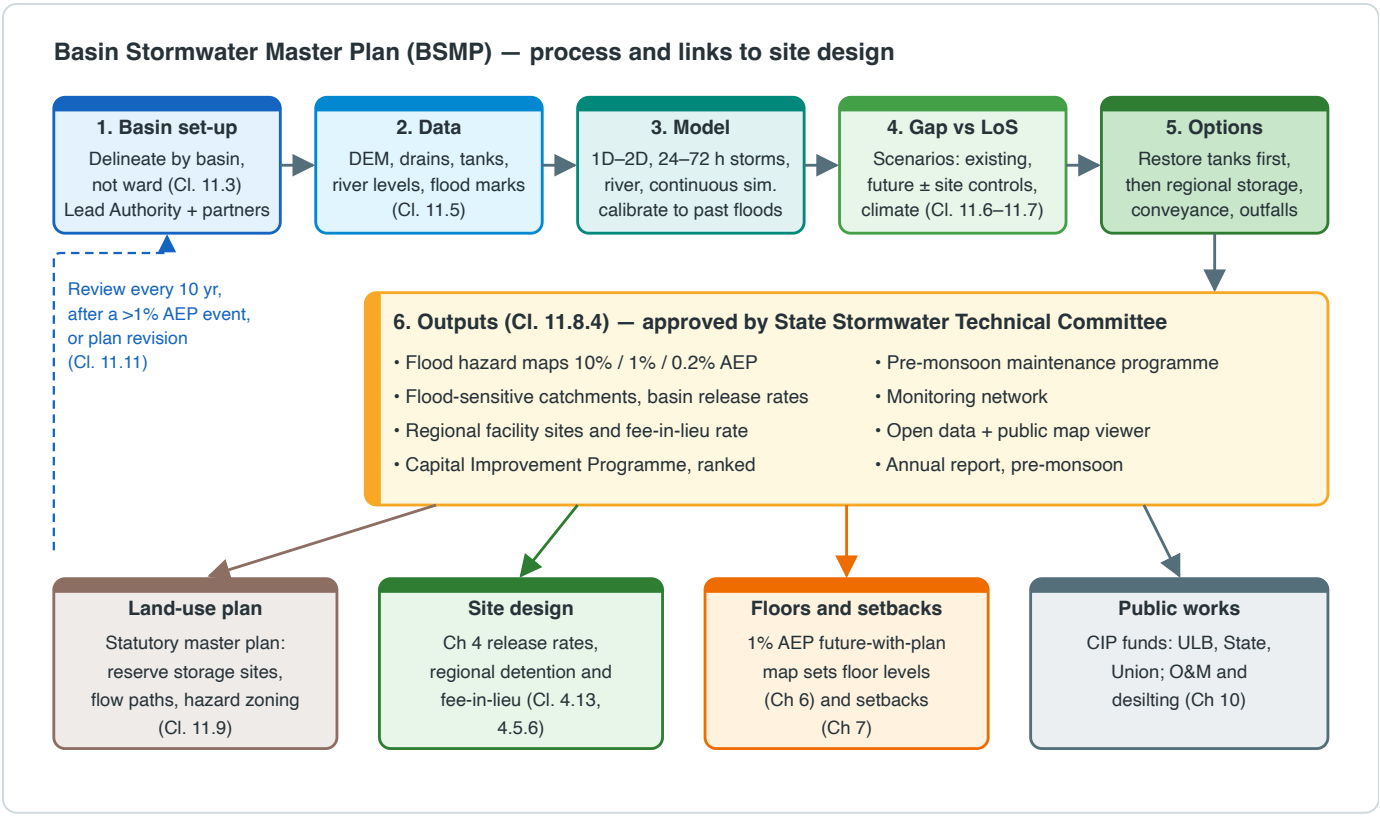


Figure 11.1 — Basin Stormwater Master Plan process and its links to site design. Original drawing for this Manual. The phase structure is adapted from Defra, Surface Water Management Plan Technical Guidance (2010), and Mile High Flood District master planning practice.

> **Commentary.** Water does not follow ward boundaries. A ward-by-ward drain plan can pass the problem to the next ward, and to the next local body. In Bihar a single drain can pass through several owners' hands on its way to the river. The Bihar Municipal Act 2007 vests the public drains in the Municipality (s.195) but lets it make a drain over to another authority with State approval (s.196). In Patna the trunk drains and sump houses passed with the Bihar Rajya Jal Parshad to BUIDCO (Bihar Act 3 of 2018), PMC has said in an affidavit that the drainage system is not directly under it (as cited; not read), and no order dividing the drains between them was found. WRD keeps the rivers, the embankments and their sluices; BUIDCO also builds the sewers and the interception works that tap the drains under Namami Gange; and the drains of the industrial areas belong to BIADA (as this Manual reads the institutional record). The storm drains carry sewage across these boundaries: BUIDCO's table of December 2025 lists 19 drains to the Ganga at Patna, several of them untapped, and two untapped drains to the Punpun (BUIDCO 2025), and 19 Patna drains were found to discharge 628.5 MLD (CAG, Patna sewerage). This clause makes the basin the planning unit, so that one model carries each drain from its head to the river whoever owns each reach, and so that the interception structures are tested against the capacity of the drains they tap (Chapter 8, Clause 8.9.5).

11.4 Who prepares, and when

11.4.1 **Lead Authority.**

- For the basins of a city with a Nagar Nigam: the **Nagar Nigam** (in Patna, **PMC**), which the Bihar Municipal Act 2007 makes responsible for the city's drains and a safe outfall (s.193), jointly with **BUIDCO**, which carries out the State's storm water drainage schemes and runs Patna's trunk drains and sump houses, for the reaches and works it holds; either may prepare the plan as UDHD directs. Where a basin extends beyond the Nagar Nigam, the other local bodies in the basin, and PMAA within the Patna Metropolitan Area, are partners, and one BSMP covers the whole basin (Clause 11.3.1).
- No order dividing the drains of the local bodies, BUIDCO and WRD was found; until one is made, this Manual assigns the reaches within each BSMP as follows, each body being Lead Authority for the reaches it owns or runs and for the parts of the CIP on them: **WRD** for the rivers, their embankments and sluices, the Flood Plain Zones under its Order No. 143 of 2025 and its flood-control drains; the **Minor Water Resources Department** for the ahar-pyne systems and the ponds and tanks in its charge; the **Nagar Nigam**, **Nagar Parishad** or **Nagar Panchayat** for the municipal nalas, road drains and the public tanks vested in it (s.177); **BUIDCO** for the trunk drains and drainage pumping stations it built or runs and for the sewers, interceptors and drain-tapping works; **PMAA** for the Patna Metropolitan Area outside the local bodies and for carrying the BSMPs into the Patna Master Plan 2031 (Clause 11.9); the Road Construction Department and NHAI for the drains of their roads; and **BIADA** for the drains of its industrial areas.
- In Tier B bodies: the Lead Authority is named by UDHD. Basins draining to a common river reach may be grouped into one district-level plan.

The Bihar State Wetland Authority shall be consulted on every BSMP whose basin drains to a notified wetland or a Ramsar site; BSDMA and the district administration on every BSMP; and NMCG, through BUIDCO, on every BSMP that proposes works on a drain tapped or to be tapped under Namami Gange.

WRD, or the Minor Water Resources Department, shall be a partner in every BSMP that includes a river, canal or tank under its control.

11.4.2 **When a BSMP is required.**

- (a) Every Tier A body shall approve BSMPs covering its whole area within **3 years** of this Manual taking effect.
- (b) A BSMP is required before:
  - any regional detention or fee-in-lieu is accepted under Clause 4.13;
  - a fee held under Clause 4.5.6.3 is spent; and
  - a basin-specific release rate is applied under Clause 11.8.3.
- (c) A Tier B body shall prepare a BSMP where its Lead Authority, or the State Stormwater Technical Committee, finds recurrent flooding of buildings or arterial roads.

11.4.3 **Preparation.** BSMPs shall be prepared by, or under the direction of, an engineer empanelled as a Stormwater Design Professional (Chapter 10) with experience in basin-scale modelling.

11.5 Data and surveys

11.5.1 Each BSMP shall assemble and publish (Clause 11.10) the data in Table 11.1:

Table 11.1 — Minimum data and surveys for a BSMP

Data	Minimum requirement
Terrain	Digital elevation model from LiDAR or photogrammetry, with vertical accuracy of 0.15 m RMSE or better in urban areas, tied to the Survey of India datum
Drain network	Inventory of all public drains, culverts and outfalls with invert levels, sizes, condition and silt depth; private drains above 600 mm
Waterbodies	Survey of every tank, pokhar, pond and marsh under Chapter 7: FTL, MWL, bund level, stage–storage, sluices, surplus weirs, supply channels, encroachment
Rivers and canals	Cross-sections at no more than 200 m spacing and at every structure
Outfalls and rivers	The datum of every level named; outfall invert levels against the warning, danger and high flood levels of the receiving river at the nearest CWC or WRD gauge and its recorded peaks; the Flood Plain Zones of embanked rivers under WRD Order No. 143 of 2025 and, when published, the 5-, 25- and 100-year lines of the NIH study of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari; the sluices, flap gates, interception structures and drainage pumping stations (sump houses) on the outfalls and in the river embankments, with their pump capacities, sump volumes and operating rules; embankment crest levels; and releases from any barrage or dam upstream
Rainfall and levels	All available rain gauges (IMD, including the Patna (A), Gaya (A), Bhagalpur, Sabour, Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Purnea, Motihari, Chapra, Forbesganj and Dehri stations and the automatic weather stations and rain gauges reported by the Meteorological Centre Patna, among them Anisabad in Patna; the district rain gauges; the rain and river gauges of CWC (Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna) and of WRD and its FMISC, with the rainfall FMISC compiles from Nepal for the rivers that rise there; and any gauges kept by the Nagar Nigams and BUIDCO) and water-level records, including those for the August 1975 (the Sone and the Ganga at Patna), August 2016 (the Ganga at Patna), August 2017 (north Bihar), September 2019 (Patna) and September 2026 (the Ganga at Patna) events
Flood evidence	Surveyed flood marks and mapped flood extents from past events, including public reports
Land use	Existing land use and imperviousness; future land use from the statutory master plan
Soils and groundwater	HSG map (Annex 3A); seasonal high groundwater; aquifer and recharge zones
Sewer interaction	Known sewage cross-connections, dry-weather flow in drains, and solid-waste hotspots

Commentary. The 0.15 m accuracy has no direct precedent; this Manual sets it because on the diara and floodplains of the Ganga, the Gandak, the Kosi and the other rivers, behind the river embankments, in the chaurs of the north Bihar plain and in the tal lands of the south bank, such as the Mokama group of tals, a small error in ground level moves the flood edge a long way, and the 1% extent from the BSMP sets floor levels (Chapter 6) and setbacks (Chapter 7). Past flood marks matter as much as models. The August 1975 (the Sone and the Ganga at Patna), August 2016 (the Ganga at Patna), August 2017 (north Bihar), September 2019 (Patna) and September 2026 (the Ganga at Patna) events are the best calibration data Bihar has, and much of the evidence is held in photographs, news reports and residents' records that should be collected before it is lost.

11.6 Levels of service

11.6.1 Each BSMP shall adopt the following minimum levels of service. A BSMP may adopt stricter levels.

Table 11.2 — Minimum levels of service

Element	Minimum level of service
Minor system	The design AEP of Chapter 6 (Table 6.1)
Habitable buildings	No flooding above floor level in the 1% AEP (100-yr) event
Critical facilities (hospitals, emergency services, substations, water and sewage plants)	No flooding of the facility in the 0.2% AEP (500-yr) event; access road passable in the 1% AEP event
Evacuation routes and arterial roads	Passable (hazard class H2 or better, Chapter 6) in the 1% AEP event
Ponding drain time	Surface water cleared from roads within **6 hours** after rain ends in the 10% AEP (10-yr) event
Tank and pokhar storage	No net loss of flood storage below the MWL in the basin, measured against the earliest available survey
Outfalls	Functioning under the joint and outfall-closed cases of Chapter 5

Commentary. The building and road levels repeat Chapter 6, so that the basin plan and the site designs aim at the same outcome. The 0.2% AEP for critical facilities, the 6-hour ponding drain time and the no-net-loss rule for tank storage have no direct precedent and are set by this Manual. The drain time reflects what residents notice most after a storm. The no-net-loss rule reflects a loss of storage that has been counted but not measured. In law the ponds of Bihar's towns are public: the public tanks and the land appertaining to them vest in the Municipality and no new tank or pond may be dug without permission (Bihar Municipal Act 2007, ss.177, 183 and 252); public land under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act 1956 includes land over which the community has a right of irrigation, which brings community ahars and pynes within it; and the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 bar building within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank (bye-law 30(B)), which this Manual reads as setting the protected extent at the monsoon water line. The same Municipal Act, however, lets a tank or pond be ordered filled up if it appears injurious to health (ss.184 and 251(e)). The State reports encroachment removed from 28,685 ponds, ahars, pynes and wells under Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali (State portal), while press counts of encroached and recovered ponds conflict, and one reports that the State lost over 100,000 ponds in three decades (as reported). Kabartal in Begusarai, a Ramsar site of 2,620 ha designated on 21 July 2020, is inundated to 1.5 m in the monsoon and drains through the Bagras maun to the Burhi Gandak (Ramsar RIS); in Darbhanga the Tribunal directed the removal of encroachment from three ponds in 2023 (O.A. 155/2022/EZ). No inventory of the pokhars inside any Nagar Nigam, and no survey of the storage of any of them, was found.

11.7 Modelling and scenarios

11.7.1 **Model.** Each BSMP shall use a coupled 1D–2D hydraulic model of:

- the minor system;
- the major (overland) system;
- rivers, canals and tanks; and
- the outfalls.

Methods shall follow Chapter 3. Tidal and river boundaries shall follow Chapter 5.

11.7.2 **Design storms.** The model shall be run for the design storms of Chapter 2, including the 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms, for at least the 50%, 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs. Areal reduction shall be applied under Clause 2.7.3.

11.7.3 **Continuous simulation.** Basins with tank cascades shall also be run by continuous simulation (Clause 3.13), using the full IMD gridded daily record where available and at least 30 years, disaggregated by the temporal patterns of Annex 2D. This shows how full the tanks are when the design storms arrive, and how often heavy rain coincides with a closed outfall. The two-step approach of Clause 3.13.5 may be used: a simplified storage model is run for the whole record, and the coupled 1D–2D model of Clause 11.7.1 is run only for the design storms, starting from the tank levels the continuous run gives. A continuous run of the full 1D–2D model is not required.

11.7.4 **Scenarios.** Each BSMP shall model at least:

- (a) **Existing:** existing land use, network, tanks and outfalls;
- (b) **Future, uncontrolled:** future land use under the statutory master plan, with no site controls;
- (c) **Future, controlled:** future land use with the site controls of Chapter 4;
- (d) **Future, with plan:** scenario (c) plus the works of the CIP; and
- (e) **Climate:** scenarios (a) and (d), with the climate factors of Clause 2.8, used unchanged: no projection of heavy rainfall for Bihar was found, and the reported rise in the intensity of monsoon daily rainfall over north Bihar since about 1960 (as reported) gives no reason to depart from them.

11.7.5 **Calibration.** The model shall be calibrated and validated under Clause 3.15, using at least two of the August 1975 (the Sone and the Ganga at Patna), August 2016 (the Ganga at Patna), August 2017 (north Bihar), September 2019 (Patna) and September 2026 (the Ganga at Patna) events where data exist.

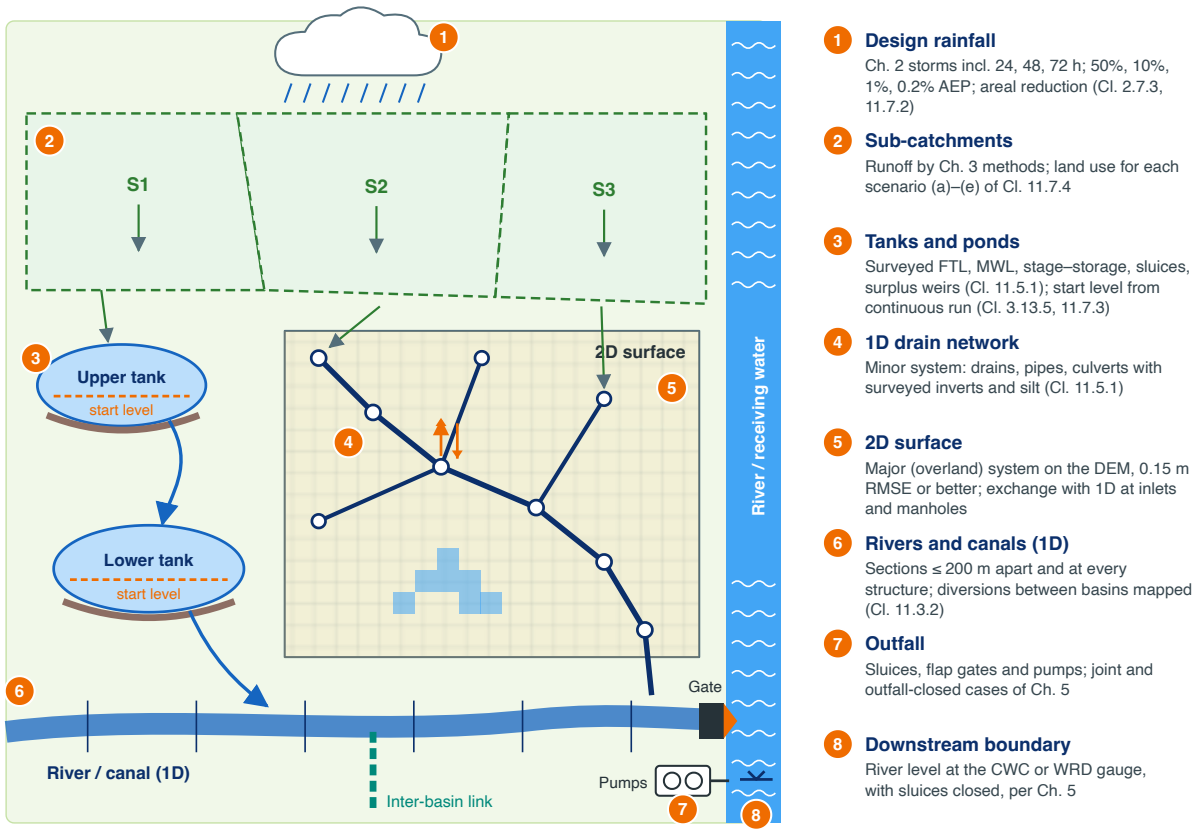


Figure 11.2 — Elements of the BSMP model required by Clause 11.7: sub-catchments, the 1D drain and channel network, the 2D surface, tanks and pokhars with starting levels from continuous simulation, and the tidal or river boundary at the outfall (schematic, not to scale). Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from common coupled 1D–2D urban flood modelling practice.

> **Commentary.** Scenario (b) against scenario (c) shows what the site rules achieve on their own. Scenario (d) shows what the public works add. This comparison is also the evidence base for notifying flood-sensitive catchments (Clause 4.5.4) and for setting a stricter basin release rate (Clause 11.8.3).

11.8 Options, outputs and the Capital Improvement Programme

11.8.1 **Options hierarchy.** Options shall be considered in the following order, the basin-scale form of the hierarchy in Clause 1.2:

1. **Protect and restore storage:** pokhars, tanks, marshes and floodplains, including desilting to the original bed and recovering encroached area (Chapter 7);
2. **Regional retention and detention**, sited by modelling so that releases do not coincide with the main-stem peak (Clause 4.13);
3. **Conveyance** upgrades to drains, canals and culverts;
4. **Outfall works:** sluices and flap gates on the outfalls to the rivers, drainage pumping stations (sump houses) and the storage behind them, including those behind river embankments, interception structures that keep the storm capacity of the drain, and the river embankments;
5. **Property-level protection** where works cannot reach the level of service; and

6. **Non-structural measures:** flood warning (for example IMD district rainfall warnings issued by the Meteorological Centre Patna, CWC flood forecasts and river stages at its sites on the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun, the Gandak, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati, the Kosi, the Mahananda and other rivers against their warning and danger levels, and the daily flood bulletin that WRD's FMISC issues from 15 June to 15 October), flood-hazard zoning, emergency planning and public information.

11.8.2 **Option assessment.** Each option shall be assessed for:

- reduction in flood risk (buildings and people flooded; expected annual damage);
- capital and 30-year maintenance cost;
- land required;
- effect on groundwater recharge where the water table is deep, waterlogging where it is shallow, and the quality of the shallow aquifer in the arsenic belt (Chapter 8);
- effect on downstream basins and the receiving river; and
- who benefits.

11.8.3 **Basin release rates.** Where scenario (c) does not meet the level of service, the BSMP may set a basin-specific **permissible site discharge** ($m^3/s/ha$) stricter than Chapter 4, by AEP and sub-catchment. The rate takes effect under the notification procedure of Clause 4.5.4.

11.8.4 **Outputs.** Each BSMP shall produce:

- (a) flood hazard maps (extent, depth, velocity, hazard class) for the 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs, existing and future-with-plan. The **1% AEP future-with-plan map** becomes the reference map for floor levels (Chapter 6) and setbacks (Chapter 7);
- (b) recommended flood-sensitive catchments and any basin release rates (Clauses 4.5.4 and 11.8.3);
- (c) regional facility sites, with storage volumes, land needs and the sites they serve;
- (d) the fee-in-lieu unit rate for the basin (Clause 4.13.3);
- (e) the **Capital Improvement Programme**: works ranked by risk reduction per rupee, with cost, phasing and agency;
- (f) a pre-monsoon **maintenance programme**: desilting, gate and pump testing, and tank operating rules (Chapter 10); and
- (g) monitoring needs: new rain gauges, level sensors and flood-mark survey points.

> Commentary. Restoring storage comes first because the outfalls of Bihar's larger cities cannot always take more water. When the Ganga, the Sone or the Punpun is high, Patna's sluices are closed and its drains reach the rivers only through the sump houses (as reported), so faster conveyance only fills the sumps and the low colonies behind them sooner; the high flood level of the Punpun at Sripalpur stands 3.31 m above its danger level (CWC), and the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat was reported above its 2016 high flood level in September 2026 (as reported). The State has already restored ponds at scale: the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali campaign reports encroachment removed from 28,685 ponds, ahars, pynes and wells, and 26,381 ponds and 78,090 ahars and pynes restored (State portal). The storms are large for drains with no stated design basis: IMD has recorded 520.0 mm in a day at Motihari (25 August 2005) and 436.0 mm at Muzaffarpur (26 September 2007), and days of 1.5 to 2 times the 50-year 24-hour depths of the CWC plates have fallen at gauges in every part of the State (IMD; this Manual's reading). Conveyance upgrades on their own move water faster to an outfall that the river may close, or that is limited by the capacity of its sluice, interception structure or drainage pumping station. Groundwater in Bihar more often limits recharge than invites it. Over much of the north Bihar plain the water table stood 1.5–5.7 m below ground in the district profiles of 2011 (CGWB, as reported), and of the 535 assessment units of 2024 only 4 were over-exploited and 9 critical, against 473 safe (CGWB, as reported). Along the Ganga the shallow aquifer that recharge reaches carries arsenic above 0.01 mg/L in 27 districts, and fluoride exceeds 1.5 mg/L in 19 districts, mostly in the south (CGWB, as cited in the State's report to the National Green Tribunal in O.A. 728/2023). The law asks for recharge without regard to either: the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 require recharge pits or trenches on plots of all sizes (bye-law 51), and the Bihar Ground Water Act 2006 lets the local authority make rooftop rainwater

harvesting a condition of a building plan of 1,000 m² or more (s.18), though whether the Act has been brought into force was not confirmed. This is why recharge, waterlogging and groundwater quality are all assessment criteria. This Manual ranks projects by risk reduction per rupee so that limited budgets go first where most people are protected.

11.9 Integration with land-use planning

11.9.1 An approved BSMP shall be incorporated into the statutory land-use plan: the Patna Master Plan 2031 and the other master plans and area development schemes made under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012, and the layout plans approved under them and under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014. In particular:

- (a) regional facility sites, restored tank flood storage, and major flow paths shall be **reserved** in the plan;
- (b) the 1% AEP hazard map shall be shown, and Chapter 7 setbacks applied to it;
- (c) land in hazard classes H5–H6 in the 1% AEP event shall not be zoned for new habitable development; and
- (d) the open space of layouts within a basin should be located, where possible, to form part of the major flow paths or regional storage shown in the BSMP.

11.9.2 Where a land-use plan is revised before a BSMP is approved, the planning authority shall use the best available flood mapping and record the BSMP as pending.

Commentary. Bihar draws its floodplain lines by embankment, not yet by return period. WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 makes the land between the embankments of a river embanked on both banks, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank where only one bank is embanked, a Prohibited Zone, in which permanent construction is barred and only temporary or movable structures are allowed, beyond 250 m from the current bank, with the district administration to monitor (WRD 2025). For the rivers that are not embanked, the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari comes first: NIH is to delineate its 5-, 25- and 100-year zones under an MoU of 3 August 2025, the Survey of India has supplied a 10 m DEM of the State, and WRD has asked again for 1 m contours (Chief Secretary 2026). Notified wetlands carry a 50 m line from the mean high flood level (Wetlands Rules 2017), but only draft notifications of Bihar wetlands were seen. In the towns the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 refuse permission in natural waterways or drains shown in the Development Plan or drainage plan and within 9 m of the highest water mark of a tank, and bar basements in flood-prone areas (bye-laws 29(A), 30(B) and 47(1)); the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 would drop the 9 m rule, bar permanent construction only within a water body's boundary, and require site plans to show flood-affected areas (Draft 2026, cl. 6 and Table 5). No setback in metres from a nala exists, and "flood prone" is not defined. These are river-flood and waterbody lines, not drainage-flood lines. A BSMP gives the land-use plans the 1% AEP drainage-flood map, and the buffer widths of Chapter 7, that they need. Using open space land as storage or flow path has no direct precedent; this Manual adopts it because the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 already require at least 5% of the land of a building site to be under tree cover, and call 10% desirable for larger buildings (bye-law 32), require rainwater harvesting on plots of all sizes, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ per 100 m² of roof, and suggest replacing topsoil in open ground with river sand so that rain water percolates slowly (bye-law 51), but set no detention or pervious-area rule; storage placed in a layout's open space builds on these duties, and because that land still serves as open space, the storage must stay usable as one. Placing it on the flow path costs the developer nothing extra and gives the basin storage it would otherwise have to buy.

11.10 Consultation and publication

11.10.1 A draft BSMP shall be published for public comment for at least **60 days**, with public meetings in each affected local body.

11.10.2 After approval, the following shall be published as open data:

- the model files;
- the flood hazard maps;
- the data of Clause 11.5.1, except security-sensitive asset details; and
- the CIP.

They shall also be shown on a public map viewer.

> Commentary. Publishing the maps lets buyers, lenders, insurers and residents see flood hazard before they build or buy. Publishing the model lets designers use the same boundary conditions as the Authority, so site designs and the basin plan stay consistent. This matches the publication approach of Chapter 10.

11.11 Approval, review and reporting

11.11.1 **Approval.** BSMPs shall be approved by the State Stormwater Technical Committee (Chapter 1), after review of the model and of the public comments.

11.11.2 **Review.** Each BSMP shall be reviewed:

- every **10 years**;
- within **2 years** of an event exceeding the 1% AEP design depth in the basin (Clause 2.14); and
- when the statutory land-use plan is revised.

11.11.3 **Annual report.** The Lead Authority shall publish an annual implementation report before each SW monsoon (by 31 May). The report shall show:

- CIP progress;
- the fee-in-lieu ledger (Clause 4.13.4);
- maintenance completed; and
- any flooding against the levels of service.

11.12 Interim arrangements

11.12.1 Until a BSMP is approved for a basin:

- (a) all site criteria of Chapters 4 to 8 apply in full;
- (b) regional detention and fee-in-lieu under Clause 4.13 are not available, except the holding of fees under Clause 4.5.6.3;
- (c) floor levels and setbacks use the best available mapping, and the methods of Chapters 6 and 7 where no mapping exists; and
- (d) public drain projects shall include a basin-level check that their outfall and downstream reaches can take the design flow under the Chapter 5 tailwater cases.

References (chapter)

- Chief Secretary, Government of Bihar (2026). Supplementary affidavit of 12 January 2026 in National Green Tribunal O.A. 200/2014, *M.C. Mehta v. Union of India*, annexing UDHD letter No. 516 of 9 December 2025, BUIDCO letter No. 4400 of 13 December 2025 with the status of drains and their tapping, the correspondence of WRD with the Survey of India and NIH, and WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, *Implementation of Flood Plain Zoning for embanked rivers within Bihar State* (Hindi). https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/Supplementary%20affidavit%20on%20behalf%20of%20the%20Chief%20Secretary,%20State%20of%20Bihar%20in%20OA%20No.%20200%20of%202014%20(M%20C%20MEHTA%20Vs.%20UNION%20OF%20INDIA%20and%20Ors).pdf
- Defra (2010). *Surface Water Management Plan Technical Guidance*. Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs, London.
- Mile High Flood District (Denver). Master planning programme and Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual.
- Mid-America Regional Council (2025). APWA Stormwater Standards Supplement; KC Metro APWA Section 5600, Version 2025.01.
- Department of Irrigation and Drainage Malaysia (2012). *Urban Stormwater Management Manual for Malaysia (MSMA)*, 2nd ed.
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2014). *Bihar Building Bye-Laws, 2014* (English, file "Dec-2014"; Notification No. 577 (file 11/न०वि०(मा०)-06/2013), Patna, 8 December 2014, as printed in the official Hindi text) (bye-laws 29, 30, 32, 47 and 51). https://automap.bihar.gov.in/PATNABPASPORTAL/PlanningPortals/images/Bihar%20Building%20Bylaw%20English%20Dec-2014.pdf
- Urban Development and Housing Department, Government of Bihar (2026). *Bihar Building Byelaws 2026*, draft posted on 5 June 2026 (not notified; cl. 6 and Table 5). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/file_2/FileUpload/2026/Jun/05-Jun-2026/19/LatestNews/0424d72a-9e14-4227-8221-8adb08c0c009.pdf
- Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012 (Act 20 of 2012, with Act 4 of 2022 appended; PRS copy). https://prsindia.org/files/bills_acts/acts_states/bihar/2012/2012Bihar20.pdf
- Bihar Municipal Act 2007, sections 177, 183, 184, 193, 195, 196, 251 and 252 (IELRC copy). https://www.ielrc.org/content/e0715.pdf
- Bihar Ground Water (Regulation and Control of Development and Management) Act 2006, section 18 (Bihar Gazette scan, FAOLEX; commencement not confirmed). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/IND197019.pdf
- Bihar State Water and Sewage Board (Repeal) Act 2017 (Bihar Act 3 of 2018) (FAOLEX copy). https://faolex.fao.org/docs/pdf/ind198266.pdf
- Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act 1956 (copy on the Bihar State Wetland Authority site). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/Downloads/BIHAR%20PUBLIC%20LAND%20ENCROACHMENT%20ACT,%201956.pdf
- Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change (2017). Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017, rule 4(2)(vi); Bihar State Wetland Authority, home and notifications pages (draft notifications of Bihar wetlands). https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ ; https://bswa.bihar.gov.in/ActRulesandNotification.aspx
- Ramsar Convention. Ramsar Information Sheet, Kabartal Wetland, site 2436 (designated 21 July 2020). https://rsis.ramsar.org/RISapp/files/RISrep/IN2436RIS_2010_en.pdf
- Government of Bihar. Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan page, State portal (components and progress). https://betastate.bihar.gov.in/jaljivan.aspx
- Comptroller and Auditor General of India. Audit Report (Performance and Compliance Audit) for the year ended March 2020, Government of Bihar, Chapter III, para 3.1, *Development of Sewerage Infrastructure in Patna under Namami Gange Programme* (report number and tabling date to be confirmed). https://cag.gov.in/uploads/download_audit_report/2020/05-%20Report%20No-5%20-English%20-%20Chapter%20-%203-06244310a0bd463.62428332.pdf
- Talab Bachao Abhiyan (2025). Application to the National Green Tribunal (Eastern Zone) against the Darbhanga storm water drainage and canal-lining projects; and objection of 23 November 2024 in M.A. 18/2024 in O.A. 155/2022/EZ (Darbhanga ponds).

https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1755167303.pdf ; https://www.greentribunal.gov.in/sites/default/files/news_updates/1732521637_pagenumber.pdf
- Central Water Commission, Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna (2026). Daily water level and flood forecast bulletin of 31 October 2026 (warning, danger and highest levels at the Bihar sites; read from the page image; datum to be confirmed), via WRD's FMISC. https://www.fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/bulletin/CWC_Bulletin.pdf
- Water Resources Department, Government of Bihar, FMISC. Home page (daily flood bulletin, 15 June to 15 October). https://fmiscwrdbihar.gov.in/
- India Meteorological Department. Extremes of Temperature and Rainfall for Indian Stations (up to 2012) (Bihar stations). https://imdpune.gov.in/library/public/EXTREMES%20OF%20TEMPERATURE%20and%20RAINFALL%20upto%202012.pdf
- Central Ground Water Board. Dynamic ground water resources of Bihar, 2024 assessment (as summarised; secondary source). https://www.cgwb.gov.in/cgwbpnm/public/uploads/documents/17435848198417103 60file.pdf
- Rajya Sabha (2024). Reply to a question of 27 November 2024 on storm water drainage and drainage pumping stations in Bihar (listing seen; not read). https://rsdebate.nic.in/bitstream/123456789/754718/1/PQ_266_27112024_S10_p23_p25.pdf
- NBM&CW. Construction begins on stormwater drainage project in Patna to prevent floods (103 drain lines, nine packages, 185 km; secondary source, undated). https://www.nbmcw.com/news/infra-development/construction-begins-on-stormwater-drainage-project-in-patna-to-prevent-floods.html
- Patna Press (2026). Bihar budget 2026: urban development, drainage and waste management; BUIDCO inspection of Catchment-1 and -2 works; the Saidpur and Bakarganj nalas (secondary sources). https://patnapress.com/bihar-budget-urban-development-drainage-waste-management-2026/ ; https://patnapress.com/buidco-drainage-inspection-catchment-1-2-patna-monsoon-work-2026/ ; https://patnapress.com/?p=63534
- Press reports of August 2025 on the foundation of the Kurji (Rajiv Nagar) and Anandpuri nala works (secondary sources; addresses not retained).
- Hindustan Times (30 May 2022). Report on the Danapur–Khagaul–Phulwari drainage DPR (secondary source). https://www.pressreader.com/india/hindustan-times-ranchi/20220530/281556589453660
- Down To Earth. Reports on encroached and recovered water bodies in Bihar (secondary sources). https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/over-20-000-water-bodies-freed-from-encroachment-in-bihar-for-rainwater-harvesting-78741 ; https://www.downtoearth.org.in/water/nearly-3-years-since-campaign-only-5-public-ponds-free-of-encroachment-in-bihar-76044
- Hydrology (MDPI) (2024). Study of Bihar rainfall on 1901–2020 gridded data (abstract; secondary source). https://doaj.org/article/69bb222448444c808df7ab0c9320a2e0
- ThePrint/PTI (5 September 2026). Ganga water level breaches highest flood mark at Patna's Gandhi Ghat (secondary source). https://theprint.in/india/ganga-water-level-breaches-highest-flood-mark-at-patnas-gandhi-ghat-amid-heavy-rain/3034353/

Annexes and forms

Annex / Form	Content
11A	BSMP terms of reference template
11B	Basin lists and boundaries for Tier A bodies
11C	Depth–damage curves for Bihar building types
11D	BSMP data and model publication standard
Form 11-1	Annual implementation report

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 1

Policy, Applicability and Adoption

These annexes support Chapter 1. They hold the lists and maps that define where the Manual applies, the model text of the Policy Supplement and of the legal instruments that would give the Manual effect, and the two forms an Applicant files under Chapter 1. The Manual is a draft; it is not adopted by any government or agency: model legal text is offered for consideration by a competent authority and is not in force, and the forms are draft forms. An annex marked "To be prepared" states the data it needs and the rule to use until it is published (Clause 1.11.5).

Annex 1A — List of Tier A authorities, with the boundaries of the Nagar Nigams and of the Patna Metropolitan Area

Supports Clauses 1.6.1 to 1.6.5 of Chapter 1.

1A.1 Clause 1.6.1 defines Tier A by class of authority. Table 1A.1 sets out the classes, and the authorities named in the clause, as Chapter 1 defines them. Every authority not in Table 1A.1 is Tier B (Clause 1.6.2).

Table 1A.1 — Tier A authorities as defined in Clause 1.6.1

Item	Tier A authority	Clause
(a)	Patna Municipal Corporation (PMC)	1.6.1(a)
(b)	Every Approving Authority within the Patna Metropolitan Area under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, including PMAA where it is the Approving Authority, and the Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats of the area	1.6.1(b)
(c)	Every other Nagar Nigam constituted under the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007	1.6.1(c)
—	A Tier B authority that opts into Tier A by council resolution, or that the Government notifies as Tier A	1.6.4

1A.2 Whatever the tier, the design-aid route and the alternatives of Clause 1.7 are not available in a flood-sensitive catchment (Clause 1.6.5; Annex 1B).

To be prepared. This annex will contain the full list, by name, of every Approving Authority within the Patna Metropolitan Area and of every Nagar Nigam, with the date from which each is Tier A, and the boundaries of those areas as a map and as a GIS layer. It needs the notified boundary of the Patna Metropolitan Area and of any other Metropolitan Area or Planning Area under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012, and the bodies that grant building and layout permission in each (UDHD and PMAA); the current list and boundaries of the Nagar Nigams, Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats (UDHD); the industrial areas of BIADA, which are Tier B unless they opt in (Clause 1.6.4); and the district and anchal (circle) boundaries (Revenue and Land Reforms Department, Survey of India). Until it is published, the tier is decided by the classes in Clause 1.6.1 and recorded on Form 1-1, and the Authority confirms it at the pre-application stage (Clause 1.5.9).

Table 1A.2 — Register of Tier A authorities (layout)

No.	Authority	Class (Nagar Nigam / Nagar Parishad / Nagar Panchayat / metropolitan or planning area authority / other)	District	Basis (Clause 1.6.1(a), (b), (c) or 1.6.4)	Tier A from (date)	Notification or resolution reference
1						
2						
3						

1A.3 The Nagar Nigam and Patna Metropolitan Area boundary map shall be published as open data in a machine-readable format (Clause 10.17.4), with the date of the notification it shows.

Annex 1B — Maps of flood-sensitive catchments

Supports Clauses 1.4, 1.6.5 and 1.10.3(d) of Chapter 1, and Clauses 4.5.3 and 4.5.4 of Chapter 4.

1B.1 The flood-sensitive catchments are listed in Clause 4.5.3.2. Table 1B.1 repeats that list. The maps of this annex and the boundaries of Annex 4A are the same data set and shall be issued together.

Table 1B.1 — Flood-sensitive catchments listed in Clause 4.5.3.2

Item	Catchment	Extent as described in Chapter 4
(a)	Patna behind the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun	The catchments of the drains of Patna, Danapur, Phulwari and Khagaul that outfall to the Ganga and the Punpun through sump houses, drainage pumping stations and sluices, which are closed when the rivers are high and leave the city to be drained by pumping, including Rajendra Nagar, Kankarbagh and Pataliputra Colony, under water for days in September 2019 (as reported); the Ganga at Gandhi Ghat has a danger level of 48.60 m and a highest level of 50.52 m (2016), and the Punpun at Sripalpur 50.60 m and 53.91 m (1976) (CWC)
(b)	Muzaffarpur on the Burhi Gandak	The catchments of the drains of Muzaffarpur that outfall to the Burhi Gandak, whose outfalls are held up when the river is high; the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur has a danger level of 52.53 m and a highest level of 54.29 m (1987) (CWC), and waterlogging in the city recurs (as reported)
(c)	Darbhanga between the Bagmati and the Adhwara group	The catchments of the drains of Darbhanga that outfall to the Bagmati and to the rivers of the Adhwara group, including the ponds of the city that are the subject of NGT O.A. 155/2022/EZ; the Bagmati at Hayaghat has a danger level of 45.72 m and a highest level of 48.96 m (1987), and the Adhwara group at Ekmighat a highest level of 49.52 m (2004) (CWC)
(d)	Tal and chaur land	The Mokama group of tals (Fatuha, Bakhtiarpur, Barh, More, Mokama, Barahiya and Singhaul), about 1,062 km² of low land in Patna, Nalanda and Munger districts waterlogged each monsoon and draining slowly to the Ganga (NIH, as reported), and the chaurs and mauns of north Bihar, such as the Kabartal complex, inundated to 1.5 m in the monsoon (Ramsar Information Sheet)
(e)	Notified catchments	Any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4

To be prepared. This annex will contain a map of each catchment in Table 1B.1 at a scale fit for deciding whether a plot lies inside it, and the same boundaries as a GIS layer. It needs catchment boundaries drawn from a digital elevation model and the drain network (PMC, the Nagar Nigams of Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga, BUIDCO, Survey of India, whose 10 m DEM of the State WRD already holds); the city drains with their outfalls, sluices, interception works, sump houses and drainage pumping stations and their levels on a stated datum (BUIDCO, PMC and the Nagar Nigams); the embankments and sluices, the floodplain zones of the embanked rivers under Order No. 143 and, when issued, the 5-, 25- and 100-year zones of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari (WRD, NIH); the extent of the tals and chaurs and of the notified wetlands (the Bihar State Wetland Authority, the Minor Water Resources Department, the anchal (circle) land records); the CWC river levels at Gandhi Ghat, Dighaghat, Sripalpur, Maner, Sikandarpur, Hayaghat and Ekmighat; and the land flooded in 1975, 1987, 2016, 2019, 2025 and 2026 (the District Magistrates, BSDMA, WRD). Bhagalpur, whose drains outfall to the Ganga where its highest level, 34.86 m (2021), is only 1.18 m above the danger level (CWC), is a candidate for notification under Clause 4.5.4 once its catchment boundaries and flood record are documented. The floodplain zones of the embanked rivers are governed by Chapter 7 and Order No. 143 rather than by this list. Until it is published, the Authority decides at the pre-application stage whether a site lies in a listed catchment, from the best boundary available, and the decision and its basis are recorded on Form 1-1 and in the drainage report (Clauses 1.5.9 and 1.11.5).

Table 1B.2 — Attributes of the flood-sensitive catchment layer (layout)

Field	Content	Unit or format
catchment_id	Unique identifier	text
name	Catchment name	text
basis	Clause 4.5.3.2 item (a) to (d), or the notification under Clause 4.5.4	text
notification_ref	Gazette notification number, where notified	text
notified_on	Date of notification	date
applies_from	Date from which the rule applies to applications (Clause 4.5.4.2, step 5)	date
boundary_source	Source and date of the boundary	text
area_km2	Catchment area	km²

Annex 1C — Policy Supplement: text of alternatives S-1 to S-5 and model council resolution

Supports Clauses 1.6.3, 1.6.5 and 1.7.1 to 1.7.3 of Chapter 1.

Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force. The text below shows how the Policy Supplement of Clause 1.7 could be written. It has no effect unless and until it is issued by the Government and adopted by an Approving Authority under Clause 1.7.3.

Part 1 — General provisions

P1.1 **Scope.** This Supplement sets out alternatives S-1 to S-5 to the requirements of the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual (the Manual) named in each alternative. An alternative applies within the area of an Approving Authority (the Authority) only from the date on which the Authority adopts it under P1.3.

P1.2 **No lower criterion.** No alternative lowers any criterion of the Manual. S-1 and S-2 are simplified methods for meeting the same criterion (Clause 1.7.3(a)).

P1.3 **Adoption.**

- (a) A Tier B authority adopts an alternative by council resolution in the form of Part 3, and sends a copy to the State Stormwater Technical Committee (the Committee) within 30 days of the resolution.
- (b) A Tier A authority adopts an alternative only after the Committee has concurred in writing.
- (c) The Authority publishes the alternatives it has adopted on its website and in the register of Clause 10.17.

P1.4 **Retention.** No alternative replaces the retention requirement (Annex 2E depth), except where fee-in-lieu under S-5 funds equivalent retention in the same basin (Clause 1.7.3(d)).

P1.5 **Tables.** The tables used by S-1, S-2 and S-3 are those issued by the Committee, and are reviewed with Chapter 2 of the Manual (Clauses 1.7.3(e) and 2.14). An alternative that depends on a table cannot be used until that table is issued.

P1.6 **Record.** An Applicant who uses an alternative states it on Form 1-1 and in the drainage report, with the resolution or concurrence under which it was adopted.

Part 2 — The alternatives

S-1 — Design-aid route for storage

S-1.1 *Replaces:* storage sized by a hydrograph method under Chapter 3.

S-1.2 *Alternative:* retention and detention volumes may be taken from the unit-storage tables issued for Annex 4B (m³ per ha, by rainfall zone, hydrologic soil group and impervious fraction) and the compliance calculator, by the method of Clause 4.14.2.

S-1.3 *Eligibility:* sites of 2 ha or less outside flood-sensitive catchments, and of 0.5 ha or less within them (Table 1.2; Clause 4.14.1).

S-1.4 *Conditions:* the post-development imperviousness used shall be that shown on the approved plans; the outlet, spillway, RWH accounting and safety provisions of Clause 4.14.2 apply; the compliance calculator may be the sole calculation (Table 1.1).

S-2 — Permissible site discharge (PSD)

S-2.1 *Replaces:* the release rate $Q_{post}(T) \le 0.9 \times Q_{pre}(T)$ computed for the site (Clause 2.11.2).

S-2.2 *Alternative:* the release rate for each AEP may be taken as the tabulated unit-area release rate for the site's zone and AEP, multiplied by the site area. The tabulated rates are derived from the $0.9 \times Q_{pre}$ rule (Table 1.2).

S-2.3 *Eligibility:* any site outside a flood-sensitive catchment.

S-2.4 *Conditions:* storage is then sized to hold every duration of Clause 2.5.2 at the PSD; drawdown, minimum orifice and spillway rules of Chapter 4 apply unchanged.

S-3 — Fixed-width waterbody setback

S-3.1 *Replaces:* the waterbody setback extended to the mapped 1% AEP flood extent plus margin (Chapter 7).

S-3.2 *Alternative:* where no 1% AEP extent is mapped, the setback shall be the fixed width for the class of waterbody in the table of Clause 7.4.6 (and Annex 7B), measured as in Clause 7.4.3.

S-3.3 *Eligibility:* waterbodies with no mapped 1% AEP extent.

S-3.4 *Conditions:* no setback under this alternative is less than the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7 (Clause 1.10.3(c)); the no-fill zone of Chapter 7 applies; where a 1% AEP extent is later mapped and adopted, the mapped setback applies to new applications.

S-4 — Downstream screening checklist

S-4.1 *Replaces:* downstream analysis by hydraulic model under Chapter 5.

S-4.2 *Alternative:* the Applicant completes a screening checklist of downstream capacity and known flooding, covering at least the conditions of Clause 5.3.4: that the receiving public drain has documented capacity for its minor-system design flow (Chapter 6), and that no flood-prone location is recorded within 500 m downstream. A hydraulic model under Chapter 5 is required only where the screen fails.

S-4.3 *Eligibility:* sites of less than 1 ha, outside flood-sensitive catchments, not discharging to a tidal outfall.

S-4.4 *Conditions:* the checklist is signed by the registered professional who signs the drainage report (Clause 10.6); flood-prone locations are those recorded by the local body, the District Magistrate and the District Disaster Management Authority, BSDMA, or WRD and its Flood Management Improvement Support Centre (FMISC) (Clause 5.3.3(d)).

S-5 — Fee-in-lieu toward regional storage

S-5.1 *Replaces:* on-site detention under Chapter 4.

S-5.2 *Alternative:* all or part of the detention requirement may be met by a fee-in-lieu toward a regional detention facility or restored pokhar or tank storage identified in the basin plan (Clause 4.13.1).

S-5.3 *Eligibility:* sites in a basin for which a basin plan has been notified (Table 1.2).

S-5.4 *Conditions:*

- (a) the conditions of Clause 4.13.2 apply, including interim on-site detention until the regional facility or restored tank is operational, and retention and WQv treatment on site;
- (b) the fee is computed under Clause 4.13.3 and held in the ring-fenced basin account;
- (c) the volume credited and the fee are entered in the public ledger of Clause 4.13.4; and
- (d) in a flood-sensitive catchment, fee-in-lieu is available only as allowed by Clause 1.10.3(d).

Part 3 — Model council resolution

> **Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.**

Resolution No. _____ of _____ (name of Nagar Nigam / Nagar Parishad / Nagar Panchayat), dated _____

Subject: Adoption of alternatives under the Policy Supplement to the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual.

The Council, having considered the report of the Municipal Commissioner / Chief Municipal Officer dated _____, and noting that:

- (i) the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual and its Policy Supplement have been given effect by _____ (instrument and date);

- (ii) this local body is a Tier B / Tier A authority under Clause 1.6 of the Manual; and
- (iii) for a Tier A authority, the State Stormwater Technical Committee concurred on _____ (reference _____),

resolves:

1. to adopt the following alternatives of the Policy Supplement within its area, under the conditions of Clause 1.7.3 of the Manual:

Table 1C.1 — Alternatives adopted by this resolution

Alternative	Adopted (Yes / No)	Area to which it applies (whole area, or wards / zones)	Applies from (date)
S-1 Design-aid route			
S-2 Permissible site discharge			
S-3 Fixed-width setback			
S-4 Downstream screening checklist			
S-5 Fee-in-lieu			

2. that no adopted alternative shall apply within a flood-sensitive catchment except as the Manual allows (Clause 1.6.5);
3. that a copy of this resolution be sent to the State Stormwater Technical Committee within 30 days;
4. that the adopted alternatives be published on the local body's website and entered in the register of Clause 10.17; and
5. that this resolution be reviewed when the tables of Clause 1.7.3(e) are revised.

Mayor / Chairperson: _____ Municipal Commissioner / Chief Municipal Officer: _____ Date: _____

Annex 1D — Model BBL 2014 amendment and model ULB bye-law

Supports Clauses 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.11 and 1.12 of Chapter 1.

> **Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.** The text shows one way the instruments of Clause 1.3.1 could be drafted. Rule and section numbers are left blank.

> **Drafting note D1D.1.** The rule numbers of the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 at which the new rule and the conditions would be inserted, and the enabling sections of the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act, 2012 and the municipal and panchayat Acts, are to be confirmed by the Government's legal advisers. None is stated here.

Part A — Model amendment to the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014

A.1 **Short title and commencement.**

- (1) These rules may be called the Bihar Building Byelaws (Stormwater Management) Amendment Byelaws, _____.
- (2) They shall come into force on the date six months after their publication in the Bihar Gazette (Clause 1.11.1).

A.2 **Insertion of a new rule.** After rule [_____] of the building bye-laws issued by the Urban Development and Housing Department for the municipal areas and planning areas of the State, the following rule shall be inserted:

> **Rule [_____]. Stormwater management.**
>
> (1) *Definitions.* In this rule, "the Manual" means the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual as notified by the Government, with its annexes and amendments; other words have the meanings given in Clause 1.4 of the Manual.
>
> (2) *Application.* This rule applies to every development for which planning permission, building permit or layout approval is required under these rules.
>
> (3) *Runoff control.* Where a development, over its common plan of development, involves land disturbance of 0.1 ha or more, or new or replaced impervious area of 500 m² or more, the development shall comply with Chapters 4 and 5 of the Manual (retention, detention, downstream and tailwater analysis).
>
> (4) *Provisions for every development.* Every development, whatever its size, shall comply with Clause 1.5.4 of the Manual: no sewage connection to a storm drain; floor levels; waterbody setbacks and the no-fill zone; and no obstruction of a drainage path.
>
> (5) *Exemptions.* A single dwelling on its own plot below the thresholds of sub-rule (3), and linear road resurfacing that adds no impervious area, are exempt from sub-rule (3) but not from sub-rule (4) or the rainwater harvesting provisions of these rules.
>
> (6) *Conditions of approval.* The competent authority shall not grant:
>
> - (a) planning permission or layout approval, unless a preliminary drainage report under the Manual has been accepted;
> - (b) a building permit, or permission to commence, unless the final drainage design has been accepted; or
> - (c) a completion certificate, unless the as-built certificate has been accepted and the maintenance declaration has been registered, or the public assets have been handed over,
>
> for a development to which sub-rule (3) applies (Manual, Clause 10.3).
>
> (7) *Certification.* Drainage reports and designs shall be signed by a registered professional, and, where Clause 10.6.1 of the Manual so requires, by an empanelled Stormwater Design Professional.
>
> (8) *Rainwater harvesting.* Nothing in this rule alters the rainwater harvesting provisions of these rules.
>
> (9) *Variances and waivers.* The competent authority may grant a variance or waiver only on the grounds and by the procedure of Clause 1.10 of the Manual, and shall publish each decision.
>
> (10) *Transition.* Applications filed complete before the commencement of this rule, and Tier B authorities, are governed by Clause 1.11 of the Manual.

Part B — Model ULB bye-law

B.1 **Title and commencement.** These bye-laws may be called the _____ (name of local body) Stormwater Management Bye-laws, _____. They come into force on _____.

B.2 **Adoption of the Manual.** The Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, as notified by the Government, applies to:

- (a) every development approved by the local body; and

- (b) every drainage, road, culvert, waterbody and flood-mitigation work executed by the local body, including its own drains and roads (Clause 1.3.1(b)).

B.3 **Public works.** Every detailed project report and contract for a work under B.2(b) shall require compliance with the Manual, from the dates in Clause 1.11 (Clause 1.3.4).

B.4 **Tier and alternatives.** The local body is a Tier _____ authority under Clause 1.6 of the Manual. The alternatives of the Policy Supplement adopted by the local body are listed in the Schedule, with the resolution under which each was adopted.

B.5 **Submittals and review.** Submittals shall be made in the stages of Clause 10.3 of the Manual and reviewed within the periods of Clause 10.7.

B.6 **Maintenance, inspection and enforcement.** Maintenance declarations, inspections, handover of public assets and enforcement shall follow Clauses 10.10 to 10.15 of the Manual.

B.7 **Publication.** The local body shall publish the registers and reports of Clause 10.17 of the Manual.

B.8 **Review.** These bye-laws shall be reviewed whenever the Manual is amended under Clause 1.12.

Table 1D.1 — Schedule: alternatives adopted (layout)

Alternative	Resolution number and date	Committee concurrence (Tier A only)	Applies from	Area

---

Form 1-1 — Applicability Determination

Supports Clauses 1.5.1 to 1.5.9 and 1.6 of Chapter 1, and Clause 10.3 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodged at the pre-application meeting (Stage 0) or with the preliminary drainage report (Stage 1), as Clause 10.3.2 requires.

Table 1F.1 — Form 1-1: Applicability Determination

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
	A. Applicant and site	
A1	Applicant (owner, developer or department)	_____
A2	Site address and survey numbers	_____
A3	Site coordinates (latitude, longitude)	_____
A4	Approving Authority (Clause 1.4)	_____
A5	Tier of the Authority: A / B (Clause 1.6; Annex 1A)	_____
A6	Approval sought: planning permission / building permit / layout approval / public work (DPR)	_____
A7	Type of development: building / layout / sub-division / road / paving / land-use change / other (Clause 1.4)	_____
A8	Stage at which this form is lodged: Stage 0 / Stage 1 (Clause 10.3)	_____
	B. Coverage (Clause 1.5.1)	
B1	Development requiring approval under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 — 1.5.1(a): Yes / No	_____
B2	Public work by a ULB, State department, board or State undertaking — 1.5.1(b): Yes / No	_____
B3	Work by a Central agency needing the Authority's approval or no-objection — 1.5.1(c): Yes / No	_____
	C. Areas over the common plan of development (Clauses 1.4, 1.5.5)	
C1	Phases, plots and sub-divisions included (one layout approval or one ownership)	_____
C2	Total site area (ha)	_____
C3	Land disturbance (ha)	_____
C4	Existing impervious area (m²)	_____
C5	New impervious area (m²)	_____
C6	Replaced impervious area, removed to subgrade and rebuilt (m²)	_____
C7	New plus replaced impervious area, C5 + C6 (m²)	_____
C8	Plot area for the RWH mandate (m²) (Clause 1.5.3)	_____
	D. Thresholds and exemptions	
D1	Land disturbance 0.1 ha or more — 1.5.2(a): Yes / No	_____
D2	New or replaced impervious area 500 m² or more — 1.5.2(b): Yes / No	_____
D3	Redevelopment (existing impervious cover on the site) — 1.5.6: Yes / No	_____
D4	Constrained redevelopment route of Clause 4.5.6 proposed: Yes / No	_____

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
D5	Linear public work: added impervious area per drainage catchment crossed given in Table 1F.2 — 1.5.7: Yes / No / not applicable	_____
D6	Exemption claimed — 1.5.8(a) single dwelling below the thresholds / 1.5.8(b) resurfacing with no added impervious area / none	_____
D7	RWH mandate applies (BBL 2014, bye-law 51: every plot, of any size; Bihar Ground Water Act 2006, s.18: premises of 1,000 m² and more in a notified area [TBC]) — 1.5.3: Yes / No	_____
	E. Site conditions	
E1	Site in a flood-sensitive catchment (Annex 1B; Clause 4.5.3): No / Yes — name	_____
E2	Source of the catchment boundary used	_____
E3	1% AEP level mapped or determinable for the site (Clause 1.5.4(b)): Yes / No; source	_____
E4	Waterbody on or adjoining the site (Clause 1.5.4(c); Chapter 7): No / Yes — name	_____
E5	Natural drainage path or major-system flow path crossing the site (Clause 1.5.4(d)): No / Yes	_____
E6	Site drains to a tidal outfall (Clause 10.3.2(d)): Yes / No	_____
E7	Variance, waiver, regional facility or fee-in-lieu proposed (Clause 10.3.2(c)): No / Yes — Form 1-2 attached	_____
	F. Determination	
F1	Result: (i) Chapters 4 and 5 apply, with Clause 1.5.4 and the RWH mandate; (ii) Clause 1.5.4 and the RWH mandate only (below thresholds); (iii) exempt under 1.5.8, Clause 1.5.4 and the RWH mandate still apply	_____
F2	Stage 0 mandatory under Clause 10.3.2: Yes (state item (a) to (d)) / No	_____
F3	Storage method: hydrograph method (Chapter 3) / design-aid route S-1 (Clause 1.7, where adopted and eligible)	_____
F4	Other Policy Supplement alternatives relied on (S-2 to S-5), with the adopting resolution	_____
F5	Tier B phased start applies (Clause 1.11.3): Yes / No	_____
	G. Declaration	
G1	I declare that the information above is correct and covers the whole common plan of development. Applicant: name, signature, date	_____
G2	Prepared by (registered professional, Clause 1.4): name, registration number, signature, date	_____
	H. For the Authority (Clause 1.5.9)	
H1	Determination confirmed / corrected	_____
H2	Corrections and reasons	_____
H3	Officer: name, designation, signature, date	_____

Table 1F.2 — Form 1-1: added impervious area by drainage catchment, linear works (Clause 1.5.7)

Drainage catchment crossed	Chainage from – to	Added impervious area (m²)	500 m² or more (Yes / No)	Storage location: right of way / regional facility

Form 1-2 — Variance / Waiver Request

Supports Clause 1.10 of Chapter 1.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodged with the preliminary drainage report (Clause 1.10.4(a)), with one form for each requirement concerned.

Table 1F.3 — Form 1-2: Variance / Waiver Request

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
	A. Applicant and site	
A1	Applicant	_____
A2	Site address and coordinates	_____
A3	Form 1-1 reference and date	_____
A4	Tier of the Authority: A / B	_____
A5	Site area (ha)	_____
A6	Site in a flood-sensitive catchment: Yes / No	_____
	B. Request	
B1	Type: variance from a numeric requirement (1.10.1) / waiver of Chapter 4 detention (1.10.2)	_____
B2	Clause of the Manual concerned	_____
B3	Value required by the Manual	_____
B4	Value or arrangement proposed	_____
	C. Matters that cannot be varied or waived (Clause 1.10.3) — confirm that the request does not concern any of them	
C1	(a) a sewage connection to a storm drain	Not concerned: _____
C2	(b) the lowest habitable floor level of Chapter 6	Not concerned: _____
C3	(c) a waterbody setback below the Zone 1 minimum of Clause 7.4.7, or fill or construction in the no-fill zone of Chapter 7	Not concerned: _____
C4	(d) retention in a flood-sensitive catchment, except by fee-in-lieu under Clause 1.7	Not concerned: _____
	D. Variance: grounds (Clause 1.10.1(a))	
D1	Site condition: high groundwater table / contaminated soil / rock / site too small for the required facility / other	_____
D2	Evidence (tests, surveys, plans), with references	_____
D3	Options assessed and why each is impracticable	_____
	E. Variance: equal performance or make-up (Clause 1.10.1(b))	
E1	Downstream point used (Chapter 5)	_____
E2	Performance at that point with full compliance and with the variance (peak flows, water levels)	_____

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
E3	Or: shortfall made up by fee-in-lieu or off-site works in the same catchment — volume (m³), works or fee	_____
	F. Waiver of detention: grounds (Clause 1.10.2)	
F1	Site discharges directly to the sea / to a tidal reach with no flood-prone property downstream	_____
F2	Analysis showing that undetained flow does not worsen the outfall-closed condition of Chapter 5 — reference	_____
F3	Retention still provided in full: Yes	_____
	G. Attachments (Clause 1.10.4(a))	
G1	Report certified under Clause 10.6	_____
G2	Preliminary drainage report	_____
	H. Certification and declaration	
H1	Certified by (registered professional; empanelled professional where Clause 10.6.1 applies): name, registration or empanelment number, signature, date	_____
H2	Applicant: name, signature, date	_____
	I. For the Authority (Clause 1.10.4)	
I1	Referred to the State Stormwater Technical Committee (Tier B, site 1 ha or more): Yes / No; date	_____
I2	Decision: granted / granted with conditions / refused	_____
I3	Reasons and conditions	_____
I4	Entry number in the public register (Clause 10.17)	_____
I5	Note: a variance runs with the approval and lapses if the approval lapses (Clause 1.10.4(d))	—
I6	Officer: name, designation, signature, date	_____

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 2

Design Rainfall and Design Storms

These annexes support Chapter 2. Annexes 2A to 2E will hold the statewide rainfall tables that Chapter 2 refers to: the benchmark checks and zone map, sub-daily ratios, grid-to-point factors, temporal patterns and retention depths. Each needs analysis of NIH-DHAARA and IMD records that has not yet been done for this Manual, so each is marked "To be prepared" and gives its intended layout and the rule to use until it is published (Clause 1.11.5). Form 2-1 is a draft form for the Design Rainfall Sheet that every hydrologic submittal must include (Clause 2.13). The Manual is a draft; it is not adopted by any government or agency.

Annex 2A — NIH-DHAARA vs IMD station and IMD gridded checks at benchmark points; zone map

Supports Clauses 2.3.1 to 2.3.5 of Chapter 2.

To be prepared. This annex will compare, at benchmark points across the State, the NIH-DHAARA design depths with frequency analyses of long IMD daily station records and of IMD gridded daily data (converted to point values with Annex 2C), for 24 hours and longer and for the AEPs of Table 2.1. It will also contain the map of rainfall zones used by Annexes 2B, 2C and 2E and by the Tier B tables of Chapter 4. It needs NIH-DHAARA values at the benchmark coordinates (NIH), IMD daily and recording-gauge station records and IMD gridded rainfall (IMD), State rain-gauge records (the block rain gauges whose readings IMD reports, the gauges of WRD and its FMISC, and any network of BSDMA [TBC]), and district and basin boundaries (Survey of India, WRD). Until it is published, design depths are taken from NIH-DHAARA under Clause 2.3.1, the cross-checks of Clause 2.3.3 are reported on Form 2-1, and the zone of a site is the one agreed with the Authority and recorded on Form 2-1.

Table 2A.1 — Benchmark comparison of design depths (layout)

Benchmark point	IMD station ID	Latitude, longitude	Years of record	Duration (h)	AEP	NIH-DHAARA (mm)	IMD station analysis (mm)	IMD gridded, point value (mm)	NIH-DHAARA / IMD station	Remarks
				24						
				48						
				72						

2A.1 The zone names below are the working names used in the Tier B table template of Chapter 4 (Clause 4.14.2). Their boundaries, and whether further zones are needed, are to be set by the analysis of this annex.

Table 2A.2 — Rainfall zones (layout)

Zone (working name)	Extent (districts, basins)	Representative stations	Notes
BR-Z1 South Bihar	The State south of the Ganga: CWC subzone 1(d) west of the Kiul and subzone 1(g) in the south-east (Clause 2.3.6(c)); boundary with BR-Z2 on the Ganga	Patna (A) 42492 (daily record 1946–2012), Gaya (A) 42591 (from 1896), Dehri 42588 (from 1896), Bhagalpur 42498 (from 1950), Sabour 42499 (from 1931); Jamui 42595 (1950–78, short)	Annual normals about 860–1,200 mm (Arwal 857.9, Gaya 941.3, Patna 984.7, Bhagalpur 1,203.4 mm), JJAS 83–90% (IMD). FER 50-yr 24-h about 240–320 mm (Patna about 260–280, Gaya 280–320, Arrah and Sasaram 240–280, Munger and Bhagalpur 280–320, Lakhisarai and Banka about 240 or less); 1-h ratio 0.37 (1(d)) and 0.350 (1(g)). Floors of Clause 2.3.6(h): 1 h 80–115 mm and 3 h 130–195 mm at 10–100 yr. Records: Tharary (Bhojpur) 550.0 mm (13 Sep 1987), Dinapur (Patna) 498.9 mm (25 Jun 1897), Chakaibanda (Jamui) 475.0 mm (1 Jul 1985), Patna Observatory 366.0 mm (8 Sep 1918), Bhagalpur 352.8 mm (25 Sep 1965), Gaya (A) 290.8 mm (16 Sep 1976), Patna (A) 273.5 mm (20 Sep 1967) (IMD; CWC FER 1(d)). NIH-DHAARA 50-yr 24-h close to the plates at Patna (288 mm) and low at Gaya (227 mm)
BR-Z1 South Bihar: BR-D South Bihar plain (Magadh–Bhojpur)	Patna with Danapur, Phulwari and Khagaul, Nalanda (Bihar Sharif), Bhojpur (Arrah), Buxar, Jehanabad, Arwal, Gaya, Aurangabad, Nawada, Sheikhpura, Lakhisarai west of the Kiul, and the Rohtas and Kaimur plains (Sasaram, Dehri, Bhabua), all in subzone 1(d); boundaries [TBC]	Patna (A), Gaya (A), Dehri	Older alluvium with kankar; the Mokama group of tals, about 1,062 km² waterlogged each monsoon (NIH, as reported); diara along the Ganga and the Sone; no current depth to water for Patna city found [TBC]; arsenic along the Ganga and fluoride in the south (CGWB, as reported). Receiving waters: the Ganga at Dighaghat (danger 50.45 m, HFL 52.52 m, 1975), Gandhi Ghat (48.60 m, 50.52 m, 2016; passed in Sep 2026, as reported) and Buxar (60.32 m, 62.09 m, 1948); the Punpun at Sripalpur (50.60 m, 53.91 m, 1976); the Sone at Maner (52.00 m, 53.79 m, 1976) (CWC). Patna lies between the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun, with pumped outfalls and sluices closed at high river stage; flash floods on the Phalgu and the Morhar at Gaya
BR-Z1 South Bihar: BR-E South-east Ganga fringe and plateau margin	Munger with Jamalpur, Bhagalpur south of the Ganga (Bhagalpur city, Sultanganj, Kahalgaon), Banka, Jamui and Lakhisarai east of the Kiul, in subzone 1(g); and the Kaimur and Rohtas plateaus and the Rajgir and Kharagpur hills, in subzone 1(d); boundaries [TBC]	Bhagalpur, Sabour, Jamui; Dehri for the Kaimur and Rohtas plateaus	Granite-gneiss of the Chotanagpur fringe and Vindhyan sandstone of the Kaimur, with thin red and yellow soils; fast hill runoff; fluoride in groundwater in Banka, Jamui, Munger and Bhagalpur (CGWB, as reported). Recording-gauge maxima at Sabour: 52 mm in 1 h (19 May 1971), 98 mm in 3 h and 208 mm in 24 h (21–22 Apr 1971) (CWC FER 1(g)). Receiving waters: the Ganga at Munger (danger 39.33 m, HFL 40.99 m, 1976) and Bhagalpur (33.68 m, 34.86 m, 2021) (CWC); the Chandan, the Badua and the Kiul (no CWC site found)
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain	The State north of the Ganga in subzone 1(f), except BR-Z3 (Clause 2.3.6(c))	Muzaffarpur 42387 (1901–2012), Darbhanga 42391 (from 1901), Chapra 42488 (from 1901), Motihari 42383 (from 1901), Supaul 42393 (from 1967)	Annual normals about 1,050–1,300 mm (Saran 1,051.6, Darbhanga 1,093.7, Muzaffarpur 1,151.0, Sitamarhi 1,301.7 mm), JJAS 83–88% (IMD). FER 1(f) 50-yr 24-h about 240–320 mm (Hajipur and Chhapra 240–280, Darbhanga, Begusarai and Motihari 280–320, Muzaffarpur and Saharsa about 320; 340 mm in the report's worked example on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli line); 1-h ratio 0.31. Floors of Clause 2.3.6(h): 1 h 80–115 mm and 3 h 130–195 mm at 10–100 yr. Records: Majarganj (Sitamarhi) 580.0 mm (11 Aug 1987), Motihari 520.0 mm (25 Aug 2005), Siwan 488.4 mm (19 Sep 1935), Muzaffarpur 436.0 mm (26 Sep 2007), Chapra 368.0 mm (16 Aug 1995), Darbhanga 266.7 mm (4 Sep 1925) (IMD). NIH-DHAARA 50-yr 24-h high here (Darbhanga 362, Saharsa 389, Motihari 398 mm)

Zone (working name)	Extent (districts, basins)	Representative stations	Notes
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain: BR-A Gandak–Burhi Gandak plain	East Champaran (Motihari, Raxaul), West Champaran south of the terai strip (Bettiah), Gopalganj, Siwan, Saran (Chhapra, Sonpur), Vaishali (Hajipur), Muzaffarpur, Sitamarhi and Sheohar; boundaries [TBC]	Muzaffarpur, Motihari, Chapra	Newer and calcareous alluvium; shallow water table (Sitamarhi 2.5–3.9 m below ground before the monsoon in 2011, CGWB, as reported); chaurs. Receiving waters: the Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur, Muzaffarpur (danger 52.53 m, HFL 54.29 m, 1987), the Gandak at Hajipur (50.32 m, 50.93 m, 1948) and Rewaghat (54.41 m, 55.46 m, 2020), the Ghaghra at Chhapra (53.68 m, 54.59 m, 1982) and the Bagmati at Benibad (HFL 50.12 m, 2025) (CWC). Embanked rivers and floods driven by rain in Nepal
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain: BR-B Mithila and Kosi plain	Darbhanga, Madhubani, Samastipur, Begusarai, Khagaria, Saharsa, Supaul, Madhepura and Bhagalpur district north of the Ganga (Naugachia); boundaries [TBC]	Darbhanga, Supaul	Calcareous alluvium and the sandy deposits of the Kosi; water table 1.9–5.7 m below ground before the monsoon in the Kosi districts (2011) and 1.5 m in November at Supaul (CGWB, as reported); extensive chaurs, and Kabartal (Ramsar site). Receiving waters: the Bagmati at Hayaghat, Darbhanga (danger 45.72 m, HFL 48.96 m, 1987), the Adhwara group at Ekmighat (HFL 49.52 m, 2004) and Kamtaul (53.05 m, 1995), the Kamla at Jhanjharpur (53.11 m, 2019) and the Kosi at Basua (49.24 m, 2017) and Baltara (36.40 m, 1987) (CWC). The Kosi is embanked on both banks; long river-locked periods
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai	Seemanchal in the north-east, and the terai strip of West Champaran along the Nepal border, in subzone 1(f); catchments that cross the boundary with BR-Z2 take the BR-Z3 value	Purnea 42500 (1874–2012), Forbesganj 42395 (from 1953); no long-record IMD station in the terai strip, for which the nearest is Motihari 42383 [TBC]	Annual normals about 1,390–2,215 mm (Katihar 1,387.8, West Champaran 1,434.1, Purnea 1,732.8, Kishanganj 2,215.0 mm), the wettest in the State, with a wet May (Kishanganj 166.5 mm) (IMD). FER 1(f) 50-yr 24-h from about 240–320 mm at Katihar and Purnia to 320–360 mm at Kishanganj and more than 400 mm at Bagaha and Valmikinagar; 1-h ratio 0.31. Floors of Clause 2.3.6(h): 1 h 90–135 mm and 3 h 150–220 mm at 10–100 yr. Records: Barsoe (Katihar) 510.5 mm (23 Jun 1911), Champatia (West Champaran) 497.5 mm (15 Sep 1986), Bahadurganj (Kishanganj) 465.0 mm (28 Aug 1977), Dengraghat (Purnea) 445.2 mm (26 Sep 1999), Purnea 318.5 mm (16 Sep 1898) (IMD). NIH-DHAARA 50-yr 24-h strongly high here (Kishanganj 526, Bagaha 482, Purnia 404 mm)
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai: BR-C Seemanchal	Purnia, Araria (Forbesganj), Kishanganj and Katihar; boundaries [TBC]	Purnea, Forbesganj	Newer alluvium; Katihar 2.9–8.7 m below ground before the monsoon (2011, CGWB, as reported). The earliest onset in the State (13 June at Purnea). Receiving waters: the Mahananda at Dhengraghat, Purnia (danger 35.65 m, HFL 38.20 m, 2017), Taiyabpur (67.26 m, 2022) and Jhawa (34.07 m, 2017), the Parman at Araria (49.40 m, 2017) and the Kosi at Kursela (32.10 m, 1982) (CWC); four highest levels set in the flood of 2017
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai: Champaran terai strip of BR-A (Bagaha, Valmikinagar, Ramnagar, Narkatiaganj)	The terai of West Champaran along the Nepal border, from Valmikinagar and Bagaha to Ramnagar and Narkatiaganj; part of hydrologic sub-area BR-A, taking the BR-Z3 rainfall; boundaries [TBC]	Motihari (nearest long record) [TBC]	Terai deposits below the Someshwar hills, with a marshy belt (IMD); the plate's cell of more than 400 mm at 50 years lies here. Receiving waters: the Gandak (Chatia HFL 70.04 m, 2002; Dumariaghat 64.36 m, 2020) and its terai tributaries (CWC)

Annex 2B — Sub-daily ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone: NIH-DHAARA (hourly-based) vs the one-third rule

Supports Clauses 2.6.1 to 2.6.4 of Chapter 2.

To be prepared. This annex will tabulate, for each zone of Annex 2A, the ratios of the t-hour to the 24-hour design depth from NIH-DHAARA, which are derived from hourly records, against the ratios implied by IMD Das et al. (2022) and by the one-third rule. It needs NIH-DHAARA depths for each duration at representative points in each zone (NIH), IMD recording-gauge data and the IDF values of Das et al. (2022) (IMD). Until it is published, sub-daily depths are read directly from NIH-DHAARA or an approved station IDF (Clause 2.6.1). Where only daily depths are available, the ratios used are those agreed with the Authority, which in Bihar are those of Clause 2.3.6: the CWC Flood Estimation Report ratios for the site's subzone in Table 2B.1, raised at 1 and 3 hours to the floors of Clause 2.3.6(h) for the 10-yr and rarer storms (Clause 2.6.2), and are recorded on Form 2-1. The one-third rule is not used (Clause 2.6.4).

2B.1 The first row of Table 2B.1 gives the ratios of the one-third rule P(t) = P(24)·(t/24)^(1/3), for comparison only. The 1, 3, 6 and 12 h values are those stated in the commentary to Clause 2.6; the 2 h value is computed from the same formula. The rule shall not be used for design unless this annex confirms it for the zone concerned (Clause 2.6.4).

Table 2B.1 — Ratios P(t)/P(24h) by zone (layout)

Zone	Source	1 h	2 h	3 h	6 h	12 h	24 h
All (reference only, not for design)	One-third rule	0.35	0.44	0.50	0.63	0.79	1.00
BR-Z1 (BR-D, and the 1(d) part of BR-E)	CWC FER 1(d), 50-yr (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g))	0.37		0.58	0.70	0.89	1.00
BR-Z1 (BR-E, 1(g) part)	CWC FER 1(g), 10-yr basis (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g))	0.350		0.515	0.640	0.800	1.00
BR-Z2 and BR-Z3	CWC FER 1(f), 50-yr (interim design ratios, Clause 2.3.6(g); 2-h value from an OCR of Fig. 10 [TBC])	0.31	0.425	0.50	0.65	0.82	1.00
All zones	Ratio floor of Clause 2.3.6(h)(i), 10–100 yr (binding in 1(f) and 1(g); the 1(d) ratios exceed it)	0.35		0.57			1.00
BR-Z1 (BR-E): Sabour	CWC FER 1(g), Annex 4.4: the recording-gauge maxima of 1971 as ratios to the 24-h maximum of the same record (single events, comparison only)	0.25		0.47	0.77	0.95	1.00
BR-Z1 (BR-D): Patna	NIH-DHAARA, 50-yr, Patna cell (comparison only; 3- and 6-hour values not queried)	0.27	0.45			0.80	1.00
BR-Z1 (BR-D): Gaya	NIH-DHAARA, 50-yr, Gaya cell (comparison only; 3- and 6-hour values not queried)	0.34	0.48			0.78	1.00
BR-Z2 (BR-B): Darbhanga	NIH-DHAARA, 50-yr, Darbhanga cell (comparison only; 3- and 6-hour values not queried)	0.29	0.46			0.84	1.00
BR-Z3 (BR-C): Purnia	NIH-DHAARA, 50-yr, Purnia cell (comparison only; 3- and 6-hour values not queried)	0.27	0.43			0.84	1.00

2B.2 Depths from fixed observation windows are converted to true-interval depths with the factors of Clause 2.6.3, repeated in Table 2B.2. They are the standard WMO (Hershfield) values and are not provisional.

Table 2B.2 — Fixed-interval adjustment factors (Clause 2.6.3)

Number of fixed observation intervals in the duration	Factor
1	1.13
2	1.04
3–4	1.02

Annex 2C — Grid-to-point factors

Supports Clauses 2.7.1 and 2.7.4 of Chapter 2.

To be prepared. This annex will give the factors that convert grid-average design depths (for example from 0.25° cells) to point depths, by zone, duration and AEP. It needs paired frequency analyses of IMD gridded rainfall and of the IMD and State gauges inside each cell (IMD, WRD and its FMISC, and the block rain gauges of the State [TBC]), the benchmark points of Annex 2A, and a stated method for deriving the factors. Until it is published, design depths are taken as point values from NIH-DHAARA or an approved station IDF (Clauses 2.3.1 and 2.3.2). Grid-average values are not used as design depths unless a conversion agreed with the Authority is recorded on Form 2-1 (Clause 1.11.5).

2C.1 The commentary to Clause 2.7 shows why the factors matter, and in Bihar the reanalysis cells err both ways. At Gaya the IMDAA cell of NIH-DHAARA (about 12 km) gives a 50-year 24-hour depth of about 227 mm and a 100-year depth of about 255 mm, while the Gaya (A) gauge recorded 290.8 mm on 16 September 1976. At Darbhanga the cell's 50-year value, about 362 mm, is well above the station's record of 266.7 mm (4 September 1925), at Purnia its value of about 404 mm is above the station's record of 318.5 mm (16 September 1898), and at Kishanganj its value of about 526 mm is above the plate value of about 320–360 mm. The cells' 50-year 1-hour depths, 73–115 mm, are 0.20–0.34 of their 24-hour depths, and at Patna 77.0 mm against 96–104 mm from the 1(d) plates and ratios (NIH-DHAARA, queried 6 Nov 2026; IMD; CWC). Values of this kind are grid-average values and need these factors before any use as point depths; under Clause 2.3.6 they are not used as design depths in Bihar until this annex and Annex 2A are published.

Table 2C.1 — Grid-to-point factors (layout)

Zone	Grid product and cell size	Duration (h)	AEP	Factor (point / grid)	Stations used	Years of record
		24				
		48				
		72				

Annex 2D — Bihar temporal patterns (Huff curves)

Supports Clauses 2.9.3 and 2.9.4 of Chapter 2, and Clause 11.7.3 of Chapter 11.

To be prepared. This annex will give dimensionless time-distribution (mass) curves of Bihar storms, in the form introduced by Huff (1967), by zone, storm-duration class and quartile, at stated probability levels. It needs storm hyetographs from recording gauges and automatic weather stations (IMD, its automatic weather stations and automatic rain gauges in the State, such as Patna (Anisabad), and any recording gauges of WRD [TBC]), separated into independent storms by a stated rule, and the Motihari storm of 25 August 2005, the Muzaffarpur storm of 26 September 2007, the Patna storm of 26–29 September 2019 and the Patna storm of 29 July 2025 among them. Until it is published, design storms use the alternating-block pattern of Clause 2.9.1 and the 48- and 72-hour pattern of Clause 2.9.2; for catchments of 25–5,000 km², the CWC Flood Estimation Report curves may be used with a sensitivity run under Clause 2.9.1 (Clause 2.9.4). SCS Type distributions are not used (Clause 2.9.3). For the disaggregation of daily records in continuous simulation (Clause 11.7.3), the method is agreed with the Authority and recorded (Clause 1.11.5).

Table 2D.1 — Cumulative fraction of storm depth against cumulative fraction of storm time (layout, one table per zone, duration class and quartile)

Fraction of storm time	0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0
10% probability curve	0										1.0
50% probability curve	0										1.0
90% probability curve	0										1.0

2D.1 Each table shall state the zone, the duration class, the quartile (the quarter of the storm in which most rain fell), the number of storms analysed and the period of record.

Reference: Huff, F.A. (1967). Time distribution of rainfall in heavy storms. *Water Resources Research* 3(4), 1007–1019.

Annex 2E — Retention percentile depths by zone

Supports Clauses 2.8.3 and 2.10.1 to 2.10.2 of Chapter 2, Clause 4.4 of Chapter 4 and Chapter 8.

To be prepared. This annex will give, for each zone of Annex 2A, the retention design depth P_R: the 24-hour rainfall depth not exceeded on 90% of days with rain (≥ 2.5 mm) in the long-term record (Clause 2.10.1). It needs long daily records at stations in each zone (IMD, WRD and its FMISC, and the block rain gauges of the State [TBC]) and IMD gridded data with the factors of Annex 2C where stations are sparse. Until it is published, P_R is computed by the definition of Clause 2.10.1 from the long-term daily record of a station agreed with the Authority, by the steps in 2E.1, and recorded on Form 2-1 (Clause 1.11.5).

2E.1 **Computing P_R from a daily record.**

1. Take the daily (24-hour) rainfall series of the station for its full record.
2. Keep only the days with rain of 2.5 mm or more (wet days).
3. Rank the wet-day depths and take the depth not exceeded on 90% of them (the 90th percentile).
4. Do not apply the climate factor (Clause 2.8.3) or the fixed-interval factor; P_R is a statistic of everyday rainfall, not an AEP design depth.
5. Record the station, the period of record, the number of wet days and P_R on Form 2-1.

Table 2E.1 — Retention depth P_R by zone (layout)

Zone	Stations or grid cells used	Period of record	Number of wet days (≥ 2.5 mm)	P_R, 90th percentile (mm)	Issued on
BR-Z1 South Bihar					
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain					
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai					

Form 2-1 — Design Rainfall Sheet

Supports Clauses 2.3 to 2.13 of Chapter 2, and Clause 10.4.1(d) of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One sheet for each hydrologic submittal. The steps follow Figure 2.3 of Chapter 2.

Table 2F.1 — Form 2-1: site, source and storms

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
	A. Site (Clause 2.13, item 1)	
A1	Project and site	_____
A2	Site coordinates (latitude, longitude, decimal degrees)	_____
A3	Rainfall zone (Annex 2A, or as agreed with the Authority)	_____
A4	Contributing catchment area (km²) (Clause 2.7)	_____
A5	Design life: more than 25 years / temporary works, 5 years or less (Clause 2.8.2)	_____
A6	Outfall under tidal or river backwater influence: Yes / No (Clauses 2.5.3, 2.12)	_____
	B. Source (Clauses 2.3, 2.3.5; item 2)	
B1	NIH-DHAARA: version or access date	_____
B2	Coordinates queried	_____
B3	Screenshot or export of the values extracted attached: reference	_____
B4	Station IDF used (Clause 2.3.2): No / Yes — station, ID, distance from site (km)	_____
B5	Station IDF: years of recording-gauge data (30 or more); published or approved by	_____
B6	Station IDF: change of terrain or coastal exposure between gauge and site: None / describe	_____
	C. AEPs and durations (Clauses 2.4, 2.5)	
C1	Elements designed and their AEPs (Table 2.1)	_____
C2	Conveyance: Tc and design duration (not less than 10 min) (Clause 2.5.1)	_____
C3	Storage: durations checked from {1, 2, 3, 6, 12, 24, 48, 72 h}; 24, 48 and 72 h included (Clause 2.5.2)	_____
C4	Critical duration found for each storage element	_____
	D. Conversions	
D1	Sub-daily depths: read directly / from Annex 2B ratios / from ratios agreed with the Authority (Clauses 2.6.1, 2.6.2)	_____
D2	Fixed-interval factor applied: none (true-interval source) / 1.13 / 1.04 / 1.02 (Clause 2.6.3)	_____
D3	Grid-to-point factor: not needed (point source) / Annex 2C / agreed value (Clause 2.7.1)	_____
D4	ARF: 1.0 (10 km² or less; single-site storage) / CWC curve / interpolated (Clauses 2.7.2–2.7.4)	_____
D5	Climate factor: 1.20 (≤ 6 h) and 1.10 (> 6–72 h) / 1.0 temporary works / projected depths under Clause 2.8.4	_____
	E. Cross-checks (Clause 2.3.3; item 4)	
E1	IMD Das et al. (2022) values for 1–24 h: reported in Table 2F.2	_____

No.	Item (clause)	Entry
E2	CWC subzone 1(d) / 1(f) / 1(g) 24-hour point value, catchments of 25–5,000 km²: subzone used	_____
E3	CWC floor governs for any AEP: No / Yes — AEPs	_____
	F. Retention depth (Clause 2.10)	
F1	P_R (mm) and source: Annex 2E zone value / computed under Annex 2E, 2E.1 — station and period	_____
F2	No climate factor applied to P_R (Clause 2.8.3): confirmed	_____
	G. Design storms (Clauses 2.9, 2.11, 2.12; items 5 and 6)	
G1	Storms up to 24 h: alternating block, peak at 50%; time step (≤ Tc/3 and ≤ 15 min)	_____
G2	48 and 72 h storms: built under Clause 2.9.2 (Table 2F.3)	_____
G3	Other pattern used: none / Annex 2D / CWC FER with sensitivity run (Clauses 2.9.3, 2.9.4)	_____
G4	Hyetographs attached as a table and a plot for each design storm: reference	_____
G5	AMC: III for every design storm of 15 June–30 September in BR-A, BR-B and BR-C and on tal, chaur or diara land anywhere, and of July–August in BR-D and BR-E, whatever its duration; at any other site or time, III for a storm that follows or contains a 5-day total of more than 53 mm; II otherwise (Clause 2.11.4)	_____
G6	Pre-development condition: greenfield, open land in good condition for the mapped HSG (Clause 2.11.5)	_____
G7	Release criterion: standard, Q_post ≤ 0.9 × Q_pre (Clause 2.11.2) / flood-sensitive, mixed-frequency rule (Clause 2.11.3)	_____
G8	Tailwater joint cases run (Clause 2.12): case (a) MHWS + sea-level allowance; case (b) 10% AEP 48 h storm with 1% AEP still-water level + sea-level allowance; governing case	_____
	H. Prepared by	
H1	I confirm that the values above are those extracted and used in the submittal. Name, registration number, signature, date	_____

Design depth = source depth × fixed-interval factor × grid-to-point factor × ARF × climate factor. Where the design depth is lower than the CWC floor for the same AEP, the floor is adopted (Clause 2.3.3).

Table 2F.2 — Form 2-1: depth table (Clause 2.13, item 3)

AEP (T-yr)	Duration	Source depth (mm)	Fixed-interval factor	Grid-to-point factor	ARF	Climate factor	Design depth (mm)	IMD Das et al. (2022) (mm)	CWC floor (mm)	Adopted depth (mm)

Table 2F.3 — Form 2-1: 48- and 72-hour storm construction (Clause 2.9.2)

AEP (T-yr)	Duration (h)	Total design depth (mm)	24 h design depth, final 24 h (mm)	Remainder (mm)	Hours before the final 24 h	Uniform intensity before the final 24 h (mm/h)
	48				24	
	72				48	

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 3

Hydrologic Methods

These annexes support Chapter 3. Annex 3C sets out benchmark test problems for software acceptance, and Forms 3-1 and 3-2 are the submittal forms required by Clause 3.17. Annexes 3A, 3B, 3D and 3E need survey, gauging or published report data that this draft does not yet contain; each gives the intended layout and the interim rule of Chapter 3 that applies until it is published. The forms are draft forms and have no statutory status.

Annex 3A — Bihar soil series to HSG lookup; seasonal high water table map

Supports Clauses 3.7 and 3.10 of Chapter 3.

To be prepared. This annex will contain (a) a lookup from each soil series mapped in Bihar to its hydrologic soil group (HSG), in both the drained and the undrained state, and (b) a map of the depth to the seasonal high groundwater table in the south-west monsoon (June–September). It needs NBSS&LUP and Bihar Department of Agriculture (soil survey) [TBC] series maps with their scales, measured saturated hydraulic conductivity and depth to an impermeable layer for each series, and observation-well records from the Central Ground Water Board and the Minor Water Resources Department, supplemented by piezometers in the diara lands of the Ganga, the Kosi, the Gandak and the other rivers, the chaurs and mauns of north Bihar, the Kosi plain of Supaul, Saharsa and Madhepura, the Mokama group of tals and the other tal lands, and the low-lying land of Patna behind the Ganga and the Punpun. Until it is published, use the interim rules of Chapter 3: assign HSG from measured saturated hydraulic conductivity and depth to an impermeable layer or water table by the criteria of NEH Part 630, Ch. 7 (Clause 3.7.2); verify it by site infiltration tests wherever retention relies on infiltration (Clause 3.7.3); take the seasonal high water table from site piezometers, trial pits or the nearest observation well (Clause 3.10.2); and assign HSG D wherever that level is within 0.6 m of the ground surface (Clause 3.10.1).

Table 3A.1 — Soil series to HSG lookup (layout)

Soil series	District(s)	Taxonomic class	Surface texture	Saturated hydraulic conductivity (mm/h)	Depth to impermeable layer (m)	HSG, drained	HSG, undrained	Source map and scale

Table 3A.2 — Seasonal high water table, by mapping unit (layout)

Mapping unit or grid cell	Observation wells used	Years of June–September record	Highest June–September level below ground (m)	Within 0.6 m of ground (Clause 3.10.1)?	Data source

Mapping unit or grid cell	Observation wells used	Years of June–September record	Highest June–September level below ground (m)	Within 0.6 m of ground (Clause 3.10.1)?	Data source

Annex 3B — Bihar CN calibration and supplementary land covers (diara land, chaur and tal beds, Kosi sands, ahar beds, hill forest and scrub, plateau rock)

Supports Clauses 3.8 and 3.15 of Chapter 3.

To be prepared. This annex will contain (a) curve numbers calibrated against observed rainfall and runoff in Bihar catchments, compared with the TR-55 values of Table 3.5, and (b) curve numbers for land covers that Table 3.5 does not list: the cultivated or fallow land of the diara, the active floodplain of the Ganga, the Kosi, the Gandak and the other rivers, which the rivers cover when they are high; the beds of chaurs, mauns and tals that are dry or cultivated at the start of a storm; the sandy deposits of the Kosi plain, bare or under sparse grass; the beds of the ahars of south Bihar that are dry or cultivated at the start of a storm; the forest, scrub and grassland of the Kaimur and Rajgir–Kharagpur hills and of the Champaran terai; and the bare or nearly bare rock outcrop of the plateau fringe. It needs paired rainfall–runoff records for small gauged catchments of known cover and soil, from WRD gauging sites, agricultural research stations and tank gauges, analysed by event and by antecedent moisture. Until it is published: the pre-development reference stays open space in good condition for every site (Clause 3.3.2), so these covers do not enter the pre-development run; for off-site existing conditions, use the nearest Table 3.5 or TR-55 cover row, including the cultivated rows (Clause 3.8.3(c)), and state the row chosen and the reason on Form 3-1; land under standing water at the start of the design storm is modelled as water surface with no losses (Table 3.5; Clause 3.10.4(b)). Any departure from these defaults requires calibration under Clause 3.15 (Clause 3.15.1(d)).

Table 3B.1 — Supplementary land covers, AMC II (layout)

Cover type	HSG A	HSG B	HSG C	HSG D	Ia ratio	Basis (catchments, events, years)
Diara land, cultivated or fallow, above the river level at the start of the storm						
Chaur, maun or tal bed, dry or cultivated at the start of the storm						
Sandy deposits of the Kosi plain, bare or under sparse grass						
Ahar bed, south Bihar, dry or cultivated at the start of the storm						
Forest, scrub and grassland of the Kaimur and Rajgir–Kharagpur hills and the Champaran terai						
Bare or nearly bare rock outcrop, plateau fringe						
Other (state)						

Table 3B.2 — CN calibration catchments (layout)

Catchment	District	Area (km²)	Dominant HSG and cover	Events used	Table 3.5 CN	Calibrated CN	Calibrated ÷ Table 3.5

Catchment	District	Area (km²)	Dominant HSG and cover	Events used	Table 3.5 CN	Calibrated CN	Calibrated ÷ Table 3.5

Annex 3C — Benchmark test problems for software acceptance

Supports Clauses 3.5, 3.6, 3.8, 3.9, 3.11, 3.12 and 3.16 of Chapter 3.

Purpose. Software not listed in Clause 3.16.1 shall reproduce the results of the five problems below (Clause 3.16.3). Each problem is fully specified and uses only the methods and tables of Chapter 3, so every answer can be checked by hand. The acceptance tolerance is ±5% on each tabulated result, the equivalence threshold of Clause 3.16.2; for closed-form results (Problems 3C-1 to 3C-4), software should agree to the rounding shown. The submittal shall report the software result next to each answer below.

Illustrative — not design values. The inputs (areas, intensities, rainfall depths, slopes and the basin) are chosen for testing only. They are not design data for any site.

Problem 3C-1 — Rational Method peak (Clause 3.5)

Inputs. A 2.0 ha catchment draining to one inlet: 1.2 ha concrete paving and roofs, C = 0.90 (Table 3.2, upper half of 0.80–0.95); 0.8 ha lawns on sandy soil, average slope, C = 0.15 (Table 3.2, upper half of 0.10–0.15). Design AEP 1% (100-yr). Rainfall intensity at Tc, including the climate factor: i = 120 mm/h.

Part (b): a separate 0.5 ha fully paved catchment, C = 0.90, design AEP 1%, i = 150 mm/h.

Table 3C.1 — Problem 3C-1 solution

Step	Calculation	Result
Composite C (Clause 3.5.4)	(1.2 × 0.90 + 0.8 × 0.15) / 2.0	0.60
Frequency factor (Table 3.3)	1% AEP	Cf = 1.25
C · Cf (≤ 1.0)	0.60 × 1.25	0.75
Peak flow (Clause 3.5.1)	0.75 × 120 × 2.0 / 360	**Q = 0.500 m³/s**
Part (b): C · Cf	0.90 × 1.25 = 1.125, capped at 1.0 (Clause 3.5.3)	1.00
Part (b): peak flow	1.00 × 150 × 0.5 / 360	**Q = 0.208 m³/s**

Problem 3C-2 — Time of concentration by the segment method (Clause 3.6)

Inputs. Pre-development flow path: sheet flow over greenfield, n = 0.15 (Clause 3.6.3), L = 30 m, S = 0.01; P2 (50% AEP 24-hour rainfall, no climate factor) = 80 mm. Shallow concentrated flow, unpaved, L = 200 m, S = 0.01. Channel flow, L = 400 m, bank-full velocity V = 1.0 m/s (given).

Table 3C.2 — Problem 3C-2 solution

Segment	Calculation	Travel time
Sheet flow (Clause 3.6.2(a))	0.091 × (0.15 × 30)^0.8 / (80^0.5 × 0.01^0.4) = 0.2138 h	12.83 min
Shallow concentrated (Clause 3.6.2(c))	V = 4.918 × 0.01^0.5 = 0.4918 m/s; 200 / (3,600 × 0.4918) = 0.1130 h	6.78 min
Channel (Clause 3.6.2(d))	400 / (3,600 × 1.0) = 0.1111 h	6.67 min

Segment	Calculation	Travel time
Tc (Clause 3.6.1; ≥ 10 min)	12.83 + 6.78 + 6.67	**26.27 min**
Lag (Clause 3.6.5)	0.6 × 26.27	15.76 min

Problem 3C-3 — SCS-CN runoff depth, AMC and Ia sensitivity (Clause 3.8)

Inputs. Pre-development reference on HSG C: CN = 74 at AMC II (Table 3.5), all pervious. Cumulative rainfall P = 100 mm; second case P = 25 mm.

Table 3C.3 — Problem 3C-3 solution

Case	S (mm)	Ia (mm)	Runoff Q (mm), P = 100 mm	Runoff Q (mm), P = 25 mm
(a) AMC II, Ia = 0.2S: S = 25,400 / 74 − 254	89.24	17.85	**39.38**	**0.53**
(b) AMC III, Ia = 0.2S: CN(III) = 23 × 74 / (10 + 0.13 × 74) = 86.75	38.80	7.76	**64.93**	—
(c) AMC II, Ia = 0.05S: S0.05 = 25.4 × 1.33 × (89.24 / 25.4)^1.15	143.31	7.17	**36.49**	**1.97**

Runoff is Q = (P − Ia)² / (P − Ia + S). Case (c) gives less runoff than case (a) at 100 mm but more at 25 mm, as Clause 3.8.5 and Figure 3.3 describe.

Problem 3C-4 — Separate vs composite impervious representation, and SCS unit hydrograph peak (Clauses 3.9 and 3.11.2)

Inputs, part (a). A site that is 50% directly connected impervious (CN 98) and 50% open space on HSG B (CNp = 61), AMC II, Ia = 0.2S, P = 25 mm.

Inputs, part (b). A sub-area of A = 2.5 km² with Tc = 1.0 h and computation interval Δt = 0.1 h.

Table 3C.4 — Problem 3C-4 solution

Step	Calculation	Result
(a) Impervious half (Clause 3.9.2)	S = 5.18 mm, Ia = 1.04 mm; Q = 23.96² / (23.96 + 5.18)	19.70 mm
(a) Pervious half	S = 162.39 mm, Ia = 32.48 mm > P	0 mm
(a) Area-weighted runoff, separate sub-areas	0.5 × 19.70 + 0.5 × 0	**9.85 mm**
(a) Composite CN (Clause 3.9.4)	61 + 0.50 × (98 − 61)	79.5
(a) Runoff with composite CN	S = 65.50 mm, Ia = 13.10 mm; Q = 11.90² / (11.90 + 65.50)	**1.83 mm**
(b) Interval check (Clause 3.11.3(a))	0.133 × 1.0 = 0.133 h ≥ Δt = 0.1 h	satisfied
(b) Lag and time to peak (Clause 3.11.2)	tL = 0.6 × 1.0 = 0.60 h; tp = 0.1 / 2 + 0.60	tp = 0.65 h
(b) Unit hydrograph peak, Q = 1 mm	0.208 × 2.5 × 1 / 0.65	**qp = 0.800 m³/s per mm**

Part (a) reproduces the comparison in the commentary to Clause 3.9 (about 9.9 mm vs 1.8 mm).

Problem 3C-5 — Level-pool (modified Puls) storage routing (Clause 3.12.1)

Inputs. A detention basin with vertical sides and plan area 500 m², with the stage–storage–discharge relationship of Table 3C.5. Triangular inflow hydrograph: 0 at t = 0, rising linearly to 0.50 m³/s at t = 30 min, falling linearly to 0 at t = 90 min. Basin empty at t = 0. Routing interval Δt = 10 min (600 s). No tailwater.

Table 3C.5 — Problem 3C-5 stage–storage–discharge relationship

Stage (m)	Storage S (m³)	Outflow O (m³/s)
0.0	0	0.00
0.5	250	0.05
1.0	500	0.10
1.5	750	0.15
2.0	1,000	0.20
2.5	1,250	0.25

Method. The storage-indication equation is (I1 + I2) + (2S1/Δt − O1) = (2S2/Δt + O2). The table gives O = S / 5,000 (S in m³, O in m³/s), so 2S/Δt + O = 17.667 O and 2S/Δt − O = 15.667 O, and each step is O2 = [(I1 + I2) + 15.667 O1] / 17.667. Software interpolating linearly in Table 3C.5 shall give the same result.

Table 3C.6 — Problem 3C-5 routed outflow

Time (min)	Inflow I (m³/s)	Outflow O (m³/s)	Storage (m³)	Stage (m)
0	0.0000	0.0000	0.0	0.000
10	0.1667	0.0094	47.2	0.094
20	0.3333	0.0367	183.3	0.367
30	0.5000	0.0797	398.4	0.797
40	0.4167	0.1226	612.8	1.226
50	0.3333	0.1511	755.7	1.511
60	0.2500	0.1670	835.2	1.670
70	0.1667	**0.1717**	**858.6**	**1.717**
80	0.0833	0.1664	832.1	1.664
90	0.0000	0.1523	761.5	1.523
120	0.0000	0.1062	531.1	1.062
180	0.0000	0.0517	258.3	0.517

Results. Peak outflow 0.172 m³/s at 70 min; peak storage 859 m³; peak stage 1.72 m. The inflow peak of 0.50 m³/s is reduced to 34% of its value.

Table 3C.7 — Benchmark results to be reported by the applicant

Problem	Result	Benchmark	Software result	Difference (%)	Within ±5%?
3C-1	Q, main case (m³/s)	0.500			

Problem	Result	Benchmark	Software result	Difference (%)	Within ±5%?
3C-1	Q, part (b) (m³/s)	0.208			
3C-2	Tc (min)	26.27			
3C-3	Q, case (a), P = 100 mm (mm)	39.38			
3C-3	Q, case (b), P = 100 mm (mm)	64.93			
3C-3	Q, case (c), P = 100 mm (mm)	36.49			
3C-3	Q, case (c), P = 25 mm (mm)	1.97			
3C-4	Runoff, separate sub-areas (mm)	9.85			
3C-4	Runoff, composite CN (mm)	1.83			
3C-4	qp (m³/s per mm)	0.800			
3C-5	Peak outflow (m³/s)	0.172			
3C-5	Peak storage (m³)	859			

Annex 3D — Peak rate factor study for flat coastal land

Supports Clauses 3.11.5 and 3.15 of Chapter 3.

> **Not required in Bihar.** Bihar is landlocked and has no flat coastal plain, so no land in the State meets Clause 3.11.5(a), and the standard factor 484 (PRF' = 0.208) applies to all land (Clause 3.11.5). The diara, the chaurs, the tals and the north Bihar plain, whose slope is about 0.05 m/km in the 1(f) worked example on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli line, are flat but are not coastal plain; their slow response is represented by storage and backwater (Clauses 3.10.4 and 3.12.4), not by a lower peak rate factor. The annex and the layout of Table 3D.1 are kept only so that the annex numbering is unchanged.

Table 3D.1 — Calibrated peak rate factors (layout)

Catchment	Area (km²)	Mean slope (m/m)	Drainage condition	Events used	Calibrated PRF (US customary)	PRF' (SI)	Range of applicability

---

Annex 3E — CWC SUH parameters for subzones 1(d), 1(f) and 1(g), with worked example

Supports Clauses 3.4.3 and 3.11.4 of Chapter 3.

To be prepared. This annex will tabulate, for CWC subzones 1(d) (Sone), 1(f) (Middle Ganga Plains) and 1(g) (Lower Ganga Plains), the regression relationships for the synthetic unit hydrograph parameters, the design storm duration, loss rate, base flow, areal reduction and time distribution, each with its reference to the Flood Estimation Report, and a worked example for one catchment. It needs the three CWC Flood Estimation Reports that cover Bihar: the Sone subzone 1(d) (Design Office Report No. S/15/1987, CWC Publication No. 33/88, August 1987, approved at the 46th meeting of the Planning and Co-ordination Committee on 27–28 August 1987), which covers the State south of the Ganga and west of about the Kiul, including Patna, Arrah, Buxar, Sasaram, Dehri, Gaya, Bihar Sharif, Jehanabad and Nawada; the Middle Ganga Plains subzone 1(f) (GP/10/1984, October 1985), which covers the whole of the State north of the Ganga, including Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Hajipur, Chhapra, Motihari, Bagaha, Saharsa, Purnia, Kishanganj and Katihar; and the Lower Ganga Plains subzone 1(g) (revised, LG-1(g)/R-1/23/94, November 1994), which covers the south bank east of about the Kiul, including Munger, Jamalpur, Bhagalpur, Banka and Jamui (see the References of Chapter 3); with the exponent of the 1(d) time-to-peak relationship, printed 1.102 in the report's relationship table and 1.012 in its worked example, its base flow, areal reduction and time-distribution tables, and the subzone boundaries within Bihar, including the 1(d)/1(g) boundary near the Kiul and the 1(f)/1(g) boundary at Bhagalpur, still to be confirmed on the reports' page images and index maps [TBC], transcribed and checked against the published reports, and a catchment with physiographic parameters measured from survey or a DEM. Until it is published, take all SUH inputs directly from the applicable Flood Estimation Report (Clause 3.11.4(a)), apply the 24-hour design rainfall of Clauses 2.3.3(b) and 2.7.3 with the climate factor of Clause 2.8 (Clause 3.11.4(b)), report the SUH result alongside the HEC-HMS or SWMM result for the existing natural condition (Clause 3.11.4(c)), and, where the hydrograph model gives a lower 1% AEP peak, either justify it by calibration under Clause 3.15 or adopt the SUH peak (Clause 3.11.4(d)).

Table 3E.1 — SUH relationships by subzone (layout)

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Subzone 1(d) relationship	Subzone 1(f) relationship	Subzone 1(g), plain region	Subzone 1(g), hilly region
Peak discharge per unit area	qp	m³/s per km²	qp = 1.664 tp^−0.965	qp = 0.409 (L/√S)^−0.456	qp = 0.6617 (L/√S)^−0.515	qp = 2.0972 tp^−0.927
Time from centre of unit rainfall to peak	tp	h	tp = 0.314 (L/√S)^1.012 (the exponent is printed 1.102 in the relationship table and 1.012 in the worked example and the design-storm formula; see the note) [TBC]	tp = 1.217 qp^−1.034	tp = 1.8833 qp^−0.940	tp = 1.1808 (L·Lc/√S)^0.285
Width of UH at 50% of peak	W50	h	W50 = 2.534 qp^−0.976	W50 = 1.743 qp^−1.104	W50 = 1.7897 qp^−1.006	W50 = 1.2622 tp^0.828
Width of UH at 75% of peak	W75	h	W75 = 1.478 qp^−0.860	W75 = 0.902 qp^−1.108	W75 = 0.8955 qp^−1.061	W75 = 0.7896 tp^0.711
Width of rising limb at 50% of peak	WR50	h	WR50 = 1.091 qp^−0.750	WR50 = 0.736 qp^−0.928	WR50 = 0.5524 qp^−1.012	WR50 = 0.5357 tp^0.745
Width of rising limb at 75% of peak	WR75	h	WR75 = 0.672 qp^−0.719	WR75 = 0.478 qp^−0.902	WR75 = 0.2984 qp^−1.012, as printed (the same exponent as WR50) [TBC]	WR75 = 0.3825 tp^0.647

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Subzone 1(d) relationship	Subzone 1(f) relationship	Subzone 1(g), plain region	Subzone 1(g), hilly region
Base width of UH	TB	h	TB = 5.526 tp^0.866	TB = 16.432 tp^0.646	TB = 12.4755 tp^0.721	TB = 5.5830 tp^0.824
Unit duration	tr	h	1	6	1	1
Design storm duration	TD	h	TD = 1.1 tp = 0.345 (L/√S)^1.012, rounded to the nearest hour; the report found that TD = 1.1 tp gave the higher peak than TD = TB in "60 to 75% of the cases"	TD = 1.1 tp, limited to 24 h; by tp: 3–5 h, 6 h; 6–11 h, 12 h; 12–17 h, 18 h; 18–72 h, 24 h	TD = 1.1 tp	TD = 1.1 tp
Design loss rate	—	mm/h	2.5 (printed "modal loss rate of 0.25 cm/hr"; one passage reads "0.45cm/hr" by optical character recognition, to be checked against the page image [TBC])	3.0 (printed as the "modal value … 3.0 mm per hour")	2.7 (the subzone value; the modal value of the 1(f) catchments used for this region is 3.0)	2.7 (printed "0.27 cm/hr"; modal value of 46 events on 11 catchments)
Design base flow	—	m³/s per km²	Not located in the copy read; the worked example's 15.33 m³/s on 340.64 km² implies about 0.045 [TBC]	0.05 (87 of 158 events in the range 0.01–0.09)	0.05	0.05
Ratio of t-hour to 24-hour rainfall	—	—	50-yr: 1 h 0.37; 3 h 0.58; 6 h 0.70; 9 h 0.80; 12 h 0.89; 15 h 0.94; 18 h 0.98 (read by optical character recognition only [TBC]); 24 h 1.00 (from 14 IMD self-recording gauges; independent of return period from 5 years)	50-yr: 1 h 0.31; 3 h 0.50; 6 h 0.65; 9 h 0.75; 12 h 0.82; 15 h 0.89; 18 h 0.94; 24 h 1.00	10-yr: 1 h 0.350; 3 h 0.515; 6 h 0.640; 9 h 0.735; 12 h 0.800; 15 h 0.860; 18 h 0.915; 24 h 1.000	as plain region
Time distribution of 24-hour rainfall	—	cumulative fraction	Average curves of Fig. 12(a)–(e) for storms of 2–3, 4–6, 7–12, 13–18 and 19–24 hours, from 1,994 storms, and coefficients of Table A-2; not transcribed [TBC]	Average curves of Fig. 12 for storms of 2–3, 4–6, 7–12, 13–18 and 19–24 hours; not transcribed [TBC]	[TBC]	[TBC]
Conversion of 1-day to 24-hour rainfall	—	factor	1.15	1.15	1.15	1.15
Areal reduction factor	ARF	—	Table 6 and Figs 11(a) and 11(b), from 8 bridge catchments with data "only upto 800 sq.km", extrapolated to 2,500 km², to be used "with caution for areas more than 800 sq.km"; values not transcribed [TBC]	Table 6 and Figs 11(a) and 11(b); the worked example uses 0.91 for 24 hours at about 300 km² [TBC]	Annex 4.2 of the report, read by optical character recognition only [TBC]	as plain region [TBC]

Parameter	Symbol	Unit	Subzone 1(d) relationship	Subzone 1(f) relationship	Subzone 1(g), plain region	Subzone 1(g), hilly region
50-yr 24-hour point rainfall at Bihar towns	—	mm	Plate 9 (the 50-yr map by its title; the text calls it Plate 10): Patna about 260–280; Gaya about 280–320; Arrah and Sasaram about 240–280; Bihar Sharif and Rajgir about 280; Lakhisarai and Kiul below 240	Plate 8: Muzaffarpur about 320 (the report's worked example near it uses 340); Darbhanga, Motihari, Begusarai and Purnia about 280–320; Saharsa about 320; Kishanganj about 320–360; Hajipur, Chhapra and Katihar about 240–280; Bagaha and Valmikinagar above 400	Plate 9: Munger and Bhagalpur about 280–320; Banka about 240; Jamui and Lakhisarai about 240	as plain region
Catchment area for which the relationships apply	A	km²	Recommended for 25–1,500, usable to 5,000 with judgement; derived from 15 catchments of 27.51–5,815 km²	Derived from 25 of 45 catchments of 30–4,479 km²; the stated range of application not read [TBC]	25–1,000; up to 5,000 with judgement	25–1,000; up to 5,000 with judgement
Report reference	—	—	Relationship table (p. 40), worked example (pp. 15–23), design storm (p. 49), rainfall ratios (p. 50), loss rate (pp. 84–88)	Relationship table (p. 32), pp. 11–12, 34 and 43	Tables 3.1 and 3.2 (pp. 13–14), §3.5 and §3.6 (pp. 15–16)	Tables 3.1 and 3.2 (pp. 13–14), §3.5 and §3.6 (pp. 15–16)

Note: relationships as printed in the three CWC reports that cover Bihar (References of Chapter 3), read from scanned copies and checked against the page images except where marked as read by optical character recognition only. L is the length of the main stream in km, Lc the length to the point nearest the catchment centroid in km, S the equivalent slope in m/km and A the catchment area in km². The reports were written when "Bihar" included the districts that are now in Jharkhand, and many of their gauged catchments lie there. **The 1(d) time-to-peak exponent is to be confirmed before use [TBC].** The relationship table of the 1(d) report prints tp = 0.314 (L/√S)^1.102, but its worked example computes "0.314 (34.94/√3.70)^1.012 = 5.90 hrs", and its design-storm formula is TD = 0.345 (L/√S)^1.012; the example's arithmetic matches 1.012 (0.314 × 18.165^1.012 = 5.90), while 1.102 would give about 7.7 h. This Manual uses 1.012 and treats 1.102 as a misprint until the report is checked. The 1(d) worked example (Railway Bridge No. 1198 on the Itarsi–Allahabad line, the Simrawal Nadi, 340.64 km², S = 3.70 m/km) lies outside Bihar; the report gives a 50-yr peak of 1,157.06 m³/s by the detailed method and 1,160.04 m³/s by its simplified formula, Q50 = 6.214 A^0.701 S^0.484 R50^0.202, which is for preliminary design only (about ±30% of the detailed method). The 1(f) worked example is a Bihar catchment: for Railway Bridge No. 152 on the Muzaffarpur–Sagauli section, 299.53 km² with L = 27.03 km and S = 0.048 m/km, the report adopts tp = 27 h and TD = 24 h, and with a 50-yr 24-hour point rainfall of 34.0 cm, an ARF of 0.91 and a base flow of 14.98 m³/s gives a 50-yr peak of 338.77 m³/s. The 1(g) plain-region relationships were derived again, for a 1-hour unit graph, from the data of 22 catchments of subzone 1(f) in Bihar and Uttar Pradesh, because too few gauged sites were found in the plain; the hilly-region relationships come from 11 railway-bridge catchments on the Chotanagpur plateau, now in Jharkhand, and are for catchments on the plateau fringe of Banka and Jamui with slopes above about 2 m/km [TBC]. In the 1(g) plain region the WR75 exponent is printed the same as the WR50 exponent, which may be a misprint [TBC]. The design loss rates, 2.5 mm/h in 1(d), 3.0 mm/h in 1(f) and 2.7 mm/h in 1(g), are φ-indices fitted to the floods of whole rural catchments; they are not soil infiltration capacities and are not used to assign HSG (Clause 3.7) or to size infiltration practices (Chapter 4). The reports were derived from gauged rural catchments at railway and road bridges, none of them urban. In Bihar they apply to the rural nalas and streams that enter city limits, such as the tributaries of the Punpun south of Patna and the Phalgu and Morhar near Gaya; they are not a model of city catchments. Where a city catchment lies within 25–5,000 km², the SUH is computed only as the benchmark of its natural condition (Clause 3.11.4), and the catchment itself is designed by the methods of Clause 3.4 with the design rainfall of Chapter 2. The 6-hour unit graph of 1(f) and its design storm of at least 6 hours make it unsuitable below about 100 km², and the north Bihar plain is so flat that the 1(f) worked example has tp of about 27–29 h for 300 km². The rivers at the large cities, the Ganga, the Sone, the Gandak, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati, the Kosi and the Mahananda, are far larger than the catchments of any report and are outside Clause 3.11.4 (Clause 3.4.5). The

ratios are not to be used to derive intensities for durations shorter than the TD of the SUH (Chapter 2): with the 1(d) ratios the 50-yr 1-hour depth at Patna is about 96–104 mm, about 20% more than across the Ganga in 1(f), and no sub-daily station record in Bihar was found to test it [TBC]. Subzone boundaries, to be confirmed on the index maps of the reports [TBC]: the Ganga divides 1(f) on the north bank from 1(d) and 1(g) on the south; the 1(d)/1(g) boundary runs south from the Ganga just east of the Kiul, at about 86.2° E; Patna city, on the south bank, is in 1(d), and Hajipur and Sonpur, on the north bank, are in 1(f); Bhagalpur city is in 1(g) and Naugachia, on the north bank, in 1(f); and the Kaimur and Rohtas plateaus are within 1(d). The subzone is chosen by the catchment's outfall, not by its district. Where a catchment drains across the boundary between two subzones, this Manual requires the SUH to be computed with the parameters of each subzone and the higher 1% AEP peak to be adopted, unless calibration under Clause 3.15 supports the other.

Table 3E.2 — Worked example outline (layout)

Step	Content	Clause
1	Catchment area, main stream length, length to centroid and equivalent slope, from survey or DEM	3.11.4(a)
2	SUH parameters from Table 3E.1 and the plotted unit hydrograph	3.11.4(a)
3	Design storm duration, point and areal 24-hour rainfall with climate factor, time distribution	3.11.4(a), (b)
4	Effective rainfall after the design loss rate; convolution with the SUH; base flow added	3.11.4(a)
5	1% AEP peak compared with the HEC-HMS or SWMM peak for the existing natural condition	3.11.4(c), (d)

Form 3-1 — Hydrologic Calculation Summary

Supports Clauses 3.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.8, 3.10–3.13, 3.15–3.17 of Chapter 3.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One form per submittal. Attach the documents listed in Section H.

A. Project

Table 3F.1 — Form 3-1: project

Field	Entry
A1. Project name and applicant	
A2. Location (village or ward, survey numbers, district)	
A3. Site area (ha) and number of points of comparison (POCs)	
A4. Catchment class: standard (Clause 2.11.2) or flood-sensitive (Clause 2.11.3)	
A5. Design Rainfall Sheet reference (Form 2-1)	

B. Method and software (Clauses 3.4, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16)

Table 3F.2 — Form 3-1: method and software

Field	Entry
B1. Purpose of each calculation (conveyance, storage, comparison, catchment study)	
B2. Contributing area for each purpose (ha or km²)	
B3. Method used and the row of Table 3.1 that permits it	
B4. Reason for the choice of method	
B5. Software and version; engine and version for packages built on SWMM or HEC (Clause 3.16.1, 3.16.2)	
B6. For other software: benchmark results of Annex 3C attached (Table 3C.7) and the 5% comparison of Clause 3.16.2	
B7. Runoff transform (Clause 3.11.1)	
B8. Computation interval Δt (h), with 0.133 Tc of the smallest sub-area and the hyetograph time step (Clause 3.11.3(a))	
B9. Storage routing and channel routing methods (Clauses 3.12.1, 3.12.2)	
B10. Dynamic-wave routing required? If yes, which condition of Clause 3.12.4	
B11. CWC SUH benchmark required (25–5,000 km², Clause 3.11.4)? Result reference	
B12. Continuous simulation required (Clause 3.13.1)? Record used and starting tank levels (Clause 3.13.5)	
B13. Calibration required (Clause 3.15.1)? Calibration report reference	

C. Soils and groundwater (Clauses 3.3.3(b), 3.7, 3.10)

Table 3F.3 — Form 3-1: soils and groundwater

Field	Entry
C1. HSG source map, scale and lookup used (Clause 3.7.1, Annex 3A) or NEH Part 630, Ch. 7 assignment (Clause 3.7.2)	
C2. Infiltration tests: number, locations, depths, results (Clause 3.7.3)	
C3. Seasonal high water table: depth below ground and source (Clause 3.10.2)	
C4. Areas within 0.6 m assigned HSG D (Clause 3.10.1)	
C5. Disturbed pervious areas and HSG downgrade applied (Clause 3.3.3(b))	

D. Parameters by sub-area and condition (Clauses 3.3, 3.5, 3.8, 3.9; Clause 3.17 item 4)

Table 3F.4 — Form 3-1: parameters by sub-area and condition

Sub-area	Condition (pre / post)	Area (ha)	Impervious: roofs / paved / roads (ha)	DCIA (ha)	Disconnected (ha)	HSG	CN, AMC II	CN, AMC III (pervious part)	C and Cf (if Rational)	Tc (min)

E. Time of concentration worksheet (Clause 3.6)

One worksheet per sub-area and condition.

Table 3F.5 — Form 3-1: time of concentration worksheet

Segment	Flow type	Surface and n (Table 3.4)	L (m)	S (m/m)	P2 (mm)	V (m/s)	Tt (min)
1	Sheet					—	
2	Shallow concentrated				—		
3	Channel or pipe				—		
	Tc (not less than 10 min)						

E1. Is the post-development Tc shorter than the pre-development Tc? If not, explain (Clause 3.6.6): _____

F. Rainfall and losses (Clauses 3.8.4, 3.8.5, 3.11.5, 3.12, 3.3.5)

Table 3F.6 — Form 3-1: rainfall, losses and starting levels

Field	Entry
F1. AEPs and durations run; climate factor applied (Chapter 2)	
F2. AMC used for each duration (Clause 3.8.4)	
F3. Ia ratio for design runs; Ia = 0.05S sensitivity run made (Clause 3.8.5)	
F4. Peak rate factor used; if lower than 484, the Annex 3D value and the land it applies to (Clause 3.11.5)	
F5. Starting water level of each tank or waterbody, and its basis (Clauses 3.12.5, 3.13.5)	

Field	Entry
F6. Off-site run-on: land use assumed for conveyance and for the comparison (Clause 3.3.5)	
F7. Incidental storage counted? If yes, the authority's acceptance (Clause 3.12.3)	

G. Departures

Table 3F.7 — Form 3-1: departures from Chapter 3

No.	Clause departed from	Value used in place of the Chapter 3 value	Justification
1			
2			

H. Attachments (Clause 3.17)

Table 3F.8 — Form 3-1: attachments

Item	Attached (yes / no / not applicable)	Reference
H1. Catchment maps, pre- and post-development, with sub-areas, Tc flow paths, POCs and off-site run-on		
H2. HSG map, water-table data and infiltration test results		
H3. Parameter tables (Section D) and Tc worksheets (Section E)		
H4. Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) and hyetographs		
H5. Hydrograph tables and plots; stage–storage and stage–discharge tables; routed outflows; peak water levels		
H6. Form 3-2 for each POC		
H7. Calibration report (Clause 3.15)		
H8. Native model input and output files (Clause 3.16.4)		

I. Statement by the responsible engineer (Clause 3.17 item 10)

I state that the methods and parameters of Chapter 3 of the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual (Draft v1.0) have been used in this submittal, and that every departure is listed and justified in Section G.

Table 3F.9 — Form 3-1: statement by the responsible engineer

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Organisation	
Signature	
Date	

Form 3-2 — Pre- vs Post-Development Comparison

Supports Clauses 3.8.5, 3.11.5 and 3.14 of Chapter 3.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One form for each point of comparison (POC). Flows in m³/s, volumes in m³.

A. Point of comparison (Clause 3.14.2)

Table 3F.10 — Form 3-2: point of comparison

Field	Entry
A1. POC identifier and location	
A2. Area draining to the POC: site (ha) and off-site run-on (ha)	
A3. Off-site run-on passes through site storage? (Clause 3.14.2(c))	
A4. Catchment class: standard (Clause 2.11.2) or flood-sensitive (Clause 2.11.3)	
A5. Tailwater applied, including joint cases of Clause 2.12 (Clause 3.14.9(c))	
A6. Flood-sensitive only: largest 10% AEP pre-development peak over all durations, the cap of Clause 2.11.3 (Clause 3.14.7)	
A7. Flood-sensitive only: 50% AEP pre-development peak at the pre-development critical duration (Clause 2.11.3)	

B. Peak flows (Clauses 3.14.7–3.14.10)

Limit: standard catchments 0.9 × Q_pre for the same AEP and duration (Clause 3.14.10(a)); flood-sensitive catchments the caps A6 (for 1% AEP) and A7 (for 50% AEP) (Clause 3.14.10(b)).

Table 3F.11 — Form 3-2: peak flows by AEP and duration

AEP	Duration (h)	AMC	Q_pre	Q_post, uncontrolled	Q_post, routed	Limit	Met?
50% (2-yr)	1	II					
50% (2-yr)	2	II					
50% (2-yr)	3	II					
50% (2-yr)	6	II					
50% (2-yr)	12	III					
50% (2-yr)	24	III					
50% (2-yr)	48	III					
50% (2-yr)	72	III					
10% (10-yr)	1	II					
10% (10-yr)	2	II					
10% (10-yr)	3	II					
10% (10-yr)	6	II					

AEP	Duration (h)	AMC	Q_pre	Q_post, uncontrolled	Q_post, routed	Limit	Met?
10% (10-yr)	12	III					
10% (10-yr)	24	III					
10% (10-yr)	48	III					
10% (10-yr)	72	III					
1% (100-yr)	1	II					
1% (100-yr)	2	II					
1% (100-yr)	3	II					
1% (100-yr)	6	II					
1% (100-yr)	12	III					
1% (100-yr)	24	III					
1% (100-yr)	48	III					
1% (100-yr)	72	III					

C. Volumes and storage (Clauses 3.14.8–3.14.10)

Table 3F.12 — Form 3-2: volumes and storage

AEP	Governing duration (h)	Runoff volume, pre	Runoff volume, post uncontrolled	Retention volume	Detention storage required	Peak water level in storage (m)
50% (2-yr)						
10% (10-yr)						
1% (100-yr)						

C1. Governing duration for storage, and the 24, 48 and 72 h results (Clause 3.14.10): _____

D. Sensitivity runs (Clauses 3.8.5, 3.14.11)

Table 3F.13 — Form 3-2: sensitivity runs

Run	Governing storm (AEP, duration)	Change in Q_post, routed (%)	Change in required storage (%)	Retention volume or WQv governing (Clause 3.8.5(c))
Ia = 0.05S				
Standard peak rate factor (only where a lower factor is used)				—

E. Associated checks (Clause 3.14.12)

Table 3F.14 — Form 3-2: associated checks

Check	Result	Reference in submittal
Drawdown times (Chapter 4)		
Minimum orifice and trash screen (Chapter 4)		
Emergency spillway (Chapter 4)		
Outfall-closed storage check (Chapter 5)		
Downstream analysis (Chapter 5)		

F. Statement by the responsible engineer

I state that this comparison has been made by the procedure of Clause 3.14, with the same design storms in the pre- and post-development runs, and that no runoff has been diverted from one natural catchment to another to meet the criterion (Clause 3.14.2(b)).

Table 3F.15 — Form 3-2: statement by the responsible engineer

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 4

Site Runoff Control: Retention and Detention

These annexes support Chapter 4. Annex 4C is a complete Tier A worked example with routing tables, built on the illustrative example of Clause 4.6.7. Annex 4B sets out the structure of the Tier B tables, the provisional fixed release coefficients and a standard orifice table computed from the Chapter 4 orifice equation; the values that need NIH-DHAARA depths are still to be derived. Annex 4A needs GIS and groundwater data that this draft does not yet contain; it gives the intended layout and the interim rules of Chapter 4. Forms 4-1 to 4-3 are the submittal forms required by Clause 4.17. They are draft forms and have no statutory status.

Annex 4A — Flood-sensitive catchment boundaries (GIS); shallow-groundwater zone map

Supports Clauses 4.5.3, 4.5.4 and 4.12 of Chapter 4.

4A.1 **Flood-sensitive catchment boundaries.** The catchments are those listed in Clause 4.5.3.2, with any catchment notified under Clause 4.5.4. Their maps and GIS layer are the same data set as Annex 1B, which lists the catchments and gives the attribute layout of the layer. The two annexes shall be issued together.

4A.2 **Shallow-groundwater zone map.** This map shows the areas where Clause 4.12 applies: the diara lands of the Ganga, the Kosi, the Gandak and the other rivers, the north Bihar plain, where the water table before the monsoon is about 1.5–5.7 m below ground and rises in it, the chaurs and mauns, the Kosi plain, the Mokama group of tals and the other tal lands, and the low-lying land of Patna behind the Ganga and the Punpun, and any area where the groundwater table lies within 3 m of the surface at any time of year (Clause 4.12.1).

To be prepared. This annex will contain (a) the boundaries of the flood-sensitive catchments as a GIS layer and as maps at a scale fit for deciding whether a plot lies inside them, and (b) a map of the shallow-groundwater zone of Clause 4.12.1, with the seasonal high groundwater depth during and after the SW monsoon. It needs basin and sub-basin boundaries from a digital elevation model and the drainage network (WRD, NRSC, Survey of India), the flood plain zones of the embanked rivers determined under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, the 5-, 25- and 100-year flood zones of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari when the NIH study is complete, the embankments, sluices and drains of WRD, the pokhars, ahars, pynes, chaurs and tals recorded in the revenue records and in the Patna Master Plan 2031 and other development plans, and the boundaries of the Ramsar sites and of the wetlands notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules 2017, with their 50 m zones, town boundaries (PMAA and the other planning authorities under the Bihar Urban Planning and Development Act 2012, PMC and the other Nagar Nigams, Nagar Parishads and Nagar Panchayats, and UDHD), flood maps held by BSDMA, observation-well records of the CGWB and the Minor Water Resources Department (groundwater directorate), and the extent of the diara lands, the calcareous alluvium of north Bihar, the sandy deposits of the Kosi plain, the clays of the tal lands, and the rock and thin red soils of the plateau fringe from soil survey maps (NBSS&LUP, the Bihar Department of Agriculture (soil survey) [TBC]). Until it is published: (a) the catchments named in Clause 4.5.3.2 apply, and whether a site lies in one is decided and recorded as set out in Annex 1B; and (b) every site to which Clause 4.12.1 may apply establishes its design groundwater level from site piezometer readings over one June–November season or, failing that, from the nearest CGWB or State observation well plus 0.5 m and the design flood level of any adjacent river, nala, pokhar or chaur (Clause 4.12.1(b)). For the flotation check in the diara lands, the chaurs, the Kosi plain and the tal lands without piezometer readings, the design groundwater level is existing ground level (Clause 4.12.1).

Table 4A.1 — Attributes of the shallow-groundwater zone layer (layout)

Field	Content	Unit or format
zone_id	Unique identifier	text
zone_class	diara (active floodplain); chaur or maun; tal land (Mokama group or other); north Bihar plain; Kosi plain; land behind a river embankment or town protection wall (Ganga or Punpun at Patna, or other); other area with groundwater within 3 m of the surface (Clause 4.12.1)	text
shgw_depth_m	Seasonal high groundwater depth below ground, SW monsoon season	m
shgw_basis	Wells or piezometers used, and period of record	text
tidal_influence	Whether the groundwater level follows an adjacent tidal water body (Clause 4.12.1(b))	yes / no
source	Source agency and date of the data	text
geometry	Zone boundary	polygon

Annex 4B — Tier B tables: PSD and SSR (Table 4.3), retention credit factor C_R, standard outlet sizes; confirmed fixed release coefficients (Table 4.3A)

Supports Clauses 4.4.6.3, 4.14.1, 4.14.2 and 4.14.4 to 4.14.6 of Chapter 4.

4B.1 This annex will hold four tables. Their status in this draft is:

Table 4B.1 — Contents of Annex 4B and their status

Table	Content	Clause	Status in this draft
4B.2	Tier B permissible site discharge (PSD) and site storage requirement (SSR), the values of Table 4.3	4.14.2	To be prepared
4B.3	Retention credit factor C_R	4.4.6.3	To be prepared; C_R = 0 until published
4B.4	Standard outlet sizes	4.14.2 step 4, 4.14.6	Computed in this annex from the orifice equation of Clause 4.6.5.2
4B.5	Fixed release coefficients C_10 and C_2 (Table 4.3A)	4.14.4	Provisional values of Table 4.3A; confirmed values to be prepared

4B.2 PSD and SSR (Table 4.3)

To be prepared. This table will give, for each rainfall zone, hydrologic soil group and post-development imperviousness, the PSD for the 2-yr and 100-yr stages and the SSR, for standard and flood-sensitive catchments, in the layout of Table 4.3. It needs NIH-DHAARA design depths with the climate factor for each zone (Chapter 2, Annex 2A), the sub-daily ratios of Annex 2B, and routing of a set of standard sites by the full method of Clause 4.6 for every AEP and duration of Table 4.1. Each PSD shall be the governing release cap and each SSR the governing storage per hectare, with a margin so that the simplified method is never cheaper than routing. Until it is published, Tier B sites use Clause 4.6, or the fixed-coefficient route of Clause 4.14.3 where the site is 1 ha or less (Clauses 4.14.1 and 4.14.3).

Table 4B.2 — Tier B PSD and SSR (layout of Table 4.3)

Zone (Annex 2A)	HSG	Imperviousness	PSD 2-yr (L/s/ha)	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), standard	PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), flood-sensitive	SSR (m^3/ha), standard	SSR (m^3/ha), flood-sensitive
BR-Z1 South Bihar: BR-D South Bihar plain (Magadh–Bhojpur)	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
BR-Z1 South Bihar: BR-E South-east Ganga fringe and plateau margin	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain: BR-A Gandak–Burhi Gandak plain	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
BR-Z2 North Bihar plain: BR-B Mithila and Kosi plain	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai: BR-C Seemanchal	A / B / C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—
BR-Z3 Seemanchal and Champaran terai: Champaran terai strip of BR-A (Bagaha, Valmikinagar, Ramnagar, Narkatiaganj)	C / D	50% / 70% / 90%	—	—	—	—	—

4B.3 Retention credit factor C_R

To be prepared. This table will give C_R for each rainfall zone, hydrologic soil group and design infiltration or drawdown rate of the retention practice (Clauses 4.4.3 and 4.4.6.3). It needs routing of the full duration set of Clause 2.5.2 with NIH-DHAARA depths, with the retention practice modelled as in Clause 4.4.6.2, and the credit expressed as the reduction in governing storage per cubic metre of retention provided. Until it is published, **C_R = 0** (Clause 4.4.6.3).

Table 4B.3 — Retention credit factor C_R (layout)

Zone (Annex 2A)	HSG	Design infiltration or drawdown rate (mm/h)	C_R (–)

4B.4 Standard outlet sizes

4B.4.1 Table 4B.4 gives the largest circular orifice, in 5 mm steps, whose discharge does not exceed a stated permissible discharge at a stated head. It is computed from the orifice equation with the discharge coefficient of Clause 4.6.5.2:

> $Q = 0.60 \times (\pi d^2 / 4) \times \sqrt{(2 g H)}$

where Q is the discharge (m³/s), d the orifice diameter (m), g = 9.81 m/s² and H the head from the water level to the centre of the orifice (m). Sizes are rounded **down**, so that the orifice never passes more than the permissible discharge. Where the computed size is below 50 mm, the 50 mm minimum of Clause 4.8.2 is shown; it is deemed to comply under Clause 4.5.5.1.

4B.4.2 The table assumes free discharge. Where the tailwater can rise above the orifice (Clause 4.6.6), H is the difference between the upstream and downstream water levels and the orifice shall be checked by routing. The State Stormwater Technical Committee may replace this table when it issues Annex 4B.

Table 4B.4 — Largest orifice diameter (mm) for a permissible discharge at a given head (Cd = 0.60, free discharge)

Permissible discharge (L/s)	H = 0.5 m	H = 1.0 m	H = 1.5 m	H = 2.0 m
5	55	50	50	50
10	80	65	60	55
15	100	80	75	70
20	115	95	85	80
30	140	115	105	100
50	180	150	135	130
75	225	185	170	155
100	260	215	195	180

Permissible discharge (L/s)	H = 0.5 m	H = 1.0 m	H = 1.5 m	H = 2.0 m
150	315	265	240	225
200	365	305	275	260
300	450	375	340	315

Check: for 50 L/s at H = 1.0 m, the area is 0.050 / (0.60 × √(2 × 9.81 × 1.0)) = 0.0188 m², so d = √(4 × 0.0188 / π) = 0.155 m, rounded down to 150 mm.

4B.5 Fixed release coefficients (Table 4.3A)

4B.5.1 Table 4B.5 repeats the provisional coefficients of Table 4.3A. They may be used now under the fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14.4).

Table 4B.5 — Fixed release coefficients C_10 and C_2 (provisional, Table 4.3A)

Hydrologic soil group	C_10	C_2	Clause	Status
A (sandy, well drained)	0.05	0.02	4.14.4	Provisional
B	0.08	0.03	4.14.4	Provisional
C	0.15	0.08	4.14.4	Provisional
D (clay, poorly drained)	0.25	0.15	4.14.4	Provisional

To be prepared. The confirmed coefficients will replace Table 4B.5. They need NIH-DHAARA depths for each zone and the greenfield curve numbers of Clause 3.3, as described in the commentary to Clause 4.14. Until they are published, the provisional values of Table 4.3A apply.

Annex 4C — Worked example (Tier A) with full routing tables

Supports Clauses 4.4 to 4.9, 4.15 and 4.17 of Chapter 4.

Illustrative — not design values. This example continues the illustrative example of Clause 4.6.7. Its inputs are invented to be plausible for a low-lying colony in south Patna behind the Punpun; they are not NIH-DHAARA values and must not be used for design. Part 1 sets out the inputs, hydrographs and routing step by step, for a trial outlet. Part 2 finds that the trial outlet fails the drawdown check with the blockage of Clause 4.8.3, and revises it to the outlet reported in Table 4.2. Part 3 completes the spillway, outlet, safety and retention checks. The outfall-closed check of Chapter 5 for the same facility on an outfall to the Punpun in south Patna is in Annex 5C.

Part 1 — Inputs, hydrographs and routing (Clauses 4.6.1 to 4.6.4)

4C.1 **Inputs.**

Table 4C.1 — Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value	Basis
Site area A	2.0 ha (0.02 km²), one outfall	Clause 4.6.7

Item	Value	Basis
Catchment class	Flood-sensitive (Clause 4.5.3)	Clause 4.6.7
Land cover and curve numbers, AMC II	Pre-development: all pervious, CN 70. Post-development, as two sub-areas: directly connected impervious 1.57 ha at CN 98, and pervious open space 0.43 ha at CN 70 (same soil as pre-development). Impervious fraction f = (92 − 70) / (98 − 70) = 0.786, so the area-weighted CN is 92	Clauses 3.9.2, 4.6.7
AMC III conversion	Pervious areas only, for storms of 12 h and longer: CN_III = 23·CN / (10 + 0.13·CN) = 84.3. The impervious CN 98 is not converted	Clause 3.8.4
Initial abstraction	Ia = 0.2S; Ia = 0.05S as a sensitivity run	Clause 3.8.5
Time of concentration Tc	45 min pre-development; 15 min post-development, used for both sub-areas, because the open space is small and drains through the same site system	Clause 4.6.7
Unit hydrograph	SCS triangular; tL = 0.6 Tc; tp = Δt/2 + tL; base 2.67 tp	Clauses 3.6.5, 3.11.2
Time step Δt	5 min (= Tc/3 of the post-development site)	Clause 4.6.2, step 8
24-h depths, 2-, 10-, 100-yr	110, 200, 350 mm, taken as including the climate factor	Clause 4.6.7
Shorter durations	P(t) = P24 · (t/24)^0.40 (assumed ratio set, not Annex 2B)	Clause 4.6.7
48-h and 72-h depths	1.25 and 1.40 × P24, with the 24-h depth on the last day	Clauses 4.6.7, 2.9.2
Storage	Open, vertical-walled, 2,500 m² plan area, excavated, no embankment, not publicly accessible	Clause 4.6.7
Trial outlet	Stage 1: 120 mm orifice at the floor. Stage 2: 470 mm orifice, invert 0.533 m above the floor. No Stage 3	Trial for this annex; Part 2 revises it
Outfall	Free outfall to a receiving drain whose level stays below the outlet invert	Illustrative input

The example follows Clauses 3.8.4 and 3.9.2: the runoff of each sub-area is computed separately and the two are added before routing.

4C.2 **Design rainfall.** Table 4C.2 gives the depths. For example, the 100-yr 6-hour depth is 350 × (6/24)^0.40 = 350 × 0.574 = 201.0 mm.

Table 4C.2 — Design rainfall depths, mm (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	1	2	3	6	12	24	48	72
50% AEP (2-yr)	30.9	40.7	47.9	63.2	83.4	110.0	137.5	154.0
10% AEP (10-yr)	56.1	74.0	87.1	114.9	151.6	200.0	250.0	280.0
1% AEP (100-yr)	98.2	129.5	152.3	201.0	265.3	350.0	437.5	490.0

4C.3 **Hyetographs.** Storms up to 24 h use the alternating-block method in 5-minute blocks with the peak block at mid-storm (Clause 2.9.1). The 48- and 72-hour storms spread the depth in excess of the 24-hour depth uniformly over the first 24 or 48 h and place the 24-hour alternating-block storm on the last day (Clause 2.9.2). For the 100-yr 72-hour storm: (490.0 − 350.0) / 576 blocks = 0.243 mm per 5 minutes for the first 48 h; the peak 5-minute block on the last day is 350 × (5/1440)^0.40 = 36.3 mm, at 60:00–60:05 h.

4C.4 **Losses.** Table 4C.3 gives S = 25,400/CN − 254 (mm) and Ia = 0.2S. The runoff depth for a rainfall depth P is Q = (P − Ia)² / (P − Ia + S) for P > Ia, and zero otherwise.

Table 4C.3 — Curve numbers and abstractions (Illustrative — not design values)

Condition	AMC	CN	S (mm)	Ia = 0.2S (mm)
Pre-development	II (durations ≤ 6 h)	70	108.9	21.8
Pre-development	III (durations ≥ 12 h)	84.3	47.3	9.5
Post-development pervious open space (0.43 ha)	II (durations ≤ 6 h)	70	108.9	21.8
Post-development pervious open space (0.43 ha)	III (durations ≥ 12 h)	84.3	47.3	9.5
Post-development directly connected impervious (1.57 ha)	All durations (not converted)	98	5.2	1.0

Check: 100-yr 24 h, post-development. Impervious: $Q = (350.0 - 1.0)^2 / (350.0 - 1.0 + 5.2) = 343.9$ mm. Pervious, AMC III: $Q = (350.0 - 9.5)^2 / (350.0 - 9.5 + 47.3) = 299.0$ mm. Site: $0.786 \times 343.9 + 0.214 \times 299.0 = 334.2$ mm. The post-development columns of Table 4C.4 are these area-weighted site depths.

Table 4C.4 — Storm runoff depth Q, mm (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	AMC	2-yr pre	2-yr post	10-yr pre	10-yr post	100-yr post
1	II	0.7	20.1	8.2	41.3	79.2
2	II	2.8	28.2	16.9	57.2	108.5
3	II	5.1	34.2	24.5	69.0	130.2
6	II	11.4	47.5	42.9	94.7	177.1
12	III	45.0	70.5	106.6	137.2	249.9
24	III	68.4	96.4	152.6	185.1	334.2
48	III	93.5	123.3	201.0	234.7	421.5
72	III	108.9	139.6	230.3	264.5	473.9

The runoff volume is $10 \times Q \times A = 20 \times Q$ m³ for this 2.0 ha site: for example 9,478 m³ for the 100-yr 72-hour storm. The routed hydrographs carry up to 0.5% less, because the 5-minute alternating-block storm places 349.5 mm rather than 350.0 mm on the last day.

4C.5 **Unit hydrographs.** The runoff in each 5-minute block (for the post-development site, the sum of the two sub-areas) is convolved with the triangular unit hydrograph of Table 4C.5. The peak is $q_p = 0.208 \times A \times Q / t_p$, with A in km² and Q = 1 mm (Clause 3.11.2).

Table 4C.5 — Unit hydrograph parameters (Illustrative — not design values)

Condition	Tc (h)	tL = 0.6 Tc (h)	tp = Δt/2 + tL (h)	Base 2.67 tp (h)	qp (L/s per mm of runoff)
Pre-development	0.75	0.45	0.492	1.313	8.5
Post-development	0.25	0.15	0.192	0.512	21.7

4C.6 **Release caps (Clause 4.5.3).** The site is flood-sensitive, so the mixed-frequency rule applies. The 100-yr cap is the largest pre-development 10-yr peak over all durations: **356 L/s** (72 h; Table 4.2). The 2-yr cap is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak: **180 L/s** (72 h). Each cap applies to every post-development duration (Clause 4.5.3.1).

4C.7 **Stage–storage–discharge.** The basin is vertical-walled, so storage S = 2,500 × h (m³), where h is the stage above the floor (m). Outlet discharge follows Clause 4.6.5.2 with Cd = 0.60:

- Stage 1, for h ≥ d: Q1 = 0.60 × A1 × √(2g (h − d/2)). For h < d (orifice part-full), the head is taken as d/2 and the result is multiplied by h/d.
- Stage 2 is counted once the water is above its centre: Q2 = 0.60 × A2 × √(2g (h − z2 − d2/2)), where z2 is its invert. Below its centre its flow is ignored, which slightly over-states storage.

Table 4C.6 — Stage–storage–discharge, trial outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

Stage h (m)	Storage (m³)	Stage 1, 120 mm (L/s)	Stage 2, 470 mm (L/s)	Total (L/s)
0.00	0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.06	150	3.7	0.0	3.7
0.12	300	7.4	0.0	7.4
0.20	500	11.2	0.0	11.2
0.30	750	14.7	0.0	14.7
0.40	1,000	17.5	0.0	17.5
0.50	1,250	19.9	0.0	19.9
0.60	1,500	22.1	0.0	22.1
0.70	1,750	24.0	0.0	24.0
0.80	2,000	25.9	83.0	108.9
0.90	2,250	27.5	167.8	195.3
1.00	2,500	29.1	222.3	251.4
1.10	2,750	30.7	265.8	296.5
1.20	3,000	32.1	303.2	335.3
1.30	3,250	33.5	336.4	369.9
1.40	3,500	34.8	366.7	401.5

Check at h = 1.00 m: Q1 = 0.60 × 0.01131 × √(19.62 × 0.94) = 0.0291 m³/s; Q2 = 0.60 × 0.1735 × √(19.62 × (1.00 − 0.533 − 0.235)) = 0.2223 m³/s.

4C.8 **Routing.** Each storm is routed by level-pool continuity (Clause 4.6.1): over each 5-minute step, the change in storage equals inflow volume minus outflow volume. The computation used six 50-second sub-steps per 5-minute step. Each row of Table 4C.7 can be checked by hand as ΔS ≈ (I − Ō) × 300 s, where I is the mean inflow over the 5-minute step ending at the time shown and Ō is the mean of the outflows at the start and end of the step. For example, between 60:15 and 60:20: ΔS = 2,853.0 − 2,613.3 = 239.7 m³, and (1.0891 − (0.2655 + 0.3069)/2) × 300 = 240.9 m³.

Table 4C.7 — Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, around the peak (Illustrative — not design values)

Time (h:min)	Rainfall in step (mm)	Inflow I (L/s)	Outflow O (L/s)	Storage S (m³)	Stage h (m)
60:00	8.44	286.3	169.5	2,164.0	0.866
60:05	36.33	354.2	184.1	2,216.9	0.887
60:10	11.61	703.3	218.0	2,367.1	0.947

Time (h:min)	Rainfall in step (mm)	Inflow I (L/s)	Outflow O (L/s)	Storage S (m³)	Stage h (m)
60:15	6.88	1,066.0	265.5	2,613.3	1.045
60:20	5.23	1,089.1	306.9	2,853.0	1.141
60:25	4.34	897.5	334.8	3,025.0	1.210
60:30	3.77	653.2	349.9	3,117.6	1.247
60:35	3.36	403.6	353.8	**3,132.9**	**1.253**
60:40	3.05	301.5	352.3	3,117.3	1.247
60:45	2.81	254.8	348.6	3,088.7	1.235
60:50	2.61	224.9	343.7	3,052.4	1.221
60:55	2.45	203.3	337.9	3,011.3	1.205

Storage is greatest at the end of the step ending at 60:35. In the next step the mean inflow (302 L/s) is below the outflow (about 352 L/s), so storage falls.

Table 4C.8 — Routing of the 100-yr 72-hour storm through the trial outlet, hourly (Illustrative — not design values)

Time (h)	Cumulative rainfall (mm)	Inflow (L/s)	Outflow (L/s)	Stage (m)	Storage (m³)
12	35.0	14	8	0.130	325
24	70.0	15	12	0.215	536
36	105.0	16	14	0.264	660
48	140.0	16	15	0.294	736
54	181.7	47	19	0.469	1,172
57	213.5	69	23	0.623	1,559
59	248.5	120	91	0.789	1,971
60	293.3	286	170	0.866	2,164
61	378.0	187	332	1.187	2,967
62	399.3	106	237	0.968	2,421
63	414.5	80	142	0.829	2,072
66	446.9	51	52	0.771	1,927
72	489.5	33	33	0.768	1,920
84	489.5	0	18	0.405	1,012
96	489.5	0	10	0.167	418
108	489.5	0	4	0.058	146

The routed outflow volume equals the inflow volume (about 9,470 m³): detention delays the volume but does not remove it.

4C.9 **Results, trial outlet.** Table 4C.9 gives the peaks, maximum stages and drawdown times for the trial outlet.

Table 4C.9 — Results for the trial outlet (120 mm and 470 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	2-yr detained (L/s)	2-yr max stage (m)	10-yr detained (L/s)	10-yr max stage (m)	100-yr detained (L/s)	100-yr max stage (m)	100-yr storage (m³)	10-yr 90% drawdown, clean (h)	10-yr 90% drawdown, 50% blocked (h)
1	9	0.15	15	0.30	22	0.59	1,468	27.2	54.2
2	11	0.20	18	0.42	89	0.79	1,966	28.3	57.0
3	13	0.24	20	0.50	135	0.82	2,058	29.3	59.1
6	15	0.31	23	0.64	190	0.89	2,229	31.1	63.4
12	17	0.40	49	0.77	279	1.06	2,647	36.2	69.2
24	19	0.45	87	0.79	334	1.20	2,991	42.8	75.4
48	20	0.51	144	0.83	353	1.25	3,129	42.5	72.7
72	20	0.52	147	0.84	354	1.25	**3,133**	42.5	71.9

The drawdown time is measured from the time of maximum 10-yr storage until 90% of that storage has been released (Clause 4.7.1).

Part 2 — Checks and revision of the outlet (Clauses 4.5, 4.7 and 4.8)

4C.10 **Release caps.** Every 100-yr detained peak is at or below 356 L/s, and every 2-yr detained peak is far below the 2-yr cap of 180 L/s. Both caps are met. The 2-yr peaks are not compared duration by duration with the pre-development peaks: for a flood-sensitive site the 2-yr cap is the single largest pre-development 2-yr peak (Clause 4.5.3.1).

4C.11 **Drawdown.** Clause 4.8.3 requires the low-flow orifice to be assumed **50% blocked** when drawdown is checked. With the 120 mm orifice at half its area, 90% of the 10-yr storage takes 54 to 75 h to drain (Table 4C.9), against the 48-hour limit of Clause 4.7.1. **The trial outlet fails.** With a clean orifice it would drain in about 42 h.

4C.12 **Revised outlet.** The low-flow orifice was increased in 10 mm steps until the blocked drawdown met 48 h for every duration, and Stage 2 was then re-sized so that the 100-yr cap was still met. The result:

- Stage 1: **170 mm** orifice at the floor;
- Stage 2: **460 mm** orifice, invert 0.53 m above the floor (centre at 0.76 m);
- no Stage 3.

The larger low-flow orifice releases more in frequent storms. That is acceptable here because the 2-yr cap of a flood-sensitive site is the largest pre-development 2-yr peak (Clause 4.5.3.1). The WQv is assumed to be treated in a separate practice upstream (Chapter 8), so Stage 1 is not required to hold the WQv for 24–48 h (Clause 4.6.5.1); where Stage 1 also releases the WQv, Clause 4.7.2 must be checked as well.

Table 4C.10 — Stage–storage–discharge, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

Stage h (m)	Storage (m³)	Stage 1, 170 mm (L/s)	Stage 2, 460 mm (L/s)	Total (L/s)
0.00	0	0.0	0.0	0.0
0.085	213	8.8	0.0	8.8
0.17	425	17.6	0.0	17.6
0.30	750	28.0	0.0	28.0
0.40	1,000	33.9	0.0	33.9
0.50	1,250	38.9	0.0	38.9

Stage h (m)	Storage (m³)	Stage 1, 170 mm (L/s)	Stage 2, 460 mm (L/s)	Total (L/s)
0.60	1,500	43.3	0.0	43.3
0.70	1,750	47.3	0.0	47.3
0.76	1,900	49.6	0.0	49.6
0.80	2,000	51.0	88.3	139.3
0.90	2,250	54.5	165.3	219.7
1.00	2,500	57.7	216.4	274.1
1.10	2,750	60.8	257.5	318.3
1.17	2,925	62.8	282.8	345.6
1.20	3,000	63.7	293.0	356.7
1.30	3,250	66.5	324.6	391.1

Table 4C.11 — Results for the revised outlet (170 mm and 460 mm orifices) (Illustrative — not design values)

Duration (h)	2-yr detained (L/s)	2-yr max stage (m)	10-yr detained (L/s)	10-yr max stage (m)	10-yr storage (m³)	100-yr detained (L/s)	100-yr max stage (m)	100-yr storage (m³)	10-yr 90% drawdown, 50% blocked (h)
1	15	0.14	28	0.29	734	42	0.57	1,426	31.3
2	20	0.19	34	0.40	990	79	0.76	1,911	32.1
3	22	0.22	37	0.46	1,147	139	0.80	1,999	32.8
6	25	0.26	41	0.56	1,386	194	0.86	2,154	34.2
12	30	0.33	46	0.68	1,692	276	1.01	2,512	39.0
24	32	0.37	49	0.75	1,870	320	1.11	2,766	45.3
48	34	0.40	82	0.77	1,913	343	1.17	**2,913**	44.8
72	34	0.41	84	0.77	1,915	343	1.16	2,911	44.7

Findings:

- **100-yr cap:** largest detained peak 343 L/s ≤ 356 L/s. Met.
- **2-yr cap:** largest detained peak 34 L/s ≤ 180 L/s. Met.
- **Drawdown:** longest blocked drawdown 45.3 h ≤ 48 h (Clause 4.7.1). Met.
- **Governing storage: 2,913 m³** (100-yr, 48 h), at a maximum stage of **1.17 m**. The larger low-flow orifice releases more water early in the long storms, so the revised outlet needs about 220 m³ less storage than the trial outlet. Table 4.2 in Clause 4.6.7 reports this revised design.
- **Governing storms (Clause 4.6.2, step 12):** storage, the 100-yr 48-hour storm; Stage 1, the 10-yr 24-hour storm (drawdown); Stage 2, the 100-yr 48-hour storm (cap).

Part 3 — Sensitivity, retention, spillway, outlet details and safety

4C.13 **Ia = 0.05S sensitivity (Clause 3.8.5).** With S converted as S0.05 = 25.4 × 1.33 × (S0.20 / 25.4)^1.15, the governing 100-yr 48-hour run gives 2,898 m³ of storage and a 341 L/s peak, slightly below the default run. The pre-development 10-yr peak, and so the 100-yr cap, falls to 344 L/s. The design is based on the default run (Clause 3.8.5(c)); the sensitivity results are reported on Form 3-2.

4C.14 **Retention and retention credit (Clauses 4.4.2 and 4.4.6).** With an illustrative retention depth P_R = 40 mm, Q_R is computed for each sub-area at AMC II, because a composite CN is not used for retention (Clause 3.9.4). Impervious, CN 98: S = 5.2 mm, Ia = 1.0 mm, Q_R = (40 − 1.0)² / (40 − 1.0 + 5.2) = 34.4 mm. Pervious, CN 70: S = 108.9 mm, Ia = 21.8 mm, Q_R = (40 − 21.8)² / (40 − 21.8 + 108.9) = 2.6 mm. RRV = 10 × (34.4 × 1.571 + 2.6 × 0.429) = **552 m³**. The retention is modelled as a store that is empty at the start of the storm and captures all runoff until full, with no infiltration during the storm (Clause 4.4.6.2).

Table 4C.12 — Retention credit by routing, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

100-yr storm	Storage without retention (m³)	Storage with retention (m³)	Reduction (m³)
24 h	2,766	2,628	138
48 h	2,913	2,906	7
72 h	2,911	2,911	0

The governing storage falls from 2,913 to 2,906 m³, so the retention credit is 7 m³, about 1% of the RRV. The retention is still required in full for its own purposes (Clause 4.4.1, Chapter 8).

4C.15 **Emergency spillway (Clause 4.9).** The facility is excavated, with no embankment, so Clause 4.9.7 applies: the overflow route is treated as the spillway and must meet Clause 4.9.1.

- Design flow: the 1% AEP peak inflow, 1,089 L/s, with the outlet blocked and the basin full to the crest.
- Crest: the 1% AEP maximum water level with the outlet working is 1.17 m; with the recommended 0.15 m clearance (Clause 4.9.3) the crest is set at **1.35 m**.
- Crest length: a broad-crested weir with Q = C × L × H^1.5, C = 1.7 (an illustrative coefficient for a broad-crested weir in SI units; Clause 4.6.5.2 requires a coefficient suited to the shape). With L = 4.0 m: H = (1.089 / (1.7 × 4.0))^(2/3) = 0.295 ≈ **0.30 m**.
- Maximum level with the spillway flowing: 1.35 + 0.30 = 1.65 m. With 0.3 m freeboard (Clause 4.9.1), the top of the walls is at least **1.95 m** above the floor.
- The spillway discharges to the 1% AEP overland flow path, away from buildings (Clause 4.9.4).

4C.16 **Outlet details (Clause 4.8).**

Table 4C.13 — Outlet checks, revised outlet (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Requirement	Value	Result
Minimum orifice	≥ 50 mm (Clause 4.8.2)	170 mm	Met
Rack bar spacing	≤ half the smallest opening and ≥ 25 mm (Clause 4.8.3)	≤ 85 mm	Set at 75 mm
Rack open area	≥ 10 × area protected (Clause 4.8.3)	10 × (0.0227 + 0.1662) m² = 1.89 m² for one rack around both orifices	Provide ≥ 1.89 m²
Anti-vortex, Stage 1	Needed if head > 1.5 d (Clause 4.8.4)	Head up to 1.08 m > 0.26 m	Required
Anti-vortex, Stage 2	Needed if head > 1.5 d (Clause 4.8.4)	Head above centre up to 0.41 m < 0.69 m	Not required
Isolation	Facility serving > 1 ha (Clause 4.8.6)	Serves 2.0 ha	Stop-log slot or penstock, normally open
Outlet barrel	≥ 300 mm (Clause 4.8.5)	Sized under Chapter 9 for 343 L/s	To be designed

4C.17 **Safety (Clause 4.15).** The 10-yr depth (0.77 m) exceeds the 0.45 m limit for publicly accessible storage (Clause 4.15.1(a)), so the facility is not open to the public. It has vertical walls higher than 0.6 m and a depth of more than 1.2 m when the spillway flows, so a non-climbable fence at least 1.2 m high with a lockable gate is required (Clause 4.15.3). Signs and a depth marker are provided (Clause 4.15.5).

4C.18 **Summary of the design (Illustrative — not design values).**

Table 4C.14 — Summary of the revised design (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value
Storage	2,500 m² plan area; 2,913 m³ at the 1% AEP maximum level of 1.17 m
Stage 1	170 mm orifice at the floor, with trash rack and anti-vortex plate
Stage 2	460 mm orifice, invert 0.53 m
Spillway	Crest 1.35 m, length 4.0 m, maximum level 1.65 m
Top of walls	≥ 1.95 m above the floor
100-yr peak release	343 L/s (cap 356 L/s)
2-yr peak release	34 L/s (cap 180 L/s)
10-yr drawdown, 50% blocked	45.3 h (limit 48 h)
Retention	RRV 552 m³ provided in addition; credit 7 m³
Still to be checked	Outfall-closed check on an outfall to the Punpun in south Patna (Annex 5C); downstream analysis (Chapter 5); groundwater and flotation (Clause 4.12); WQv (Chapter 8)

Form 4-1 — Site Runoff Control Report

Supports Clauses 4.3 to 4.17 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One form for each site. Where the site drains to more than one outfall, complete Sections E to J for each outfall (Clause 4.5.1.3). Tier B sites using Clause 4.14.2 attach Form 4-2 in place of Sections F and G; sites using the fixed-coefficient route attach Form 4-3 in place of Sections F and G (Clause 4.17).

A. Site and route

Table 4F.1 — Form 4-1: site and route

Field	Entry
A1. Project name and applicant	
A2. Location (village or ward, survey numbers, district)	
A3. Approving Authority and tier (Tier A / Tier B)	
A4. Site area, land disturbance and new or replaced impervious area (ha, ha, m²) (Clause 4.1.2)	
A5. Number of outfalls (Clause 4.5.1.3)	
A6. Sizing route: full method (Clause 4.6) / Tier B tables (Clause 4.14.2) / fixed-coefficient route (Clause 4.14.3)	
A7. Constrained redevelopment route used (Clause 4.5.6)? If yes, attach the Constraint Statement, the existing-condition model and the shortfall and fee computation	

B. Inputs (Clause 4.17, item 1)

Table 4F.2 — Form 4-1: inputs

Field	Entry
B1. Design Rainfall Sheet reference (Form 2-1)	
B2. Hydrologic Calculation Summary reference (Form 3-1)	
B3. HSG of each sub-area and the tests that confirm it (Clause 4.6.2, step 1)	
B4. Pre-development condition and CN (Clause 4.5.1.2)	
B5. Post-development CN of each sub-area, and Tc pre and post	
B6. Routing method and software, with version; time step (Clauses 4.6.1, 4.6.2)	

C. Order of measures (Clause 4.3.1; Clause 4.17, item 2)

Table 4F.3 — Form 4-1: order of measures

Step	What the design does	Why this step cannot do more
1. Preserve		
2. Retain		

Step	What the design does	Why this step cannot do more
3. Detain		
4. Convey		

D. Retention (Clause 4.4; Clause 4.17, items 3 and 4)

Table 4F.4 — Form 4-1: retention

Field	Entry
D1. Retention depth P_R (mm) and zone (Annex 2E)	
D2. Runoff depth Q_R (mm) by sub-area and RRV (m³) (Clause 4.4.2)	
D3. Retention practices and volume provided (m³)	
D4. Infiltration tests: number, locations and depths, measured rates (mm/h) (Clause 4.4.3(a))	
D5. Design infiltration rate (mm/h), not more than half the measured rate (Clause 4.4.3(b))	
D6. Seasonal high groundwater depth below the base of each practice (m), at least 1.0 m (Clause 4.4.3(c))	
D7. Reuse demand calculation, where retention is by reuse (Clause 4.4.3)	
D8. Retention drawdown time (h), not more than 72 h (Clause 4.4.5)	
D9. Shortfall in RRV (m³), if any, treated as WQv (Clause 4.4.4.2)	
D10. Governing storage without and with retention, and the retention credit (m³) (Clause 4.4.6)	
D11. Preservation credit areas and covenant reference (Clause 4.4.7)	

E. Release criteria (Clause 4.5; Clause 4.17, item 5)

Table 4F.5 — Form 4-1: release criteria

Field	Entry
E1. Catchment class: standard (Clause 4.5.2) or flood-sensitive (Clause 4.5.3), with the Annex 4A map extract	
E2. Release caps by AEP (L/s), and the duration that sets each cap	
E3. Clause 4.5.5 used (50 mm orifice deemed to comply, or the short-duration 2-yr relief)? Report any 2-yr exceedance	

F. Results (Clause 4.6; Clause 4.17, item 6)

Complete one row for each duration, in the format of Table 4.2. Mark the governing case for storage, for each outlet stage and for the spillway (Clause 4.6.2, step 12).

Table 4F.6 — Form 4-1: results by duration (L/s; m³)

Duration (h)	2-yr pre	2-yr post, detained	10-yr pre	10-yr post, detained	100-yr post, uncontrolled	100-yr post, detained	100-yr storage used
1							
2							

Duration (h)	2-yr pre	2-yr post, detained	10-yr pre	10-yr post, detained	100-yr post, uncontrolled	100-yr post, detained	100-yr storage used
3							
6							
12							
24							
48							
72							

G. Facility, drawdown and outlet (Clauses 4.7, 4.8, 4.10; Clause 4.17, items 7 to 9)

Table 4F.7 — Form 4-1: facility, drawdown and outlet

Field	Entry
G1. Facility type (Clause 4.10) and storage provided (m^3)	
G2. Stage–storage and stage–discharge tables and plots; inflow and outflow hydrographs for the governing cases (attach)	
G3. 10-yr drawdown: time to release 90% of the maximum stored volume (h), with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked (Clauses 4.7.1, 4.8.3)	
G4. WQv release time (h), 24 to 48 h (Clause 4.7.2)	
G5. Tidal outfall: drawdown with the tidal tailwater, and any pumped drawdown (Clause 4.7.4)	
G6. Each outlet stage: type, size (mm), invert level (m)	
G7. Trash racks: clear bar spacing (mm) and open area (m^2) (Clause 4.8.3)	
G8. Anti-vortex devices (Clause 4.8.4); outlet barrel diameter and seepage control (Clause 4.8.5); isolation (Clause 4.8.6)	
G9. Proprietary devices: certified head–discharge curve and minimum clear opening (Clause 4.6.5.3)	

H. Spillway, freeboard and embankment (Clause 4.9; Clause 4.17, item 10)

Table 4F.8 — Form 4-1: spillway and freeboard

Field	Entry
H1. Hazard classification, with reasons (Clause 4.9.2)	
H2. 1% AEP peak inflow (L/s); 0.2% AEP peak inflow for high-hazard facilities (L/s)	
H3. 1% AEP maximum water level with the outlet working (m); spillway crest level (m) (Clause 4.9.3)	
H4. Spillway or overflow route: type, dimensions, maximum level with the outlet blocked (m)	
H5. Freeboard to the embankment crest or wall top (m), at least 0.3 m (Clause 4.9.1)	
H6. Spillway location and discharge path (Clause 4.9.4)	
H7. Embankment height (m); geotechnical report where more than 2 m (Clause 4.9.6)	

I. RWH accounting, groundwater and flotation (Clauses 4.11, 4.12; Clause 4.17, items 11 and 12)

Table 4F.9 — Form 4-1: RWH, groundwater and flotation

Field	Entry
I1. RWH storage provided (m³), assumed full at the start of every storm (Clause 4.11.2)	
I2. Combined RWH and detention tanks: zone levels and the detention orifice level (Clause 4.11.3); attach tank sections	
I3. Design groundwater level and its basis (Clause 4.12.1)	
I4. Lined or unlined storage; volume below the design groundwater level not counted (Clause 4.12.2)	
I5. Flotation factor of safety, at least 1.2 (Clause 4.12.3)	

J. Downstream, tailwater, safety and maintenance (Clause 4.17, items 13 and 14)

Table 4F.10 — Form 4-1: downstream, tailwater, safety and maintenance

Field	Entry
J1. Downstream and Tailwater Report (Form 5-1) or Simplified Downstream Statement (Form 5-2) reference	
J2. Tailwater used in routing, and flap gate where tailwater governs (Clause 4.6.6)	
J3. Public access, depths in the 10% and 1% AEP storms, slopes, fencing, grates, signs and depth markers (Clause 4.15)	
J4. Draft maintenance declaration reference (Chapter 10)	

K. Statement by the registered professional (Clause 10.6)

I state that this report has been prepared under Chapter 4 of the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual (Draft v1.0), that the results reported are reproduced by the models submitted, and that every departure from Chapter 4 is listed with its reason. The Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) is attached.

Table 4F.11 — Form 4-1: statement by the registered professional

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Empanelment number, where Clause 10.6.1 requires it	
Organisation	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Form 4-2 — Tier B Site Sheet

Supports Clauses 4.4.6.3, 4.14.1 and 4.14.2 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. This sheet replaces items 6 and 7 of the Site Runoff Control Report (Form 4-1) for Tier B sites using Clause 4.14.2. It can be used only after Table 4.3 is published in Annex 4B; until then, Tier B sites use Clause 4.6 or, for sites of 1 ha or less, the fixed-coefficient route (Clauses 4.14.1 and 4.14.3).

A. Eligibility (Clause 4.14.1)

Table 4F.12 — Form 4-2: eligibility

Field	Entry
A1. Local body (Tier B)	
A2. Site area A (ha): 2 ha or less outside flood-sensitive catchments; 0.5 ha or less inside them	
A3. Catchment class: standard or flood-sensitive (Annex 4A)	

B. Table 4.3 values (Clause 4.14.2, step 1)

Table 4F.13 — Form 4-2: values read from Table 4.3

Field	Entry
B1. Rainfall zone (Annex 2A)	
B2. Hydrologic soil group	
B3. Post-development imperviousness (%)	
B4. PSD 2-yr (L/s/ha)	
B5. PSD 100-yr (L/s/ha), for the catchment class	
B6. SSR (m³/ha), for the catchment class	

C. Storage and release (Clause 4.14.2, steps 2 and 3)

Table 4F.14 — Form 4-2: storage and release

Line	Quantity	Computation	Value
C1	RRV provided (m³)	Clause 4.4	
C2	C_R	Annex 4B; 0 until published	
C3	V_credit (m³)	C2 × C1 (Clause 4.4.6.3)	
C4	Required storage V (m³)	B6 × A − C3	
C5	Storage provided (m³)	From drawings	
C6	Q_PSD,2 (L/s)	B4 × A	
C7	Q_PSD,100 (L/s)	B5 × A	

D. Outlet and other provisions (Clause 4.14.2, steps 4 and 5)

Table 4F.15 — Form 4-2: outlet and other provisions

Field	Entry
D1. Low-flow orifice: diameter (mm) from the Annex 4B outlet table, head (m), at least 50 mm	
D2. Upper control: type, size and level	
D3. Spillway or overflow (Clause 4.9)	
D4. RWH accounting (Clause 4.11)	
D5. Safety provisions (Clause 4.15)	

E. Statement

I state that the values above are taken from Annex 4B for the site's zone, soil group, imperviousness and catchment class, and that the storage and outlets shown on the drawings match them.

Table 4F.16 — Form 4-2: statement

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Form 4-3 — Fixed-coefficient Route Sheet (Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7)

Supports Clauses 4.14.3 to 4.14.7 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. This sheet replaces items 6 and 7 of the Site Runoff Control Report (Form 4-1) for sites using the fixed-coefficient route. Complete it for each point where runoff leaves the site (Clause 4.14.4). Figure 4.3 shows the method.

A. Eligibility (Clause 4.14.3)

Table 4F.17 — Form 4-3: eligibility

Check	Yes / No
A1. Site area 1 ha or less	
A2. The design does not count tank or waterbody storage (Clause 4.14.3(a))	
A3. No part of the site lies within a waterbody setback (Clause 4.14.3(b))	
A4. The site does not drain to a tank cascade whose storage is counted in a downstream design (Clause 4.14.3(c))	

B. Release caps (Clause 4.14.4)

Table 4F.18 — Form 4-3: release caps

Line	Quantity	Source or computation	Value
B1	Site area A (ha)	Survey	
B2	Area of each hydrologic soil group (ha)	Clause 3.7	
B3	C_10 and C_2, area-weighted	Table 4.3A	
B4	i_10 and i_2 (mm/h), 15-minute duration, with the climate factor	Form 2-1; Clause 2.8	
B5	Q_cap,10 (L/s)	2.78 × C_10 × i_10 × A	
B6	Q_cap,2 (L/s)	2.78 × C_2 × i_2 × A	
B7	Discharge of a 50 mm orifice at the corresponding stage (L/s), where a cap is smaller (Clause 4.5.5.1)	Orifice equation, Clause 4.6.5.2	

C. Volumetric coefficient (Clause 4.14.5)

Table 4F.19 — Form 4-3: volumetric coefficient C_v

Line	Quantity	Value
C1	Composite C of Table 3.2 (upper half of each range)	
C2	Cf of Table 3.3 for the 1% AEP	
C3	C_v for durations below 12 h (C1 × C2)	
C4	C_v for durations of 12 h or more, with C for every pervious surface not less than 0.50	

D. Storage (Clause 4.14.5)

For each duration: inflow = 10 × C_v × P(d) × A (m³); release = 1.8 × Q_cap × d (m³); difference = inflow − release. V_100 and V_2 are the largest differences; V is the larger of the two.

Table 4F.20 — Form 4-3: storage by duration

d (h)	P_100(d) (mm)	100-yr inflow (m³)	1.8 × Q_cap,10 × d (m³)	100-yr difference (m³)	P_2(d) (mm)	2-yr inflow (m³)	1.8 × Q_cap,2 × d (m³)	2-yr difference (m³)
1								
2								
3								
6								
12								
24								
48								
72								

Table 4F.21 — Form 4-3: storage required and provided

Line	Quantity	Value
D1	V_100 (m³) and governing duration	
D2	V_2 (m³) and governing duration	
D3	V = larger of D1 and D2 (m³)	
D4	Storage provided (m³)	

E. Outlet, retention and other checks (Clauses 4.14.3, 4.14.6, 4.14.7)

Table 4F.22 — Form 4-3: outlet, retention and other checks

Field	Entry
E1. Low-flow orifice: diameter (mm) and invert; discharge (L/s) with the storage holding V_2 full, not more than Q_cap,2	
E2. Upper orifice or weir: size and level; total release (L/s) at the top of V, not more than Q_cap,10	
E3. Retention volume of Clause 4.4 provided in addition to V (m³); no retention credit taken	
E4. Drawdown (Clause 4.7), trash racks (Clause 4.8), spillway (Clause 4.9): reference to Form 4-1 Sections G and H	
E5. Downstream and tailwater checks (Chapter 5) and water quality (Chapter 8): references	

F. Statement

I state that the site meets the eligibility conditions of Clause 4.14.3 and that the caps, storage and outlets above have been computed by Clauses 4.14.4 to 4.14.7.

Table 4F.23 — Form 4-3: statement

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 5

Downstream and Tailwater Analysis

These annexes support Chapter 5. Annex 5C is a worked example of the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10, for the illustrative facility of Annex 4C. Annexes 5A and 5B need tidal, surge, survey and river data that this draft does not yet contain; each lists what the chapter already sets, gives the intended layout and states the interim rule of Chapter 5 that applies until it is published. Forms 5-1 and 5-2 are the submittal forms required by Clause 5.14. They are draft forms and have no statutory status.

Annex 5A — Tidal datums (MSL, MHWS, HAT vs CD and Survey of India datum), surge allowances and 1% still-water levels by coastal segment

Supports Clauses 5.7, 5.9, 5.10, 5.11 and 5.12 of Chapter 5.

5A.1 Table 5A.1 shows how the values of this annex enter the design tailwater levels of Table 5.1. The sea-level allowance is set by Clause 5.7.4 and does not depend on this annex.

Table 5A.1 — Use of the Annex 5A values in the design tailwater (Table 5.1)

Design case	Tailwater	Annex 5A values used	Chapter value
Minor-system design	MHWS + SLA	MHWS	SLA ≥ +0.3 m (Clause 5.7.4)
Major-system and storage design	HAT + surge + SLA	HAT; 10% AEP surge (Clause 5.7.3(a))	SLA ≥ +0.3 m
Joint case (Clause 2.12(b))	1% AEP still-water level + SLA	1% AEP still-water level (Clause 5.7.3(b))	SLA ≥ +0.3 m
Datum conversion	Chart datum to project datum	Offset from chart datum to the Survey of India datum (Clause 5.7.2(b))	—

Not prepared for Bihar. Bihar has no coast, so no outfall in the State has a tidal tailwater, and this annex has no Bihar content (Clause 5.1.4). Its tables are kept, empty, so that the annex and table numbers match the other editions of this Manual. Rows F1 to F7 of Form 5-1 are entered as "not applicable", and the tailwater is derived under rows F8 to F10.

Table 5A.2 — Tidal datums, surge and still-water levels by coastal segment (layout)

Coastal segment	Reference port and tide-table edition	MSL (m CD)	MHWS (m CD)	HAT (m CD)	CD to Survey of India datum (m)	10% AEP surge (m)	1% AEP still-water level (m CD)	Wave set-up (m), open-sea outfalls	Sources

Coastal segment	Reference port and tide-table edition	MSL (m CD)	MHWS (m CD)	HAT (m CD)	CD to Survey of India datum (m)	10% AEP surge (m)	1% AEP still-water level (m CD)	Wave set-up (m), open-sea outfalls	Sources

Annex 5B — Major drains, riverine outfall reaches, and river mouths subject to sand-bar closure; map

Supports Clauses 5.2, 5.3, 5.8 and 5.13 of Chapter 5.

5B.1 Table 5B.1 lists the water bodies that Chapter 5 already names. It is not complete: the annex will add the extents of each reach, the other rivers, canals and mouths of the State, and a map.

Table 5B.1 — Water bodies named in Chapter 5

Water body	Region	Listed as	Clause
Ganga along Patna, from Dighaghat past Gandhi Ghat to the Punpun confluence, with the town protection wall and the sluices	Patna	Riverine outfall reach; gated and pumped outfalls (sump houses and drainage pumping stations; inventory and capacities [TBC]); design river level not below the transferred 52.52 m (Dighaghat, 1975) and 50.57 m (Gandhi Ghat, reported September 2026; 50.52 m, 2016, in the CWC bulletin [TBC]); danger 50.45 m and 48.60 m; coincident with the Sone and the Punpun; lock of at least 7 days; datum [TBC]	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Sone at Maner, to its confluence with the Ganga	Patna	Riverine outfall reach; design river level not below the transferred 53.79 m (1976); danger 52.00 m; coincident with the Ganga	5.8.1, 5.8.3, 5.8.5
Punpun at Sripalpur, to its confluence with the Ganga	Patna	Riverine outfall reach; backwater of south Patna; design river level not below the transferred 53.91 m (1976); danger 50.60 m; Ganga backwater at the confluence; lock of at least 7 days	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Burhi Gandak at Sikandarpur	Muzaffarpur	Riverine outfall reach; embanked; design river level not below the transferred 54.29 m (1987); danger 52.53 m; breach check	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Bagmati at Hayaghat and the Adhwara group at Ekmighat	Darbhanga	Riverine outfall reaches; embanked; design river level not below the transferred 48.96 m (Hayaghat, 1987) and 49.52 m (Ekmighat, 2004), the higher governing; danger 45.72 m and 46.94 m	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Gandak at Hajipur, to its confluence with the Ganga	Vaishali	Riverine outfall reach; embanked; design river level not below the transferred 50.93 m (1948) or a later higher level, and the Ganga level at the confluence; danger 50.32 m; Nepal-driven floods	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Mahananda at Dhengraghat and the rivers of Purnia district	Purnia	Riverine outfall reach; design river level not below the transferred 38.20 m (2017) at Dhengraghat, or the nearest gauge on the receiving river; danger 35.65 m; Nepal-driven floods	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Kosi between its embankments, gauged at Basua, Baltara and Kursela	Supaul, Saharsa, Khagaria, Katihar	Riverine outfall reach; Prohibited Zone of WRD Order No. 143; design river level not below the transferred 49.24 m (Basua, 2017), 36.40 m (Baltara, 1987) or 32.10 m (Kursela, 1982); danger 47.75 m, 33.85 m and 30.00 m; breach check (Kusaha, 2008)	5.8.1, 5.8.5
Ganga at Buxar, Hathidah (Mokama), Munger and Bhagalpur	Buxar, Patna, Munger, Bhagalpur	Riverine outfall reaches; design river level not below the transferred 62.09 m (Buxar, 1948), 43.52 m (Hathidah, 2021), 40.99 m (Munger, 1976) and 34.86 m (Bhagalpur, 2021); danger 60.32 m, 41.76 m, 39.33 m and 33.68 m	5.8.1, 5.8.5

Water body	Region	Listed as	Clause
Embanked rivers of north Bihar (Flood Plain Zone of WRD Order No. 143)	North Bihar	Riverine outfall reaches; no outfall works in the Prohibited Zone except as the Order permits; WRD consent [TBC]	5.8.5
Bakarganj nala, the 19 ghat drains to the Ganga and the Saidpur, Kurji and Anandpuri nalas	Patna	Major drains; river-locked outfalls; pumped inflows from drainage pumping stations included	5.2, 5.8.5
Badshahi drain and the other drains to the Punpun	Patna	Major drains; river-locked outfalls under the Punpun backwater	5.2, 5.8.5
Kabartal and its Bagras maun outlet to the Burhi Gandak; the Mokama group of tals	Begusarai; Mokama–Barahiya	Chaur, maun and tal storage; no storage credit without records; outflow control [TBC]; Ramsar site (Kabartal)	5.2, 5.8.5
Drains and canals of WRD, irrigation canals receiving storm water, and drains of Nagar Nigams, BUIDCO and BIADA 1.0 m wide or more	Bihar	Major drains; owner's consent, design water level and flap gate	5.2, 5.8.5
Kosi barrage at Bhimnagar (Nepal); Gandak barrage at Valmikinagar; Indrapuri barrage on the Sone; dams on the Sone upstream of the State	Kosi; Gandak; Sone	Releases and gate operation to be included in river levels (operating rules and release records [TBC])	5.8.3, 5.8.5
River mouths subject to sand-bar closure	None in Bihar	Not applicable (Clause 5.1.4)	5.13.1

To be prepared. This annex will list and map (a) the major drains of each basin plan, (b) the riverine outfall reaches where backwater shall be modelled, with their upstream and downstream limits and the source of their design flood levels, and (c) the river mouths and creek inlets subject to seasonal sand-bar closure, with the most recent pre-monsoon bar crest levels and any WRD mouth-maintenance programme. It needs WRD river and canal records, design and recorded flood levels, reservoir operating rules, mouth-condition, dredging and bar-cutting records and pre-monsoon bar surveys (WRD), the drain inventories of PMC and other local bodies, basin stormwater master plans (Chapter 11), and base mapping from the Survey of India and NRSC. Until it is published: every river, WRD canal, the nalas and ghat drains of Patna that outfall to the Ganga, including the Bakarganj nala and the 19 ghat drains listed by BUIDCO, the drains of Patna that outfall to the Punpun, including the Badshahi drain, the Saidpur, Kurji and Anandpuri nalas of Patna, the drains that outfall to the Burhi Gandak at Muzaffarpur, to the Bagmati and the Adhwara group at Darbhanga, to the Gandak and the Ganga at Hajipur, to the Ganga at Bhagalpur and Munger and to the Mahananda and its tributaries in Purnia district, any drain or canal of WRD, any drain maintained by a Nagar Nigam, BUIDCO or BIADA with an internal width of 1.0 m or more, any irrigation canal that receives storm water and every tidal creek is a major drain (Clause 5.2); the water bodies of Table 5B.1 are riverine outfall reaches (Clause 5.8.1); and the mouths of the coastal States' rivers (there is none in Bihar) are assumed closed at the start of the SW monsoon unless WRD certifies otherwise (Clause 5.13.2).

Table 5B.2 — Attributes of the Annex 5B layers (layout)

Field	Content	Unit or format
feature_id	Unique identifier	text
name	Name of the drain, river, canal, creek or mouth	text

Field	Content	Unit or format
category	Major drain; riverine outfall reach; mouth subject to sand-bar closure	text
clause	Clause of Chapter 5 under which it is listed	text
reach_limits	Upstream and downstream limits of the reach	text
design_flood_level_source	WRD design or highest recorded flood level, or hydraulic model (Clause 5.8.2)	text
reservoir_release	Upstream reservoir or tank and its operating rule, where any (Clause 5.8.3)	text
bar_crest_level	Most recent pre-monsoon bar crest level, for mouths	m (Survey of India datum)
mouth_programme	WRD mouth-maintenance programme and certification (Clause 5.13.2)	text
source	Source agency and date	text
geometry	Line (drains and reaches) or point (mouths)	line / point

---

Annex 5C — Worked example: outfall-closed check for a site in south Patna behind the Punpun

Supports Clauses 5.9, 5.10, 5.11 and 5.12 of Chapter 5 and Clause 4.6.6 of Chapter 4.

Illustrative — not design values. This example applies the outfall-closed check of Clause 5.10 to the revised detention facility of Annex 4C. The site, its levels and its receiving drain are invented to show the method. No tidal level is used: the tide enters only through the illustrative statements in Table 5C.1 about whether the receiving drain is above or below the site outlet.

Inputs

5C.1 The site is the 2.0 ha flood-sensitive site of Annex 4C. It discharges through its own outlet chamber and a flap gate to a public storm drain that reaches the Punpun through a sluice and a drainage pumping station (a sump house), so Clause 5.10.1 applies to the facility. To show the method, this example uses the two 6-hour lock windows of Clause 5.10.3, as the coastal editions of this Manual do. A river-locked outfall in Bihar has a single lock of at least 7 days under Clause 5.8.5(a), covering the whole storm, so the facility must store or pump the whole storm volume (Clause 5.9.4); that needs more storage, or pumping, than this example shows. The routing, the volume balance of Clause 5.10.4 and the assessment are the same.

Table 5C.1 — Inputs (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value	Basis
Facility	Revised facility of Annex 4C: 2,500 m² plan area, vertical walls; 170 mm orifice at the floor; 460 mm orifice, invert 0.53 m	Annex 4C, Table 4C.14
Storm	1% AEP, 48 h, peak day last, AMC III; 72 h also run	Clause 5.10.2
Inflow	Post-development 1% AEP hydrographs of Annex 4C (48 h: 8,420 m³; 72 h: 9,468 m³)	Annex 4C
Receiving drain levels at the connection, J1, J2 and J3	Below the site outlet invert (from the drain owner's model)	Illustrative input
Receiving drain during each lock window	Backs up above the site outlet invert, so the site cannot discharge	Illustrative input; Clause 5.10.3(b)

Item	Value	Basis
Flap gate on the site outlet	Set 0.15 m below the orifice inverts in the outlet chamber, so that outside the lock windows its opening head and head loss do not affect the orifice control	Illustrative input; to be confirmed from the certified curve (Clause 5.11.2)
Lock windows	Two of 6 h each, starts 12.4 h apart (semi-diurnal tide)	Clause 5.10.3(a)
Pumps	None	—

5C.2 **Cases of Table 5.2.** Because the receiving drain stays below the site outlet in J1, J2 and J3 (Table 5C.1), those cases give the free-outfall results of Annex 4C: in J2 the 1% AEP maximum water level is **1.17 m** (2,913 m³), and in J3 (10% AEP, 48 h) it is 0.77 m. R1 and R2 do not apply, because the site does not drain to a river. J4, the outfall-closed check, is worked below.

Lock windows (Clause 5.10.3)

5C.3 The peak 1-hour block of the final 24 hours of the 48-hour storm is 35:35–36:35 h, with 98.2 mm (the 1-hour depth of Table 4C.2). Two runs are made:

- **Run A:** the first window is centred on that block: 33:05–39:05 h; the second starts 12.4 h later: 45:29–51:29 h.
- **Run B:** the first window starts at that block: 35:35–41:35 h; the second: 47:59–53:59 h.

For the 72-hour storm, every time is 24 h later.

5C.4 Gravity discharge is zero inside each window. Outside the windows the outlet discharges through the orifices of Table 4C.10. The routing is the same level-pool routing as in Annex 4C.

Results

Table 5C.2 — Outfall-closed check results (Illustrative — not design values)

Storm	Run	Lock windows (h:min)	Maximum stage (m)	Maximum storage (m³)	Time of maximum (h:min)	Largest release after a window (L/s)
1% AEP, 48 h	A	33:05–39:05; 45:29–51:29	2.01	5,019	39:05	566
1% AEP, 48 h	B	35:35–41:35; 47:59–53:59	**2.10**	**5,238**	41:35	584
1% AEP, 72 h	A	57:05–63:05; 69:29–75:29	2.00	5,012	63:05	565
1% AEP, 72 h	B	59:35–65:35; 71:59–77:59	2.09	5,233	65:35	584

Run B of the 48-hour storm governs. The first window closes the outlet just as the storm peak arrives, so the whole peak is stored. The second window arrives when the facility has drained to about 0.7 m, below the Stage 2 orifice, and adds little.

5C.5 **Volume balance (Clause 5.10.4).** Table 5C.3 gives the balance for Run B. The outflow in each period is found by continuity: outflow = storage at start + inflow − storage at end.

Table 5C.3 — Volume balance, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)

Period (h:min)	Inflow (m³)	Gravity outflow (m³)	Pumped (m³)	Storage at start (m³)	Storage at end (m³)
0:00–35:35, before window 1	3,817	2,213	0	0	1,604
35:35–41:35, window 1	3,634	0	0	1,604	5,238
41:35–47:59, between windows	941	4,423	0	5,238	1,756
47:59–53:59, window 2	28	0	0	1,756	1,784
After 53:59	0	1,784	0	1,784	0
Total	8,420	8,420	0	—	—

Check for window 1: V_inflow = 3,634 m³ ≤ V_storage available + V_pumped + V_gravity = (5,238 − 1,604) + 0 + 0 = 3,634 m³. The facility therefore needs **5,238 m³** of storage, which the routing confirms.

Table 5C.4 — Stage hydrograph, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (Illustrative — not design values)

Time (h)	Inflow (L/s)	Outlet	Outflow (L/s)	Stage (m)	Storage (m³)
24	20	Open	18	0.18	445
28	39	Open	24	0.25	621
32	59	Open	32	0.36	906
34	85	Open	37	0.47	1,166
36	286	Closed	0	0.78	1,944
38	106	Closed	0	1.73	4,321
40	66	Closed	0	1.96	4,904
42	51	Open	529	1.79	4,472
44	42	Open	204	0.87	2,181
46	37	Open	49	0.74	1,854
48	33	Open	47	0.70	1,756
50	0	Closed	0	0.71	1,784
54	0	Closed	0	0.71	1,784
56	0	Open	43	0.58	1,459
60	0	Open	32	0.37	921
66	0	Open	16	0.16	397
72	0	Open	7	0.06	162

Assessment

5C.6 **Clause 5.10.4(a).** The facility of Annex 4C reaches 1.17 m in J2, and its spillway crest is at 1.35 m (Annex 4C). In the outfall-closed check the stage reaches 2.10 m, so the spillway would operate. **The facility of Annex 4C fails the check.**

5C.7 **Remedy.** Pumping (Clause 5.12) does not help here: during the lock windows the receiving drain is itself closed, and pumping into it would raise its level, which Clause 5.12.3 does not permit. The remedy is more storage. Keeping the plan area of 2,500 m² and the outlets of Annex 4C:

- the facility must hold 5,238 m³, to a stage of **2.10 m**;
- the spillway crest is set above that stage, with the 0.15 m clearance recommended in Clause 4.9.3: **2.25 m**;
- with the 4.0 m spillway of Annex 4C (head 0.30 m), the maximum level with the spillway flowing is 2.55 m, and with 0.3 m freeboard the top of the walls is at least **2.85 m** above the floor.

The outfall-closed check therefore governs the storage: 5,238 m³ against 2,913 m³ from the release-rate checks, about 80% more. A larger plan area would make the facility shallower; the outlet, caps and drawdown would then have to be re-checked, because the stage–discharge relationship changes.

5C.8 **Release after the lock.** When the first window ends, the stored water is released under a head of about 2 m, at up to 584 L/s. This is above the 100-yr cap of 356 L/s. Clause 5.10.4 allows this, because the release reaches a drain that has itself just reopened, and requires it to be included in the J4 run of the downstream analysis (Clauses 5.4 and 5.9) and reported on Form 5-1, Section H.

5C.9 **Drawdown after the storm (Clause 5.10.5).** The J1 tidal curve stays below the site outlet (Table 5C.1), so the drawdown of Annex 4C applies: 45.3 h for 90% of the 10-yr storage with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked, within the 48-hour limit of Clause 4.7. In Run B, 90% of the maximum J4 storage is released 22.6 h after the maximum.

5C.10 **Other requirements.**

- The flap gate on the site outlet is inspected and operated before 1 June each year and after every event in which it closed against a storm flow (Clause 5.11.5).
- The deeper facility is checked for flotation with groundwater at the design groundwater level; in the diara lands, the chaurs, the Kosi plain and the tal lands without piezometer readings that level is existing ground level (Clauses 4.12.1 and 4.12.3).
- The fence and signs of Annex 4C apply to the deeper facility (Clause 4.15).

Table 5C.5 — Summary (Illustrative — not design values)

Item	Value
Governing case	J4, 1% AEP 48-hour storm, Run B (first window starting at the peak 1-hour block)
Storage required	5,238 m³ (Annex 4C release-rate design: 2,913 m³)
Maximum stage	2.10 m, with 2,500 m² plan area
Spillway crest	2.25 m
Top of walls	≥ 2.85 m above the floor
Largest release after a lock window	584 L/s, to be included in the downstream J4 run
Drawdown	Annex 4C result applies: 45.3 h with the low-flow orifice 50% blocked

Form 5-1 — Downstream and Tailwater Report

Supports Clauses 5.3 to 5.14 of Chapter 5.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One report for each project. Sites of less than 0.5 ha that meet Clause 5.3.4 may submit Form 5-2 instead, where the Authority accepts it. Attach the plans, model files and hydrographs referred to.

A. Project

Table 5F.1 — Form 5-1: project

Field	Entry
A1. Project name, applicant and location	
A2. Project type: site under Chapter 4; drainage project under Chapter 6; regional detention or tank restoration (Clause 5.1.2)	
A3. Site or project area (ha) and outfalls	
A4. Site Runoff Control Report reference (Form 4-1), where applicable	

B. Extent of the analysis (Clause 5.3; Clause 5.14, item 1)

Table 5F.2 — Form 5-1: analysis points

Point	Location	Type (Clause 5.3.3 (a) to (e))	Contributing catchment (ha)	Project area as % of it

Table 5F.3 — Form 5-1: end point

Field	Entry
B1. End point and reason: 10% point, tank or pokhar, or major drain or the sea (Clause 5.3.1 (a) to (c))	
B2. Where the end point is a tank or pokhar: change in maximum water level (m) and in surplus-weir discharge (m^3/s); continuation below the weir if the level rises (Clause 5.3.2)	
B3. Plan of the analysis extent, showing the site, each point with its contributing area and percentage, and the end point (attach)	

C. Model (Clause 5.4.4; Clause 5.14, item 2)

Table 5F.4 — Form 5-1: model

Field	Entry
C1. Software and version; hydrologic and hydraulic methods (Clause 5.4.4)	
C2. Network schematic, with the survey sources for drains and crossings (attach)	
C3. Land use and CN of off-site areas (present land use)	

Field	Entry
C4. Upstream detention included, with evidence that it is built, maintained and documented	
C5. Calibration or validation evidence, where available	
C6. Scenarios run: existing, with project, and future where the Authority requires it (Clause 5.4.1)	
C7. Storms run: AEPs and durations, AMC and areal reduction (Clause 5.4.3)	

D. Results at each analysis point (Clause 5.4.2; Clause 5.14, item 3)

Complete one row for each analysis point, AEP and duration. E = existing; P = with project.

Table 5F.5 — Form 5-1: results by analysis point

Point	AEP	Duration (h)	Peak flow E / P (m^3/s)	Time to peak E / P (h)	Maximum water level E / P (m)	Peak velocity E / P (m/s)	Duration of inundation E / P (h)

E. Acceptance (Clause 5.5; Clause 5.14, item 4)

Table 5F.6 — Form 5-1: acceptance criteria

Criterion	Met at every point?	Where not met, the remedy adopted (Clause 5.5.3)
E1. 1% AEP water level rise ≤ 10 mm at buildings, lowest openings and carriageways (Clause 5.5.1(a))		
E2. No building newly flooded; no building or road newly failing the Chapter 6 limits (Clause 5.5.1(b))		
E3. Peak flow not above existing at the minor-system AEP of each element or at 1% AEP (Clause 5.5.1(c))		
E4. Velocity in lined channels within the lining limit, 3.0 m/s maximum (Clause 5.5.1(d))		
E5. Velocity in unlined channels, 50% and 10% AEP, not increased by more than 10% (Clause 5.5.1(e))		
E6. Change in duration of road closure on arterial or emergency routes (Clause 5.5.2)		
E7. Timing exception requested (Clause 5.5.4)? Give the conditions met		

F. Tailwater derivation (Clauses 5.6 to 5.8; Clause 5.14, item 5)

Table 5F.7 — Form 5-1: tailwater derivation

Field	Entry
F1. Tide-table edition and port, or port authority source (Clause 5.7.2(a))	

Field	Entry
F2. MHWS, HAT and MSL (m above chart datum)	
F3. Connection from chart datum to the Survey of India benchmark and the project datum: offset (m) and source (Clause 5.7.2(b))	
F4. Estuary, creek or canal outfall: levels used and any evidence for a departure from open-coast levels (Clause 5.7.2(c))	
F5. 10% AEP surge and 1% AEP still-water level: values, source, method and record length (Clause 5.7.3)	
F6. Wave set-up, for outfalls facing the open sea (Clause 5.7.3(d))	
F7. SLA (m), at least +0.3 m; design life; sensitivity run at twice the SLA for design lives over 50 years (Clause 5.7.4)	
F8. Non-tidal tailwater: receiving-system level and source (Clauses 5.6.2, 5.6.3)	
F9. River levels and sources; reservoir or tank releases included (Clauses 5.8.2, 5.8.3)	
F10. River-locked outfalls, the Ganga, the Sone and the Punpun around Patna, the embanked rivers of north Bihar, floods from Nepal, the Kosi and WRD drains: operator of each sluice, gate and pumping station identified, gate sills, embankment or wall crest, installed capacity, operating levels and sluice-closing level obtained, with every level tied to the datum of the nearest CWC or WRD gauge; 1% AEP river level at the outfall from a published study or a model, and not below the highest recorded level at the nearest gauge transferred to the outfall (50.57 m at Gandhi Ghat until CWC confirms), with the profile used; 10% AEP river level, not below the danger level transferred; drain behind the sluice routed with its whole catchment and present storage, pumping confirmed available (permanent pumps only, not more than installed capacity less the largest pump), pumps operable at the design river level; single river lock of not less than 7 days covering the whole storm, and its source; gate-failure, embankment-breach and town-protection-wall breach checks; Ganga, Sone and Punpun levels coincident at Patna, with the Punpun backwater for south Patna; pumped inflows to receiving nalas included; no storage credit in chaurs, mauns or low ground without records; WRD Order No. 143 Flood Plain Zone checked and WRD consent; Kosi and Gandak barrage releases as in the largest recorded event; WRD or owner's consent, permitted rate, design water level or computed channel level, and flap gate (Clause 5.8.5)	

G. Joint cases (Clause 5.9; Clause 5.14, item 6)

Table 5F.8 — Form 5-1: joint-case results

Case	Rainfall	Tailwater used (m, project datum)	Applies?	Governing result (storage, level, pipe size or pump capacity)
J1				
J2				
J3				
J4				
R1				
R2				

H. Outfall-closed check (Clause 5.10; Clause 5.14, item 7)

Table 5F.9 — Form 5-1: outfall-closed check

Field	Entry
H1. Reason the check applies (Clause 5.10.1)	
H2. Storm: AEP, 48 h and 72 h, AMC III (Clause 5.10.2)	
H3. Lock duration and basis: default of two 6-hour windows, or site study (Clause 5.10.6); extension for sand-bar closure (Clause 5.13.5)	

Field	Entry
H4. Lock windows of the two runs (start and end times) (Clause 5.10.3(d))	
H5. Maximum stage in each facility, against its 1% AEP maximum water level (Clause 5.10.4(a))	
H6. Maximum stage in the minor and major systems, against the Chapter 6 limits (Clause 5.10.4(b))	
H7. Property connections: surcharge level, or non-return valves fitted (Clause 5.10.4(c))	
H8. Stage hydrographs (attach)	
H9. Drawdown after the storm under the J1 tidal curve, and pumping where needed (Clause 5.10.5)	

Table 5F.10 — Form 5-1: volume balance for each lock window (Clause 5.10.4)

Period	Inflow (m³)	Gravity outflow (m³)	Pumped (m³)	Storage at start (m³)	Storage at end (m³)
Before window 1					
Window 1					
Between windows					
Window 2					
After window 2					

I. Gates and valves (Clause 5.11; Clause 5.14, item 8)

Table 5F.11 — Form 5-1: schedule of flap gates, tide gates and non-return valves

Location	Type	Size (mm)	Invert (m, project datum)	Certified head–discharge data (reference)	Stop-log or penstock (outfalls > 600 mm)

J. Pumped outfalls (Clause 5.12; Clause 5.14, item 9)

Table 5F.12 — Form 5-1: pumped outfalls

Field	Entry
J1. Reason pumping is needed (Clause 5.12.1)	
J2. Duty capacity (m³/s) at the static head for the J2 tailwater; standby capacity (Clause 5.12.2)	
J3. Effect on the receiving water level (Clause 5.12.3)	
J4. Power supply: two independent supplies, or standby generation with 72 h of fuel; automatic changeover (Clause 5.12.4)	
J5. Level of electrical panels, controls, generators and fuel, against the higher of the 1% AEP flood level + 0.5 m and HAT + surge + SLA + 0.5 m (Clause 5.12.5)	
J6. Discharge arrangement (Clause 5.12.6); controls, alarms and logging (Clause 5.12.7); screens (Clause 5.12.8)	

K. Sand bar (Clause 5.13; Clause 5.14, item 10)

Table 5F.13 — Form 5-1: sand-bar assumption

Field	Entry
K1. River mouth or creek inlet concerned	
K2. Mouth assumed closed, or open with WRD certification attached (Clause 5.13.2)	
K3. Bar crest level from the most recent pre-monsoon survey (m) and the closed-mouth tailwater (Clause 5.13.3)	
K4. Extension of the lock duration, where required (Clause 5.13.5)	

L. Inspection and maintenance (Clause 5.14, item 11)

Table 5F.14 — Form 5-1: inspection and maintenance

Field	Entry
L1. Gate and valve inspection before 1 June and after closure events (Clause 5.11.5)	
L2. Pump test runs before 1 June (Clause 5.12.9)	
L3. Other requirements for the maintenance plan (Chapter 10)	

M. Statement by the registered professional (Clause 10.6)

I state that this report has been prepared under Chapter 5 of the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual (Draft v1.0), that the results reported are reproduced by the models submitted, and that every departure from Chapter 5 is listed with its reason. The Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) is attached.

Table 5F.15 — Form 5-1: statement by the registered professional

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Empanelment number, where Clause 10.6.1 requires it	
Organisation	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Form 5-2 — Simplified Downstream Statement (small sites)

Supports Clause 5.3.4 of Chapter 5.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. For sites of less than 0.5 ha. The Authority may accept this statement in place of the full analysis only where every answer in Section B is "Yes". Otherwise submit Form 5-1.

A. Site

Table 5F.16 — Form 5-2: site

Field	Entry
A1. Project name, applicant and location	
A2. Site area (ha), less than 0.5 ha	
A3. Receiving public drain: name or reference, type and size	
A4. Site Runoff Control Report reference (Form 4-1)	

B. Conditions (Clause 5.3.4)

Table 5F.17 — Form 5-2: conditions

Condition	Yes / No	Evidence
B1. The receiving public drain has documented capacity for its minor-system design flow (Chapter 6)		
B2. No flood-prone location is recorded within 500 m downstream of the site outfall. Records checked: local body, PMC, BSDMA, WRD (Clause 5.3.3(d))		
B3. The site does not drain to a tidal or backwater-affected outfall		

C. Route plan

Table 5F.18 — Form 5-2: attachments

Attachment	Attached?
C1. Plan of the drainage route from the site outfall for 500 m downstream, with the receiving drain and any recorded flood-prone locations	
C2. Copy or reference of the drain capacity record	

D. Statement

I state that the site meets the conditions of Clause 5.3.4 as shown above, and that the records listed have been checked.

Table 5F.19 — Form 5-2: statement

Field	Entry
Name	
Qualification and registration number	
Signature	
Date	

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 6

Minor and Major Drainage Systems

These annexes support Chapter 6. Annex 6A (standard inlets and their capacity curves) and Annex 6B (sediment yield) need test and survey data that are not yet available; each states what it will contain and the interim rule to use until it is published. Annex 6C gives standard drawings that carry only the dimensions Chapter 6 and Chapter 9 already set; every other dimension is marked "to be confirmed in design". Form 6-1 is a draft form: it lists what Clause 6.15 requires and does not add to it.

Annex 6A — Standard inlet types for Bihar with capacity curves (on grade and sag)

Supports Clauses 6.6.1 to 6.6.7 of Chapter 6 and Clause 9.11 of Chapter 9.

To be prepared. This annex will contain a short list of standard inlet types for Bihar streets (kerb-opening, grate and combination inlets, including the road-level wall opening into a covered drain) and, for each type, capacity curves on grade and in a sag. It needs a fixed set of standard inlet geometries agreed with the road-owning agencies, and rating tests of those geometries (laboratory or full-scale), or HEC-22 calculations for each geometry checked against tests (data and likely sources: Road Construction Department (RCD), NHAI and Patna Municipal Corporation standard details, IIT Patna, NIT Patna or other hydraulic laboratories, manufacturers' tested ratings). Until it is published, compute the clean capacity of the inlet actually proposed by the methods of FHWA HEC-22 (4th edition, 2024) or from the manufacturer's tested rating for that exact geometry (Clause 6.6.2), reduce it by the clogging factors of Table 6.5 (Clause 6.6.3), and meet the interim requirements of Table 6A.1.

Table 6A.1 — Interim requirements for inlets until Annex 6A is published (from Chapters 6 and 9)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Inlet type on public streets	Kerb-opening or combination inlets, unless the Approving Authority accepts grate-only inlets for a location	6.6.1(a)
Inlet level	Openings at road level; gutter depression where practicable	6.6.1(b)
Clean capacity	FHWA HEC-22 (4th ed., 2024) or the manufacturer's tested rating for the exact geometry; CPHEEO §5.6.2 equations as a cross-check only	6.6.2
Clogging, on grade	Grate 50%; kerb opening 10%	6.6.3, Table 6.5
Clogging, in a sag	Grate 50%; kerb opening 20%	6.6.3, Table 6.5
Spacing	By sequential calculation from the top of each gutter run; not more than 30 m on kerbed roads	6.6.4
Kerb opening size	Clear height at least 100 mm; length at least 1.0 m	9.11.4
Grate pattern	Openings parallel to the direction of travel not wider than 25 mm	9.11.3(a)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Load class	D400 in carriageways and medians; C250 within 0.5 m of the kerb; B125 in footpaths and cycle tracks (or the equivalent IS class)	9.11.2
Connection pipe	At least 300 mm diameter; gradient giving at least 0.9 m/s at the inlet's design flow	6.6.6
Silt sump	At least 300 mm deep below the outlet pipe invert, cleanable from the surface	6.6.7, 9.11.6

The intended layout of the annex is given in Tables 6A.2 to 6A.4.

Table 6A.2 — Register of standard inlet types (layout)

Type code	Description	Grate size or kerb opening (mm)	Gutter depression (mm)	Load class	Standard drawing
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 6A.3 — Capacity on grade (layout; one table per inlet type)

Cross slope Sx (m/m)	Longitudinal slope SL (m/m)	Gutter flow Q (L/s)	Spread T (m)	Clean intercepted flow (L/s)	Design intercepted flow after clogging (L/s)	Bypass flow (L/s)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 6A.4 — Capacity in a sag (layout; one table per inlet type)

Ponded depth at the inlet (mm)	Clean capacity (L/s)	Clogging factor (Table 6.5)	Design capacity (L/s)	Flow regime (weir, orifice or transition)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 6B — Sediment yield for silt-trap sizing and calibration of the sediment allowance

Supports Clauses 6.7.4, 6.7.8, 6.13.3 and 6.13.10 of Chapter 6.

To be prepared. This annex will contain sediment yields for urban drains in Bihar, by land use and drain type, for sizing the silt traps of Clause 6.13.3, and a calibration of the sediment allowance of Clause 6.7.8 against measured silt depths. It needs desilting records (volume or mass removed per drain length and per catchment area, with dates), silt-depth surveys before and after the south-west monsoon, and catchment land-use and soil data (data and likely sources: desilting records of Patna Municipal Corporation and other urban local bodies, WRD records for channels, land cover from NRSC, soils from the Bihar soil survey and NBSS&LUP, rainfall from IMD). Until it is published, size each silt trap from the designer's stated estimate of the sediment expected between scheduled cleanings, based on the desilting records of the same drain or of similar drains in the same local body, and state the cleaning interval assumed; the interval shall not be longer than the yearly pre-monsoon desilting of Clause 6.13.10. Inlet silt sumps remain at least 300 mm deep (Clause 6.6.7), and the sediment allowance of Clause 6.7.8 applies unchanged.

The intended method is a simple volume balance, with every term to be stated in the design:

> $V_{trap} = Y \cdot A \cdot t_c$

where V_{trap} is the sediment storage volume of the trap below its outlet invert (m^3), Y is the sediment yield for the catchment's land use and drain type (m^3/ha per year, from Table 6B.2 once published), A is the catchment area draining to the trap (ha), and t_c is the scheduled cleaning interval (years). The annex will state whether a safety margin is added.

Table 6B.1 — Sediment allowances already set by Chapter 6 (provisional, to be calibrated)

Element	Sediment allowance at the invert	Clause
Open and covered drains	Greater of 75 mm and 10% of the clear internal depth	6.7.8(a)
Pipes of 600 mm diameter or more	5% of the internal diameter	6.7.8(b)
Pipes below 600 mm	No allowance; minimum velocity of Clause 6.7.3(a) applies	6.7.8(c)
Drains and pipes that cannot reach the minimum velocity	Allowance doubled; mechanical desilting access provided	6.7.4(b), (c)
Inlet silt sumps	At least 300 mm below the outlet pipe invert	6.6.7

Table 6B.2 — Sediment yield by land use and drain type (layout)

Land use or catchment type	Drain type	Sediment yield Y (m^3/ha per year)	Bulk density (t/m^3)	Local body and records used	Years of record
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 6B.3 — Calibration of the sediment allowance (layout)

Drain or pipe ID	Clear internal depth or diameter (mm)	Allowance under Clause 6.7.8 (mm)	Measured silt depth before pre-monsoon desilting (mm)	Measured silt depth at the end of the monsoon (mm)	Ratio of measured to allowance
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 6C — Standard drawings: covered roadside drain with removable covers, access chamber, inlet with silt sump

Supports Clauses 6.6, 6.7.6 to 6.7.10 and 6.13 of Chapter 6, and Clauses 9.11 and 9.12 of Chapter 9.

The drawings below are schematic standard drawings. They show only the dimensions that Chapter 6 and Chapter 9 set. Wall and slab thicknesses, reinforcement, concrete grade and cover, chamber plan sizes and frame details are to be confirmed in design: they come from the structural design (Clause 9.1.2) and the exposure class of Clause 9.13. Table 6C.1 lists the dimensions shown and their source clauses.

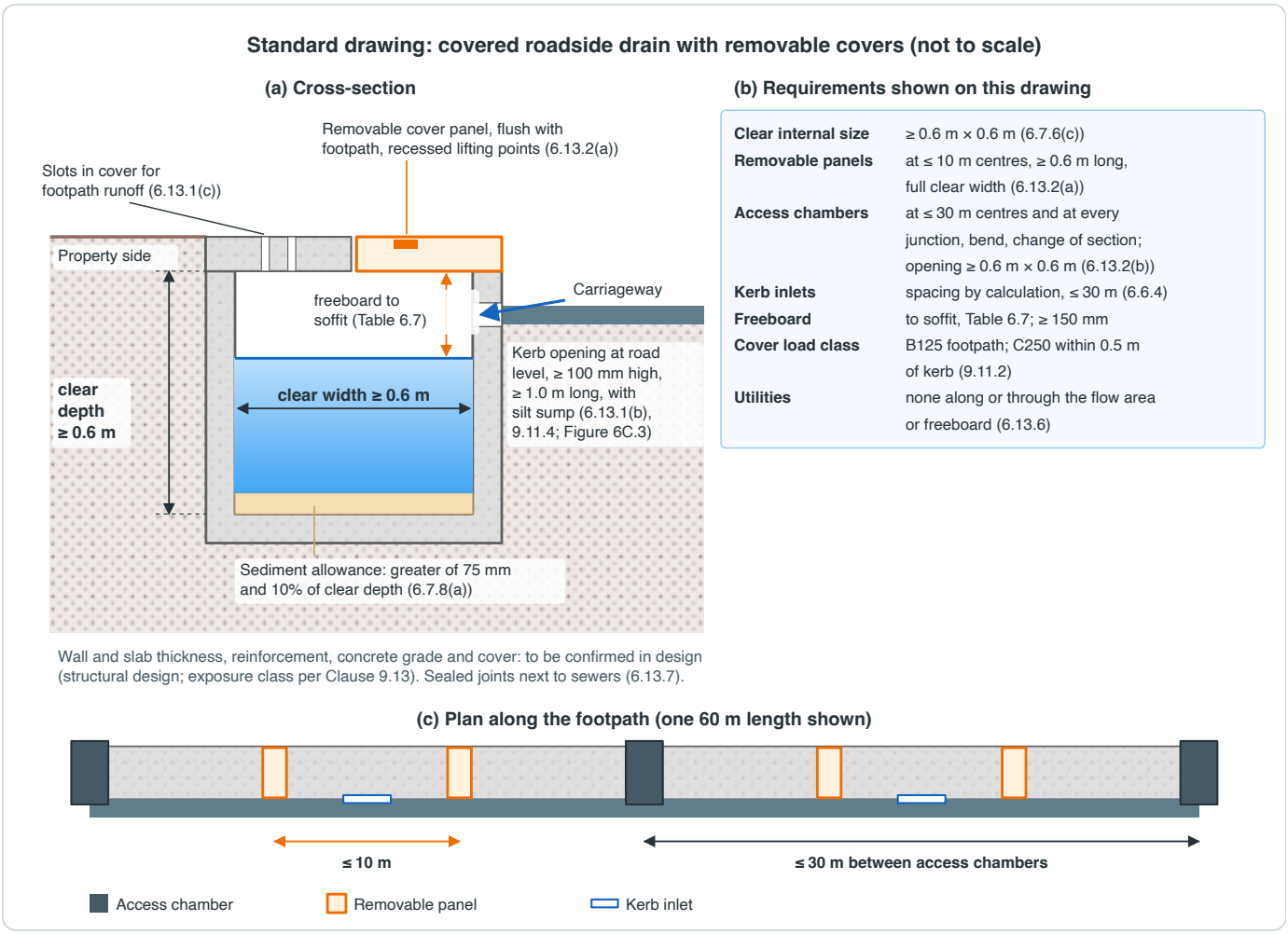


Figure 6C.1 — Standard drawing: covered roadside drain with removable covers, kerb inlets at road level, footpath slots, freeboard to the soffit and sediment allowance, with a plan of cover panels and access chambers along the footpath. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Chapter 5, and IRC:SP:50-2013.

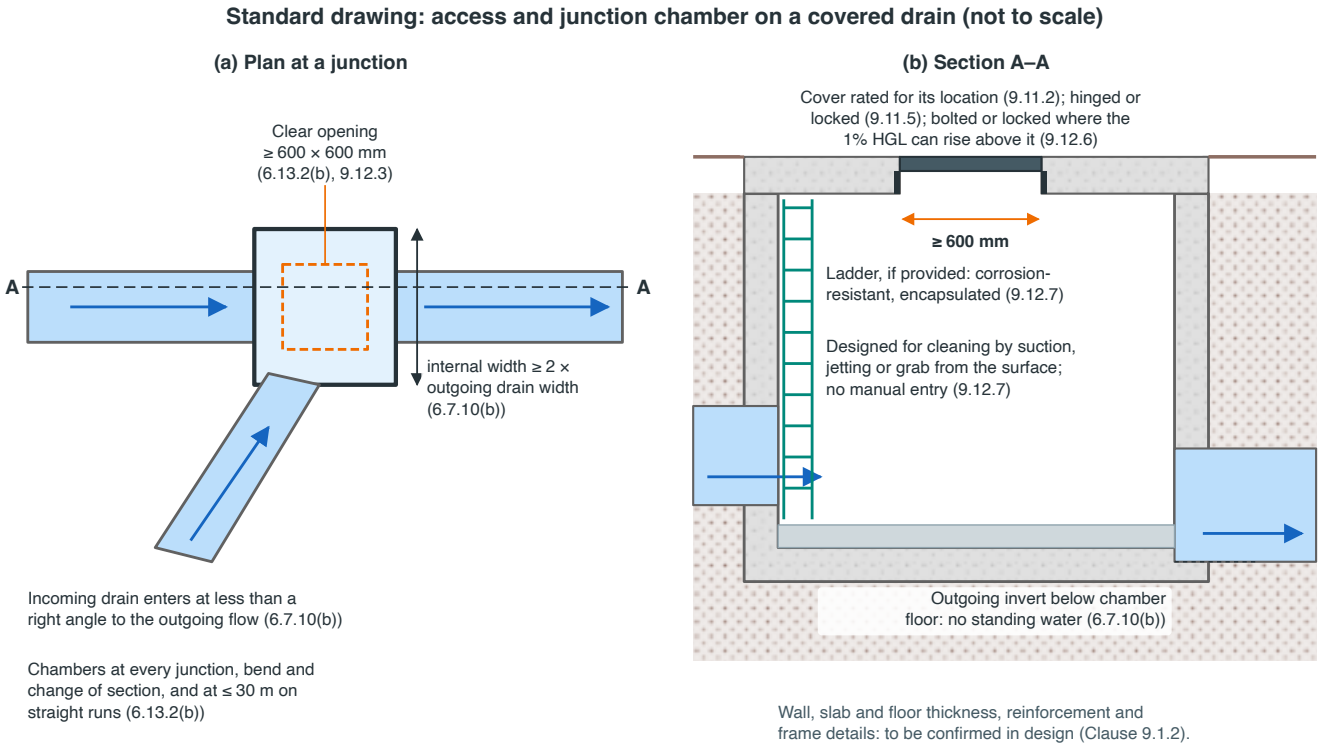


Figure 6C.2 — Standard drawing: access and junction chamber on a covered drain, with the clear opening, junction width, entry angle of the incoming drain, outgoing invert below the chamber floor, and cover requirements. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), §5.3.4 and Chapter 11.

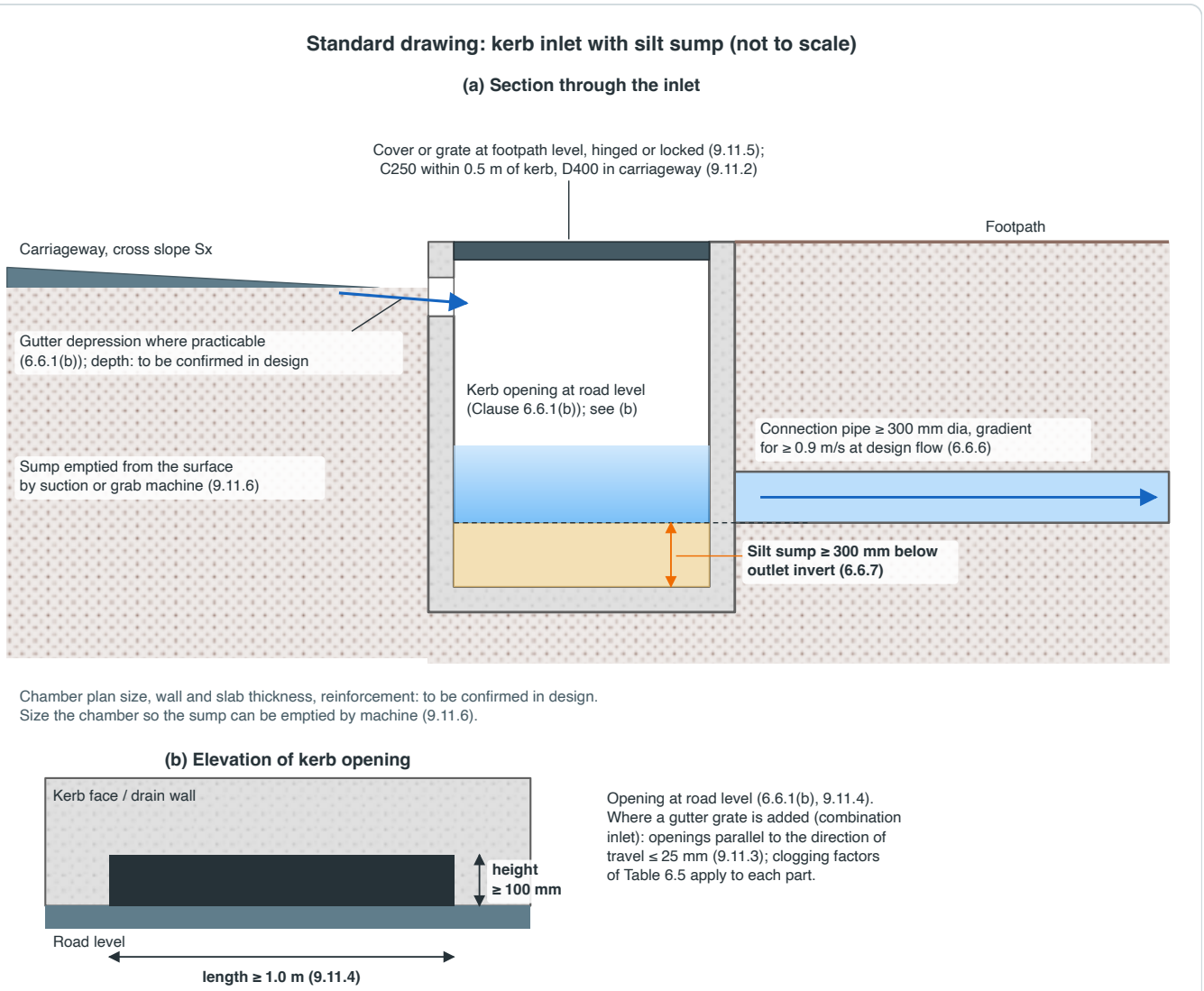


Figure 6C.3 — Standard drawing: kerb inlet at road level with silt sump, connection pipe and cover, and an elevation of the kerb opening. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), Figure 5.9, and FHWA, HEC-22 Urban Drainage Design Manual (4th ed., 2024).

Table 6C.1 — Dimensions on the standard drawings and their source clauses

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
6C.1	Clear internal size of a covered public drain	At least 0.6 m wide and 0.6 m deep	6.7.6(c)
6C.1	Freeboard to the cover soffit	Table 6.7; not less than 150 mm for any roadside drain	6.7.9, 6.13.1(a)
6C.1	Sediment allowance	Greater of 75 mm and 10% of clear depth	6.7.8(a)
6C.1	Removable cover panels	At not more than 10 m centres; each at least 0.6 m long and spanning the full clear width; recessed lifting points; flush with the footpath	6.13.2(a)
6C.1	Footpath runoff	Through slots or grated openings in the cover	6.13.1(c)
6C.1	Kerb inlets	Openings in the drain wall at road level, each with a silt sump; spacing by calculation, not more than 30 m	6.13.1(b), 6.6.4
6C.1, 6C.2	Access chambers	At every junction, bend and change of section, and at not more than 30 m centres on straight runs	6.13.2(b)

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
6C.2	Clear access opening	At least 0.6 m × 0.6 m (600 mm)	6.13.2(b), 9.12.3
6C.2	Junction chamber	Internal width at least twice the outgoing drain width; incoming drains at less than a right angle; outgoing invert below the chamber floor	6.7.10(b)
6C.2	Covers	Load class for the location; hinged or locked; bolted or locked where the 1% AEP HGL can rise above the cover	9.11.2, 9.11.5, 9.12.6
6C.2	Cleaning	By machine from the surface; ladders, where provided, corrosion-resistant and encapsulated	9.12.7
6C.3	Kerb opening	At road level; clear height at least 100 mm; length at least 1.0 m	6.6.1(b), 9.11.4
6C.3	Silt sump	At least 300 mm below the outlet pipe invert; emptied by suction or grab machine	6.6.7, 9.11.6
6C.3	Connection pipe	At least 300 mm diameter; at least 0.9 m/s at the design flow	6.6.6
6C.3	Grate in a combination inlet	Openings parallel to travel not wider than 25 mm; Table 6.5 clogging on each part	9.11.3, 6.6.3
All	Wall and slab thickness, reinforcement, concrete grade and cover, chamber plan size, gutter depression depth	To be confirmed in design	9.1.2, 9.13

Form 6-1 — Conveyance Design Report checklist

Supports Clause 6.15 of Chapter 6.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Not for statutory use.

Attach this checklist to the front of the Conveyance Design Report. For each item, enter Yes, No or Not applicable, and the drawing or page where it is shown.

Section A — Project

Table 6F.1 — Form 6-1, Section A: project

Field	Entry
Project name and location	_____
Local body, and Tier A or Tier B (Chapter 1)	_____
Applicant	_____
Designer (name and registration)	_____
Total catchment area served (ha)	_____
High-density area status for the 10% AEP minor system (Clause 6.4.4)	_____
Within the coastal band of Clause 6.11.6 (Yes / No)	_____
Date and revision	_____

Section B — Contents required by Clause 6.15

Table 6F.2 — Form 6-1, Section B: contents required by Clause 6.15

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)	Drawing or page
1	Catchment plan: sub-catchments, minor system, inlet locations and the 1% AEP major-system overland flow paths	6.3.2		
2	Land-use and road-class AEP adopted for each element, and the high-density area status	Table 6.1, 6.4.4		
3	Design flows, with the rainfall sheet of Chapter 2 and the method of Chapter 3	6.3.4		
4	Gutter spread, depth and D·V checks for the minor, check and 1% events	Tables 6.2, 6.3		
5	Inlet schedule: clean capacity, clogging factor, design capacity and bypass flow	6.6		
6	Pipe and drain design tables: n, velocity, sediment allowance and freeboard	6.7		
7	HGL profiles for the minor and check events, with the tailwater used	6.8		
8	Sag ponding levels, including the fully-blocked check	6.10		
9	Floor-level schedule for every building	6.11		
10	Culvert and crossing calculations (with Form 9-1)	6.12, Chapter 9		

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)	Drawing or page
11	Utilities-crossing schedule and access-opening layout for covered drains	6.13		

Section C — Design basis

Table 6F.3 — Form 6-1, Section C: design basis

Field	Entry	Clause
Minor-system design AEP adopted	_____	Table 6.1
Road class(es) and design / check AEPs for road drainage and crossings	_____	Table 6.1, 6.4.2
Rainfall source and climate factor applied	_____	6.3.4, Chapter 2
Method: Rational Method (catchment ≤ 16 ha, single element) or hydrograph method with routing	_____	6.3.4(a), (b)
Minimum time of concentration used (not less than 10 min)	_____	6.3.4(c)
Tailwater at the outfall for the HGL (MHWS + 0.3 m at tidal outfalls, or the receiving level)	_____	6.8.2
Any transfer of flow between natural catchments (none unless accepted under 6.3.5)	_____	6.3.5

Section D — Compliance checks

Table 6F.4 — Form 6-1, Section D: compliance checks

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
D1	Every inlet, sag, pipe, drain, culvert and storage element has a 1% AEP overland path	Shown on plan	6.3.2	
D2	Major-system flow = 1% AEP peak less the clogged minor-system capacity	Computed at each point	6.3.3	
D3	Spread in the minor event	Table 6.2	6.5.2	
D4	Depth in the check and 1% events	≤ 150 mm at the crown; ≤ 350 mm at the deepest point	Table 6.2	
D5	Flow hazard (D·V) by location	Table 6.3	6.5.3	
D6	Inlet clogging factors applied	Table 6.5	6.6.3	
D7	Inlet spacing on kerbed roads	≤ 30 m	6.6.4(a)	
D8	Sag inlet design capacity ≥ minor design flow arriving; flanking inlets where required	—	6.6.5	
D9	Inlet connection pipes and silt sumps	≥ 300 mm dia, ≥ 0.9 m/s; sump ≥ 300 mm	6.6.6, 6.6.7	
D10	Manning's n not less than the minimum design values	Table 6.6	6.7.2	
D11	Minimum velocity at the minor design flow	0.6 m/s drains; 0.9 m/s pipes	6.7.3(a)	
D12	Maximum velocity and Froude number	3.0 m/s lined drains and pipes; Fr ≤ 0.8	6.7.3(b), (d)	

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
D13	Where minimum velocity cannot be met: velocity reported, sediment allowance doubled, desilting access provided	—	6.7.4	
D14	Pipes sized for pipe-full capacity, not the 0.95-depth peak	—	6.7.5	
D15	Minimum sizes	Pipes 300 mm (450 mm public mains); open drain bed 0.3 m; covered public drains 0.6 m × 0.6 m	6.7.6	
D16	Cover to pipes; flotation check where groundwater is within 1 m of the crown	≥ 0.6 m; ≥ 0.9 m under carriageways	6.7.7	
D17	Sediment allowance in capacity	6.7.8 values	6.7.8	
D18	Freeboard, including superelevation at bends	Table 6.7	6.7.9	
D19	Bend radii and junction sumps	6.7.10	6.7.10	
D20	Manhole spacing on straight runs	Table 6.8	6.7.11	
D21	HGL below inlet rims and manhole covers in the minor event	≥ 0.3 m	6.8.3	
D22	Manholes that can surcharge above ground: bolted or locked covers	—	6.8.4	
D23	Soffits matched or outgoing soffit lower; outgoing invert not above the lowest incoming invert	—	6.8.6	
D24	Gate and valve losses included in the HGL; non-return valves on private connections where required	—	6.8.7, 6.8.8	
D25	Overland flow paths outside streets: width, tenure, no obstruction, continuous fall	≥ 1% top width + 0.5 m each side, ≥ 3.0 m	6.9.2	
D26	Compound walls across mapped flow paths: openings pass the 1% flow at 50% blockage	—	6.9.3	
D27	Access strip along open drains with top width ≥ 2 m	≥ 3.5 m, linked to a road at ≤ 500 m	6.9.4	
D28	Drainage reserve where required: width, separate plot, no structures, markers, services, 2 m stability check	Table 6.9	6.9.6–6.9.8	
D29	Sag ponding in the 1% event, overflow route, and fully-blocked check	≤ 350 mm at the deepest point	6.10.2, 6.10.3	
D30	Trapped sags and road underpasses	6.10.4, 6.10.5	6.10.4, 6.10.5	
D31	Floor levels	≥ 1% AEP level + 0.5 m; defaults of 6.11.3 where no level is computed	6.11.1–6.11.3	
D32	Basements and building services	6.11.4, 6.11.5	6.11.4, 6.11.5	
D33	Coastal band: floor ≥ 1% still-water level + 2 × SLA (+ wave set-up where applicable) + 0.5 m; no basement rooms or plant	—	6.11.6	
D34	Culverts: design AEP, overtopping, 50% / 20% blockage check, minimum size	≥ 900 mm	6.12	

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
D35	Covered drains: removable panels and access chambers	≤ 10 m; ≤ 30 m	6.13.1, 6.13.2	
D36	Silt traps, screens with bypass and 50% blockage check	—	6.13.3, 6.13.4	
D37	No building over drains; no utilities in the flow area or freeboard; existing crossings deducted with 50% blockage	—	6.13.5, 6.13.6	
D38	No sewage connections; sealed joints next to sewers; edge protection on open drains deeper than 1.0 m	—	6.13.7, 6.13.8	
D39	Outfalls: tailwater, flap gates or non-return valves below the 1% still-water level, outlet protection	—	6.14	

Section E — Variances

Table 6F.5 — Form 6-1, Section E: variances

Clause	Requirement not met	Reason and proposed alternative	Approved by and date
_____	_____	_____	_____

Section F — Signatures

The report shall be prepared and signed by a registered professional, and the Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) attached (Clauses 10.6.1 and 10.6.3 of Chapter 10). Where a structure stands within 2 m of the edge of a drainage reserve, the stability design shall also be signed by a qualified structural engineer (Clause 6.9.8(f)).

Table 6F.6 — Form 6-1, Section F: signatures

Role	Name	Registration or empanelment no.	Signature	Date
Designer	_____	_____	_____	_____
Structural engineer (Clause 6.9.8(f), where applicable)	_____	_____	_____	_____

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 7

Waterbodies, Pokhars (Ponds) and Setbacks

These annexes support Chapter 7. They give the inventory field specification, the fixed-width setback table, a template operating rule, the desilting and restoration specification, a glossary of Hindi and Urdu waterbody terms, and the three forms that Clause 7.15 requires. Where an annex cannot yet be completed it says so and gives the rule to use in the meantime. The forms are draft forms; the template and model text are for consideration by a competent authority and are not in force.

Annex 7A — Statewide waterbody GIS layer and inventory fields

Supports Clauses 7.3.1, 7.3.3 and 7.3.5 of Chapter 7.

To be prepared. This annex will contain the statewide GIS layer of waterbodies required by Clause 7.3.1, prepared by each Authority with the WRD and the Revenue and Land Reforms Department. It needs the Revenue records and village maps of the Revenue and Land Reforms Department, in which pokhars, talabs, ahars, pynes, nalas and land covered by water are recorded, and in which public land, including land over which the community has a right of irrigation, is protected under the Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956; the public tanks and their adjacent land vested in the Municipality under section 177 of the Bihar Municipal Act, 2007; the natural waterways and drains shown in a Development Plan or drainage plan, on which BBL 2014 bars building (bye-law 29(A)), and the Water Bodies Use Zone of the Patna Master Plan 2031 and other plans; the Flood Plain Zone of the embanked rivers under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (the land between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank); the boundary of every wetland notified under the Wetlands (Conservation and Management) Rules, 2017 and of the six Ramsar sites; and the lists of public ponds, ahars and pynes identified, restored or freed of encroachment under the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan; the Minor Water Resources Department and Gram Panchayat tank registers with FTL and MWL; surveyed levels on a common datum; the ISRO National Wetland Inventory and Assessment (NRSC); Survey of India topographic maps; and any list of waterbodies published under court directions. Until it is published, each Applicant identifies waterbodies from all the sources of Clause 7.3.3, with the larger extent governing, and records them on the Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1).

The field specification below is complete. It is written so that every field the chapter asks for (Clause 7.3.1(a) to (g)) has a defined name, type and source, and so that the same fields can be filled from a project's Form 7-1.

7A.1 Layers

- **WB_POLY** — one polygon per waterbody: the Revenue record boundary (Clause 7.3.1(c)).
- **WB_FTL** — the surveyed FTL contour (tanks, lakes, ponds) or top of bank (channels), as a polygon or line.
- **WB_MWL** — the MWL contour of each tank, as a polygon.
- **WB_FLOOD** — the 1% AEP flood extent, where mapped (Clause 7.3.1(f)), with the floodway where delineated (Clause 7.6.1).
- **WB_STRUCT** — points for surplus weirs, sluices, regulators, inlets and drain outfalls.

- **WB_LINK** — lines for supply channels, surplus courses and the links between tanks in a cascade (Clause 7.3.1(e)).
- **WB_ENCR** — polygons of known encroachments, each with the date recorded (Clause 7.3.1(g)).
- **WB_SETBACK** — Zone 1 and Zone 2 polygons (Clause 7.4), derived from the layers above.

All layers shall carry the waterbody identifier (WB_ID) so that they can be joined. All levels shall be stated to one datum (Clause 7.3.5), named in the layer metadata.

Table 7A.1 — Attribute fields of the waterbody inventory (WB_POLY)

Field	Type	Unit / domain	Required	Content	Clause
WB_ID	Text	District code + serial	Yes	Unique identifier, never reused	7.3.1
WB_NAME	Text	—	Yes	Name as in Revenue and Minor Water Resources Department records, with local name	7.3.1(a)
WB_NAME_HI	Text	Hindi script	Yes	Name in Hindi	7.3.1(a)
WB_TYPE	Code	Table 7A.2	Yes	Waterbody type	7.2, 7.3.1(a)
SURVEY_NOS	Text	Village, survey and subdivision numbers	Yes	Revenue survey numbers of the waterbody	7.3.1(a)
VILLAGE	Text	—	Yes	Revenue village, anchal (circle) and district	7.3.1(a)
CUSTODIAN	Code	Table 7A.2	Yes	Custodian body	7.3.1(b)
AREA_REC	Number	ha	Yes	Area within the Revenue record boundary	7.3.1(c)
AREA_FTL	Number	ha	Tanks	Waterspread at FTL, surveyed	7.2, 7.3.1(d)
FTL	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Full tank level	7.3.1(d)
MWL	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Maximum water level (Clause 7.2 definition)	7.3.1(d)
MWL_BASIS	Code	Minor Water Resources Department record / 1% AEP computed	Tanks	Which value governs MWL	7.2
TBL	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Top bund level, lowest point	7.3.1(d)
WEIR_CREST	Number	m (datum)	Tanks	Surplus weir crest level	7.3.1(d)
WEIR_LEN	Number	m	Tanks	Surplus weir crest length	7.3.1(d)
WEIR_TYPE	Text	—	Tanks	Surplus weir type (for example fixed crest, with shutters or falling boards)	7.3.1(d)
SLUICE_N	Integer	—	Tanks	Number of sluices; details in WB_STRUCT	7.3.1(d)
SUPPLY_CH	Text	WB_ID(s)	Tanks	Supply channel(s) feeding the tank	7.3.1(d)
SURPLUS_CS	Text	WB_ID(s)	Tanks	Surplus course(s) leaving the tank	7.3.1(d)
UPSTR_WB	Text	WB_ID(s)	Cascades	Upstream tank(s) in the cascade	7.3.1(e)
DNSTR_WB	Text	WB_ID	Cascades	Downstream tank, river, drain or sea outfall	7.3.1(e)
CATCH_AREA	Number	ha	Channels	Drainage area at the downstream end of the reach (for the 8 ha trigger of Clause 7.4.1(b) and Table 7.1)	7.4.1

Field	Type	Unit / domain	Required	Content	Clause
DATUM	Text	—	Yes	Datum of all levels; conversion from any older Minor Water Resources Department datum	7.3.5
LEVEL_DATE	Date	—	Tanks	Date of the level survey	7.7.1(a)
SSC_DATE	Date	—	Tanks	Date of the latest stage–storage survey	7.7.1(b)
FLOOD_SRC	Code	Adopted map / site study / none	Yes	Source of the 1% AEP extent	7.3.4
FLOODWAY	Code	Delineated / whole 1% extent / below MWL	Yes	Basis of the floodway	7.6.1
ENCR_KNOWN	Code	Yes / No	Yes	Known encroachment; details in WB_ENCR	7.3.1(g)
CREDITED	Code	Yes / No	Tanks	Storage counted under Clause 7.7, with the scheme reference	7.7.1
WETLAND	Code	Notified / listed / other	Wetlands	Status under Clause 7.12.1	7.12.1
SOURCES	Text	—	Yes	Sources used, from the list in Clause 7.3.3(a) to (e)	7.3.3
UPDATED	Date	—	Yes	Date of the last edit, and by whom	7.3.1

Table 7A.2 — Code lists

Code list	Values	Clause
WB_TYPE	River; natural drain or nala; canal; lake, tal or jheel; pokhar or pond (pokhar, talab); ahar; pyne; chaur or maun; marsh or low wet land; floodplain wetland or depression (diara); abandoned quarry or borrow pit; supply channel; surplus course	7.2
CUSTODIAN	Nagar Nigam; Nagar Parishad or Nagar Panchayat; BUIDCO; PMAA or other planning authority (2012 Act); WRD (division); Minor Water Resources Department; Gram Panchayat; Revenue and Land Reforms Department (Collector, Circle Officer); Bihar State Wetland Authority (notified wetland); BIADA; private owner; other (name)	7.3.1(b)
Structure (WB_STRUCT)	Surplus weir; sluice; regulator; inlet; drain outfall; gross pollutant trap; crossing	7.3.1(d), 7.10
Encroachment (WB_ENCR)	Building; fill; road; wall; dumping; cultivation; other — each with date recorded, area (m²) and source	7.3.1(g), 7.13

Table 7A.3 — Attribute fields of structures (WB_STRUCT)

Field	Type	Unit	Content	Clause
STR_ID	Text	—	Unique identifier	7.3.1(d)
WB_ID	Text	—	Waterbody served	7.3.1(d)
STR_TYPE	Code	Table 7A.2	Structure type	7.3.1(d)
CREST_SILL	Number	m (datum)	Weir crest or sluice sill level	7.7.1(a)
LENGTH_SIZE	Text	m	Weir crest length, or sluice opening size	7.7.1(a)
GATED	Code	Yes / No	Controllable outlet (needed for a flood cushion, Clause 7.8.2(a))	7.8.2
CONDITION	Code	Serviceable / defective	Result of the latest pre-monsoon inspection, with date	7.7.1(d), 7.14.4

Annex 7B — Fixed-width setback table (alternative S-3, with Annex 1C)

Supports Clauses 7.3.4, 7.4.3, 7.4.6 and 7.4.7 of Chapter 7, and alternative S-3 of the Policy Supplement (Annex 1C).

7B.1 When the table may be used

The fixed-width setback may be used only where all of the following apply:

- (a) the Authority has not adopted a 1% AEP flood extent map for the waterbody (Clause 7.3.4);
- (b) Clause 7.3.4 does not require the Applicant to determine the 1% AEP extent by a hydraulic study: the site is not in a flood-sensitive catchment, is not a site of 1 ha or more adjoining a waterbody, and the Authority has not asked for a study; and
- (c) the waterbody is one to which setbacks apply (Clause 7.4.1): any recorded or found waterbody, and any natural channel draining 8 ha or more at the site.

Where an Authority adopts alternative S-3 under Clause 1.7, the table below is the S-3 table. Clause 1.7.3(e) provides for the S-3 table to be issued by the State Stormwater Technical Committee. Until it is issued, the values are those of Clause 7.4.6, repeated here without change.

Table 7B.1 — Fixed-width setback by waterbody class (alternative S-3)

Waterbody class	Drainage area at the site	Total setback (Zone 1 + Zone 2)	Of which Zone 1	Measured from
Channel, small	8 ha to 65 ha	25 m	15 m	Top of bank (Clause 7.4.3)
Channel, medium	65 ha to 20 km²	40 m	15 m	Top of bank
Channel, large, and rivers	More than 20 km²	50 m	20 m	Top of bank
Tank, lake or pond	Any	MWL contour + 25 m	To the MWL contour, and not less than 15 m from FTL	FTL contour (Zone 1); MWL contour (total)
Marsh, estuary or backwater	Any	As notified by the Authority, and not less than 50 m	15 m	The waterbody boundary of Clause 7.13.1

Values from Clause 7.4.6 (Table 7.1). Zone 2 is the total setback less Zone 1.

7B.2 Rules of application

- (a) **Measurement.** Measure horizontally on plan, outward from the boundary of Clause 7.13.1: the larger of the Revenue record boundary and the surveyed FTL (or top of bank). Where FTL and top of bank both apply, use whichever gives the wider zone (Clause 7.4.3).
- (b) **Drainage area.** For a channel, use the drainage area at the downstream end of the reach that adjoins the site. Where a reach crosses a class limit within the site, apply the wider setback to the whole reach within the site.
- (c) **Both banks.** The setback applies on each bank of a channel and all round a tank, lake, pond or marsh.
- (d) **Minimum set by this Manual.** Zone 1 is never less than 15 m (Clause 7.4.7). A wider statutory or approval setback governs for the uses it restricts (Clause 7.4.5).
- (e) **Stricter of the two.** Where a hydraulic study is made voluntarily, the setback is the wider of Table 7B.1 and Clauses 7.4.3 and 7.4.4.
- (f) **Record.** The basis of the setback (fixed width) shall be stated on the Waterbody Sheet (Form 7-1) and in the approval (Clause 7.4, Disclosure).
- (g) **Review.** The table shall be reviewed within 2 years of the Authority adopting 1% AEP flood maps (Clause 7.16.1).

7B.3 Source of the channel widths

The channel widths were set by this Manual with reference to the 2006 Kansas City APWA default stream buffers, rounded up and floored at the 15 m minimum (Clause 7.4.6, commentary). The source values, as cited in the chapter, are:

Table 7B.2 — Source buffers cited in Clause 7.4.6 (KC APWA 5600, 2006, §5605.3)

Drainage area (source, acres)	Approximate SI equivalent	Source buffer
Less than 40 ac	Less than 16 ha	40 ft (12 m)
40–160 ac	16–65 ha	60 ft (18 m)
160–5,000 ac	65 ha – 20 km²	100 ft (30 m)
More than 5,000 ac	More than 20 km²	120 ft (37 m)

The 65 ha and 20 km² class limits in Table 7B.1 are the SI equivalents of 160 ac and 5,000 ac. The 8 ha lower limit is the 20-acre trigger of APWA 2025.01 (Clause 7.4.1(b)).

Annex 7C — Template tank operating rule, with flood cushion

Supports Clauses 7.7.1(c), 7.7.3, 7.8 and 7.14.4 of Chapter 7.

Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force. For tanks under Minor Water Resources Department control, the operating rule is Minor Water Resources Department's rule (Clause 7.8.4); this template sets out the content that Clause 7.8 asks for, so that the custodian's rule can be checked against it. Text in square brackets is to be completed for each tank.

7C.1 Identification

1. Tank: [name, WB_ID of Annex 7A, village, anchal (circle), district].
2. Custodian: [Minor Water Resources Department division / ULB / Gram Panchayat / other].
3. Cascade position: upstream tank(s) [ ]; downstream tank, river or drain [ ].
4. Datum: [ ]. Surveyed levels (Clause 7.7.1(a)), date of survey [ ]: FTL [ ] m; MWL [ ] m; TBL (lowest point) [ ] m; surplus weir crest [ ] m, length [ ] m; sluice sills [ ] m.
5. Stage–storage curve (Clause 7.7.1(b)): survey date [ ]; attached as Schedule 1.
6. Controllable outlets (Clause 7.8.2(a)): [gated sluice / regulator / none]; capacity at FTL [ ] m³/s.

7C.2 Purposes and priority

7. The tank serves [irrigation of a command area of [ ] ha / drinking water supply / recharge / flood storage]. Irrigation and water supply remain primary unless the custodian records otherwise (Clause 7.8.2(d)).

7C.3 Levels and dates through the year (Clause 7.8.1(a))

8. The tank shall be operated to the levels in Table 7C.1.

Table 7C.1 — Rule levels by period (to be completed for each tank)

Period	Target level (m)	Upper limit (m)	Lower limit (m)	Purpose
[1 Jan – date]	[ ]	FTL	[ ]	Holding for irrigation / supply
[date – start of cushion period]	[ ]	FTL	[ ]	Holding
[Flood-cushion period, if any]	Cushion level [ ]	Cushion level [ ]	[ ]	Flood cushion (Clause 7.8.2)
[End of cushion period – 31 Dec]	[ ]	FTL	[ ]	Refilling

9. Where no flood cushion is adopted, the starting level for design is FTL (Clause 7.7.3) and the row for the cushion period is deleted.

7C.4 Flood cushion (Clause 7.8.2)

10. Cushion level: [ ] m, which is [ ] m below FTL, giving a cushion volume of [ ] m³ from Schedule 1.
11. Dates: the cushion applies from [ ] to [ ].
12. Drawdown: the tank can be drawn down from FTL to the cushion level through [outlet] in [ ] hours, with a release not exceeding the maximum release rate of paragraph 18.
13. Reliability: continuous simulation (Clause 3.13) over the record [years] shows that the cushion is available at the start of a design storm in [ ]% of SW monsoon seasons, which shall be at least 90%. The simulation report is Schedule 2.
14. Yield: the custodian accepts the loss of irrigation or supply yield stated in Schedule 3 [and the compensation recorded there].
15. Where the tank has no controllable outlet, this section does not apply and no flood cushion is assumed (Clause 7.8.3).

7C.5 Releases (Clause 7.8.1(b) to (d))

16. Sluice and regulator settings at each level: Table 7C.2.
17. Operator: the sluices and regulators are operated by [post]. A release above [ ] m³/s may be ordered only by [post], or, in an emergency, by [post].
18. Maximum release rate: [ ] m³/s. This rate, added to the flow from the downstream catchment, does not flood buildings downstream (Schedule 4 gives the downstream check).
19. No person shall cut, lower or breach the bund or surplus weir except under the custodian's emergency procedure (Clause 7.14.5).

Table 7C.2 — Outlet settings by level (to be completed for each tank)

Tank level (m)	Sluice 1	Sluice 2	Regulator	Expected outflow (m³/s)	Notes
Below cushion level	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	
Cushion level to FTL	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	
FTL (weir begins to spill)	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	
Above FTL to MWL	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	Check freeboard to TBL (Clause 7.7.4(b))

7C.6 Forecasts, warnings and communication (Clause 7.8.1(e) and (f))

20. The triggers and actions are in Table 7C.3.
21. Before any release under this rule, the operator shall inform the ULBs and the district administration downstream, and residents by the means stated in Schedule 5, at least [ ] hours before the release where the forecast allows.

Table 7C.3 — Triggers and actions (to be completed for each tank)

Trigger	Source	Action	By whom
IMD district heavy-rainfall warning for the catchment	IMD	Read gauges [ ] hourly; check outlets are free; confirm the tank is at or below its rule level	[ ]
IMD or BSDMA red alert	IMD, BSDMA	Begin releases needed to reach the rule level, within the maximum release rate; notify downstream bodies (paragraph 21)	[ ]
City forecast system warning, where available	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
Tank level reaches FTL	Gauge	Record outflow hourly; inspect bund and weir	[ ]
Tank level reaches [MWL − [ ] m]	Gauge	Emergency procedure; warning to the breach area of any emergency action plan (Clause 7.14.3(c))	[ ]

7C.7 Records and review (Clause 7.8.1(g))

22. During the SW monsoon (15 June to 15 October) the operator shall record daily: the tank level, every release (time, rate and duration), and every gate setting. Outside the SW monsoon, records shall be kept [weekly].
23. Records shall be kept with the O&M plan (Chapter 10) and given to the Authority on request.
24. The tank shall be inspected before the SW monsoon (by 31 May) and after every heavy-rainfall event (Clause 7.14.4).
25. This rule shall be reviewed after any event in which the tank surplused at a level above [ ] m, after any change to the weir, sluices or bund (Clause 7.7.6), and in any case with the review of the Manual.

Schedules: 1 stage–storage curve; 2 continuous simulation report; 3 yield and compensation; 4 downstream check of the maximum release; 5 communication list.

Annex 7D — Desilting and restoration specification

Supports Clauses 7.7.1(b), 7.9 and 7.14.4 of Chapter 7.

This specification applies to every desilting, restoration or deepening of a tank, pond or other waterbody under Clause 7.9. Values are those of Chapter 7. Where the chapter does not set a value, it is marked "to be confirmed in design" and shall be stated in the works design.

7D.1 Pre-works survey (Clause 7.9.1)

- (a) **Topographic and bathymetric survey** of the waterspread, foreshore (to the MWL contour), bund, surplus weir and sluices, levelled to the datum of Clause 7.3.5. Survey grid and point density: to be confirmed in design.
- (b) **Original bed level** found by test pits or augering on a grid (grid spacing to be confirmed in design), and from historical records where available. Each pit log shall show the silt thickness, the level of the original bed, and any clay or silt layer below it.
- (c) **Silt testing** where the tank receives urban runoff or sewage: samples from the pits of (b), tested for heavy metals and other contaminants before disposal is planned. The parameters and limits shall be those the Bihar State Pollution Control Board (BSPCB) directs.
- (d) **Structures:** condition of the bund (seepage, slips, cracks, animal burrows, trees), surplus weir and sluices, as in Clause 7.14.4.
- (e) **Existing stage–storage curve** from the survey of (a).

7D.2 Limits of excavation (Clauses 7.9.2 and 7.9.3)

- (a) Desilting removes accumulated sediment down to the original bed level of 7D.1(b), and no deeper.
- (b) Deepening below the original bed only with a hydrogeological report showing each of Clause 7.9.3(a) to (c).
- (c) Storage created below the lowest sluice sill is not flood storage, and shall not be shown as such in the revised stage–storage curve.
- (d) Excavation shall stay clear of the bund toe by a distance to be confirmed in design, so that the bund's stability is not reduced.

7D.3 Edges and safety (Clause 7.9.4)

Where the public has access to the edge:

- (a) side slopes no steeper than **1V:4H** from **0.5 m above FTL** down to **1.2 m below FTL**; or
- (b) a level safety bench at least **3 m** wide, between **0.3 m and 0.5 m below FTL**; and
- (c) no isolated deep pit or vertical cut left in the bed. Borrow pits shall be regraded to the bed.

7D.4 Storage not reduced (Clause 7.9.5)

- (a) Islands, walkways, bund widening into the waterspread, ring roads, parking, buildings and lake-front platforms within the waterspread or foreshore are lost storage.
- (b) Lost storage shall be offset by compensatory storage at equivalent levels, band by band, using Form 7-3.

7D.5 Silt handling and disposal (Clause 7.9.6)

- (a) Desilted material shall not be placed within the setback, on the bund (except approved bund strengthening), or on any flood path.
- (b) Contaminated silt shall be disposed of as the Bihar State Pollution Control Board (BSPCB) directs.
- (c) Haul routes and temporary stockpiles shall meet the construction erosion and sediment control rules of Clause 8.12, including stockpiles outside Zone 1.

7D.6 Inlets (Clause 7.9.7)

Every inlet that brings urban runoff shall have a sediment forebay, a constructed wetland inlet zone or a gross pollutant trap, designed under Chapter 8 (Annex 8D).

7D.7 Timing (Clause 7.9.8)

Desilting shall be complete, and the waterbody made safe, by **31 May**. No excavation shall be left open, and no sluice or weir left dismantled, during the SW monsoon.

7D.8 Completion records

- (a) As-built survey and revised stage–storage curve. The curve is the one that Clause 7.7.1(b) requires "after the last desilting".
- (b) Volume removed, its disposal site, and the silt test results.
- (c) Photographs of the bund, weir, sluices and inlet works.
- (d) Update of the inventory record (Annex 7A: SSC_DATE, LEVEL_DATE, CONDITION).

Table 7D.1 — Hold points for desilting and restoration works

Hold point	Check	Clause
1. Before excavation	Pre-works survey, pit logs, silt tests, and hydrogeological report if deepening	7.9.1, 7.9.3
2. Original bed reached	Levels checked against pit logs; no excavation below the original bed unless approved	7.9.2
3. Edges formed	Side slopes or safety bench as 7D.3	7.9.4
4. Inlet works	Forebay, wetland inlet zone or GPT built	7.9.7
5. Completion (by 31 May)	As-built survey, stage–storage curve, silt disposal record	7.9.8, 7.7.1(b)

Annex 7E — Glossary of Hindi and Urdu waterbody terms and regional variants

Supports Clause 7.2 and Clause 7.3 of Chapter 7.

The terms below are Hindi and Urdu words for waterbodies, land and floods as used in Bihar, given in Devanagari and, where Platts gives it, Urdu script. Bihar's own languages (Maithili, Bhojpuri, Magahi and others) use many of the same words, with regional spellings (for example pokhar, pokhra and pokhari; pyne, pain and payeen; diara and diyara), and many of the words appear in place, chaur, tal and nala names. The name used in the Revenue, WRD, Minor Water Resources Department or municipal record for each waterbody should be recorded in the inventory (Annex 7A) alongside the Manual's term. Only terms whose meaning was confirmed in J. T. Platts, *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English* (1884), or in Syamasundara Dasa, *Hindi Shabdasagara* (1965–1975), both as served by the Digital South Asia Library, or in a statute, official document or Ramsar Information Sheet, are listed in Tables 7E.1 to 7E.3; the meanings are Platts's English glosses, or a translation of the Shabdasagara, with the page shown by the Digital South Asia Library, and modern usage may be narrower or wider. No Maithili, Bhojpuri or Magahi dictionary, and not G. A. Grierson's *Bihar Peasant Life* (1885), was consulted for this Manual. Terms whose meaning or regional use was not confirmed are listed in Table 7E.4 as not yet verified. The list is to be extended by the State Stormwater Technical Committee, with modern Revenue, WRD, Minor Water Resources Department and municipal usage and with a regional dictionary.

The Manual's term for a tank or pond in Bihar is **pokhar (पोखर)**, with talab as a synonym: it is the plain word for a pond in Bihar, glossed by Platts as "A pond, pool, tank, lake"; the State's own usage keeps the narrower words apart, as the Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali Abhiyan separates "Ponds" from "Aahars/Payeens"; and the Shabdasagara defines the ahar as a basin smaller than a pokhra, so ahar is too narrow a word for an urban detention pond. Ahar, pyne, chaur, maun, tal and diara keep their own meanings in this Manual.

Table 7E.1 — Waterbodies and land

Term	Meaning	Source of the term	Manual term (Clause 7.2)
पोखर, पोखरा / پوکھر (pokhar, pokhrā; pokhra)	"A pond, pool, tank, lake"	Platts, p. 280	Pokhar (tank or pond), see the definitions after Clause 7.2
तालाब / تالاب (tālāb; talab)	"Pond, pool, tank, reservoir of water"	Platts, p. 306	Pokhar (tank or pond)
ताल / تال (tāl; tal, taal)	"Pond, pool, tank, lake (= tālāb)"; in the Shabdasagara, low ground where rainwater collects	Platts, p. 306; Shabdasagara, p. 2069	Tal (lake or wetland), as Kabartal, Badka Tal and the Mokama group of tals; see the definitions after Clause 7.2
आहर / آهر (āhar, ahrā; ahar, aahar)	"Reservoir for collecting rain-water for irrigation, pond"; in the Shabdasagara (आहर ३), a basin smaller than a pokhra but larger than a talaiya or a maru	Platts, p. 110; Shabdasagara, p. 491	Ahar (tank), see the definitions after Clause 7.2

Term	Meaning	Source of the term	Manual term (Clause 7.2)
चौर (caur; chaur)	In the Shabdasagara (चौर ३), a tal in which rainwater stays for many days; khadar. Not found in Platts	Shabdasagara, p. 1602; draft wetland notifications (Haldia Chaur, Devkhal Chaur)	Chaur (wetland), see the definitions after Clause 7.2
दियारा / دیارا (diyārā, de'ārā; diara, diyara)	"An island formed in the middle of a river, a tract of alluvial land, alluvion"; in the Shabdasagara, riverside land exposed when the river moves away; kachhar; khadar	Platts, p. 555; Shabdasagara, p. 2279	Floodplain land, see the definitions after Clause 7.2

Table 7E.2 — Channels, embankments and parts of the system

Term	Meaning	Source of the term	Manual term (Clause 7.2)
पैन / پین (pain, pa'īn; pyne, payeen)	"Water-course, channel, drain; a rill; a reservoir of water"; in the Shabdasagara (पैन १), a drain or spout	Platts, p. 301; Shabdasagara, p. 3107	Pyne (supply channel or surplus course of an ahar), see the definitions after Clause 7.2
नाला / نالا (nālā; nala, nallah, nullah)	"A watercourse; channel (for water), a ravine; a rivulet, brook, canal; a drain, gutter"	Platts, p. 1117	Natural drain or nala, see the definitions after Clause 7.2. In Bihar the word covers both natural watercourses and large engineered drains (the Saidpur, Bakarganj, Kurji and Anandpuri nalas of Patna); the definition, not the word, decides which this chapter applies to
नाली / نالي (nālī; nali)	"… a drain; … a small watercourse, or channel"; *paṭī nālī*, "A covered drain, a sewer"; *saṛak-kī nālī*, "A drain, gutter"	Platts, p. 1117	Drain (minor system); where it carries sewage or sullage into a storm drain, a cross-connection (Clause 8.9)
बाँध / باندھ (bāṅdh; bandh, bund)	"… embankment; dam"	Platts, p. 127	Flood embankment (Clause 7.14.1); a pokhar's or ahar's bund is a tank bund (Clause 7.14.2)
धार / دھار (dhār); धर (dhar)	*dhār*, "flowing, flow, stream, current", and *dhār-kalān*, "Main-stream, principal channel"; *dhar*, "Stream, &c. (= dhār ; used in comp.)"	Platts, pp. 538 and 541	Channel or stream; a dhar that drains 8 ha or more is a natural channel under Clause 7.4.1(b)

Table 7E.3 — Floods and statutory terms

Term	Meaning
तटबंध (taṭbandh)	Embankment: the word used for river embankments in WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025. Its dictionary meaning was not looked up
Flood Plain Zone (Order 143)	For a river with embankments on both banks, "the area between the embankments built on both banks"; for a river with an embankment on one bank, "the area from the embankment across the river width up to 500 metres from the other bank" (WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025, para 6, as translated); see the definitions after Clause 7.2
public tank (Municipal Act)	"all public tanks, reservoirs, … and any adjacent land, not being private property, appertaining to any such water-source", which vest in the Municipality (Bihar Municipal Act, 2007, s. 177)
public land (1956 Act)	Includes "any land over which the public or the community has got a right of user, such as right of way, burials, cremation, pasturage or irrigation" (Bihar Public Land Encroachment Act, 1956)
watercourse (draft 2026)	"a natural channel or an artificial channel formed by draining or diversion of a natural channel meant for carrying storm and wastewater" (Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026, definition 151; a draft, not in force)

Term	Meaning
flood plain (Ganga Order)	"such area of River Ganga or its tributaries which comes under water on either side of it due to floods corresponding to its greatest flow or with a flood of frequency once in hundred years" (River Ganga (Rejuvenation, Protection and Management) Authorities Order, 2016, cl. 3(l), as quoted)

Table 7E.4 — Terms not yet verified

The following terms are in use for Bihar's waterbodies, but their meaning or regional use was not confirmed in Platts, the Shabdasagara or an official source during research for this Manual. They shall not be used in a record or a drawing as defined terms until verified.

Term	Reported meaning or use	Status
मौन (maun)	An oxbow lake or pond of the north Bihar floodplain, as the Bagras maun of Kabartal; the Ramsar Information Sheet says the Kabartal wetlands are "Locally known as maun, chaur, and taal"	Not found in Platts; the Shabdasagara's मौन means silence or a vessel (pp. 4043–4044), not a lake. A regional dictionary source is needed
ahar and pyne in Bihar usage	The ahar-pyne irrigation systems of south Bihar, especially around Gaya; the ahar's bund layout and depth	The dictionary meanings are in Tables 7E.1 and 7E.2; the Bihar sense and the engineering form were not confirmed in Grierson or an engineering source
pokhari (Maithili) and Magahi spellings of pokhar	Regional forms of pokhar	Not checked in a regional dictionary
जलाशय (jalāśay; jalashay)	A reservoir or lake, as in Gokul Jalashay	Not looked up
जलजमाव (jaljamāv)	Urban waterlogging, the Hindi press term	Not looked up
बाँध-related terms *bandhān*, *bandhwās*	Raised earth embankments for flooding lands; land embanked all round so as to retain water	Glossed in Platts, but the pages were not recorded

The Manual uses the terms in the last column of Tables 7E.1 and 7E.2, and the Bihar terms defined after Clause 7.2.

Form 7-1 — Waterbody Sheet

Supports Clauses 7.3.2, 7.4 and 7.15(1) of Chapter 7.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One sheet per waterbody. Attach the plan of Clause 7.3.2 at 1:1,000 or larger.

Table 7F.1 — Form 7-1, Section A: Project and waterbody

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Project name and Authority file number	_____	—
A2	Waterbody name (English and Hindi) and inventory ID (Annex 7A), if any	_____	7.3.1
A3	Waterbody type (Clause 7.2)	_____	7.2
A4	Position: within the site / within 100 m of the site boundary / downstream within the Chapter 5 extent	_____	7.3.2
A5	Survey numbers and village	_____	7.3.1(a)
A6	Custodian	_____	7.3.1(b)
A7	Sources checked (tick): Revenue records and village maps, Municipal tank records (s. 177), Development and drainage plans, the WRD Order 143 Flood Plain Zone, wetland notifications and Ramsar boundaries, Jal-Jeevan-Hariyali lists □; Minor Water Resources Department / Gram Panchayat registers □; Authority inventory or court list □; historical maps and imagery, including NWIA □; site survey □	_____	7.3.3
A8	Where sources conflict: which extent governs (the larger)	_____	7.3.3
A9	Datum of all levels, and conversion from any Minor Water Resources Department datum	_____	7.3.5

Table 7F.2 — Form 7-1, Section B: Levels and features

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
B1	FTL (tanks, lakes, ponds) or top of bank (channels), m	_____	7.2
B2	MWL (tanks), m, and basis (Minor Water Resources Department record or 1% AEP computed)	_____	7.2
B3	TBL, lowest point (tanks), m	_____	7.3.1(d)
B4	1% AEP flood level, m, and source (adopted map / hydraulic study / not available)	_____	7.3.4
B5	Drainage area at the site (channels), ha	_____	7.4.1(b)
B6	Supply channels, surplus courses, sluices and surplus weirs shown on plan (yes / no)	_____	7.3.2
B7	Known encroachments, with date recorded	_____	7.3.1(g)

Table 7F.3 — Form 7-1, Section C: Setback

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	Basis of setback: mapped extent / hydraulic study / fixed width (Annex 7B)	_____	7.15(1)
C2	Is a hydraulic study required under Clause 7.3.4 (a) / (b) / (c)?	_____	7.3.4
C3	Floodway outer edge, m from FTL or top of bank, and how delineated	_____	7.6.1
C4	Zone 1 width, m (greatest of 15 m, floodway edge, MWL contour)	_____	7.4.3

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C5	Zone 2 width, m (to 1% AEP extent + 10 m, or 10 m)	_____	7.4.4
C6	Wider statutory or approval setback, if any, and its source	_____	7.4.5
C7	Setback applied: Manual standard / a wider statutory or approval line: the Prohibited Zone of an embanked river under WRD Order No. 143 of 6 March 2025 (between the embankments, or from the embankment to 500 m beyond the far bank); the Ganga floodplain zones once delineated (NIH study, Chausa to Manihari); the 50 m from the mean high flood level of a notified wetland; a natural waterway or drain in a Development Plan or drainage plan (BBL 2014, bye-law 29(A)); a WRD embankment or canal line; a court or Tribunal line; or other (state which)	_____	7.4, Disclosure
C8	Uses proposed in Zone 1 and Zone 2, and the custodian's NOC for any work in Zone 1	_____	7.5, 7.15(5)
C9	Fill proposed in the flood fringe (yes / no); if yes, Form 7-3 attached	_____	7.6.3
C10	Zone 1 marker positions shown (not more than 30 m apart)	_____	7.13.4

Table 7F.4 — Form 7-1, Section D: Prepared by

Field	Entry
Name, registration and empanelment number (Clause 10.6)	_____
Signature and date	_____
Licensed surveyor for the levels (name, licence number)	_____

Form 7-2 — Tank Storage Credit Sheet

Supports Clauses 7.7, 7.8, 7.11, 7.14 and 7.15(4) of Chapter 7.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One sheet per tank whose storage is counted. Storage that fails any item in Section B shall not be counted (Clause 7.7.1).

Table 7F.5 — Form 7-2, Section A: Tank and scheme

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Tank name and inventory ID (Annex 7A); custodian	_____	7.3.1
A2	Scheme in which storage is counted: basin plan / regional facility / fee-in-lieu (S-5)	_____	7.7.1, 7.11
A3	Cascade modelled: uppermost tank _____ to outfall _____	_____	7.7.2
A4	Datum	_____	7.3.5

Table 7F.6 — Form 7-2, Section B: Conditions for counting storage

No.	Condition	Date / reference	Met (yes / no)	Clause
B1	FTL, MWL, TBL, weir crest and length, sluice sills surveyed within the previous 5 years	_____	_____	7.7.1(a)
B2	Stage–storage curve from a bathymetric and topographic survey within 5 years or after the last desilting, whichever is later	_____	_____	7.7.1(b)
B3	Documented operating rule agreed with the custodian (Annex 7C)	_____	_____	7.7.1(c), 7.8
B4	Weir, sluices and bund under an O&M plan; latest pre-monsoon inspection found them serviceable	_____	_____	7.7.1(d), 7.14.4
B5	Custodian's written concurrence	_____	_____	7.7.1(e)

Table 7F.7 — Form 7-2, Section C: Levels and creditable volume

No.	Item	Value	Clause
C1	Starting level: FTL, or cushion level under a rule meeting Clause 7.8.2, m	_____	7.7.3
C2	If a cushion is used: controllable outlet (type) and drawdown time, h	_____	7.8.2(a)
C3	If a cushion is used: reliability from continuous simulation, % of SW monsoon seasons (≥ 90%)	_____	7.8.2(c)
C4	Computed maximum level, 1% AEP inflow with climate factor routed through the cascade, m	_____	7.7.4
C5	MWL, m; is C4 ≤ MWL?	_____	7.7.4(a)
C6	Freeboard C4 to TBL, m; Minor Water Resources Department freeboard standard, m; met?	_____	7.7.4(b)
C7	Storage between C1 and C4, from the stage–storage curve, m^3	_____	7.7.5
C8	Volume already committed to another facility or scheme, m^3	_____	7.7.5
C9	Creditable volume = C7 − C8, m^3	_____	7.7.5
C10	Register entry under Clause 10.17 (fee-in-lieu storage)	_____	7.11.2(d)

Table 7F.8 — Form 7-2, Section D: Bund safety

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
D1	Specified dam under the Dam Safety Act, 2021? Height, crest length, capacity, maximum flood discharge	_____	7.14.1
D2	Hazard class: high / low	_____	7.14.2
D3	High hazard: weir passes 1% AEP at MWL with freeboard; 0.2% AEP check without overtopping	_____	7.14.3(a)
D4	High hazard: breach analysis and emergency action plan (references)	_____	7.14.3(b), (c)
D5	High hazard: independent check under Clause 10.6 (name)	_____	7.14.3(d)

Table 7F.9 — Form 7-2, Section E: Signatures

Role	Name and designation	Signature and date
Designer (Clause 10.6)	_____	_____
Independent checker, where Clause 7.14.3(d) applies	_____	_____
Custodian's concurrence (Clause 7.7.1(e))	_____	_____

Form 7-3 — Compensatory Storage Calculation (by elevation band)

Supports Clauses 7.6.3 to 7.6.5, 7.9.5 and 7.15(3) of Chapter 7.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Method

1. Fix the **lower limit**: the normal water level of the waterbody, or the 50% AEP (2-yr) level where higher (Clause 7.6.4(b)).
2. Fix the **upper limit**: the 1% AEP flood level (with the climate factor).
3. Divide the range into **bands of not more than 0.3 m**. The top band may be thinner.
4. For each level z at a band boundary, measure on plan:
    - A_fill(z): the area of the fill footprint where existing ground is below z; and
    - A_cut(z): the area of the excavation where finished ground is below z and existing ground was above z (new flooded area).
5. For each band, by the average end-area method: V = (A(z_bottom) + A(z_top)) / 2 × band thickness. Do this for fill (volume lost) and for excavation (volume gained).
6. **Check each band:** volume gained ≥ volume lost. A surplus in one band does not make up a shortfall in another (Clause 7.6.4(b)).
7. Check the other conditions of Clause 7.6.4(c) to (f) in Section C.

Figure 7.2 in Chapter 7 shows the method.

Table 7F.10 — Form 7-3, Section A: Levels

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Waterbody, reach, and inventory ID	_____	7.6.4(c)
A2	Normal water level, m; 50% AEP level, m; lower limit (the higher), m	_____	7.6.4(b)
A3	1% AEP flood level with climate factor, m (upper limit)	_____	7.6.4(b)
A4	Band thickness, m (≤ 0.3) and number of bands	_____	7.6.4(b)
A5	Datum	_____	7.3.5

Table 7F.11 — Form 7-3, Section B: Band-by-band balance

Band	From (m)	To (m)	A_fill bottom (m²)	A_fill top (m²)	Volume lost (m³)	A_cut bottom (m²)	A_cut top (m²)	Volume gained (m³)	Gained ≥ lost?
1	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
4	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Total					_____			_____	

Add rows as needed.

Table 7F.12 — Form 7-3, Section C: Other conditions

No.	Condition	Met (yes / no) and evidence	Clause
C1	Fill is in the flood fringe, not the floodway, and for a permitted use	_____	7.6.2, 7.6.3
C2	Excavation is in the same reach of the same waterbody, hydraulically connected, and not further downstream than the fill	_____	7.6.4(c)
C3	Excavation drains by gravity as the flood recedes; no pumping; no permanent pool below normal water level	_____	7.6.4(d)
C4	Excavation built before, or at the same time as, the fill	_____	7.6.4(e)
C5	Covenant or handover so that it is never filled (reference)	_____	7.6.4(f)
C6	Not counted as detention or retention under Chapter 4	_____	7.6.5
C7	Signature of designer (Clause 10.6) and date	_____	10.6

Worked example

Illustrative — not design values. A site in the flood fringe of a channel needs a fill pad for a permitted Zone 2 use (Clause 7.5.2). The inputs are assumed.

- Normal water level 10.00 m; 50% AEP level 9.80 m. Lower limit = 10.00 m (the higher).
- 1% AEP flood level 11.20 m. Range 1.20 m, so four bands of 0.30 m.
- The fill footprint is 1,600 m². Existing ground across the footprint rises evenly from 10.00 m to 11.20 m, so the area of footprint below each level is: 0 m² at 10.00 m; 400 m² at 10.30 m; 800 m² at 10.60 m; 1,200 m² at 10.90 m; 1,600 m² at 11.20 m.
- The excavation is a graded cut beside the channel, with its floor at 10.00 m. The new flooded area below each level (first trial) is: 300 m² at 10.00 m; 900 m² at 10.30 m; 1,100 m² at 10.60 m; 1,500 m² at 10.90 m; 1,500 m² at 11.20 m.

Step 1 — volume lost, band by band (V = average area × 0.3 m):

- Band 1: (0 + 400) / 2 × 0.3 = 60 m³
- Band 2: (400 + 800) / 2 × 0.3 = 180 m³
- Band 3: (800 + 1,200) / 2 × 0.3 = 300 m³
- Band 4: (1,200 + 1,600) / 2 × 0.3 = 420 m³
- Total: 960 m³

Step 2 — volume gained, first trial:

Table 7F.13 — Worked example: first trial (illustrative)

Band	From (m)	To (m)	Volume lost (m³)	A_cut bottom (m²)	A_cut top (m²)	Volume gained (m³)	Gained ≥ lost?
1	10.00	10.30	60	300	900	180	Yes
2	10.30	10.60	180	900	1,100	300	Yes
3	10.60	10.90	300	1,100	1,500	390	Yes
4	10.90	11.20	420	1,500	1,500	450	Yes
Total			960			1,320	

Every band passes. Note that a simple total balance would hide a failure if, for example, the cut were made deeper and narrower: suppose the designer instead offers a cut with new flooded areas of 1,400 m² at 10.00 m, 1,400 m² at 10.30 m, 1,000 m² at 10.60 m, 600 m² at 10.90 m and 200 m² at 11.20 m.

Table 7F.14 — Worked example: deeper, narrower cut (illustrative)

Band	From (m)	To (m)	Volume lost (m³)	A_cut bottom (m²)	A_cut top (m²)	Volume gained (m³)	Gained ≥ lost?
1	10.00	10.30	60	1,400	1,400	420	Yes
2	10.30	10.60	180	1,400	1,000	360	Yes
3	10.60	10.90	300	1,000	600	240	**No**
4	10.90	11.20	420	600	200	120	**No**
Total			960			1,140	

The total gained (1,140 m³) exceeds the total lost (960 m³), but bands 3 and 4 are short by 60 m³ and 300 m³. The surplus low down cannot be counted against them: the low storage fills early in every flood and is not available when the fill takes away storage near the peak. This design fails Clause 7.6.4(b) and must be regraded so that the upper bands gain at least as much as they lose, as in the first trial.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 8

Water Quality and Recharge

These annexes support Chapter 8. They give the layout of the water quality rainfall tables, the Level of Service and Value Rating method in detail, the layout of the BMP calibration programme, design sheets for each BMP, standard details for construction erosion and sediment control, and the two forms that Clause 8.14 requires. Annexes 8A and 8C need data that are not yet available; they say so and give the rule to use in the meantime. The forms are draft forms.

Annex 8A — 3-month ARI 24-hour depth and IDF by zone

Supports Clauses 8.2, 8.4.1 and 8.4.5 of Chapter 8.

To be prepared. This annex will contain, for each rainfall zone of Chapter 2, the 24-hour 3-month ARI depth P_3m and the 3-month ARI intensity–duration relationship used for Q_wq. It needs long-term daily and sub-daily rainfall records (IMD station and gridded data, with NIH as the Chapter 2 primary source), analysed as a partial-duration series. Until it is published, the designer shall compute P_3m from the longest available daily record for the site's zone, as the 24-hour depth equalled or exceeded on average four times a year (Clause 8.2), state the record, its length and the method on the Water Quality Sheet (Form 8-1), and use P_wq = max (P_ret, P_3m) (Clause 8.4.1). The climate factor is not applied (Clause 8.4.3).

8A.1 Method to be used in preparing the annex

- (a) Use daily records of at least 30 years where available (as for station IDF in Chapter 2).
- (b) Form the partial-duration series of 24-hour depths, with independent events separated by at least one dry day.
- (c) Choose the threshold so that the number of events above it averages four per year; P_3m is that threshold.
- (d) Derive the 3-month ARI intensities for durations from 10 minutes to 24 hours from sub-daily records, or by the Chapter 2 method of scaling from the daily value, stating which.
- (e) Do not apply the climate factor (Clause 8.4.3).

Table 8A.1 — Water quality rainfall depths by zone (layout)

Zone (Chapter 2)	Representative stations or grid	Record (years)	P_ret, Annex 2E (mm)	P_3m (mm)	P_wq = max (mm)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 8A.2 — 3-month ARI intensity by duration (layout)

Zone	10 min (mm/h)	15 min (mm/h)	30 min (mm/h)	1 h (mm/h)	2 h (mm/h)	6 h (mm/h)	24 h (mm/h)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Zone	10 min (mm/h)	15 min (mm/h)	30 min (mm/h)	1 h (mm/h)	2 h (mm/h)	6 h (mm/h)	24 h (mm/h)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 8B — Redevelopment LoS table and treatment-train composite VR

Supports Clauses 8.6.2 to 8.6.5 of Chapter 8.

8B.1 Required Level of Service for redevelopment

To be prepared. This part will give the required Level of Service for redevelopment sites (existing impervious cover of 20% or more of the site, Clause 8.6.2). The MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012, Table 4.3) sets the redevelopment LoS from the percentage of impervious cover within the disturbed area; the Bihar values need to be set by the State Stormwater Technical Committee and checked against local redevelopment cases. Until it is published, the required LoS for a redevelopment site is **6** for the disturbed area. Where Table 8.2, applied to the change in CN from the existing condition to post-development, gives a higher LoS, that higher LoS applies. This interim value is set by this Manual. A redevelopment site that retains its whole WQv on site under Chapter 4 needs no further treatment for that area, apart from pretreatment, hotspot controls and the outfall requirements (Clause 8.4.4).

Table 8B.1 — Required LoS for redevelopment (layout)

Existing impervious cover within the disturbed area (%)	Change in impervious cover	Required LoS
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

8B.2 Composite Value Rating: area-weighted method

The composite VR of a site is the area-weighted average of the VRs of the BMPs serving each part of the site (Clause 8.6.3):

$$VR_{site} = \Sigma (A_i \times VR_i) / \Sigma A_i + VR_{signage}$$

where:

- A_i = the area of part i of the site, ha;
- VR_i = the Value Rating (Table 8.3) of the BMP serving part i, which counts only if the BMP meets Clause 8.6.4 for the whole of A_i;
- ΣA_i = the whole site area: every part of the site is assigned to one BMP, or to preserved native vegetation; a part served by no BMP is entered with $VR_i = 0$; and
- $VR_{signage} = 0.25$ where public education signage is provided (Table 8.3), otherwise 0.

The site complies where $VR_{site} \geq$ required LoS (Clause 8.6.3).

Illustrative — not design values. A 1.0 ha site that is not redevelopment, with ΔCN = 18. Required LoS = 8 (Table 8.2).

Table 8B.2 — Worked example: composite VR (illustrative)

Part	Area A_i (ha)	BMP	VR_i (Table 8.3)	A_i × VR_i
Roofs and paving draining to bioretention	0.60	Bioretention	8.5	5.100
Car park	0.25	Permeable pavement	7.5	1.875
Preserved strip along boundary	0.15	Native vegetation (preserved)	9.25	1.388
Total	1.00			8.363

- Area-weighted VR = 8.363 / 1.00 = 8.36
- Signage provided: + 0.25
- VR_site = 8.61 ≥ 8. The site complies.

Without the permeable pavement (car park draining untreated, VR = 0): (5.100 + 0 + 1.388) / 1.00 + 0.25 = 6.74 < 8. The site would not comply.

8B.3 Treatment trains

To be prepared. This part will give the composite VR of BMPs in series (a treatment train), following the approach of the MARC/APWA BMP Manual (2012, Table 4.6), with values to be confirmed for Bihar by the calibration programme of Clause 8.13.4 (Annex 8C). Until it is published, each part of the site is credited with the VR of one BMP in the train that meets Clause 8.6.4 for that part, normally the last BMP before discharge, and no extra credit is given for BMPs in series. Pretreatment devices, silt traps and oil-grit separators upstream of the credited BMP earn no VR of their own (Clauses 8.6.4(c), 8.7.11(c) and 8.7.12(c)).

Table 8B.3 — Composite VR of treatment trains (layout)

First BMP	Second BMP	Composite VR	Conditions
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 8C — Bihar BMP performance calibration

Supports Clauses 8.6.3, 8.13 and 8.15.1 of Chapter 8.

To be prepared. This annex will report the BMP performance calibration programme of the State Stormwater Technical Committee (Clause 8.13.4): measured inflow and outflow concentrations and volumes for BMPs built in Bihar, and the revised Value Ratings that follow from them. It needs wet-weather monitoring of BMPs over several SW monsoon seasons, with laboratory analysis to the CPCB methods, and the outfall monitoring of Clause 8.13.1 published under Clause 10.17. Until it is published, the Value Ratings of Table 8.3 (MARC/APWA 2012) apply, and a proprietary device earns a VR only from verified test data (Table 8.3).

The layouts below set the minimum records the programme shall keep, so that results from different authorities can be pooled.

Table 8C.1 — Monitoring site register (layout)

Site ID	BMP type (Table 8.3)	Location and authority	Catchment area (ha)	Impervious (%)	Soil and groundwater setting	Date commissioned	Pretreatment
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 8C.2 — Event record (layout; parameters of Clause 8.13.2)

Site ID	Event date	Rainfall (mm)	Inflow volume (m^3)	Outflow volume (m^3)	TSS in / out (mg/L)	BOD in / out (mg/L)	COD in / out (mg/L)	Faecal coliform in / out (MPN/100 mL)	TN in / out (mg/L)	TP in / out (mg/L)	Oil and grease in / out (mg/L)	Heavy metals (industrial catchments)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 8C.3 — Performance summary and proposed VR (layout)

BMP type	Sites	Events	Volume reduction (%)	Median effluent TSS (mg/L)	Other findings	VR in Table 8.3	Proposed VR
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Annex 8D — BMP design sheets, media specification, plant lists

Supports Clauses 8.5, 8.7, 8.8 and 8.11 of Chapter 8.

Each design sheet collects the requirements of Chapter 8 for one BMP. Values marked "recommended starting value" in Clause 8.7.1 may be departed from with justification. Values that the Manual does not set are marked "to be confirmed in design"; the designer shall state and justify them. Every BMP also needs: sizing for the WQv or Q_wq (Clause 8.6.4(a)), pretreatment (Clause 8.5.3), a safe bypass for flows above Q_wq (Clause 8.4.6) and maintenance access (Chapter 10).

8D.1 Design sheets

Table 8D.1 — Pretreatment (all BMPs)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Where needed	Every bioretention cell, infiltration facility, permeable pavement receiving run-on, wet pond and constructed wetland, at each concentrated inflow	8.5.3
Types	Sediment forebay, grass filter strip, silt trap or proprietary device	8.5.3
Size	Holds at least 10% of the WQv of its contributing area; or sized for Q_wq (flow-through devices)	8.5.3
Access	Cleanable without entering or disturbing the main BMP	8.5.4
Silt traps and catch pits	At every inlet receiving runoff from unpaved ground, and at the inlet of every drain discharging to a BMP or waterbody; sump at least 300 mm below the outlet invert; earn no VR	8.7.12

Table 8D.2 — Bioretention and rain gardens (Figure 8.2)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Ponding depth	≤ 300 mm above the mulch, with an overflow at maximum ponding level	8.7.2(a)
Ponding drawdown	Within 48 h	8.7.2(b)
Filter media	600–900 mm engineered sandy loam, low fines, low phosphorus (Table 8D.12)	8.7.2(c)
Mulch	50–75 mm	8.7.2(c)
Transition (choker) and gravel drainage layers	Required; thickness and grading to be confirmed in design	8.7.2(d)
Underdrain	Perforated; required where the design infiltration rate cannot meet the 48 h drawdown, or where lined; diameter to be confirmed in design	8.7.2(e)
Lining	Required where Clause 8.8 cannot be met, and at hotspots	8.7.2(f)
Plants	Native or naturalised, tolerant of waterlogging and long dry spells (Tables 8D.13 and 8D.14)	8.7.2(g)
VR	8.5 (rain garden / infiltration 9.0)	Table 8.3

Table 8D.3 — Vegetated swales

Item	Requirement	Clause
Section	Trapezoidal or parabolic; side slopes no steeper than 1V:3H	8.7.3(a)
Longitudinal slope	0.5% to 4%; check dams where steeper	8.7.3(b)
Flow at Q_wq	Depth not more than grass height; velocity ≤ 0.3 m/s	8.7.3(c)
1% AEP or bypass flow	No erosion (Chapter 9 permissible velocities)	8.7.3(d)
Underdrained ("dry") swale	Where slope < 1% or subsoil is poorly drained; filter media as Table 8D.12	8.7.3(e)
VR	4.0 (native vegetation swale)	Table 8.3

Table 8D.4 — Vegetated filter strips

Item	Requirement	Clause
Inflow	Sheet flow only; level spreader where flow arrives concentrated	8.7.4(a)
Length in flow direction	≥ 5 m	8.7.4(b)
Slope	1% to 8%	8.7.4(b)
Use	Mainly pretreatment for bioretention, infiltration and swales	8.7.4(c)
VR	5.0	Table 8.3

Table 8D.5 — Permeable pavement

Item	Requirement	Clause
Run-on	Impervious run-on area ≤ 2 × permeable area; none from unpaved or eroding areas	8.7.5(a)
Base reservoir	Clean open-graded aggregate holding its share of the WQv in its voids; void ratio confirmed by test	8.7.5(b)
Open (infiltrating) base	Only where Clause 8.8 is met; otherwise lined with underdrain and counted as filtration only	8.7.5(c)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Structure	Designed for traffic loading to the road authority's standards	8.7.5(d)
Exclusions	Not at hotspots; not where it will be resurfaced with impermeable material	8.7.5(e)
VR	7.5	Table 8.3

Table 8D.6 — Infiltration trenches and basins (Figure 8.3)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Pretreatment	Always (Table 8D.1)	8.7.6(a)
Fill	Clean washed aggregate, void ratio confirmed by test; geotextile on sides and top; sand base	8.7.6(b)
Observation well	To the base of each trench	8.7.6(c)
Storage	WQv (or Chapter 4 retention volume, if greater) held in the voids	8.7.6(d)
Drawdown	Empty within 72 h at the design infiltration rate	8.7.6(d), 8.8.7
Overflow	At grade, to the minor or major system	8.7.6(e)
Commissioning	Not in service until the contributing area is stabilised	8.7.6(f)
Criteria	All of Clause 8.8 (Table 8D.11)	8.8

Table 8D.7 — Wet ponds (extended wet detention)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Permanent pool	≥ WQv	8.7.7(a)
Extended detention	WQv above the pool, released over 24–48 h	8.7.7(a), 8.4.7
Forebay	At each inlet	8.7.7(b)
Flow path	Length-to-width ≥ 3:1; no short-circuiting	8.7.7(c)
Pool depth	1.0–2.5 m, with safety bench (Clause 7.9.4)	8.7.7(d)
Water balance	Monthly balance with IMD rainfall and pan evaporation: ≥ 50% of pool volume kept through the driest year in 10; no top-up with groundwater, potable water or sewage	8.7.8
Flood detention	Chapter 4 detention may sit above the extended detention level	8.7.7(f)
VR	5.0	Table 8.3

Table 8D.8 — Constructed wetlands

Item	Requirement	Clause
Layout	Inlet sedimentation pond (forebay), then shallow macrophyte zone	8.7.9(a)
Extended detention	WQv above normal water level, released over 24–48 h; depth ≤ 0.5 m	8.7.9(b)
Flow path	Length-to-width ≥ 3:1; deep zones across the flow path	8.7.9(c)
Bypass	High-flow bypass so that floods do not scour the macrophyte zone	8.7.9(d)
At a tank inlet	Within the tank's setback, outside its waterspread; not counted as tank storage	8.7.9(e)
Water balance	As wet ponds (minimum wetland depth kept)	8.7.8

Item	Requirement	Clause
VR	7.0 (extended detention wetland)	Table 8.3

Table 8D.9 — Gross pollutant traps and outfall screens

Item	Requirement	Clause
Treatment flow	Q_wq; all flows up to 1% AEP pass without washing out captured material	8.7.10(a)
Capture size	Down to about 5 mm	8.7.10(b)
Head loss	In the drain HGL (Chapter 9), screen 50% blocked	8.7.10(c), 8.10.3(a)
Storage	For the O&M cleaning interval; not less than 3-monthly cleaning	8.7.10(d)
Access	Vehicle access for suction or grab cleaning; safe cleaning platform	8.7.10(e), 8.10.3(d)
Blocked screen	Overflow or bypass path so that a fully blocked screen does not flood property	8.10.3(b)
Bar spacing	Chosen for the hazard: closer for litter capture, wider where blockage would cause flooding; to be confirmed in design	8.10.3(c)

Table 8D.10 — Oil-grit separators

Item	Requirement	Clause
Where	Fuel stations; vehicle workshops and washing bays; bus and truck depots; parking areas of more than 50 spaces	8.7.11(a)
Sizing	Q_wq, with high-flow bypass	8.7.11(b)
Not alone	Followed by a filtering BMP where the site needs a VR above 5; lined filtering BMP before any infiltration at hotspots	8.7.11(c), 8.8.8

Table 8D.11 — Infiltration and recharge criteria (all infiltrating BMPs)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Groundwater separation	Seasonal high groundwater ≥ 1.0 m below base (roof-only runoff in notified coastal sand: ≥ 0.5 m with mounding check, mound ≥ 0.3 m below base)	8.8.1, 8.8.9(d)
Bedrock or impermeable layer	Base ≥ 1.0 m above, unless designed for rock-aquifer recharge under Clause 8.8.10	8.8.2
Tests	Double-ring (ASTM D3385) for basins, bioretention, permeable pavement; falling-head borehole or trial-pit soakage (e.g. BRE Digest 365) for trenches, soakaways, pits, wells; ≥ 2 per facility and ≥ 1 per 100 m² of base or per 50 m of trench; Form 8-2	8.8.3
Design rate	Measured rate ÷ 2.0 (tests meet 8.8.3(c) and vary by no more than a factor of 2), otherwise ÷ 3.0	8.8.4
Minimum rates	≥ 13 mm/h full infiltration; 3–13 mm/h partial, with underdrain, credit only for volume infiltrated within 72 h; < 3 mm/h no credit	8.8.5
Setbacks (runoff from paved surfaces)	Foundations 3 m, basements 5 m; property boundary 1.5 m; drinking-water well or borewell 30 m; septic tank or soak pit 15 m; crest of slope steeper than 1V:3H 6 m	8.8.6
Expansive soils	Foundation setback doubled	8.8.11(b)

Item	Requirement	Clause
Drawdown	Empty within 72 h at design rate; tested after construction	8.8.7
Hotspots	No infiltration without treatment; none at all for waste sites and contaminated land	8.8.8
Road runoff	Never led directly into a well, borewell or recharge shaft	8.11.3(b)

8D.2 Bioretention drawdown check

The 48-hour ponding drawdown (Clause 8.7.2(b)) and the minimum rates of Clause 8.8.5 together decide whether a cell needs an underdrain.

- Rate needed to drain the maximum ponding depth in 48 h = 300 mm / 48 h = 6.25 mm/h.
- Design rate ≥ 13 mm/h: full infiltration, no underdrain, provided Clause 8.8 is met.
- Design rate from 6.25 mm/h to 13 mm/h: the ponding drains in time, but Clause 8.8.5(b) applies, so an underdrain is required.
- Design rate below 6.25 mm/h: the ponding cannot drain in 48 h by infiltration; an underdrain is required (Clause 8.7.2(e)), and below 3 mm/h no infiltration credit is given.

Illustrative — not design values. Two tests at the base of a proposed cell give 30 mm/h and 22 mm/h. The two results differ by a factor of 30 / 22 = 1.36, which is not more than 2, and the number of tests meets Clause 8.8.3(c), so the safety factor is 2.0. Taking the lower result, the design rate = 22 / 2.0 = 11 mm/h. This is above 6.25 mm/h, so the ponding drains in 300 / 11 = 27 h, within 48 h. It is below 13 mm/h, so the cell is a partial-infiltration design with an underdrain (Clause 8.8.5(b)).

8D.3 Filter media specification

Table 8D.12 — Bioretention filter media and layers

Layer	Requirement from Chapter 8	Values to be confirmed in design
Mulch	50–75 mm (Clause 8.7.2(c)); shredded hardwood or similar organic mulch that does not float away at the ponding depth	Material and source
Filter media	600–900 mm engineered sandy loam with low fines and low phosphorus content (Clause 8.7.2(c))	Particle size grading; fines (silt + clay) limit; organic matter content; phosphorus limit; saturated hydraulic conductivity of the compacted media; source and test certificate for each batch
Transition (choker) layer	Between media and gravel, to stop media washing into the gravel (Clause 8.7.2(d))	Thickness and grading, matched to the media and gravel
Gravel drainage layer	Below the transition layer, surrounding the underdrain (Clause 8.7.2(d))	Thickness, grading, washed
Underdrain	Perforated pipe where Clause 8.7.2(e) applies, with cleanouts	Diameter, slope, perforation, outlet level
Liner	Where Clause 8.7.2(f) applies (cannot meet Clause 8.8; hotspots)	Liner type and protection

Media shall be tested before placing, and placed in lifts without heavy compaction. The State Stormwater Technical Committee should set numeric limits for grading, fines, organic matter and phosphorus, with local sources of sand and compost, when it reviews this annex.

8D.4 Plant lists

The lists below are **indicative**. They name species that are native or long naturalised in the Ganga plain and known to tolerate both wet and dry periods; no Bihar source on planting for stormwater was researched for this Manual. Hindi or Urdu names are given only where J. T. Platts, *A Dictionary of Urdu, Classical Hindi, and English* (1884, as served by the Digital South Asia Library), gives the name for the species or plant named, with its page; a dash means none was confirmed. Platts often uses older botanical names, which are given in the notes. Final selection shall be confirmed with a horticulturist or the State Forest Department for the site's soil and water table. Diara and Kosi-plain sites need species tolerant of long waterlogging in sand and silt; sites on the plateau fringe of the south species tolerant of dry, thin soils over rock; chaur, tal and clay sites species tolerant of standing water.

Table 8D.13 — Indicative plants for bioretention, swales and filter strips

Use	Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Notes
Swales, filter strips, bioretention edges	*Chrysopogon zizanioides* (vetiver)	ख़स / خس (khas)	Deep-rooted clump grass; tolerates flooding and drought; binds soil on side slopes and pokhar banks. Platts: "A fragrant grass, *Andropogon muricatum* (from the roots of which *taṭṭīs* are made)" (p. 489), an older name of this species
Swales and filter strips (turf)	*Cynodon dactylon* (Bermuda grass)	दूब / دوب (dūb)	Low turf; tolerates drought, traffic and short flooding. Platts: "Bent grass, panic grass, *Panicum dactylon*, or *Cynodon dactylon*" (p. 531)
Swales and banks on floodplain sites	*Saccharum spontaneum*	कास / کاس (kās)	Native tall grass of river sands; binds banks; cut back where it would obstruct a channel. Platts: "A species of grass, of which ropes, &c. are made, *Saccharum spontaneum*" (p. 801)
Trees beside bioretention and swales	*Syzygium cumini*	जामुन, जामन / جامن (jāmun, jāman)	Native; tolerates wet ground. Platts: "The tree *Eugenia jambelana*, or *Syzygium jambolanum*, and its fruit" (p. 372)
Trees beside bioretention and swales	*Millettia pinnata* (syn. *Pongamia pinnata*)	करंज / کرنج (karanj)	Native; tolerates waterlogging and drought. Platts names *Galedupa arborea*, an older name of this species, but also the fever-nut *Caesalpinia bonducella* under the same word (p. 828); confirm the species with the supplier. Keep roots clear of underdrains
Trees beside bioretention, swales and channels	*Terminalia arjuna*	अर्जुन / ارجن (arjun)	Native riverbank tree; tolerates seasonal flooding. Platts: "a certain tree, *Terminalia alata glabra*" (p. 39); that the name refers to this species was not confirmed in Platts
Trees beside channels and on floodplain sites	*Dalbergia sissoo*	शीशम / شیشم (śīśam)	Native riverine tree. Platts: "The tree *Dalbergia sisu*, and its wood" (p. 740)
Trees beside wet ponds and channels	*Ficus racemosa* (syn. *F. glomerata*)	गूलर / گولر (gūlar)	Native fig of stream banks. Platts: "The wild fig, *Ficus glomerata*" (p. 926). Keep roots clear of underdrains, pipes and walls
Bioretention (flowering, wet zones)	*Canna indica*	—	Naturalised; tolerates waterlogging; widely used in constructed wetlands in India

Table 8D.14 — Indicative plants for constructed wetlands and wet ponds

Zone	Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Notes
Shallow macrophyte zone	*Typha* spp. (e.g. *T. domingensis*, syn. *T. angustata*)	—	Native; spreads quickly and needs periodic harvesting. No Hindi name was confirmed in Platts: पटेर (paṭer), sometimes used for it, is glossed by Platts as *Cyperus* (p. 229)

Zone	Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Notes
Shallow macrophyte zone	*Phragmites karka*	नल / نل (nal); नरसल / نرسل (narsal)	Native reed; vigorous; keep out of nalas and channels where it would obstruct flow. Platts: "A species of reed, *Amphidonax karka*, or *Arundo karka*" (p. 1152) and "A large species of reed, *Arundo karka*" (p. 1132)
Shallow macrophyte zone	*Canna indica*	—	As Table 8D.13
Open water and deep zones	*Nelumbo nucifera* (lotus)	कमल / کمل (kamal)	Native; for permanent pools only. Platts: "The lotus, *Nelumbium speciosum*" (p. 849)
Open water and deep zones	*Nymphaea nouchali* (blue water lily)	नीलोफ़र / نیلوفر (nīlofar)	Native; for permanent pools only. Platts: "the blue water-lily, *Nymphæa cyanea*" (p. 1168), an older name of this species

Table 8D.15 — Species not to be planted

Botanical name	Hindi / Urdu name	Reason
Eichhornia crassipes (water hyacinth)	—	Invasive; chokes pokhars, chaurs, tals, nalas and screens
Prosopis juliflora	—	Invasive on pond beds, embankments and drain banks
Ipomoea carnea	—	Invasive in ponds and channels; obstructs flow

---

Annex 8E — Erosion and sediment control standard details

Supports Clause 8.12 of Chapter 8.

The details below show the arrangement of each measure. Dimensions set by the Manual are given. Dimensions the Manual does not set are labelled "to be confirmed in design" and shall be shown on the ESC plan (Clause 8.12.1). Temporary measures are designed with the rainfall of Chapter 2 and a climate factor of 1.0 (Clause 8.12.4).

Table 8E.1 — Selection of measures (Clause 8.12.3)

Situation	Measure	Detail
Sheet flow leaving a disturbed area, along its downslope edge	Silt fence	Figure 8E.1
Concentrated flow from a disturbed area of up to 2 ha	Sediment trap	Figure 8E.2
Disturbed area of more than 2 ha	Sediment basin with surface dewatering outlet	Figure 8E.2
Existing drain inlet receiving site runoff	Inlet protection	Figure 8E.4
Vehicle exit to a public road	Stabilised construction exit, with wheel washing	Figure 8E.3
Stockpiles	Outside Zone 1 of any waterbody setback; ≥ 10 m from any drain; covered in the SW monsoon	Notes to Figure 8E.1
Dewatering	Through a sediment basin, settling tank or filter bag; never pumped directly to a drain or waterbody	Notes to Figure 8E.2
Concrete washout	Lined pit; never into a drain	Notes to Figure 8E.3

8E.1 Silt fence

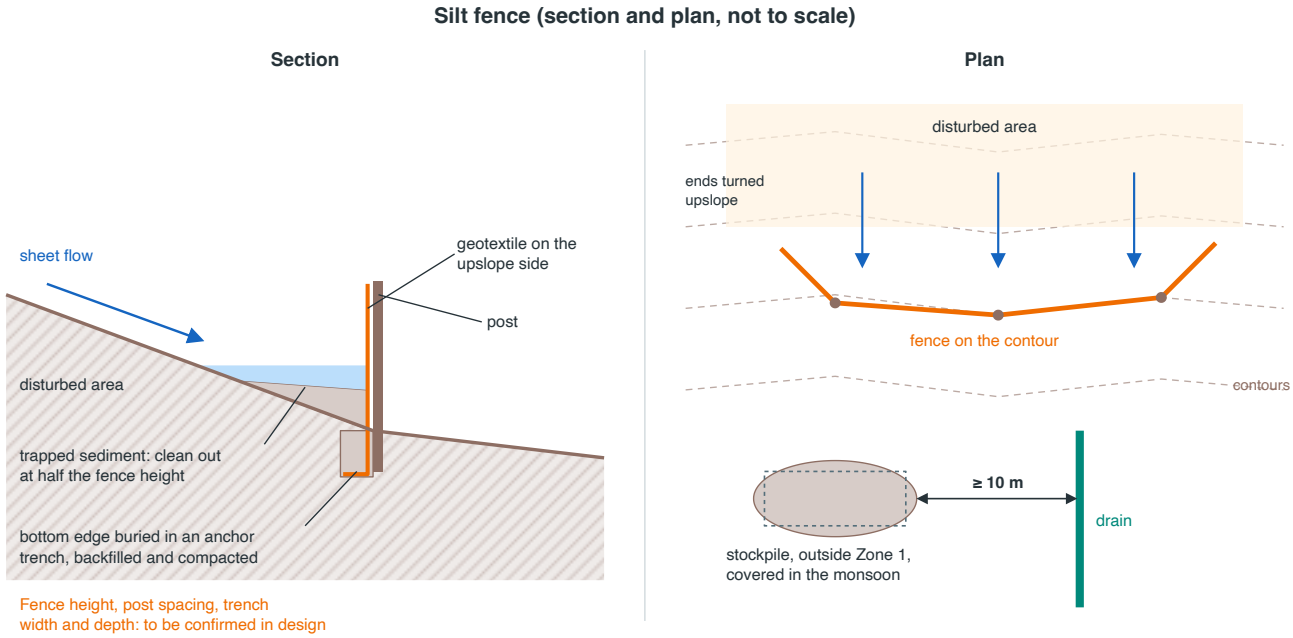


Figure 8E.1 — Silt fence: section showing geotextile on posts with the bottom edge buried in an anchor trench on the upslope side, and plan showing the fence on the contour with returns at the ends. Dimensions not set by the Manual are to be confirmed in design. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022), and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

To be prepared. Clause 8.12.3(a) refers to this annex for the limit on the area draining to each silt fence. That limit, and the maximum slope length above a fence, need to be set by the State Stormwater Technical Committee for Bihar rainfall. Until they are published, the following interim limits apply, taken from common US practice (US EPA, Stormwater Best Management Practice fact sheet: Silt Fence):

- drainage area: not more than **0.1 ha per 30 m** of fence;
- slope length above the fence: not more than 30 m on slopes under 2%, 23 m at 2–5%, 15 m at 5–10%, 8 m at 10–20% and 5 m steeper than 20%;
- wherever flow arrives concentrated, or a limit cannot be met, a sediment trap (Figure 8E.2) is used instead.

The designer shall show the drainage area and slope length served by each fence on the ESC plan.

Notes:

1. Place along the contour at the downslope edge of the disturbed area, never across a concentrated flow path.
2. Turn the ends upslope so that water cannot run round them.
3. Inspect weekly and within 24 hours after every heavy-rainfall event; repair within 48 hours; remove sediment when the deposit reaches half the fence height (Clause 8.12.5).
4. Remove only after the area draining to it is stabilised (Clause 8.12.6).
5. Stockpiles: outside Zone 1, at least 10 m from any drain, and covered during the SW monsoon (Clause 8.12.3(f)).

8E.2 Sediment trap and sediment basin

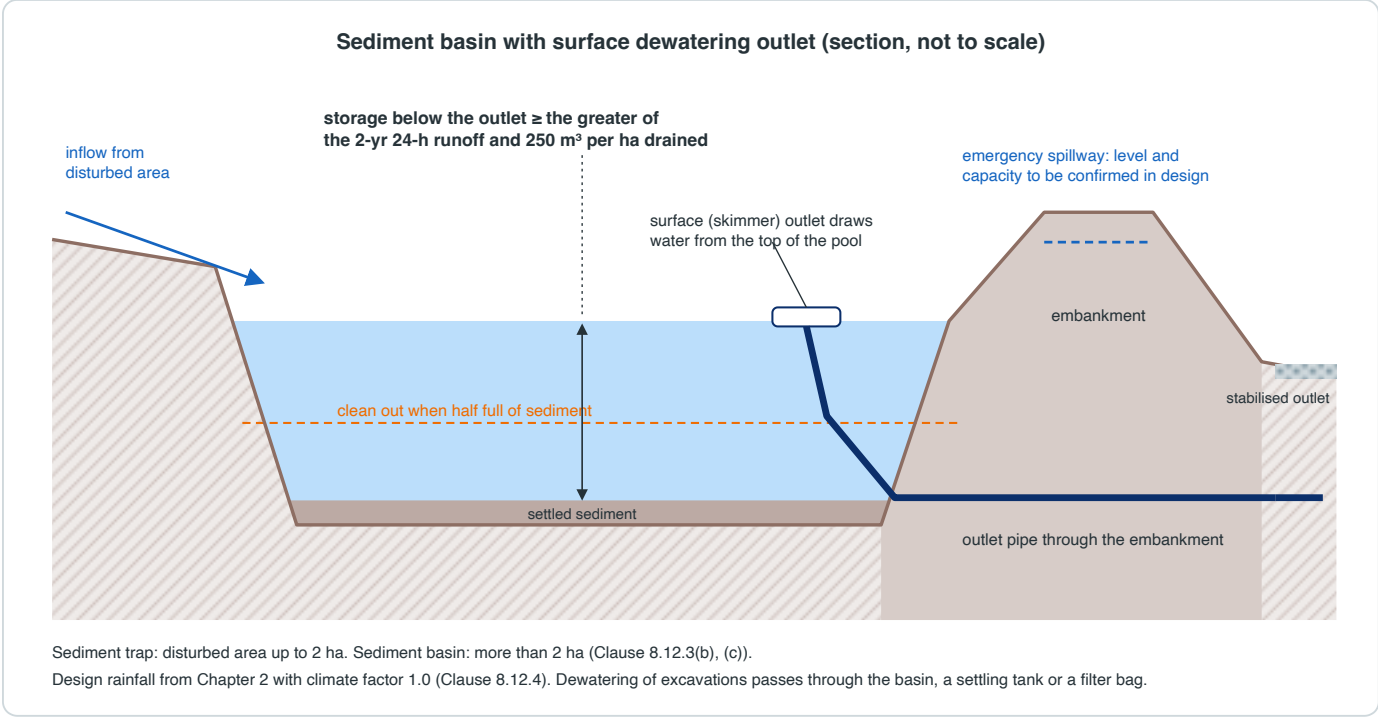


Figure 8E.2 — Sediment trap or basin in section: inflow, storage volume below the outlet, surface dewatering outlet (skimmer) drawing water from the top of the pool, emergency spillway, and sediment cleanout level at half the storage. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022).

Notes:

1. **Sediment trap:** for concentrated flow from disturbed areas of up to 2 ha (Clause 8.12.3(b)). Storage volume, depth and outlet: to be confirmed in design.
2. **Sediment basin:** for disturbed areas of more than 2 ha. Storage below the outlet ≥ the greater of (a) the runoff from the 50% AEP (2-yr) 24-hour storm and (b) 250 m³ per hectare of drainage area (Clause 8.12.3(c)).
3. The dewatering outlet draws water from the surface (Clause 8.12.3(c)).
4. An emergency spillway and its capacity: to be confirmed in design. Where the basin is also a permanent detention facility, the Chapter 4 spillway rules apply.
5. Clean out when half full of sediment (Clause 8.12.5). Remove sediment from any permanent facility before its as-built survey (Clause 8.12.6).
6. Dewatering of excavations shall pass through a sediment basin, settling tank or filter bag (Clause 8.12.3(g)).

Illustrative — not design values. A sediment basin serves 3.0 ha of disturbed land. Assume a 2-yr 24-hour rainfall of 100 mm (climate factor 1.0, Clause 8.12.4) and a curve number of 86 for bare compacted ground under the antecedent moisture condition of Chapter 2.

- $S = 25{,}400 / 86 - 254 = 41.35$ mm; $I_a = 0.2S = 8.27$ mm
- $Q = (P - I_a)^2 / (P - I_a + S) = (100 - 8.27)^2 / (100 - 8.27 + 41.35) = 8{,}414 / 133.08 = 63.2$ mm
- (a) Runoff volume = $10 \times Q \times A = 10 \times 63.2 \times 3.0 = 1{,}896$ m³
- (b) 250 m³/ha × 3.0 ha = 750 m³
- Required storage below the outlet = max (1,896, 750) = 1,896 m³. Here the 2-yr runoff governs.

8E.3 Stabilised construction exit and concrete washout

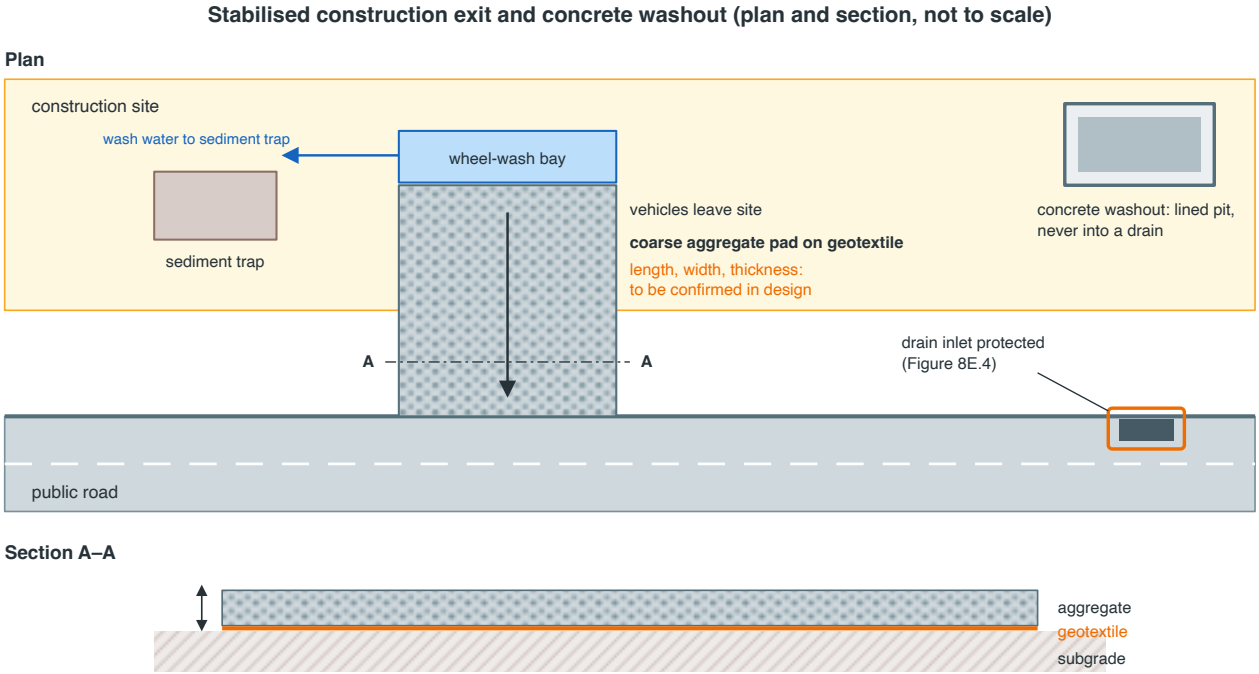


Figure 8E.3 — Stabilised construction exit: plan and section showing a coarse aggregate pad on geotextile between the site and the public road, a wheel-wash bay draining to a sediment trap, and a lined concrete washout pit. Dimensions not set by the Manual are to be confirmed in design. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022).

Notes:

1. Provide at every point where vehicles leave the site onto a public road, with wheel washing (Clause 8.12.3(e)).
2. Pad length, width, thickness and aggregate size: to be confirmed in design.
3. Wash water drains to a sediment trap or basin, never to a drain.
4. Concrete washout in a lined pit, never into a drain (Clause 8.12.3(h)).
5. Sweep any sediment tracked onto the public road at the end of each working day.

8E.4 Inlet protection

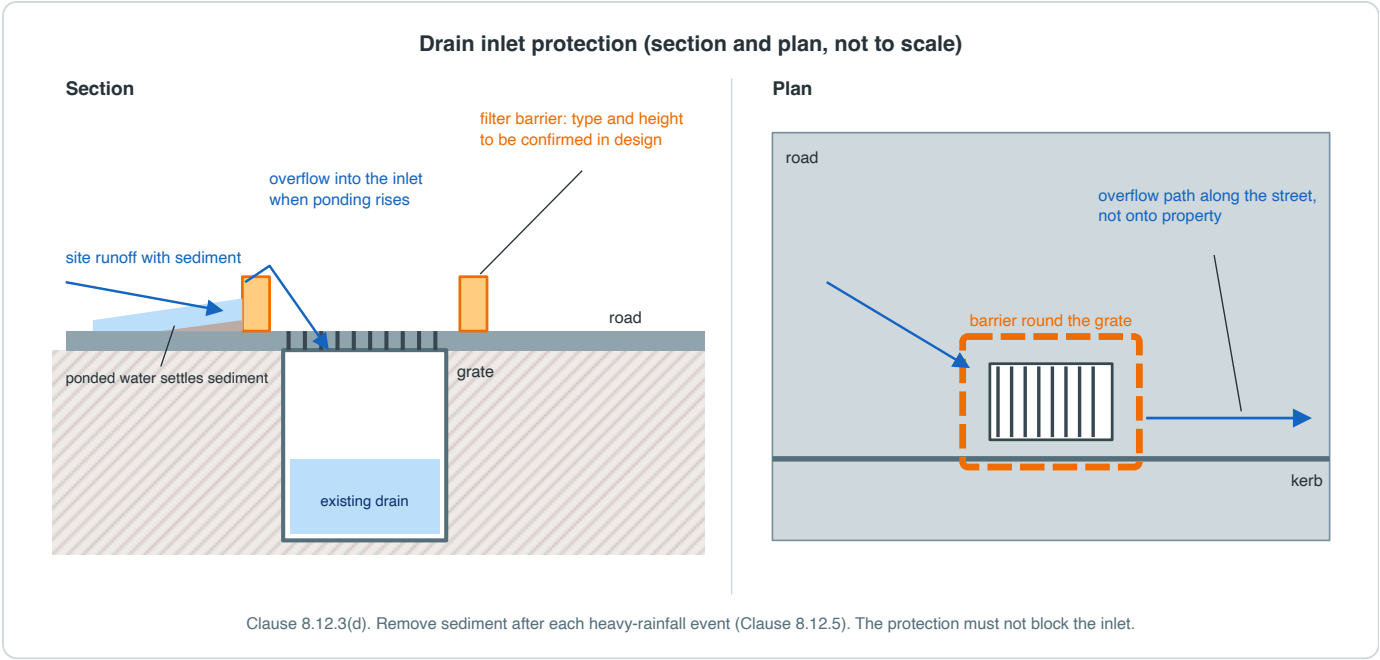


Figure 8E.4 — Inlet protection at an existing drain inlet: a filter barrier around a grate or kerb inlet, with an overflow path so that ponding does not flood the road or property. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from US EPA, NPDES Construction General Permit (2022), and CIRIA, The SuDS Manual (C753), 2015.

Notes:

1. At every existing drain inlet that receives runoff from the site (Clause 8.12.3(d)).
2. The protection must not block the inlet: water ponding behind it must be able to overflow into the inlet or along the street.
3. Barrier type and height: to be confirmed in design.
4. Remove sediment after each heavy-rainfall event (Clause 8.12.5).

8E.5 Timing and inspection

Table 8E.2 — ESC timing and inspection (Clauses 8.12.2 and 8.12.5)

Item	Requirement
Completed earthworks	Stabilised by vegetation, mulch, matting or paving by 31 May
Area cleared between 15 June and 15 October	Sediment controls in place before clearing
Area exposed in the SW monsoon	As small as practicable
Inspection	Weekly, and within 24 h after every heavy-rainfall event (Chapter 10)
Repair	Within 48 h
Cleaning	When half full of sediment
Removal	Only after the area draining to the measure is stabilised

Form 8-1 — Water Quality Sheet

Supports Clauses 8.4, 8.6 and 8.14 of Chapter 8.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

Table 8F.1 — Form 8-1, Section A: Site and rainfall

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Project name and Authority file number	_____	—
A2	Tier (A / B) and site area, ha	_____	8.6.1
A3	Rainfall zone (Chapter 2)	_____	8.4.1
A4	P_ret, mm (Annex 2E)	_____	8.4.1
A5	P_3m, mm (Annex 8A, or the interim calculation: record, years, method)	_____	8.4.1
A6	P_wq = max (P_ret, P_3m), mm (no climate factor)	_____	8.4.1, 8.4.3
A7	WQv method: SCS-CN, or Rv (sites < 0.5 ha and Tier B simplified method only)	_____	8.4.2
A8	Redevelopment (existing impervious ≥ 20%)?	_____	8.6.2

Table 8F.2 — Form 8-1, Section B: Water quality volume and flow by drainage area

Area ID	Area (ha)	Impervious I (%)	Q_wq runoff depth (mm) or Rv	WQv (m^3)	Q_wq (m^3/s)	Volume retained, Chapter 4 (m^3)	WQv not retained (m^3)	BMP serving the area	Pretreatment
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Total	_____			_____		_____	_____		

Table 8F.3 — Form 8-1, Section C: Level of Service and Value Rating (Tier A)

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	CN pre-development; CN post-development; ΔCN	_____	8.6.2
C2	Required LoS (Table 8.2, or Annex 8B for redevelopment)	_____	8.6.2
C3	Composite VR (Annex 8B calculation attached)	_____	8.6.3
C4	Composite VR ≥ required LoS?	_____	8.6.3
C5	Tier B: route used under Clause 8.6.5 (a) retained on site / (b) bioretention, rain garden or infiltration	_____	8.6.5

Table 8F.4 — Form 8-1, Section D: Other submittals (Clause 8.14)

No.	Item	Attached (yes / no / not applicable)	Clause
D1	BMP designs to Clause 8.7 and Annex 8D, with pretreatment	_____	8.14(3)

No.	Item	Attached (yes / no / not applicable)	Clause
D2	Infiltration Test Record (Form 8-2), seasonal high groundwater level and source, design rate, drawdown time, setbacks	_____	8.14(4)
D3	Sewage and sullage connection plan; dye or smoke test record	_____	8.9.2, 8.14(5)
D4	GPT and first-flush design for any outfall to a waterbody	_____	8.10, 8.14(6)
D5	RWH layout separating harvesting, recharge and detention	_____	8.11, 8.14(7)
D6	ESC plan	_____	8.12, 8.14(8)
D7	Hotspot controls, where Clause 8.8.8 applies	_____	8.8.8

Table 8F.5 — Form 8-1, Section E: Prepared by

Field	Entry
Name, registration and empanelment number (Clause 10.6)	_____
Signature and date	_____

Form 8-2 — Infiltration Test Record

Supports Clauses 8.8.1 to 8.8.7 and 8.11.4 of Chapter 8.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. One record per facility. Attach a plan showing the test locations, and the readings for each test.

Table 8F.6 — Form 8-2, Section A: Facility

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Project and facility ID; facility type	_____	8.8.3
A2	Infiltration base area (m²) or trench length (m)	_____	8.8.3(c)
A3	Proposed base level of the facility, m (datum)	_____	8.8.3
A4	Runoff source: roof only / paved surfaces / mixed; hotspot (yes / no)	_____	8.8.6, 8.8.8
A5	Ground setting: sandy coastal / laterite or hard rock / delta clay or black cotton / other	_____	8.8.9–8.8.11

Table 8F.7 — Form 8-2, Section B: Tests

Test no.	Location (grid ref.)	Date	Method: double-ring (ASTM D3385) / falling-head borehole or trial-pit soakage (e.g. BRE Digest 365)	Test level, m	Groundwater level at time of test, m	Measured rate (mm/h)
1	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Minimum number of tests: 2 per facility, and 1 per 100 m² of base area or per 50 m of trench (Clause 8.8.3(c)).

Table 8F.8 — Form 8-2, Section C: Design rate and drawdown

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
C1	Number of tests made; number required	_____	8.8.3(c)
C2	Highest and lowest measured rates; ratio (highest ÷ lowest)	_____	8.8.4
C3	Safety factor: 2.0 (tests meet 8.8.3(c) and ratio ≤ 2) or 3.0	_____	8.8.4
C4	Design rate = measured rate used ÷ safety factor, mm/h (state which measured rate was used)	_____	8.8.4
C5	Category: ≥ 13 mm/h full infiltration / 3–13 mm/h partial with underdrain / < 3 mm/h no credit	_____	8.8.5
C6	Depth of water to infiltrate, mm; drawdown time = depth ÷ design rate, h (≤ 72 h)	_____	8.8.7

Table 8F.9 — Form 8-2, Section D: Separation and setbacks

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
D1	Seasonal high groundwater level, m, and its source (Clause 3.10.2)	_____	8.8.1
D2	Separation from facility base to seasonal high groundwater, m (≥ 1.0; ≥ 0.5 for roof-only runoff in notified coastal sand with mounding check)	_____	8.8.1, 8.8.9(d)

No.	Item	Entry	Clause
D3	Depth to bedrock or impermeable layer below base, m (≥ 1.0 unless Clause 8.8.10)	_____	8.8.2
D4	Distances to: foundations / basement / property boundary / drinking-water well or borewell / septic tank or soak pit / crest of slope steeper than 1V:3H, m	_____	8.8.6
D5	Expansive soils: foundation setback doubled?	_____	8.8.11(b)

Table 8F.10 — Form 8-2, Section E: Declaration

Field	Entry
Tester: name, qualification in geotechnical testing, organisation	_____
I certify that the tests were made at the stated locations and levels, by the stated methods, and that the readings attached are complete. Signature and date	_____
Designer (Clause 10.6): name and signature	_____

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 9

Hydraulic Design of Structures

These annexes support Chapter 9. Annex 9A gives the FHWA HDS-5 inlet-control equations in SI units, with published coefficients for common inlets, and a full worked culvert example. Annex 9B gives standard drawings that carry only the dimensions Chapter 9 and Chapter 6 already set; every other dimension is marked "to be confirmed in design". Annex 9C is a pump station design checklist with a standard control philosophy drawn from Clause 9.9. Form 9-1 is a draft form: it lists what Clause 9.14 requires and does not add to it.

Annex 9A — HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients and worked culvert example in SI units

Supports Clauses 9.4.1 to 9.4.7 of Chapter 9 and Clause 6.12 of Chapter 6.

9A.1 Inlet-control equations

FHWA *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts*, HDS-5, 3rd edition (2012), Appendix A, gives three inlet-control equations. In SI units:

> Unsubmerged, Form 1: HWi/D = Hc/D + K · [Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5)]^M + Ks · S

> Unsubmerged, Form 2: HWi/D = K · [Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5)]^M

> Submerged: HWi/D = c · [Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5)]² + Y + Ks · S

where HWi is the headwater depth above the inlet invert under inlet control (m), D is the interior height (rise) of the barrel (m), Hc is the specific head at critical depth, dc + Vc²/2g (m), Q is the discharge (m³/s), A is the full cross-sectional area of the barrel (m²), S is the barrel slope (m/m), K, M, c and Y are the constants of Table 9A.1, Ku = 1.811 in SI units (1.0 in US units), and Ks is the slope correction: −0.5, or +0.7 for mitred inlets.

Which equation applies depends on X = Ku · Q / (A · D^0.5):

- X ≤ 3.5: unsubmerged equation (Form 1 or Form 2 as listed in Table 9A.1);
- X ≥ 4.0: submerged equation;
- 3.5 < X < 4.0 (transition): use FHWA HY-8, which implements the HDS-5 transition. Where a hand calculation is used, take the higher of the unsubmerged and submerged results. This is a conservative simplification made by this annex, not an HDS-5 rule.

Table 9A.1 — HDS-5 inlet-control coefficients for common inlets

Barrel	Inlet edge	Form	K	M	c	Y
Circular concrete	Square edge with headwall	1	0.0098	2.0	0.0398	0.67
Circular concrete	Groove (socket) end with headwall	1	0.0018	2.0	0.0292	0.74
Circular concrete	Groove (socket) end projecting	1	0.0045	2.0	0.0317	0.69
Circular corrugated metal	Headwall	1	0.0078	2.0	0.0379	0.69
Circular corrugated metal	Mitred to slope	1	0.0210	1.33	0.0463	0.75
Circular corrugated metal	Projecting	1	0.0340	1.50	0.0553	0.54
Rectangular box	Wingwalls flared 30° to 75°	1	0.026	1.0	0.0347	0.81
Rectangular box	Wingwalls flared 90° and 15°	1	0.061	0.75	0.0400	0.80
Rectangular box	Wingwalls at 0° (extensions of the sides)	1	0.061	0.75	0.0423	0.82
Rectangular box	90° headwall with 19 mm (3/4 in) chamfers	2	0.515	0.667	0.0375	0.79
Rectangular box	90° headwall with 45° bevels	2	0.495	0.667	0.0314	0.82
Rectangular box	90° headwall with 33.7° bevels	2	0.486	0.667	0.0252	0.865

Source: FHWA HDS-5 (2012), Appendix A, Table A.1 (the coefficients are dimensionless and apply in SI units with Ku = 1.811). The values were checked against HIF-12-026, Table A.1 (chart and scale numbers 1/1–1/3, 2/1–2/3, 8/1–8/3 and 10/1–10/3). Where a later edition of HDS-5 differs, the later table governs. Entrance loss coefficients for outlet control are in Table 9.1 of Chapter 9.

9A.2 Worked example: pipe culvert under a collector road

Illustrative — not design values. The inputs below are invented to show the method; the results are not design values for any site.

Inputs.

Table 9A.2 — Inputs for the worked example

Item	Value	Source
Road class	Collector; design AEP 4% (25-yr), check event 2% (50-yr), and the 1% AEP check	Table 6.1, Clause 6.12.2
Design flow, 4% AEP	1.80 m³/s (including the climate factor)	Illustrative
Check flow, 2% AEP	2.20 m³/s	Illustrative
1% AEP flow	3.00 m³/s	Illustrative
Barrel	One 1,200 mm RCC pipe with collar joints, n = 0.015	Table 6.6
Inlet	Square edge with headwall: ke = 0.5; K = 0.0098, M = 2.0, c = 0.0398, Y = 0.67, Form 1	Tables 9.1 and 9A.1
Length and slope	L = 20.0 m; S = 0.005 (inlet invert 20.00 m, outlet invert 19.90 m, local datum)	Illustrative
Road levels at the inlet	Shoulder edge 22.00 m; lowest point of the road crest 22.10 m	Illustrative
Tailwater above the outlet invert, TW	0.60 m at 1.80 m³/s; 0.70 m at 2.20 m³/s; 0.85 m at 3.00 m³/s (normal depth in the downstream channel)	Illustrative; Clause 9.4.4
Receiving channel	Unlined sandy loam	Table 9.2

Minimum size: 1,200 mm ≥ 900 mm (Clause 6.12.5). The span is below 1.5 m, so the blockage check uses 50% of the inlet area blocked (Clause 6.12.4(a)).

Step 1 — Barrel properties. A = π · 1.2² / 4 = 1.131 m²; full-barrel hydraulic radius R = D/4 = 0.300 m; D^0.5 = 1.095.

Step 2 — Critical depth. For each flow, dc is found by trial from the critical-flow condition for a circular section, $Q^2 \cdot T / (g \cdot Ac^3) = 1$, where Ac and T are the flow area and top width at depth dc.

Table 9A.3 — Critical depth and specific head (D = 1.2 m)

Q (m³/s)	dc (m)	Ac (m²)	T (m)	Vc = Q/Ac (m/s)	Hc = dc + Vc²/2g (m)	Hc/D
1.80	0.737	0.728	1.168	2.471	1.048	0.873
2.20	0.817	0.820	1.119	2.683	1.184	0.987
3.00	0.952	0.962	0.972	3.118	1.447	1.206

Step 3 — Headwater under inlet control. X = 1.811 · Q / (1.131 × 1.095) = 1.462 · Q.

Table 9A.4 — Inlet-control headwater

Q (m³/s)	X	Equation	HWi/D	HWi (m)
1.80	2.631	Unsubmerged, Form 1: 0.873 + 0.0098 × 2.631² − 0.5 × 0.005 = 0.873 + 0.068 − 0.003	0.939	1.127
2.20	3.216	Unsubmerged, Form 1: 0.987 + 0.0098 × 3.216² − 0.003 = 0.987 + 0.101 − 0.003	1.085	1.302
3.00	4.385	Submerged: 0.0398 × 4.385² + 0.67 − 0.003 = 0.765 + 0.67 − 0.003	1.433	1.719

Step 4 — Headwater under outlet control (Clause 9.4.3). The friction term is 19.63 · n² · L / R^1.33 = 19.63 × 0.015² × 20.0 / 0.300^1.33 = 0.0883 / 0.2016 = 0.438, so H = (1 + 0.5 + 0.438) · V²/2g = 1.938 · V²/2g. L · S = 20.0 × 0.005 = 0.100 m.

Table 9A.5 — Outlet-control headwater

Q (m³/s)	V = Q/A (m/s)	V²/2g (m)	H (m)	(dc + D)/2 (m)	TW (m)	ho (m)	HWo = ho + H − L·S (m)
1.80	1.592	0.129	0.250	0.969	0.60	0.969	1.119
2.20	1.945	0.193	0.374	1.009	0.70	1.009	1.283
3.00	2.653	0.359	0.695	1.076	0.85	1.076	1.671

Step 5 — Governing headwater (Clause 9.4.1): the greater of HWi and HWo.

Table 9A.6 — Governing headwater and checks

Event	Q (m³/s)	HWi (m)	HWo (m)	Control	HW (m)	HW level (m)	HW/D
Design, 4% AEP	1.80	1.127	1.119	Inlet	1.127	21.13	0.94
Check, 2% AEP	2.20	1.302	1.283	Inlet	1.302	21.30	1.09
1% AEP	3.00	1.719	1.671	Inlet	1.719	21.72	1.43

Step 6 — Headwater limits at the design AEP (Clause 9.4.5):

- (a) HW/D = 0.94 ≤ 1.2. Complies.
- (b) HW level 21.13 m ≤ shoulder edge 22.00 m − 0.30 m = 21.70 m. Complies.

- (c) Water levels at upstream buildings and property boundaries are compared with the existing condition under Clause 6.12.2(d). This needs the upstream survey and is not shown here.

Step 7 — Road overtopping (Clauses 6.12.2, 6.12.3 and 9.4.6). The 1% AEP headwater level, 21.72 m, is below the lowest road crest, 22.10 m, so the road is not overtopped in the check or 1% AEP events. Had the headwater exceeded the crest, the overtopping flow Qr = Cd · L · h^1.5 (Cd ≤ 1.66) would be balanced with the culvert flow at a common headwater, and the overtopping depth checked against Clause 6.12.2(a).

Step 8 — Outlet velocity (Clause 9.4.7). Under inlet control, the outlet velocity is the velocity at normal depth in the barrel. The barrel's full-flow capacity is (1/n) · A · R^(2/3) · S^0.5 = (1/0.015) × 1.131 × 0.448 × 0.0707 = 2.39 m³/s.

- 1.80 m³/s: normal depth 0.778 m, outlet velocity 2.32 m/s.
- 2.20 m³/s: normal depth 0.908 m, outlet velocity 2.40 m/s.
- 3.00 m³/s: above the full-flow capacity, so the barrel flows full at the outlet; velocity = Q/A = 2.65 m/s.

The receiving channel is unlined sandy loam, with a permissible velocity of 0.53 m/s (Table 9.2), so outlet protection is required (Clause 9.6.1). All barrel velocities are below 3.0 m/s (Clause 6.7.3(b)).

Step 9 — Riprap apron (Clause 9.6.3; Figure 9.2). D50 = 0.2 · D · [Q / (g^0.5 · D^2.5)]^(4/3) · (D/TW), with g^0.5 · D^2.5 = 3.132 × 1.577 = 4.941.

Table 9A.7 — Riprap apron sizing

Q (m³/s)	TW (m)	Q / (g^0.5 · D^2.5)	[ ]^(4/3)	D50 (m)
1.80	0.60	0.364	0.260	0.2 × 1.2 × 0.260 × 2.00 = 0.125
2.20	0.70	0.445	0.340	0.2 × 1.2 × 0.340 × 1.71 = 0.140
3.00	0.85	0.607	0.514	0.2 × 1.2 × 0.514 × 1.41 = 0.174

Clause 9.4.7 requires the outlet to be protected for the design AEP and the 1% AEP, so the apron is sized here for the largest D50, 0.174 m. From Table 9.3, Class 2 (D50 = 150 mm) is too small, so **Class 3** (D50 = 250 mm) is used:

- apron length 5D = 5 × 1.2 = 6.0 m;
- apron thickness 2.4 × D50 = 2.4 × 0.25 = 0.60 m;
- apron width at the outlet at least 3D = 3.6 m, flaring to the downstream channel;
- stone placed on a granular filter or geotextile (Clause 9.6.4).

Step 10 — Blockage check (Clause 6.12.4(a)). Steps 3 to 7 are repeated for the 1% AEP flow with 50% of the inlet area blocked, and the results must meet Clause 6.12.2(a) and (d). This Manual does not yet set a standard way of representing a partly blocked inlet, so this check is carried out in HY-8 or by a method agreed with the Approving Authority. It is not worked here.

Table 9A.8 — Summary of the worked example (Illustrative — not design values)

Check	Result	Clause
Minimum size	1,200 mm ≥ 900 mm	6.12.5
Design HW/D	0.94 ≤ 1.2	9.4.5(a)
Design HW below shoulder edge	21.13 m ≤ 21.70 m	9.4.5(b)
Overtopping in the check and 1% events	None (21.72 m < 22.10 m)	6.12.2, 9.4.6
Outlet protection	Class 3 riprap apron, 6.0 m long, 0.60 m thick, 3.6 m wide at the outlet	9.6.1, 9.6.3
Blockage check	To be run in HY-8 or by an agreed method	6.12.4

Annex 9B — Standard drawings: headwalls, riprap aprons, drop structures, trash racks, detention risers

Supports Clauses 9.4, 9.6, 9.7 and 9.8 of Chapter 9.

The drawings below are schematic standard drawings. They show only the dimensions and rules that Chapter 9 and Chapter 6 set. Structural dimensions, reinforcement, foundations and fixings are to be confirmed in design (Clause 9.1.2). The riprap apron standard drawing is Figure 9.2 of Chapter 9, with dimensions from Table 9.3; it is not repeated here. Table 9B.1 lists the dimensions shown and their source clauses.

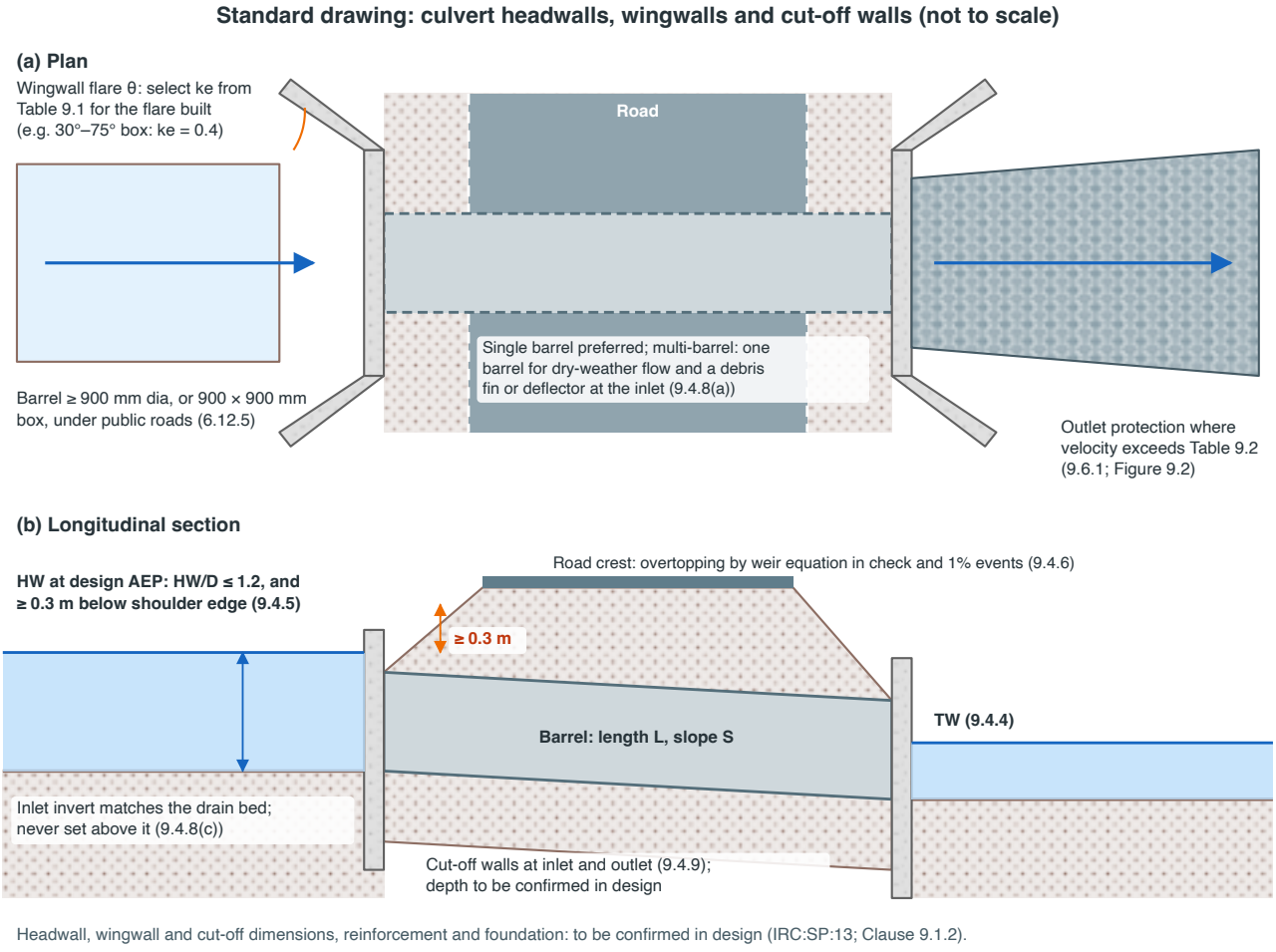


Figure 9B.1 — Standard drawing: culvert headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls, in plan and long section, with the headwater limits, invert rule and debris provisions. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from FHWA, Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts, HDS-5 (3rd ed., 2012).

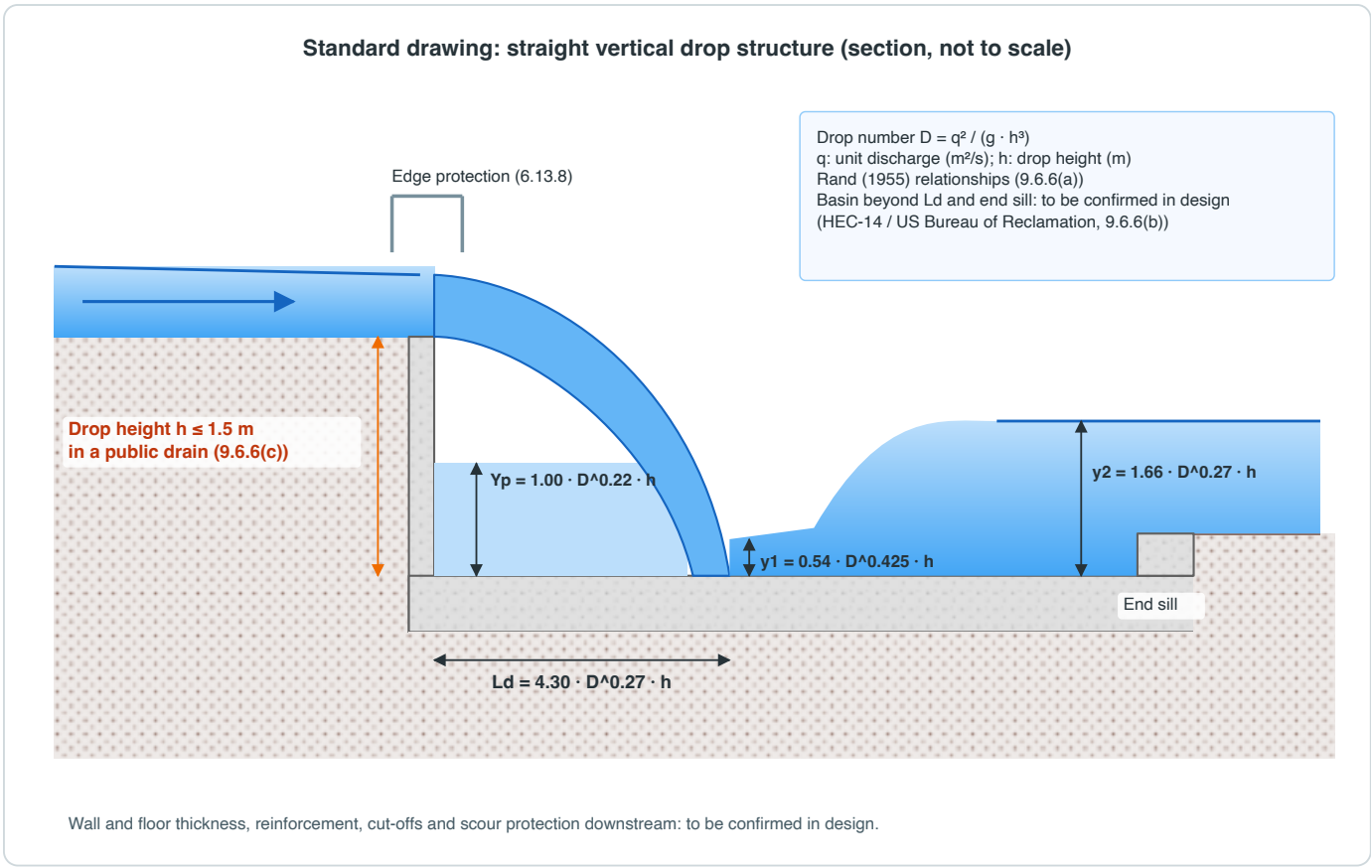


Figure 9B.2 — Standard drawing: straight vertical drop structure with the Rand (1955) pool geometry and the 1.5 m height limit. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Chow, Open-Channel Hydraulics (1959), and FHWA, HEC-14 (3rd ed., 2006).

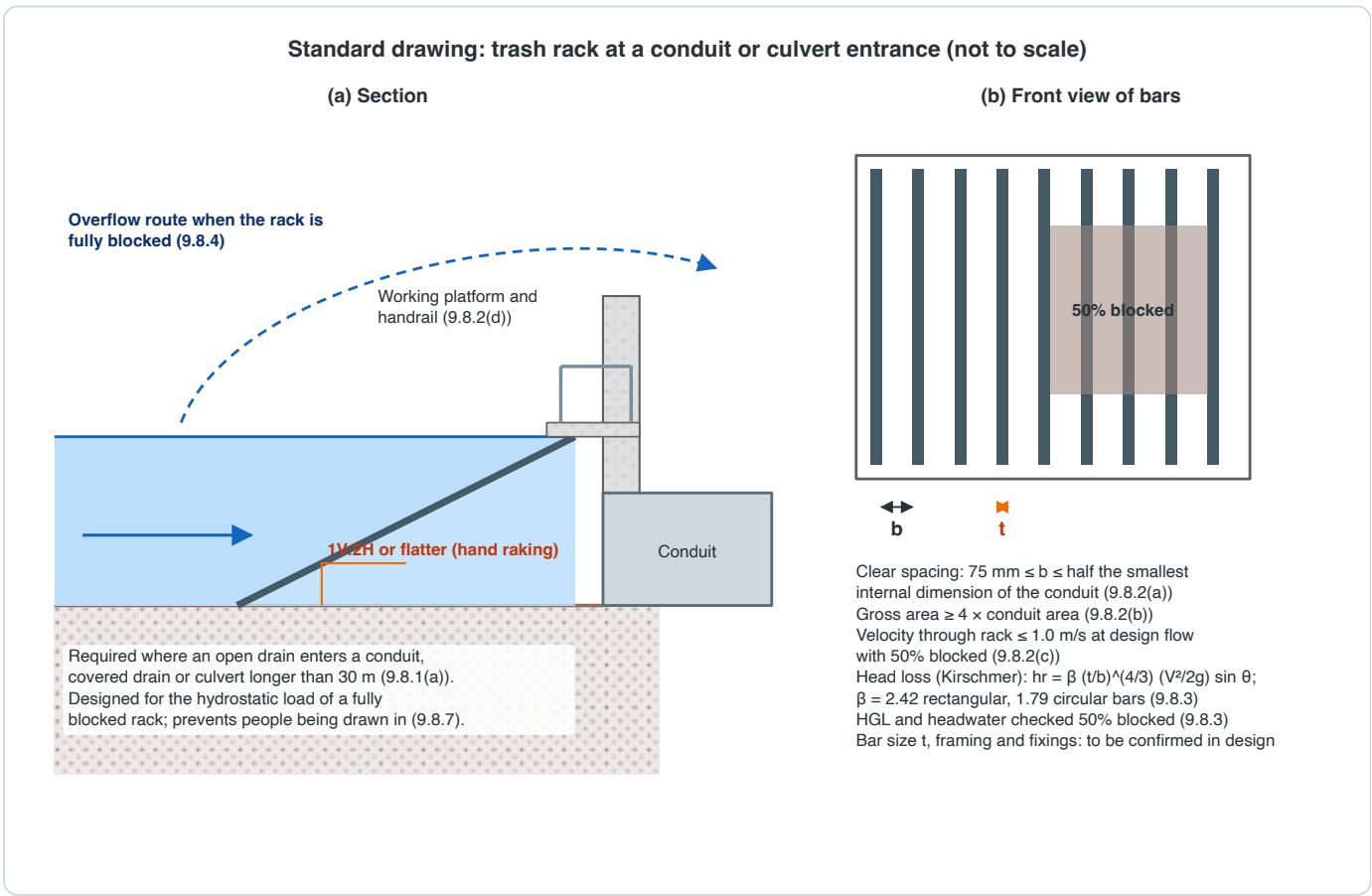


Figure 9B.3 — Standard drawing: trash rack at a conduit or culvert entrance, in section and front view, with bar spacing, area, velocity, slope and overflow requirements. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from CIRIA, Culvert, screen and outfall manual, C786 (2019), and CPHEEO, Manual on Storm Water Drainage Systems (2019), §8.3.1.3.

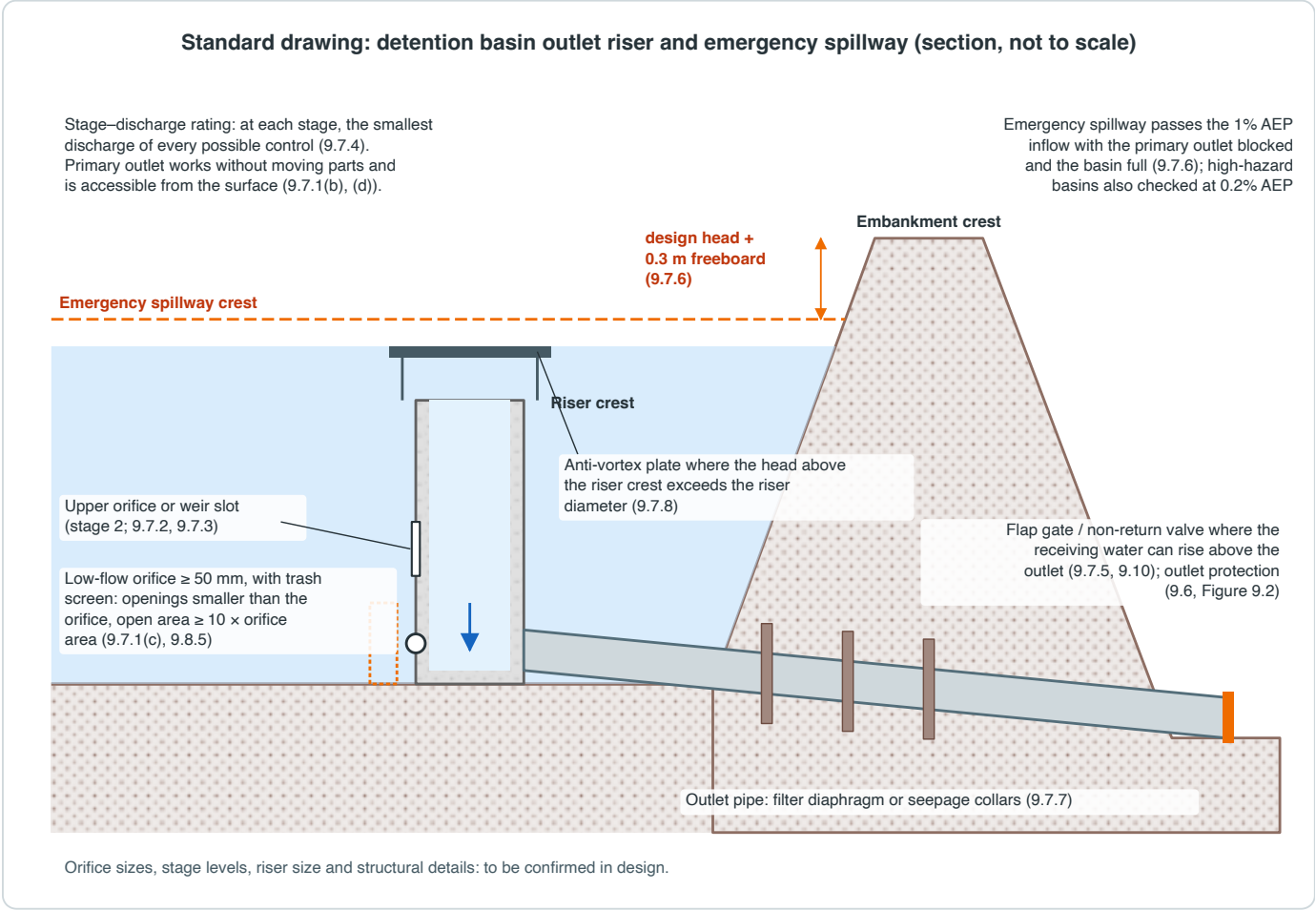


Figure 9B.4 — Standard drawing: detention basin outlet riser with low-flow orifice and screen, upper stage, anti-vortex plate, outlet pipe through the embankment, flap gate and emergency spillway. Original drawing for this Manual, adapted from Kansas City Metro APWA, Section 5600 (2006, 5608.4).

Table 9B.1 — Dimensions and rules on the standard drawings and their source clauses

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
9B.1	Minimum culvert size under public roads	900 mm diameter, or 900 mm × 900 mm box	6.12.5
9B.1	Headwater at the design AEP	HW/D ≤ 1.2; at least 0.3 m below the shoulder edge at the upstream face	9.4.5
9B.1	Entrance loss coefficient	From Table 9.1 for the inlet built (for example 0.4 for a box with wingwalls at 30°–75°)	9.4.3
9B.1	Inverts	Match the drain bed; never above it	9.4.8(c)
9B.1	Multi-barrel culverts	Avoided in debris-prone drains; where used, one barrel for dry-weather flow and a debris fin or deflector	9.4.8(a)
9B.1	Headwalls, wingwalls, cut-off walls	Required; dimensions to be confirmed in design	9.4.9
9B.1	Road overtopping	Qr = Cd · L · h^1.5, Cd ≤ 1.66	9.4.6
Figure 9.2	Riprap apron	Width at the outlet ≥ 3D, flaring to the channel; length and thickness from Table 9.3; filter or geotextile	9.6.3, 9.6.4

Drawing	Item	Dimension or rule	Clause
9B.2	Single vertical drop in a public drain	Height h ≤ 1.5 m; edge protection	9.6.6(c), 6.13.8
9B.2	Pool geometry	D = q²/(g h³); Ld/h = 4.30 D^0.27; Yp/h = 1.00 D^0.22; y1/h = 0.54 D^0.425; y2/h = 1.66 D^0.27	9.6.6(a)
9B.2	Basin beyond Ld, end sill	To be confirmed in design (HEC-14 or US Bureau of Reclamation)	9.6.6(b)
9B.3	Where required	Where an open drain enters a conduit, covered drain or culvert longer than 30 m	9.8.1(a)
9B.3	Clear bar spacing b	Not less than 75 mm and not more than half the smallest internal dimension of the conduit	9.8.2(a)
9B.3	Gross rack area	At least 4 times the conduit area	9.8.2(b)
9B.3	Velocity through the rack	Not more than 1.0 m/s at the design flow with 50% blocked	9.8.2(c)
9B.3	Inclination	No steeper than 1V:2H where raked by hand; working platform and handrail	9.8.2(d)
9B.3	Head loss and blocked check	Kirschmer equation; HGL and headwater checked with 50% blocked	9.8.3
9B.3	Overflow and safety	Overflow route for a fully blocked rack; designed for the full hydrostatic load	9.8.4, 9.8.7
9B.4	Low-flow orifice	Not smaller than 50 mm; trash screen with openings smaller than the orifice and open area at least 10 times the orifice area	9.7.1(c), 9.8.5
9B.4	Orifice and weir flow	Q = Cd · A · (2gh)^0.5, Cd = 0.60 sharp-edged; weir coefficients of Clause 9.7.3	9.7.2, 9.7.3
9B.4	Stage–discharge rating	Smallest discharge of every possible control at each stage	9.7.4
9B.4	Anti-vortex plate	Where the design head above the riser crest exceeds the riser diameter	9.7.8
9B.4	Outlet pipe through the embankment	Filter diaphragm or seepage collars; flared or headwalled inlet	9.7.7
9B.4	Flap gate or non-return valve	Where the receiving water can rise above the outlet	9.7.5, 9.10
9B.4	Emergency spillway	Passes the 1% AEP inflow with the primary outlet blocked and the basin full, with 0.3 m freeboard to the embankment crest; 0.2% AEP check for high-hazard basins	9.7.6
All	Structural dimensions, reinforcement, foundations, bar sizes, orifice sizes and stage levels	To be confirmed in design	9.1.2

Annex 9C — Pump station design checklist and standard control philosophy

Supports Clauses 9.8.6, 9.9 and 9.10 of Chapter 9, with Clause 6.10.5 of Chapter 6 and the outfall-closed check of Chapter 5.

9C.1 Design checklist

Submit this checklist with the pump station design report of Clause 9.14, item 6.

Table 9C.1 — Pump station design checklist

No.	Item	Requirement	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)
1	Need for pumping	Gravity drainage cannot meet Chapters 5 and 6; reason stated	9.9.1	
2	Inflow	Inflow hydrograph routed through the catchment and any upstream storage	9.9.2	
3	Design standard	Design AEP of the element served; for underpasses, 2% AEP with a 1% AEP check	9.9.2(a), 6.10.5(a)	
4	Tidal outfall	Storage plus pumps hold the 48 h design volume with the outfall throttled for the tidal-lock duration (default two high tides of 6 h each)	9.9.2(b), Chapter 5	
5	Head range	Pumps selected from the lowest sump level against the lowest tailwater to the highest tailwater (HAT + surge + 0.3 m); pump and system curves submitted	9.9.2(c), 9.14	
6	Wet-well volume	Greatest of: 5 min of minimum inflow (variable speed and automatic control); 10 to 15 min of peak inflow, or the manufacturer's minimum cycle volume; $V = \Theta \cdot q / 4$ for each constant-speed pump	9.9.3	
7	Duty pumps	Same size where practicable	9.9.4(a)	
8	Standby	At least equal to the largest duty pump, and not less than 50% of the number of duty pumps	9.9.4(b)	
9	Alternation	Duty and standby roles alternate automatically	9.9.4(c)	
10	Pump type	Solids-handling (non-clog); axial-flow only behind a screen meeting Clause 9.8.6	9.9.5	
11	Sump and intake	Manufacturer's requirements and ANSI/HI 9.8; clear space 0.6 m (small and medium) or 1.0 m (large units)	9.9.6	
12	Model study	Physical model where any pump exceeds 1 m^3/s or the sump departs from ANSI/HI 9.8 geometry	9.9.6	
13	Silt trap and screen	Upstream of the wet well; screen spacing smaller than the pumps' solids size; removable modules; mechanical raking where inflow exceeds 1 m^3/s	9.9.7, 9.8.6	
14	Screen overflow	Overflow route when the screen is fully blocked	9.8.4	
15	Level control	Primary level sensor (ultrasonic, radar or pressure) with an independent float-switch back-up	9.9.8(a)	
16	Alarms	High-level and pump-fault alarms by telemetry to the local body's control room	9.9.8(b)	
17	Records	Sump levels, pump run hours and power status logged and kept at least 5 years	9.9.8(c)	
18	Power sources	Grid supply plus a standby generator or second independent feeder able to run all duty pumps at once	9.9.9(a)	
19	Fuel	At least 72 h of all duty pumps, stored above the flood level of Clause 9.9.10	9.9.9(b)	
20	Changeover	Automatic changeover to standby power	9.9.9(c)	
21	Flood protection	Electrical and control room floor, generator and transformer at least 0.5 m above the 1% AEP flood level; vehicle access usable in the 1% AEP event	9.9.10	
22	Discharge	Separate rising mains, or a non-return and an isolating valve where mains combine; delivery chamber or outfall with a flap gate or non-return valve; mains sized by a recognised friction formula	9.9.11	

No.	Item	Requirement	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)
23	Gates	Flap or tide gate on outfalls below the 1% AEP still-water level; penstock or stop-log slot upstream for outfalls of 900 mm or more and every pumped outfall; head loss from tested data	9.10.1, 9.10.3, 9.10.4	
24	Sand and debris at the outfall	Gate in a chamber with surface access, or elastomeric check valves, at beach, estuary and creek outfalls	9.10.5	
25	Emergency connection	Hard-standing and quick-coupling connection for mobile pumps into the delivery chamber	9.9.12	
26	Materials	Exposure class of Clause 9.13; stainless steel grade 316, galvanised and coated steel, or non-metallic fixings within 5 km of the coast	9.13	
27	Design life	At least 50 years for civil works and 25 years for mechanical and electrical equipment	9.2.4	
28	Underpass stations	Depth markers and automatic warning or closure signals at 150 mm depth on the carriageway	6.10.5(d)	
29	Certification	Designed by an empanelled professional and checked by an independent empanelled professional	10.6.1(d), 10.6.4	

9C.2 Standard control philosophy

This is the standard control philosophy for a stormwater pump station designed under Clause 9.9. The designer adapts it to the station and submits it with the design report. Items marked "recommended" are good practice that Chapter 9 does not require; all others restate a clause.

Table 9C.2 — Control levels (values to be set in design)

Level	Rule for setting it	Clause
Pump stop	Not below the minimum submergence required by the pump manufacturer and ANSI/HI 9.8	9.9.6
Duty pump 1 start	Above the pump-stop level by at least the effective wet-well volume of Clause 9.9.3	9.9.3
Duty pumps 2, 3 … start	Staged above duty pump 1 start; spacing to be confirmed in design	9.9.2
High-level alarm	Above the highest duty-pump start level; to be confirmed in design	9.9.8(b)
Float back-up high	Independent float; starts the duty pumps	9.9.8(a)
Float back-up low	Independent float; stops the pumps	9.9.8(a)

1. **Normal (automatic) operation.** As the wet-well level rises to the duty pump 1 start level, the lead pump starts. If the level keeps rising, each further duty pump starts at its start level. The pumps stop when the level falls to the pump-stop level. The primary level sensor controls this sequence (Clause 9.9.8(a)).
2. **Duty rotation.** The lead pump changes automatically, after each pump-down cycle or by run hours as set in the design, so that duty and standby roles alternate and wear is shared (Clause 9.9.4(c)).
3. **Pump fault.** A pump that trips or fails to start is locked out. The next available pump, including the standby pump, takes its place, and a pump-fault alarm is sent by telemetry (Clauses 9.9.4(b) and 9.9.8(b)).
4. **Level-sensor failure.** If the primary sensor fails, or disagrees with the float switches, control passes to the independent float back-up: at the float-high level the duty pumps run, and at the float-low level they stop. An alarm is sent (Clause 9.9.8(a), (b)).
5. **Power failure.** Supply changes over automatically to the standby generator or second feeder (Clause 9.9.9(c)). Recommended: pumps restart one at a time after changeover, to limit the starting load on the generator.

6. **High level.** At the high-level alarm level an alarm is sent by telemetry to the local body's control room (Clause 9.9.8(b)). At an underpass, the warning or closure signals operate at 150 mm depth on the carriageway (Clause 6.10.5(d)).
7. **Outfall and gates.** Rising mains discharge to a delivery chamber or outfall fitted with a flap gate or non-return valve (Clause 9.9.11). Flap gates open and close under head difference without control action. The upstream penstock or stop logs are closed only for maintenance, or if the flap gate jams open (Clause 9.10.3). Recommended: penstock position is shown at the control panel and logged.
8. **Tide-locked operation.** Where the outfall is tide-locked, storage and pumping together hold the 48 h design volume for the tidal-lock duration (Clause 9.9.2(b) and Chapter 5). Where the station also has a gravity outfall, gravity discharge resumes through the flap gate when the tide falls.
9. **Screens.** Mechanically raked screens (required where inflow exceeds 1 m³/s, Clause 9.8.6) are run automatically. Recommended: raking is started by a timer and by the level difference across the screen, with an alarm when the difference stays high.
10. **Manual operation.** Recommended: each pump has a hand–off–auto selector at the panel, and the float back-up high-level start remains active in hand mode.
11. **Mobile pumps.** When fixed pumps are out of service or overwhelmed, mobile pumps discharge into the delivery chamber through the quick-coupling connection (Clause 9.9.12).
12. **Records.** Sump levels, pump run hours and power status are logged and kept for at least 5 years (Clause 9.9.8(c)). Recommended: alarms, pump starts and stops, and changeovers are logged as well.
13. **Testing.** The controls, floats, alarms, telemetry, changeover and generator are tested in the pre-monsoon inspection of Chapter 10 (Clause 10.12), and the results reported in the Annual Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-7; Clause 10.10.3).

Form 9-1 — Hydraulic Structures Report checklist

Supports Clause 9.14 of Chapter 9.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Not for statutory use.

Attach this checklist to the front of the Hydraulic Structures Report. For each item, enter Yes, No or Not applicable, and the drawing or page where it is shown.

Section A — Project

Table 9F.1 — Form 9-1, Section A: project

Field	Entry
Project name and location	_____
Local body, and Tier A or Tier B (Chapter 1)	_____
Applicant	_____
Designer (name and registration)	_____
Structures covered (culverts, channels, dissipators, outlets, screens, pumps, gates, inlets, manholes)	_____
Tailwater conditions used: MHWS, HAT + surge, sea-level allowance, joint case (Clause 9.2.1)	_____
Date and revision	_____

Section B — Contents required by Clause 9.14

Table 9F.2 — Form 9-1, Section B: contents required by Clause 9.14

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (Yes / No / NA)	Drawing or page
1	Culvert calculations (HDS-5 or HY-8 output) with HWi, HWo, outlet velocity, tailwater, overtopping and the blockage check	9.4, 6.12		
2	Channel water-surface profiles, velocities, Froude numbers and freeboard	9.5		
3	Outlet protection and dissipator design, with riprap sizing	9.6		
4	Detention outlet stage–discharge tables and the emergency spillway check	9.7		
5	Screen and rack design with the 50% blocked check	9.8		
6	Pump station design report: inflow hydrograph, storage, pump and system curves, wet-well volume, controls, power supply and the Chapter 5 outfall-closed check (with Annex 9C)	9.9		
7	Gate and valve selection with head-loss data	9.10		
8	Inlet, grate and cover load classes	9.11		
9	Exposure class and materials statement	9.13		

Section C — Compliance checks

Table 9F.3 — Form 9-1, Section C: compliance checks

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
C1	Climate factor included in design flows	Clause 2.8	9.2.2	
C2	Blocked condition checked where debris can block; safe overflow route	—	9.2.5	
C3	Pipes and box drains: design n (box drains ≥ 0.015); supercritical pipes: jump located in a structure, air venting	—	9.3.1, 9.3.4	
C4	Pipe size does not decrease downstream; joins only at manholes or junction chambers; no change of direction over 90°	—	9.3.5	
C5	Culvert design headwater = greater of HWi and HWo	—	9.4.1	
C6	Culvert headwater at the design AEP	HW/D ≤ 1.2; ≥ 0.3 m below shoulder edge	9.4.5	
C7	Road overtopping weir coefficient	Cd ≤ 1.66	9.4.6	
C8	Culvert inverts match the drain bed; headwalls, wingwalls and cut-off walls	—	9.4.8(c), 9.4.9	
C9	Channel Froude number at the design flow	≤ 0.8; none between 0.8 and 1.2	9.5.2	
C10	Channel velocity	Table 9.2	9.5.3	
C11	Channel slope in engineered channels	≤ 0.4% natural, ≤ 0.2% concrete, or drops / chute	9.5.4	
C12	Side slopes; low-flow channel where bed width ≥ 3 m; uplift or weep holes	—	9.5.6, 9.5.7, 9.5.9	
C13	Outlet protection where outlet velocity exceeds Table 9.2	Table 9.3 apron, or basin	9.6.1, 9.6.3	
C14	Single vertical drop height	≤ 1.5 m	9.6.6(c)	
C15	Detention primary outlet: no moving parts; minimum orifice	≥ 50 mm with screen	9.7.1	
C16	Emergency spillway	1% AEP, outlet blocked, basin full, 0.3 m freeboard; 0.2% AEP for high-hazard basins	9.7.6	
C17	Outlet pipe through embankment; anti-vortex plate where needed	—	9.7.7, 9.7.8	
C18	Conduit-entrance racks	Spacing 75 mm to half the smallest conduit dimension; area ≥ 4×; ≤ 1.0 m/s at 50% blocked	9.8.2	
C19	Detention orifice screens	Openings smaller than the orifice; open area ≥ 10×	9.8.5	
C20	Pump station	Annex 9C checklist complete	9.9	
C21	Gates on outfalls below the 1% AEP still-water level; secondary closure; corrosion-resistant fittings	—	9.10	
C22	Grate load classes, parallel openings ≤ 25 mm, kerb openings ≥ 100 mm × 1.0 m, locked covers	—	9.11	
C23	Manhole sizes (Table 9.4), 600 mm access openings, drops, benching, surcharge covers	—	9.12	

No.	Check	Limit	Clause	Complies (Yes / No / NA)
C24	Exposure class (Table 9.5); chloride and sulphate tests in coastal and delta areas; sulphide protection; metalwork within 5 km of the coast	—	9.13	

Section D — Variances

Table 9F.4 — Form 9-1, Section D: variances

Clause	Requirement not met	Reason and proposed alternative	Approved by and date
_____	_____	_____	_____

Section E — Signatures

The report shall be prepared and signed by a registered professional, and the Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3) attached (Clauses 10.6.1 and 10.6.3 of Chapter 10). For a facility with an embankment, a high-hazard basin, a pumped facility, a tide gate or a regional facility, the signatory shall be an empanelled Stormwater Design Professional, and a second, independent empanelled professional shall sign as checker (Clauses 10.6.1(c), (d) and 10.6.4).

Table 9F.5 — Form 9-1, Section E: signatures

Role	Name	Registration or empanelment no.	Signature	Date
Designer	_____	_____	_____	_____
Independent checker (Clause 10.6.4, where applicable)	_____	_____	_____	_____

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0.

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 10

Submittals, Review, Operation & Maintenance and Enforcement

These annexes support Chapter 10. They give the specification and user-guide outline of the compliance calculator, the GIS data specification, the maintenance access dimensions that the Manual sets, model O&M plans for each facility type, model empanelment criteria, and the eight forms that Chapter 10 requires. The Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1) is in the annexes to Chapter 2. The forms are draft forms. The model texts are for consideration by a competent authority and are not in force.

Annex 10A — Compliance calculator and user guide

Supports Clauses 10.4.1(g), 10.5 and 10.9.1(b) of Chapter 10.

> **Status.** The compliance calculator does not exist yet. Clause 10.5.1 requires the State Stormwater Technical Committee to issue and maintain it. This annex is the specification the calculator shall meet and the outline of its user guide. Until the calculator is issued, the designer completes Form 10-2 by hand from the calculations of Chapters 4, 5 and 8, enters "not issued" as the calculator version, and attaches the calculations.

10A.1 General requirements

The calculator shall:

- (a) be a spreadsheet or web tool, published free of charge with its user guide and the source of every table in it (Clause 10.5.4);
- (b) print its version number and release date on every output page and every exported file (Clause 10.5.3);
- (c) keep a public version log. A new version applies to new submittals 6 months after release; a submittal keeps one version from Stage 1 to Stage 4 unless the Applicant elects a later one (Clause 10.5.3);
- (d) work for one site at a time, with one or more drainage areas, each draining to its own outfall (Clause 4.5.1.3);
- (e) never apply a value that the Manual has not published. Where a table it needs has not been issued (for example Table 4.3 of Annex 4B, or the S-2 discharge tables of Annex 1C), the calculator shall show that route as "not available" rather than estimate the value; and
- (f) export its inputs and results as a machine-readable file (CSV or JSON) as well as Form 10-2, so that the Authority can load them into the facility register (Clause 10.17.1(b)).

10A.2 Inputs

Table 10A.1 — Calculator inputs

No.	Input	Unit	Source
I1	Authority, tier (A or B) and file number	—	Clause 1.6

No.	Input	Unit	Source
I2	Site area; land disturbance area	ha	Clause 1.5.2
I3	New impervious area; replaced impervious area; existing impervious area before demolition	m²	Clauses 1.5.2, 1.5.6, 4.5.6.1
I4	Development type: new, redevelopment, linear public work, single dwelling	—	Clauses 1.5.6–1.5.8
I5	Flood-sensitive catchment (yes / no), and basin with an approved BSMP (yes / no)	—	Clauses 4.5.3, 4.13, 11.12
I6	Rainfall zone	—	Annex 2A
I7	Retention depth P_R; 3-month ARI 24-hour depth P_3m	mm	Annexes 2E, 8A
I8	Design rainfall depths by duration (1–72 h) and AEP, with the climate factor, as recorded on Form 2-1	mm	Clauses 2.5, 2.8, 2.13
I9	15-minute intensities i_10 and i_2, with the climate factor (fixed-coefficient route only)	mm/h	Clause 4.14.4
I10	Drainage areas: for each, area, land cover, impervious percentage, HSG and curve number, pre- and post-development	ha, %, —	Clauses 3.3, 3.7, 3.9
I11	Areas preserved under a registered covenant	ha	Clause 4.4.7
I12	Seasonal high groundwater depth below the base of each retention practice	m	Clauses 4.4.3(c), 8.8
I13	Measured infiltration rate at each practice	mm/h	Clause 4.4.3
I14	Retention volume provided, by practice; reuse demand where retention is by reuse	m³, m³/d	Clauses 4.4.3, 4.4.5
I15	Route: full hydrograph method (Clause 4.6); design-aid S-1 (Clause 4.14.2); PSD S-2 (Clause 1.7); fixed-coefficient (Clause 4.14.3); constrained redevelopment (Clause 4.5.6)	—	Clauses 1.7, 4.5.6, 4.6, 4.14
I16	For the full method: model results for each AEP and duration — pre- and post-development peaks, storage used, retention credit found by routing	m³/s, m³	Clauses 4.4.6.2, 4.6
I17	Outlet: low-flow orifice diameter or least slot dimension; drawdown times from routing	mm, h	Clauses 4.7, 4.8.2
I18	Outfall: tidal or non-tidal; outfall-closed check result	—	Chapter 5
I19	Fee-in-lieu unit rate notified for the basin, where the route applies	₹/m³	Clause 4.13.3
I20	Stage of submittal (1, 2 or 4) and, at Stage 4, the as-built values of I14, I16 and I17	—	Clauses 10.5.2, 10.9.1(b)

10A.3 Calculations, by clause

Table 10A.2 — Calculations the calculator shall perform

Step	Calculation	Clause
C1	**Applicability.** Chapters 4 and 5 apply where land disturbance ≥ 0.1 ha or new plus replaced impervious area ≥ 500 m², over the common plan of development. Report exemptions. Flag that the universal provisions apply at every size, and that RWH applies to plots of all sizes, with recharge pits or trenches of at least 6 m³ per 100 m² of roof (BBL 2014, bye-law 51; the Draft Bihar Building Byelaws 2026 would require a rainwater harvesting proposal on plots of 100 m² and more), and in urban areas notified under the Bihar Ground Water Act 2006 to premises of 1,000 m² and more (s.18), except that roof water is stored rather than recharged in diara, chaur and tal land and wherever the seasonal high water table is shallow, and is not injected untreated into recharge wells in the arsenic belt.	1.5.2–1.5.8

Step	Calculation	Clause
C2	**Process flags.** Stage 0 mandatory (≥ 2 ha, flood-sensitive, variance or regional route, tidal outfall or waterbody); Stages 1 and 2 may be combined (< 1 ha, not flood-sensitive); empanelled signatory required; independent check required.	10.3.2, 10.3.3, 10.6.1, 10.6.4
C3	**Route eligibility.** Tier B simplified method: ≤ 2 ha, or ≤ 0.5 ha in a flood-sensitive catchment, and only once Table 4.3 is published. Fixed-coefficient route: ≤ 1 ha and none of the exclusions of Clause 4.14.3. Constrained redevelopment: existing ≥ 60% impervious and ≤ 1 ha. Regional detention or fee-in-lieu: only in a basin with an approved BSMP.	4.5.6.1, 4.13.1, 4.14.1, 4.14.3, 11.12.1(b)
C4	**Retention volume.** RRV = 10 × Q_R × A, with Q_R the SCS-CN runoff from P_R for each sub-area at AMC II, summed over sub-areas. The larger of the Ia = 0.2S and Ia = 0.05S results governs. The Rv form (RRV = 10 × P_R × Rv × A, Rv = 0.05 + 0.009 × I) is offered only for sites < 0.5 ha and the Tier B method. No climate factor.	4.4.2, 3.8.5(c), 2.8.3
C5	**Preservation credit.** Preserved areas are modelled at their pre-development CN in the post-development condition.	4.4.7
C6	**Retention checks.** Design infiltration rate ≤ half the measured rate; groundwater ≥ 1.0 m below the base; drawdown of the retained volume within 72 h at the design rate (or by the stated reuse demand). A practice that fails any check gets no credit; any shortfall is reported and treated as WQv.	4.4.3–4.4.5, 4.4.6.4
C7	**Water quality volume.** P_wq = max(P_ret, P_3m); WQv = 10 × Q_wq × A by SCS-CN, or (P_wq / 1000) × Rv × A (A in m²) for sites < 0.5 ha and the Tier B method. The retained volume counts toward the WQv in full. No climate factor.	8.4.1–8.4.4, 3.8.5(c)
C8	**Retention credit.** Tier A: the credit found by routing is entered (I16); the calculator does not compute it. Tier B: V_credit = C_R × RRV provided, with C_R = 0 until Annex 4B is published.	4.4.6
C9	**Design-aid route (S-1).** V = SSR × A − V_credit; Q_PSD,T = PSD_T × A for the 2-yr and 100-yr stages, from Table 4.3. Shown as "not available" until Table 4.3 is published.	1.7.2, 4.14.2
C10	**Permissible site discharge (S-2).** Q = PSD (m³/s/ha) × A for each AEP, from the S-2 tables. Shown as "not available" until they are issued.	1.7.2, 1.7.3(e)
C11	**Fixed-coefficient route.** Q_cap,10 = 2.78 × C_10 × i_10 × A and Q_cap,2 = 2.78 × C_2 × i_2 × A (L/s); V_100 and V_2 = max over d of [10 × C_v × P(d) × A − 1.8 × Q_cap × d] for d = 1 to 72 h, with pervious C ≥ 0.50 for d ≥ 12 h; V = max(V_100, V_2); retention added without credit. Coefficients from Table 4.3A (provisional).	4.14.4–4.14.7
C12	**Release-rate screen (full method).** For each AEP and duration: Q_post ≤ 0.9 × Q_pre (standard), or the two mixed-frequency caps (flood-sensitive). Report the governing duration and margin.	4.5.2, 4.5.3
C13	**Constrained redevelopment.** Q_post ≤ 0.5 × Q_existing for 2-, 10- and 100-yr at each duration; shortfall volume = greenfield storage − storage provided; fee = shortfall × unit rate.	4.5.6.2, 4.5.6.3
C14	**Minimum orifice.** Flag any orifice < 50 mm. Where a cap is below the discharge of a 50 mm orifice at the corresponding stage, report "50 mm orifice deemed to comply".	4.5.5.1, 4.8.2
C15	**Drawdown.** Report the detention drawdown (90% of the 10-yr stored volume within 48 h), the WQv release time (24–48 h) and the retention emptying time (≤ 72 h).	4.7
C16	**Fee-in-lieu.** Fee = detention volume required on site × notified unit rate.	4.13.3
C17	**Model screen.** Where the full method is used, compare the model results (I16) with the calculator's screen values (C9 to C11, where available) and flag a difference above the tolerance stated in the user guide.	10.5.2(c)
C18	**As-built re-run.** At Stage 4, repeat C4 to C17 with the as-built values and report each change from Stage 2.	10.9.1(b), 10.9.2

10A.4 Outputs

The calculator produces:

- (a) **Form 10-2**, filled in, with the calculator version and release date on every page;
- (b) a machine-readable export of every input and result of Tables 10A.1 and 10A.2; and
- (c) a list of the flags raised (C1 to C3, C6, C14, C17), each with the clause on which it is based (Clause 10.7.7).

10A.5 Testing before release

Before each release the State Stormwater Technical Committee shall check that the calculator reproduces, within rounding, the worked examples of the Manual that use the same method, including the illustrative examples of Clauses 4.6.7 and 4.14, and the benchmark problems of Annex 3C where they apply. The test results shall be published with the version log.

10A.6 Outline of the user guide

The user guide shall contain at least:

1. Purpose, status and limits of the calculator: a summary and screening check outside the design-aid route (Clause 10.5.2(c)).
2. How to obtain the current version, and the version rule of Clause 10.5.3.
3. Each input of Table 10A.1, with where to find it in the Manual and its annexes.
4. Each calculation of Table 10A.2, with its equation and clause.
5. The tolerance used in step C17, and what the drainage report must explain where it is exceeded (Clause 10.5.2(c)).
6. How to read and sign Form 10-2, and what to attach.
7. At least one worked example for each route, labelled "Illustrative — not design values".
8. The sources of every table in the calculator (Clause 10.5.4), and the version log.

Annex 10B — GIS data specification and attribute schema

Supports Clauses 10.4.4, 10.14.1(d), 10.14.3 and 10.17 of Chapter 10.

10B.1 Format and reference systems

- (a) **Format.** One OGC GeoPackage (.gpkg) per submittal is preferred. Shapefiles are accepted, one per layer, zipped with all component files. Field names shall be as in Tables 10B.2 to 10B.6; shapefile names are limited to 10 characters, and the names below meet that limit.
- (b) **Horizontal reference.** WGS 84 geographic (EPSG:4326), or WGS 84 / UTM zone 45N (EPSG:32645), statewide, including for Kaimur, most of Buxar, the west of Rohtas and the Valmikinagar tip of West Champaran, which lie in zone 44N, whichever contains the site (Clause 10.4.4(c)). One system shall be used for all layers.
- (c) **Vertical reference.** All levels shall be in metres relative to a named vertical datum, stated in the metadata. The metadata shall also state the relationship between that datum and the river datums of the CWC and WRD (FMISC) gauges on the receiving rivers and of WRD's embankment, sluice and drain levels used in Chapter 5 (Clause 10.4.4(d)).
- (d) **Accuracy.** Positions shall come from the site survey or the approved drawings. At Stage 4 and at handover, positions and levels shall come from the as-built survey (Clause 10.9.1(a)).
- (e) **File name.** `<Authority file number>_<stage>_<yyyymmdd>.gpkg` , for example `PMC–BP–2026–0123_S2_20261015.gpkg` .
- (f) **Identifiers.** Every feature has an identifier unique within the submittal (FAC_ID, OUT_ID, CAT_ID, FLP_ID). The Authority replaces them with register identifiers on acceptance and returns the mapping to the Applicant.

10B.2 Layers

Table 10B.1 — Layers

Layer	Geometry	Content	Required at
SW_SITE	Polygon	Site boundary	Stages 1, 2, 4
SW_CATCH	Polygon	Catchment boundaries draining to and through the site, pre- and post-development (Clause 10.4.1(b))	Stages 1, 2, 4
SW_FAC	Polygon (point for buried items smaller than 5 m across)	Every stormwater facility: retention, detention, water quality, pumping, gate, conveyance element designed under this Manual	Stages 2, 4; handover
SW_OUTF	Point	Every outfall from the site, and every public outfall	Stages 1, 2, 4; handover
SW_FLOW	Line	Major-system flow paths through and from the site, and natural drainage paths (Clause 10.15.1(g))	Stages 1, 2, 4
SW_CONV	Line	Drains and pipes designed under Chapter 6	Stage 4 for public works; handover
SW_META	Table (no geometry)	Metadata of Table 10B.6	Every stage

10B.3 Attribute schema

Types: T = text, I = integer, R = real, D = date (ISO 8601, yyyy-mm-dd). "Req." marks fields that shall not be empty; other fields are filled where they apply.

Table 10B.2 — Attributes of SW_FAC (facilities)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
FAC_ID	T	—	Yes	Facility identifier	10B.1(f)
FAC_TYPE	T	—	Yes	Code from Table 10B.7	Clause 4.10, Table 10.3
FAC_NAME	T	—		Name on the drawings	—
OWNER_TYP	T	—	Yes	PRIVATE / ASSOC / DEVELOPER / ULB / DEPT	Clauses 10.10, 10.14
OWNER_NM	T	—	Yes	Name of a corporate owner or association only; for an individual, "private individual" (Clause 10.17.3)	Clause 10.17.3
CTRL_AREA	R	ha	Yes	Area draining to the facility	Clause 4.5.1.3
V_RET	R	m³		Retention volume provided	Clause 4.4
V_WQ	R	m³		Water quality volume provided	Clause 8.4
V_DET	R	m³		Detention volume at the top design level	Clause 4.6
Q_2	R	L/s		Release at the 50% AEP (2-yr) design level	Clause 4.5
Q_10	R	L/s		Release at the 10% AEP (10-yr) design level	Clause 4.5
Q_100	R	L/s		Release at the 1% AEP (100-yr) design level	Clause 4.5
ORIF_MM	R	mm		Low-flow orifice diameter or least slot dimension	Clause 4.8.2
INV_OUT	R	m		Outlet invert level	Clause 10.9.1(a)
TWL_DES	R	m		Top design water level	Clause 10.9.2(a)
SPILL_LV	R	m		Spillway or overflow crest level	Clause 4.9

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
PUMPED	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Clause 10.10.3
REGIONAL	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Clause 4.13
EMPANEL	T	—	Yes	Y / N: facility under Clause 10.6.1(c) or (d)	Clause 10.6.1
STATUS	T	—	Yes	Code from Table 10B.8	Clause 10.17.1(a)
APPR_DATE	D	—		Date of Stage 2 approval	Clause 10.3
ASB_DATE	D	—		Date the as-built certificate was accepted	Clause 10.9
DECL_REF	T	—		Registration reference of the Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6)	Clause 10.10.1(e)
HAND_DATE	D	—		Date of the Asset Handover Certificate (Form 10-8)	Clause 10.14
LAST_INSP	D	—		Date of the latest inspection	Clause 10.12
INSP_RES	T	—		Code from Table 10B.9	Clause 10.17.1(a)
OUT_ID	T	—	Yes	Outfall to which the facility discharges	—

Table 10B.3 — Attributes of SW_OUTF (outfalls)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
OUT_ID	T	—	Yes	Outfall identifier	10B.1(f)
RECEIVER	T	—	Yes	Receiving drain, channel, waterbody or sea, by name	Clause 4.5.1.3
RECV_TYPE	T	—	Yes	PUBLIC_DRAIN / CANAL / RIVER / TANK / SEA / OTHER	Chapter 5
INV_LEVEL	R	m	Yes	Outfall invert level	Clause 10.9.1(a)
SIZE_MM	R	mm	Yes	Diameter, or width × height written in the drawing	Chapter 6
TIDAL	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Chapter 5
GATE_TYPE	T	—		NONE / FLAP / TIDE / DUCKBILL / PENSTOCK / NRV	Clauses 5.11, 9.10
GATE_REQ	T	—	Yes	Y / N: invert below the 1% AEP still-water level	Clause 5.11.1
GPT	T	—		Y / N: gross pollutant trap fitted	Clause 8.10.1
Q_100	R	L/s		Design 1% AEP discharge	Chapter 5

Table 10B.4 — Attributes of SW_CATCH (catchments)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
CAT_ID	T	—	Yes	Catchment identifier	10B.1(f)
CONDITION	T	—	Yes	PRE / POST / EXTERNAL (land outside the site draining through it)	Clause 10.4.1(b)
AREA_HA	R	ha	Yes	Area	—
IMPERV_PC	R	%	Yes	Impervious percentage	Clause 3.9
HSG	T	—	Yes	A / B / C / D, or mixed with area shares in NOTES	Clause 3.7
CN	R	—		Curve number, AMC II	Chapter 3
OUT_ID	T	—	Yes	Outfall to which it drains	Clause 4.5.1.3
FLOODSENS	T	—	Yes	Y / N	Clause 4.5.3

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
NOTES	T	—		Free text	—

Table 10B.5 — Attributes of SW_FLOW and SW_CONV (flow paths and conveyance)

Field	Type	Unit	Req.	Content	Source
FLP_ID	T	—	Yes	Line identifier	10B.1(f)
LINE_TYPE	T	—	Yes	OVERLAND / NATURAL / OPEN_DRAIN / COVERED_DRAIN / PIPE / CULVERT	Chapter 6
US_LEVEL	R	m		Upstream invert or ground level	Chapter 6
DS_LEVEL	R	m		Downstream invert or ground level	Chapter 6
SIZE_MM	R	mm		Pipe diameter, or drain width (depth in NOTES)	Clause 6.7.6
Q_DES	R	L/s		Design discharge	Chapter 6
AEP_DES	T	—		Design AEP, for example "10%" or "1%"	Clause 6.4
RESERVE_M	R	m		Drainage reserve width, where one applies	Clause 6.9.7
NOTES	T	—		Free text	—

Table 10B.6 — Metadata (SW_META)

Field	Content
FILE_NO	Authority file number
STAGE	1, 2, 4 or HANDOVER
H_CRS	EPSG code of the horizontal reference system
V_DATUM	Name of the vertical datum
TIDE_REL	Relationship of the vertical datum to the Chapter 5 river datums of the CWC and WRD (FMISC) gauges on the receiving rivers and of WRD's embankment, sluice and drain levels (for example, MSL = x.xx m on the site datum)
SURVEYOR	Name and licence number of the surveyor
SURV_DATE	Date of the survey
PREP_BY	Name and registration number of the certifying professional
CALC_VER	Compliance calculator version (Annex 10A), or "not issued"
DATE	Date the file was prepared

10B.4 Code lists

Table 10B.7 — Facility type codes (FAC_TYPE)

Code	Facility	Inspection row of Table 10.3
RET_SOAK	Soakaway, recharge pit or shaft	Retention / infiltration
RET_TRENCH	Infiltration trench or basin	Retention / infiltration
RET_BIO	Bioretention or rain garden	Retention / infiltration
RET_PERM	Permeable pavement	Retention / infiltration

Code	Facility	Inspection row of Table 10.3
RET_REUSE	Retention by reuse (tank with demand)	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_BASIN	Surface detention basin	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
DET_OSR	Multi-use detention in open space, park or playfield	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
DET_ROOF	Rooftop detention	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_PODIUM	Podium or landscape-deck detention	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_PARK	Parking-lot detention	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
DET_TANK	Underground tank or vault, gravity outlet	Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet
DET_PUMP	Pumped detention or pump station	Pumped detention, pumps and controls
WQ_POND	Wet pond or constructed wetland	Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area
WQ_SWALE	Swale or filter strip	Private drains and inlets
WQ_GPT	Gross pollutant trap, first-flush device or oil-grit separator	Gross pollutant trap / first-flush device
GATE	Flap or tide gate, non-return valve	Flap / tide gate, non-return valve
CONV	Private drain, inlet or culvert	Private drains and inlets

Table 10B.8 — Status codes (STATUS)

Code	Meaning
PROPOSED	In a Stage 1 or Stage 2 submittal
APPROVED	Stage 2 approved; not yet built
ASBUILT	As-built certificate accepted (Clause 10.9)
HANDEDOVER	Accepted by the ULB (Clause 10.14)
ALTERED	Changed with the Authority's approval (Clause 10.3.5)
REMOVED	Removed with the Authority's approval

Table 10B.9 — Inspection result codes (INSP_RES)

Code	Meaning
OK	Working as designed; no defect
MINOR	Defect found and corrected; date in the inspection record
MAJOR	Defect affecting storage, outlet or safety; notice issued (Clause 10.15.2, step 1)
NOACCESS	Inspection could not be made
NOTFOUND	Facility missing, filled, covered or changed in use (Clause 10.15.1(c))

10B.5 Facility register extract

The public facility register of Clause 10.17.1(a) is an extract of SW_FAC: FAC_ID, FAC_TYPE, location (centroid), V_DET (and V_RET, V_WQ), Q_100 (and Q_2, Q_10), OWNER_NM, ASB_DATE, LAST_INSP and INSP_RES. It is published as CSV and GeoPackage under the licence of Clause 10.17.4. Personal data are not published (Clause 10.17.3).

Annex 10C — Maintenance access dimensions

Supports Clause 10.13 of Chapter 10.

Clause 10.13 sets access by function. This annex collects the access dimensions that the Manual already sets in other chapters, and lists the dimensions that it does not set. Where a dimension is not set by the Manual, the designer shall state it on the drawings, show that it suits the plant and equipment named in the O&M plan (Clause 10.11.1(h)), and mark it "to be confirmed in design".

Table 10C.1 — Access dimensions set by the Manual

Element	Requirement	Clause
Open drains with a top width of 2 m or more	Maintenance access strip at least 3.5 m wide along one bank, connected to a public road at intervals of not more than 500 m	6.9.4
Drainage reserves	Width not less than Table 6.9, based on the required drain size; where the access strip of Clause 6.9.4 is wider, the wider governs	6.9.7
Covered drains, minimum section	0.6 m × 0.6 m clear	6.7.6
Covered drains, removable covers	Panels at not more than 10 m centres, each at least 0.6 m long and spanning the full clear width, liftable by two workers or a hand-operated device	6.13.2(a)
Covered drains, access chambers	Clear opening at least 0.6 m × 0.6 m at every junction, bend and change of section, and at not more than 30 m centres on straight runs	6.13.2(b)
Manholes and access chambers on public drains	Clear access opening at least 600 mm	9.12.3
Inlet chambers on public roads	Silt sump at least 300 mm deep below the outlet pipe invert, cleanable from the surface	6.6.7
Underground tanks and vaults	Access openings over the outlet chamber and over every inlet; in tanks over 500 m², not more than 30 m apart; floor falling at least 1% to a sump at the outlet	4.10.2(b), (c)
Detention outlets serving more than 1 ha	A means of isolating the outlet (stop-log slot or penstock)	4.8.6
Outfall gates	Stop-log slot or penstock upstream on outfalls larger than 600 mm (Chapter 5) and on outfalls of 900 mm or more or serving a pumped or storage system (Chapter 9); the gate chamber accessible at all tides, with its access above HAT + surge + sea-level allowance	5.11.3(d), (e); 9.10.3
Pump stations	Maintenance vehicle access usable in the 1% AEP event; hard standing and a quick-coupling connection for mobile pumps; clear space between adjacent pumps or motors of 0.6 m (small and medium units) or 1.0 m (large units)	9.9.6, 9.9.10, 9.9.12
Pretreatment devices	Cleanable without entering or disturbing the main BMP	8.5.4
Screens at outfalls, culvert inlets and pump sumps	Cleanable from a safe platform, with vehicle access	8.10.3(d)
Infiltration trenches	Observation well to the base of each trench	8.7.6(c)
Publicly accessible storage	Side slopes no steeper than 4H:1V, with at least a quarter of the perimeter at 6H:1V or flatter	4.15.1(c)
Wet basins	Safety bench at least 3 m wide, no more than 0.3 m below normal water level	4.15.2
Fencing	At least 1.2 m high, non-climbable, with a lockable gate, where Clause 4.15.3 requires it	4.15.3

Table 10C.2 — Access dimensions not set by the Manual (to be confirmed in design)

Element	What the designer shall state	Clause setting the function
Vehicle access route to the inlet, outlet and base of a basin, pond or open channel	Width, gradient, turning space and design load for the plant in the O&M plan	10.13.2
Maintenance strip beside a basin or pond	Width along at least one side	10.13.2
Ramp into a basin	Width, gradient and surface for the sediment-removal plant	10.13.2
Access openings of private tanks	Clear size of each opening over the inlet, outlet and each chamber	10.13.3(a)
Ladders and steps	Type and spacing; ventilation for confined-space entry	10.13.3(b)
Headroom in underground tanks	Clear height for manual cleaning	10.13.3(d)
Reach to orifices and screens	How the outlet is cleaned without entering a full facility	10.13.4

> **Commentary.** APWA 5600 (2006, §5608) required a maintenance access strip of 15 ft (about 4.5 m) for detention facilities. The Manual did not adopt a fixed width for private sites, because plot sizes in Bihar cities vary widely (Clause 10.13, Commentary). The State Stormwater Technical Committee may add standard values to Table 10C.2 when it issues the standard drawings of Annexes 6C and 9B.

Annex 10D — Model O&M plans by facility type

Supports Clauses 10.11, 10.12 and 10.13 of Chapter 10.

The model plans below are starting points. The designer adapts them to each facility and completes the items marked "_____". Inspection frequencies are the minimum frequencies of Table 10.3; a plan may set more frequent inspection, never less. Where this annex leaves a value to the designer, the Manual does not set it.

10D.1 Contents of every O&M plan

Every plan shall contain the items of Clause 10.11.1:

Table 10D.1 — Contents of an O&M plan

Item	Content	Clause
1	Inventory and plan drawing of each facility, with design levels, volumes and outlet details (from SW_FAC, Annex 10B)	10.11.1(a)
2	Routine tasks and their frequency (Tables 10D.2 to 10D.8)	10.11.1(b)
3	Trigger for sediment removal, as a depth (mm) or a percentage of design volume: _____	10.11.1(c)
4	Inspection checklist matching Form 10-7	10.11.1(d)
5	For pumps, gates and valves: operating rules, test schedule, standby power, and actions on a cyclone or heavy-rainfall warning	10.11.1(e)
6	Actions against standing water and mosquito breeding, consistent with the drawdown times of Clause 4.7	10.11.1(f)

Item	Content	Clause
7	Safety: confined spaces, deep water, public access	10.11.1(g)
8	Access routes and equipment (Annex 10C)	10.11.1(h)
9	Annual cost estimate (₹ _____ per year) and who pays it	10.11.1(i)
10	Records to be kept, and for how long: _____ years (pump records at least 5 years, Clause 9.9.8(c))	10.11.1(j)

10D.2 Model plans

Table 10D.2 — Retention and infiltration (soakaways, trenches, bioretention, permeable paving)

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect surface, inlets, pretreatment and overflow	Every 6 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	No blockage; overflow clear	Table 10.3
Check drawdown at the observation well or surface	At each inspection after rain	Empties within 72 h of the end of rain; if not, investigate clogging	4.4.5, 8.7.6(c)
Clean pretreatment (forebay, filter strip, silt trap)	When the sediment trigger (item 3) is reached	Pretreatment cleaned without disturbing the main BMP	8.5.3, 8.5.4
Bioretention: mulch, plants, ponding	Every 6 months	Ponding drains within 48 h; dead plants replaced; mulch 50–75 mm	8.7.2
Permeable paving: surface	Every 6 months	Sweep or vacuum; no resurfacing with impermeable material	8.7.5(e)
Keep the contributing area stable	Each inspection	Bare soil stabilised; no sediment washing in	10.8.3(b)
Keep the facility in place and in use	Each inspection	Not filled, covered, paved or built over without approval	10.10.1(d)

Table 10D.3 — Surface detention basin or multi-use open space area

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect inlets, outlet, orifice, trash rack and spillway	Every 6 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	Orifice and rack clear; spillway unobstructed	Table 10.3, 4.8, 4.9
Remove debris and sediment	When the sediment trigger is reached, and after events	Design volume restored	10.11.1(c)
Check that the basin drains	After rain	No low point ponds for more than 72 h	4.15.7
Vegetation	As set in the plan	Grass cut; no woody growth on embankments or in the outlet zone	10.11.1(b)
Safety features	Every 6 months	Signs in Hindi and English and a depth marker in place; fences and gates sound where required	4.15.3, 4.15.5
Embankment (if any)	Every 6 months and after events	No cracks, slips, seepage or animal burrows	4.9.6

Table 10D.4 — Underground or podium detention tank, gravity outlet

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect from the access openings: inlets, outlet, orifice, screen, sump, vents	Every 6 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	Clear; vents open	Table 10.3, 4.10.2
Clean the sump and floor	When the sediment trigger is reached	Floor falls freely to the sump	4.10.2(c)
Inlet silt trap or GPT	Every 3 months (Table 10.3 row for GPTs)	Cleaned	4.10.2(e)
Overflow route	Each inspection	Operates when the outlet is blocked; route to the overland path unobstructed	4.9.5
Confined-space entry	Each entry	Entry procedure stated in the maintenance declaration followed; covers locked after	4.15.6
Use of the space	Each inspection	Not used for parking or storage; volume not reduced	10.10.1(d)

Table 10D.5 — Pumped detention, pumps and controls

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Test run of each pump, duty and standby	Monthly	Each pump starts on level control; roles alternate	Table 10.3, 9.9.4(c)
Full duty test	Before 31 May	Station meets its design duty point	Table 10.3, 10.9.3
Standby power	Monthly with the test run; full test before 31 May	Automatic changeover works; fuel for at least 72 h of all duty pumps on site	9.9.9
Level sensors, float back-up, alarms, telemetry	Monthly	High-level and fault alarms reach the control room	9.9.8
Screens and silt trap	Every 3 months and after events	Clean	9.9.7
Records	Continuous	Sump levels, run hours and power status logged; kept at least 5 years	9.9.8(c)
Warning actions	On an IMD heavy-rainfall or cyclone warning	Actions written in the plan: _____ (for example staff on site, fuel topped up, mobile pump connection checked)	10.11.1(e), 9.9.12

Table 10D.6 — Flap or tide gate, non-return valve

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect and operate	Every 3 months; after each heavy-rainfall day	Opens at a small head; no debris, sand or growth holding it	Table 10.3, 9.10.4
Seal test	Before 31 May	Seals against the receiving water	Table 10.3, 10.9.3
Beach, estuary and creek outfalls	After every high-tide or surge event in the monsoon season	Sand and debris cleared	9.10.5(b)
Isolation	Before 31 May	Stop-log slot or penstock operable	9.10.3
Hinges, pins and fixings	Before 31 May	No corrosion that would stop the gate working	9.10.6

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Property non-return valves	Every 3 months	Cleaning eye accessible; valve seals	5.11.4

Table 10D.7 — Gross pollutant trap or first-flush device

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect and empty	Every 3 months; before 31 May; after each heavy-rainfall day	Emptied before the capture chamber is full; bypass clear	Table 10.3, 8.4.6
Screens	Each inspection	Clean; overflow path clear	8.10.3(b)
Disposal	Each cleaning	Material taken to an authorised solid-waste facility	—

Table 10D.8 — Private drains and inlets

Task	Frequency	Standard or trigger	Clause
Inspect and clean drains, inlets and silt sumps	Every 6 months; before 31 May	Free of silt and debris	Table 10.3
Check for sewage connections	Each inspection	None; any cross-connection removed	1.5.4, 8.9
Overland flow paths	Each inspection	Not obstructed by walls, fill or stored material	6.9.2, 10.15.1(g)

Annex 10E — Empanelment criteria for Stormwater Design Professionals and reviewers

Supports Clauses 10.6, 10.7.4 and 11.4.3 of Chapter 10.

> *Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.* Clause 10.6.2 assigns the issue of empanelment criteria to UDHD. The text below is a model. Values shown as "[ ]" are for the competent authority to set; the Manual does not set them.

10E.1 Model criteria

1. **Lists.** The competent authority shall keep three public lists:
   - (a) **Stormwater Design Professionals**, who may sign designs under Clause 10.6.1 and act as independent checkers under Clause 10.6.4;
   - (b) **Empanelled Reviewers**, who may review submittals for an Authority under Clause 10.7.4; and
   - (c) a **basin modelling endorsement**, held by a Stormwater Design Professional who may prepare or direct a BSMP under Clause 11.4.3.
2. **Eligibility for list (a).** An applicant shall:
   - (a) hold a degree in civil engineering, or an equivalent qualification recognised by the competent authority (Clause 10.6.2);
   - (b) be registered as a professional under the Bihar Building Byelaws 2014 (Clause 1.4);
   - (c) have at least [ ] years of experience in drainage design after graduation, shown by a list of at least [ ] projects with the applicant's role in each (Clause 10.6.2); and

    - (d) have completed a training course on this Manual, with an assessment, within the [ ] years before application (Clause 10.6.2).
3. **Eligibility for list (b).** As for list (a), with at least [ ] years of experience, of which at least [ ] years in the design or review of drainage under this Manual or an equivalent standard.
4. **Basin modelling endorsement (c).** A Stormwater Design Professional who shows experience in basin-scale 1D–2D modelling, including calibration, on at least [ ] studies (Clause 11.4.3).
5. **Independence of a checker.** A checker under Clause 10.6.4 shall not be employed by, or a partner of, the designer's firm or the Applicant, and shall not have worked on the design.
6. **Conflict of interest of a reviewer.** An Empanelled Reviewer shall not review a site on which the reviewer, or the reviewer's firm, has worked in any capacity (Clause 10.7.4), and shall declare any other interest before accepting a review. The Authority remains the decision-maker (Clause 10.7.4).
7. **Application.** The application shall include proof of degree and registration, the project list with references, the training certificate, and a signed declaration that the information is true.
8. **Term and renewal.** Empanelment is valid for [ ] years. Renewal requires evidence of continuing practice and of any refresher training issued after a revision of the Manual (Clause 1.12).
9. **Suspension and removal.** The competent authority may suspend or remove an empanelled person after a false or negligent certificate (Clause 10.6.5), on a report under step 6 of Table 10.4, or on loss of registration. The person shall be given notice and an opportunity to be heard. Every suspension and removal shall be published on the list.
10. **Publication.** The lists shall be published and kept current, with each person's name, registration number, list, endorsement and validity date.

Form 10-1 — Drainage Report Checklist

Supports Clauses 10.4.1 to 10.4.4 and 10.7.1 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodge with every Stage 1 and Stage 2 submittal. For each item give the page or sheet where it is addressed, or the reason it does not apply. The Authority does not start technical review without a completed Form 10-1 (Clause 10.4.3).

Table 10F.1 — Form 10-1, Section A: Submittal

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Authority and file number	_____
A2	Site name and address; survey numbers	_____
A3	Stage: 1 / 2 / combined 1 and 2 (Clause 10.3.3) / public work DPR or tender (Clause 10.3.4)	_____
A4	Applicant	_____
A5	Certifying professional (name, registration and empanelment number)	_____

Table 10F.2 — Form 10-1, Section B: Stage 1 contents (Clause 10.4.1)

No.	Item	Clause	Page / sheet	Not applicable: reason
B1	Form 1-1; Form 1-2 where a variance or waiver is sought	10.4.1(a)	_____	_____
B2	Site plan: existing and proposed levels, impervious areas, catchment boundaries to and through the site	10.4.1(b)	_____	_____
B3	Soils (HSG), seasonal high groundwater, infiltration tests or test plan	10.4.1(c)	_____	_____
B4	Design Rainfall Sheet (Form 2-1)	10.4.1(d)	_____	_____
B5	Pre-development condition and hydrologic method	10.4.1(e)	_____	_____
B6	Order of measures: areas preserved, retention method, detention concept, conveyance	10.4.1(f)	_____	_____
B7	Preliminary retention, WQ and detention volumes and release rates, with Form 10-2	10.4.1(g)	_____	_____
B8	Downstream extent and tailwater case	10.4.1(h)	_____	_____
B9	Waterbodies, setbacks and the 1% AEP level	10.4.1(i)	_____	_____
B10	Land reserved for facilities and maintenance access	10.4.1(j)	_____	_____
B11	Professional Design Certificate (Form 10-3)	10.4.5	_____	_____

Table 10F.3 — Form 10-1, Section C: Stage 2 contents (Clause 10.4.2)

No.	Item	Clause	Page / sheet	Not applicable: reason
C1	Updated Stage 1 contents (Section B)	10.4.2	_____	_____
C2	Final calculations for every storage duration and AEP, with the outfall-closed check	10.4.2(a)	_____	_____

No.	Item	Clause	Page / sheet	Not applicable: reason
C3	Stage–storage–discharge tables; emergency spillway design	10.4.2(b)	_____	_____
C4	Hydraulic design of conveyance, inlets and structures	10.4.2(c)	_____	_____
C5	Water quality design; first-flush device or GPT where required	10.4.2(d)	_____	_____
C6	Construction drawings, details and specifications of every facility	10.4.2(e)	_____	_____
C7	Construction sequence, with protection of retention and infiltration areas	10.4.2(f)	_____	_____
C8	Hold-point schedule (Form 10-4, Section A)	10.4.2(g)	_____	_____
C9	Draft O&M plan and draft Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6)	10.4.2(h)	_____	_____
C10	Model input files and GIS data	10.4.2(i)	_____	_____
C11	Certificates (Form 10-3, signed by designer and, where required, checker)	10.4.2(j)	_____	_____

Table 10F.4 — Form 10-1, Section D: Digital submittal (Clause 10.4.4)

No.	Item	Clause	Provided (yes / no)	Detail
D1	Reports and drawings as searchable PDF	10.4.4(a)	_____	_____
D2	Models in native, runnable format; software name and version	10.4.4(b)	_____	_____
D3	GIS data to Annex 10B; horizontal reference system (EPSG code)	10.4.4(c)	_____	_____
D4	Vertical datum named; relationship to the Chapter 5 river datums of the CWC and WRD (FMISC) gauges on the receiving rivers and of WRD's embankment, sluice and drain levels	10.4.4(d)	_____	_____

Table 10F.5 — Form 10-1, Section E: Declaration and completeness check

Field	Entry
I confirm that this checklist is complete and correct. Certifying professional: name, signature, date	_____
For the Authority: date received	_____
Date of completeness check (within 5 working days, Clause 10.7.1)	_____
Result: accepted for review / returned	_____
Missing items, if returned	_____
Officer: name, designation, signature	_____

Form 10-2 — Compliance Calculator Summary

Supports Clauses 10.4.1(g), 10.5 and 10.9.1(b) of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Produced by the compliance calculator (Annex 10A) with Stage 1, 2 and 4 submittals. Until the calculator is issued, complete it by hand and enter "not issued" in A3. One column per drainage area where the site has more than one outfall.

Table 10F.6 — Form 10-2, Section A: Site and route

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Authority, file number, stage (1 / 2 / 4)	_____	10.5.2(a)
A2	Site area, ha; land disturbance, ha; new + replaced impervious area, m²	_____	1.5.2
A3	Calculator version and release date	_____	10.5.3
A4	Tier (A / B); flood-sensitive (yes / no); approved BSMP for the basin (yes / no)	_____	1.6, 4.5.3, 11.12
A5	Route: full method / S-1 / S-2 / fixed-coefficient / constrained redevelopment / regional or fee-in-lieu	_____	1.7, 4.5.6, 4.13, 4.14
A6	Flags raised by the calculator (list)	_____	Annex 10A.4

Table 10F.7 — Form 10-2, Section B: Rainfall and soils

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
B1	Rainfall zone; Form 2-1 reference	_____	2.13
B2	Retention depth P_R, mm; 3-month ARI depth P_3m, mm	_____	2.10, 8.4.1
B3	Climate factor applied (≤ 6 h; > 6–72 h)	_____	2.8
B4	HSG by sub-area; seasonal high groundwater, m below base	_____	3.7, 4.4.3
B5	Measured and design infiltration rates, mm/h	_____	4.4.3

Table 10F.8 — Form 10-2, Section C: Volumes

No.	Quantity	Required (m³)	Provided (m³)	Clause
C1	Retention volume (RRV)	_____	_____	4.4.2
C2	Water quality volume (WQv)	_____	_____	8.4.2
C3	Retention credit against detention	_____	—	4.4.6
C4	Detention volume	_____	_____	4.6, 4.14
C5	Fee-in-lieu or regional volume, and fee (₹)	_____	_____	4.5.6.3, 4.13.3

Table 10F.9 — Form 10-2, Section D: Release rates (each outfall)

AEP	Q_pre or cap (L/s)	Q_post (L/s)	Governing duration (h)	Meets criterion (yes / no)	Clause
50% (2-yr)	_____	_____	_____	_____	4.5
10% (10-yr)	_____	_____	_____	_____	4.5

AEP	Q_pre or cap (L/s)	Q_post (L/s)	Governing duration (h)	Meets criterion (yes / no)	Clause
1% (100-yr)	_____	_____	_____	_____	4.5

Table 10F.10 — Form 10-2, Section E: Outlets, drawdown and stage comparison

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
E1	Low-flow orifice, mm (minimum 50 mm)	_____	4.8.2
E2	Detention: time to release 90% of the 10-yr stored volume, h (≤ 48 h)	_____	4.7.1
E3	WQv release time, h (24–48 h)	_____	4.7.2
E4	Retention emptying time, h (≤ 72 h)	_____	4.7.3
E5	Model result differs from the calculator screen by more than the guide tolerance? If yes, report section that explains it	_____	10.5.2(c)
E6	Stage 4 only: changes from the Stage 2 values (list), and whether every criterion is still met	_____	10.9.2
E7	Prepared by (name, registration number), signature, date	_____	10.6.3(b)

Form 10-3 — Professional Design Certificate

Supports Clauses 10.6.1 to 10.6.5 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Signed by the designer with every Stage 1 and Stage 2 submittal, and by an independent checker for facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d).

Table 10F.11 — Form 10-3, Section A: Project and signatory

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Authority, file number, stage	_____	—
A2	Site and facilities covered by this certificate	_____	—
A3	Designer: name, qualification, BBL 2014 registration number	_____	10.6.1
A4	Empanelment number, where required, and the reason: Tier A ≥ 1 ha / flood-sensitive / embankment or high-hazard basin / pumped, tide gate or regional facility	_____	10.6.1(a)–(d)
A5	Variances or waivers approved (Form 1-2 references), or "none"	_____	10.6.3(a)

Table 10F.12 — Form 10-3, Section B: Certificate of the designer

No.	I certify that:	Initials
B1	the design complies with the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, except for the variances listed at A5, which have been approved	_____
B2	the rainfall, soils and tailwater inputs are as recorded on Form 2-1 and Form 10-2	_____
B3	the models submitted reproduce the results reported	_____
B4	I understand that a false or negligent certificate is a contravention under Clause 10.15	_____

Table 10F.13 — Form 10-3, Section C: Certificate of the independent checker (Clause 10.6.4)

No.	Field or statement	Entry
C1	Checker: name, registration and empanelment number	_____
C2	I am independent of the designer and the Applicant and have not worked on this design	_____
C3	I have checked the facilities listed: _____, and agree with the certificate in Section B	_____
C4	Matters on which I do not agree, if any	_____

Table 10F.14 — Form 10-3, Section D: Signatures

Role	Name	Signature	Date
Designer	_____	_____	_____
Independent checker (where required)	_____	_____	_____

Form 10-4 — Hold-Point Inspection Record

Supports Clauses 10.4.2(g), 10.8 and 10.9.3 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Section A is the hold-point schedule, approved at Stage 2. Section B is completed at each hold point, with dated, geotagged photographs (Clause 10.8.2). Work shall not proceed past a hold point until Section B is signed. See Figure 10.2.

Table 10F.15 — Form 10-4, Section A: Hold-point schedule

Hold point	Facility (FAC_ID)	Stage of work	Planned date	Notice to Authority sent (date)*	Authority attended (yes / no)
(a) Excavated base, before media, liner or structure	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
(b) Outlet structure, orifice and trash screen, before backfill or first filling	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
(c) Infiltration and verification tests (Clause 10.9.3)	_____	_____	_____	—	_____
(d) Outfall, flap or tide gate and non-return valve, before downstream connection	_____	_____	_____	—	_____
(e) Pumps and controls, at commissioning	_____	_____	_____	—	_____
Other hold points added by the Authority	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

* For sites under Clause 10.6.1, at least 3 working days' notice of hold points (a) and (b) (Clause 10.8.2).

Table 10F.16 — Form 10-4, Section B: Inspection record (one per hold point)

No.	Field	Entry
B1	Hold point and facility	_____
B2	Date and time of inspection; weather	_____
B3	Inspected by (certifying professional); others present	_____
B4	Approved drawing and revision checked against	_____
B5	Levels, dimensions and materials found, against approved values	_____
B6	For (a): retention and infiltration areas protected from traffic and stockpiles (Clause 10.8.3(a))	_____
B7	For (b): orifice size and invert; screen in place	_____
B8	For (c): infiltration test result and emptying time (≤ 72 h); pump duty point; gate opening and sealing	_____
B9	For (d) and (e): gate type, seating and test; pump commissioning record	_____
B10	Photograph references (dated, geotagged)	_____
B11	Result: released / not released; corrective work required	_____
B12	Corrective work checked (date, by)	_____
B13	Signature of the certifying professional, date	_____

Form 10-5 — As-built Certificate

Supports Clauses 10.9 and 10.3.5 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Lodged before the completion certificate. The Authority shall not issue the completion certificate until this form is accepted (Clause 10.9.4).

Table 10F.17 — Form 10-5, Section A: Project and survey

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
A1	Authority, file number; Stage 2 approval reference and date	_____	—
A2	Licensed surveyor: name, licence number, date of survey	_____	10.9.1(a)
A3	Vertical datum	_____	10.4.4(d)
A4	GIS data to Annex 10B, as built (file name)	_____	10.4.4(c)

Table 10F.18 — Form 10-5, Section B: Approved against as built (one block per facility)

Item	Approved	As built	Accepted (yes / no)	Clause
Storage volume at each design level, m³	_____	_____	_____	10.9.2(a)
Outlet dimensions (orifice, weir), mm	_____	_____	_____	10.9.2(b)
Outlet and outfall inverts, m	_____	_____	_____	10.9.2(b)
Spillway or overflow level, m	_____	_____	_____	4.9
Retention volume, m³	_____	_____	_____	4.4

Table 10F.19 — Form 10-5, Section C: Re-run and tests

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	Compliance calculator re-run with as-built values: version, and Form 10-2 (Stage 4) attached	_____	10.9.1(b)
C2	Model re-run with as-built values (where a model was used): file name	_____	10.9.1(b)
C3	Every criterion of Chapters 4 and 5 met on re-run (yes / no; list any not met)	_____	10.9.2(c)
C4	Infiltration retention: measured emptying time, h (≤ 72 h)	_____	10.9.3
C5	Pumps: duty point achieved (flow at head)	_____	10.9.3
C6	Tide gates and non-return valves: shown to open and seal	_____	10.9.3
C7	Deviations, and how corrected or re-certified under Clause 10.3.5	_____	10.9.2

Table 10F.20 — Form 10-5, Section D: Attachments and certificate

No.	Field	Entry
D1	Completed hold-point records (Form 10-4)	_____
D2	Final O&M plan	_____
D3	Executed Maintenance Declaration (Form 10-6) or handover documents (Form 10-8)	_____

No.	Field	Entry
D4	I certify that the facilities listed were built as approved, except as stated at C7, and perform as designed. Certifying professional: name, registration number, signature, date	_____
D5	For the Authority: accepted / returned; officer, date	_____

Form 10-6 — Maintenance Declaration

Supports Clauses 10.10.1, 10.10.2, 10.10.4 and 10.13.1 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force. Executed by the owner of every private stormwater facility before the completion certificate is issued, and registered so that it runs with the land.

> **Drafting note D10A.1.** The instrument under which this declaration is registered, and the Act that gives the Authority its right of entry and its power to carry out works in default, are to be confirmed by the competent authority. This form does not cite statute sections.

Table 10F.21 — Form 10-6, Section A: Parties and land

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Owner (the declarant): name and address; for a company or association, its registration number	_____
A2	Authority	_____
A3	Land: survey numbers, village, anchal (circle), district; extent	_____
A4	Approval reference (file number, Stage 2 approval date)	_____
A5	For multi-owner developments: the association or body that takes over after the developer (Clause 10.10.2)	_____

Table 10F.22 — Form 10-6, Section B: Schedule of facilities

Facility (FAC_ID)	Type	Location on the attached plan	Design volume (m³)	Outlet	O&M plan reference
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Model declaration. I/We, the owner named in Section A, declare and undertake, for myself/ourselves and for every successor in title to the land:

1. to operate, inspect and maintain each facility in Section B under the approved O&M plan, and to make the inspections of Clause 10.12 (Clause 10.10.1(b));
2. to give the Authority, its officers and its contractors a right of entry to inspect each facility and the access route shown on the plan, and to carry out works in default under Clause 10.15, with the cost recoverable from the owner (Clause 10.10.1(c));
3. not to remove, fill, cover, reduce or change the use of any facility, or obstruct its access route, without the Authority's written approval (Clauses 10.10.1(d), 10.13.5);
4. where Clause 10.10.3 applies, to lodge an Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report (Form 10-7) by 31 May each year;
5. for underground tanks, to follow the confined-space entry procedure stated here: _____ (Clause 4.15.6);
6. on sale or transfer of the land or any part of it, to disclose this declaration and the latest Form 10-7 to the purchaser, who takes on these obligations from the date of transfer (Clause 10.10.4); and
7. for a multi-owner development, that the developer remains responsible until the body named at A5 is legally constituted and has accepted this declaration in writing (Clause 10.10.2).

Table 10F.23 — Form 10-6, Section C: Execution and registration

Field	Entry
Owner: signature, name, date	_____
Witness 1: signature, name, address	_____
Witness 2: signature, name, address	_____
Acceptance by the association or body at A5 (when constituted): signature, date	_____
Registration: office, document number, date	_____
For the Authority: received and recorded in the facility register; officer, date	_____

Form 10-7 — Annual Maintenance Declaration and Inspection Report

Supports Clauses 10.10.3, 10.11.1(d) and 10.12 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Due by **31 May** each year from every owner of a facility in a Tier A area, and from every owner of a pumped facility, tide gate or regional facility anywhere (Clause 10.10.3). See Figure 10.3.

Table 10F.24 — Form 10-7, Section A: Owner and facilities

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Reporting year (1 June to 31 May)	_____
A2	Owner or association; Maintenance Declaration registration reference	_____
A3	Facilities covered (FAC_ID and type)	_____
A4	Any facility under Clause 10.6.1(c) or (d) (yes / no). If yes, Section E is required	_____

Table 10F.25 — Form 10-7, Section B: Inspections made during the year (Table 10.3)

Facility	Routine inspections (dates)	Pre-monsoon inspection (date)	After heavy-rainfall events (dates)	Monthly pump test runs (number)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 10F.26 — Form 10-7, Section C: Pre-monsoon checklist (one per facility)

No.	Item	Condition (OK / defect)	Defect and date corrected
C1	Inlets, pretreatment and silt traps clear	_____	_____
C2	Orifice, trash screen and outlet clear; orifice size unchanged	_____	_____
C3	Sediment below the trigger in the O&M plan	_____	_____
C4	Storage volume not reduced; no filling, covering or change of use	_____	_____
C5	Overflow and spillway route clear	_____	_____
C6	Retention drains within 72 h (observation well or surface)	_____	_____
C7	Pumps: full duty test; standby pump and standby power tested; fuel for 72 h on site	_____	_____
C8	Alarms and telemetry tested	_____	_____
C9	Flap or tide gates and non-return valves: operated and seal tested	_____	_____
C10	Safety: covers locked, fences, signs and depth markers in place	_____	_____
C11	Access routes clear and not used for parking	_____	_____

Table 10F.27 — Form 10-7, Section D: Declaration of the owner

Field	Entry
I/We declare that the pre-monsoon inspection of Clause 10.12 has been made, that the defects found have been corrected as listed in Section C, and that the facilities are maintained under the approved O&M plan. Owner: name, signature, date	_____

Table 10F.28 — Form 10-7, Section E: Empanelled professional (facilities under Clause 10.6.1(c) and (d))

Field	Entry
I have inspected the facilities listed and confirm Section C. Name, empanelment number, signature, date	_____

Table 10F.29 — Form 10-7, Section F: For the Authority

Field	Entry
Date received; on time (by 31 May) yes / no	_____
Entered in the facility register (Clause 10.17), date	_____
Follow-up action, if any (Clause 10.15)	_____

Form 10-8 — Asset Handover Certificate

Supports Clause 10.14 of Chapter 10.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Signed by the developer and the ULB when drains, open space facilities, regional facilities or other stormwater assets built by a developer are handed over.

Table 10F.30 — Form 10-8, Section A: Asset and parties

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Developer: name and address	_____
A2	ULB	_____
A3	Layout or project, approval reference	_____
A4	Assets handed over (FAC_ID, type, length or volume), with a plan	_____

Table 10F.31 — Form 10-8, Section B: Conditions of handover (Clause 10.14.1)

No.	Condition	Met (yes / no)	Reference or date
B1	As-built certificate (Form 10-5) accepted	_____	_____
B2	Facility cleaned; pipes and culverts inspected internally (CCTV or manual entry), record handed over	_____	_____
B3	Land, or an easement over it, transferred to the ULB	_____	_____
B4	O&M plan, drawings, GIS data (Annex 10B) and warranties handed over	_____	_____

Table 10F.32 — Form 10-8, Section C: Defects liability and register

No.	Field	Entry	Clause
C1	Defects liability period: from _____ to _____ (includes at least one full monsoon season, from 15 June to 15 October, after handover)	_____	10.14.2
C2	Developer responsible during the period for defects and routine maintenance	_____	10.14.2
C3	Security deposit held by the ULB, ₹, and release date	_____	10.14.2
C4	Entered in the ULB GIS drainage asset register and the facility register: date	_____	10.14.3

Table 10F.33 — Form 10-8, Section D: Signatures

Party	Name and designation	Signature	Date
Developer	_____	_____	_____
Certifying professional	_____	_____	_____
ULB	_____	_____	_____

ANNEXES TO CHAPTER 11

Basin and City Stormwater Master Plans

These annexes support Chapter 11. They give a terms of reference template for a Basin Stormwater Master Plan (BSMP), the layout of the basin list and boundary layer, the layout and method for depth–damage curves, the standard for publishing BSMP data and models, and the annual implementation report form. Annexes 11B and 11C need data that are not yet available; they say so and give the rule to use in the meantime. The template and the form are a model and a draft form for consideration by a competent authority, and are not in force.

Annex 11A — BSMP terms of reference template

Supports Clauses 11.1 to 11.12 of Chapter 11.

> *Model text for consideration by a competent authority. Not in force.* The Lead Authority adapts this template for each basin. Items in "[ ]" are for the Lead Authority to complete. Clause references are to this Manual, which the consultant shall follow in full.

11A.1 Background and purpose

1. The [Lead Authority] intends to prepare a Basin Stormwater Master Plan for the [name] basin under Chapter 11 of the Bihar Stormwater Design Manual.
2. The BSMP shall (Clause 11.1.2):
    - (a) map flood hazard for the basin under existing and future conditions;
    - (b) set the level of service for each part of the drainage system;
    - (c) identify, cost and rank the works, storage and land needed to reach that level of service;
    - (d) identify land to be reserved in the statutory land-use plan for regional storage, pokhar and tank restoration and major flow paths;
    - (e) set the basin inputs for site design: regional facilities, the fee-in-lieu unit rate, and any basin release rate stricter than Chapter 4; and
    - (f) recommend catchments for notification as flood-sensitive.
3. The BSMP may make the site criteria of Chapters 4 to 8 stricter for the basin. It shall not relax them, except through the regional detention and fee-in-lieu routes of Clauses 4.13 and 4.5.6 (Clause 11.1.3).

11A.2 Client, partners and study area

1. **Client:** [Lead Authority] (Clause 11.4.1).
2. **Partners:** WRD, wherever the basin includes a river, canal or tank under its control, and [other local bodies, PMAA or UDHD, BSDMA] (Clause 11.4.1).
3. **Study area:** the whole of the [name] basin, draining to [outfall], as delineated under Clause 11.3, including the parts outside the client's limits (Clause 11.3.1). The provisional boundary is in [Annex 11B / attached map]. The consultant shall confirm it in Task 2.

4. **Links to other basins:** [for example the receiving river corridor]. Diversions between basins by canal, drain or surplus course shall be mapped and represented in the model (Clause 11.3.2).

11A.3 Team

1. The study shall be led by an engineer empanelled as a Stormwater Design Professional with the basin modelling endorsement of Annex 10E (Clause 11.4.3).
2. The team shall include at least: [a hydrologist; a hydraulic modeller; a coastal or tidal specialist where the basin has a tidal outfall; a GIS and survey lead; a planner; a cost engineer; a community engagement lead]. The client sets the minimum qualifications and experience of each.

11A.4 Tasks

Task 1 — Inception. Review existing studies, data and projects in the basin. Prepare a data inventory against Table 11.1, a gap list, a survey plan, a consultation plan, and the work programme. Deliver the inception report.

Task 2 — Data and surveys. Assemble, survey where missing, and quality-check every item of Table 11.1 (Clause 11.5.1):

- (a) terrain: DEM from LiDAR or photogrammetry with vertical accuracy of 0.15 m RMSE or better in urban areas, tied to the Survey of India datum, with the accuracy test reported;
- (b) drain network: every public drain, culvert and outfall, with invert levels, sizes, condition and silt depth; private drains above 600 mm;
- (c) waterbodies: every tank, pokhar, pond and marsh under Chapter 7: FTL, MWL, bund level, stage–storage, sluices, surplus weirs, supply channels and encroachment, in the fields of Annex 7A;
- (d) rivers and canals: cross-sections at no more than 200 m spacing and at every structure;
- (e) outfalls and rivers: outfall invert levels, on a named datum, against the warning, danger and high flood levels of the receiving river at the nearest CWC or WRD gauge (the Ganga, the Sone, the Punpun, the Burhi Gandak, the Bagmati or another river) and its recorded peaks; the Flood Plain Zones of embanked rivers under WRD Order No. 143 of 2025 and, when published, the 5-, 25- and 100-year lines of the NIH study of the Ganga from Chausa to Manihari; sluices, flap gates, interception structures and drainage pumping stations (sump houses) on the outfalls and in the river embankments, with their pump capacities, sump volumes and operating rules; embankment crest levels; and releases from any barrage or dam upstream;
- (f) rainfall and water levels: all available records (IMD, including the Patna (A), Gaya (A), Bhagalpur, Sabour, Muzaffarpur, Darbhanga, Purnea, Motihari, Chapra, Forbesganj and Dehri stations and the automatic weather stations and rain gauges reported by the Meteorological Centre Patna, among them Anisabad in Patna; the district rain gauges; the rain and river gauges of CWC (Lower Ganga Division-2, Patna) and of WRD and its FMISC, with the rainfall FMISC compiles from Nepal for the rivers that rise there; and any gauges kept by the Nagar Nigams and BUIDCO), including the August 1975 (the Sone and the Ganga at Patna), August 2016 (the Ganga at Patna), August 2017 (north Bihar), September 2019 (Patna) and September 2026 (the Ganga at Patna) events;
- (g) flood evidence: surveyed flood marks and mapped extents of past events, including public reports, photographs and residents' records;
- (h) land use: existing land use and imperviousness; future land use from the statutory master plan;
- (i) soils and groundwater: HSG map (Annex 3A or Clause 3.7.2), seasonal high groundwater, aquifer and recharge zones; and
- (j) sewer interaction: known cross-connections, dry-weather flow in drains, solid-waste hotspots.

Confirm the basin boundary and the inter-basin diversions (Clause 11.3.2). Deliver the data report and the data in the formats of Annex 11D.

Task 3 — Model build. Build a coupled 1D–2D hydraulic model of the minor system, the major (overland) system, rivers, canals and tanks, and the outfalls (Clause 11.7.1; Figure 11.2). Use the methods of Chapter 3 and the tidal and river boundaries of Chapter 5. Run the design storms of Chapter 2, including the 24-, 48- and 72-hour storms, for at least the

50%, 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs, with areal reduction under Clause 2.7.3 (Clause 11.7.2). Where the basin has tank cascades, run continuous simulation under Clause 3.13 with the full IMD gridded daily record where available, and at least 30 years, disaggregated by the temporal patterns of Annex 2D. The two-step approach of Clause 3.13.5 may be used: starting tank levels and antecedent conditions from the continuous run are passed to the design-storm runs (Clause 11.7.3).

Task 4 — Calibration and validation. Calibrate and validate the model under Clause 3.15, using at least two of the August 1975 (the Sone and the Ganga at Patna), August 2016 (the Ganga at Patna), August 2017 (north Bihar), September 2019 (Patna) and September 2026 (the Ganga at Patna) events where data exist (Clause 11.7.5). Report the performance measures of Clause 3.15.4 and the reasonableness check of Clause 3.15.6.

Task 5 — Scenarios and hazard maps. Model the scenarios of Clause 11.7.4: (a) existing; (b) future, uncontrolled; (c) future, controlled; (d) future, with plan; and (e) climate, applied to (a) and (d). Produce flood hazard maps of extent, depth, velocity and hazard class (H1–H6, Chapter 6) for the 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEPs, existing and future-with-plan (Clause 11.8.4(a)).

Task 6 — Level-of-service assessment. Compare scenarios (a), (c) and (d) with the levels of service of Table 11.2 and any stricter levels the client adopts (Clause 11.6.1). Map every shortfall.

Task 7 — Options. Develop options in the order of Clause 11.8.1: protect and restore storage; regional retention and detention, sited by modelling; conveyance; outfall works; property-level protection; non-structural measures. Assess each option for the criteria of Clause 11.8.2: reduction in flood risk (buildings and people flooded, and expected annual damage using Annex 11C); capital and 30-year maintenance cost; land required; effect on groundwater recharge where the water table is deep, waterlogging where it is shallow, and the quality of the shallow aquifer in the arsenic belt; effect on downstream basins and the receiving river; and who benefits.

Task 8 — Basin inputs for site design. Where scenario (c) does not meet the level of service, propose basin release rates (m³/s/ha) by AEP and sub-catchment (Clause 11.8.3). Recommend catchments for notification as flood-sensitive, with the evidence of Clause 4.5.4.1. Identify regional facility sites, with storage volumes, land needs and the sites they serve, and compute the fee-in-lieu unit rate, including land, construction and 10 years of maintenance (Clauses 4.13.3, 11.8.4(c), (d)).

Task 9 — Capital Improvement Programme. Rank the works by risk reduction per rupee, with cost, phasing and responsible agency (Clause 11.8.4(e)).

Task 10 — Maintenance and monitoring. Prepare the pre-monsoon maintenance programme: desilting, gate and pump testing, and tank operating rules (Clause 11.8.4(f); Chapters 7 and 10). Specify monitoring needs: new rain gauges, level sensors and flood-mark survey points (Clause 11.8.4(g); Clause 10.16.1).

Task 11 — Land-use integration. Prepare the material for the statutory land-use plan required by Clause 11.9.1: sites to be reserved; the 1% AEP hazard map with the Chapter 7 setbacks; land in hazard classes H5–H6 in the 1% AEP event; and open space locations that can form part of flow paths or regional storage.

Task 12 — Consultation. Publish the draft BSMP for public comment for at least 60 days, with public meetings in each affected local body (Clause 11.10.1). Keep a log of comments and responses.

Task 13 — Final BSMP and publication. Revise the BSMP after consultation. Prepare the package for approval by the State Stormwater Technical Committee, including the model for review (Clause 11.11.1). Publish the data, models, maps and CIP under Annex 11D (Clause 11.10.2).

11A.5 Deliverables

Table 11A.1 — Deliverables

No.	Deliverable	Task	Due (months from start)
D1	Inception report, data inventory and survey plan	1	[ ]
D2	Data report and data sets (Annex 11D)	2	[ ]
D3	Model build report and model files	3	[ ]
D4	Calibration and validation report	4	[ ]
D5	Scenario results, hazard maps and level-of-service assessment	5, 6	[ ]
D6	Options report, with basin inputs for site design	7, 8	[ ]
D7	Draft BSMP with draft CIP, for consultation	9–12	[ ]
D8	Final BSMP, consultation log, approval package and open-data release	13	[ ]

11A.6 Ownership and publication

All data, models, maps and reports produced under these terms are owned by the Lead Authority and shall be published under Annex 11D. The consultant shall not use any software licence, data licence or format that prevents publication, or that prevents a third party from re-running the model with the stated software version.

Annex 11B — Basin lists and boundaries for Tier A bodies

Supports Clauses 11.3 and 11.4 of Chapter 11.

To be prepared. This annex will contain the list of basins for every Tier A body, with a GIS layer of basin boundaries delineated under Clause 11.3.2. It needs the list of Tier A bodies (Annex 1A), a DEM of the accuracy of Clause 11.5.1, the drain network of every drain-owning body (the Nagar Nigams, BUIDCO's trunk drains, sewers and drain-tapping works, WRD's flood-control drains and BIADA's drains), the sluices, flap gates and drainage pumping stations on the outfalls and in the river embankments, with their pump capacities and sump volumes, the pokhars, ahars and chaurs recorded in the revenue records and in master and layout plans, the Flood Plain Zones under WRD Order No. 143 of 2025 and the lines of the NIH study of the Ganga when published, and the catchments used for BUIDCO's storm water drainage projects (other likely sources: Survey of India, which has supplied a 10 m DEM of the State, CWC and CGWB). No basin map of any Bihar city was found. Until the annex is published, the basins of Patna, Muzaffarpur and Darbhanga named in Clause 11.3.3 are at least those named there; other Tier A bodies define their basins in their first BSMP (Clause 11.3.3); and the interim arrangements of Clause 11.12 apply in every basin without an approved BSMP.

Table 11B.1 — Basins named in Clause 11.3.3 (provisional)

Tier A body or area	Basin	Note from Chapter 11
Patna (PMC, BUIDCO)	Catchment of each drain that outfalls to the Ganga	19 ghat drains, Digha Ghat to Balu Ghat, in BUIDCO's list; Ganga level at Dighaghat or Gandhi Ghat as boundary; outfall-closed case with pumping capacity a design case
Patna (PMC, BUIDCO)	Catchments draining to the Punpun and the Sone	Punpun level at Sripalpur and Sone level at Maner as boundaries; includes the Badshahi and Bakipur Gorakh drains; outfall-closed case a design case

Tier A body or area	Basin	Note from Chapter 11
Patna (PMC, BUIDCO, PMAA)	Trunk nalas: Kurji (Rajiv Nagar), Anandpuri, Saidpur, Bakarganj	Each mapped in the basin of its outfall; Saidpur nala and other pumped transfers as links between basins; BUIDCO's Catchment-1 and -2 and the Danapur, Khagaul and Phulwari drains reconciled with the basins
Muzaffarpur (Nagar Nigam)	Catchments draining to the Burhi Gandak	Burhi Gandak level at Sikandarpur as boundary
Darbhanga (Nagar Nigam, BUIDCO)	Catchments draining to the Bagmati and the Adhwara group	Levels at Hayaghat and Ekmighat as boundaries; Harahi, Digghi and Ganga Sagar ponds kept as storage (O.A. 155/2022/EZ)
Other Tier A bodies, including Gaya, Bhagalpur, Bihar Sharif, Purnia and Arrah	To be defined in the first BSMP	Clause 11.3.3

Table 11B.2 — Attributes of the basin boundary layer (layout)

Field	Type	Content
BASIN_ID	Text	Basin identifier
NAME_EN, NAME_HI	Text	Basin name in English and Hindi
TIER_A	Text	Tier A body or bodies in the basin
OUTFALL	Text	Outfall to the sea, river or major waterbody (Clause 11.2)
AREA_KM2	Real	Basin area, km²
LEAD_AUTH	Text	Lead Authority (Clause 11.4.1)
PARTNERS	Text	Partners, including WRD where it applies
LINKS	Text	Diversions to and from other basins (Clause 11.3.2)
BSMP_STAT	Text	None / in preparation / draft published / approved
BSMP_DATE	Date	Date of approval of the current BSMP
REVIEW_DUE	Date	Date of the next review (Clause 11.11.2)

Annex 11C — Depth–damage curves for Bihar building types

Supports Clause 11.8.2 of Chapter 11.

To be prepared. This annex will contain depth–damage curves for the main building types of Bihar cities, for structure and contents, for use in computing expected annual damage under Clause 11.8.2. It needs a building-type classification and building stock data (Census housing tables, property-tax records, Lead Authority GIS), damage surveys and claims from the August 1975 (the Sone and the Ganga at Patna), August 2016 (the Ganga at Patna), August 2017 (north Bihar), September 2019 (Patna) and September 2026 (the Ganga at Patna) floods (Revenue and Land Reforms Department and BSDMA damage assessments, insurers), and replacement costs (Building Construction Department schedules of rates). Until it is published, each BSMP shall state the depth–damage relations it uses and their source, and shall report the reduction in buildings and people flooded for every option (Clause 11.8.2), which does not depend on the curves.

Table 11C.1 — Depth–damage curve (layout, one table per building type)

Depth of water above floor level (m)	0	0.25	0.5	1.0	1.5	2.0	3.0
Structure damage (% of replacement cost)	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Contents damage (% of contents value)	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Building type, source and year of costs	_____						

11C.1 Use in option assessment

Expected annual damage (EAD) is computed for each scenario from the damages at the modelled AEPs. With damages D_1, D_2, … at annual exceedance probabilities P_1 > P_2 > …, using at least the 50%, 10%, 1% and 0.2% AEP results of Clause 11.7.2:

> $$EAD \approx \Sigma \tfrac{1}{2} \times (D_i + D_{(i+1)}) \times (P_i - P_{(i+1)})$$

The reduction in EAD between scenario (c) and scenario (d), or between options, is the risk-reduction benefit used to rank works per rupee (Clause 11.8.4(e)). The BSMP shall state how damages beyond the 0.2% AEP and below the 50% AEP were treated.

Annex 11D — BSMP data and model publication standard

Supports Clauses 11.5.1 and 11.10 of Chapter 11, and Clause 10.17 of Chapter 10.

11D.1 What is published, and when

Table 11D.1 — Items to be published

Item	Format	At draft (Clause 11.10.1)	At approval (Clause 11.10.2)
BSMP report, with the level-of-service assessment and options	Searchable PDF	Yes	Yes, final
Flood hazard maps: extent, depth, velocity, hazard class, for each AEP and scenario of Clause 11.8.4(a)	GeoTIFF rasters; extents also as GeoPackage polygons	Yes	Yes
Capital Improvement Programme	CSV and PDF	Draft	Yes
Basin release rates, recommended flood-sensitive catchments, regional facility sites, fee-in-lieu unit rate	GeoPackage and CSV	Yes	Yes
Data of Table 11.1 (terrain, drains, waterbodies, cross-sections, river levels and outfall structures, rainfall and levels, flood evidence, land use, soils and groundwater, sewer interaction)	GeoTIFF (terrain); GeoPackage (features); CSV (tables and time series)	Summary	Yes, except security-sensitive asset details
Model files: native, runnable, with all boundary-condition, rainfall and control files, the software name and version, and a run log	Native format, zipped	No	Yes
Calibration and validation report	Searchable PDF	Yes	Yes
Consultation log of comments and responses	PDF or CSV	—	Yes

11D.2 Formats and references

- (a) Raster data shall be GeoTIFF, preferably cloud-optimised, with the cell size stated. Vector data shall be GeoPackage. Tables and time series shall be CSV in UTF-8, with a header row and units in the column names.
- (b) Horizontal and vertical references shall be as in Annex 10B.1(b) and (c). The vertical datum and its relationship to the Chapter 5 river datums of the CWC and WRD (FMISC) gauges on the receiving rivers and of WRD's embankment, sluice and drain levels shall be stated in every data set that carries levels.
- (c) Times shall be in Indian Standard Time, written as ISO 8601 (yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm+05:30). Units shall be SI.
- (d) Hazard map files shall be named `<basin>_<scenario>_<AEP>_<variable>.tif`, where scenario is a to e of Clause 11.7.4, AEP is written as 50, 10, 1 or 0p2, and variable is depth, velocity, hazard or extent; for example `saidpur_d_1_depth.tif`.
- (e) Waterbody data shall use the fields of Annex 7A. Facility and outfall data shall use the fields of Annex 10B.

11D.3 Metadata

Every published data set shall carry: title; description; Lead Authority; source and method; date of capture; accuracy (for the DEM, the measured vertical RMSE); horizontal and vertical reference; scenario and AEP, where relevant; BSMP version; licence; and a contact.

11D.4 Withholding and personal data

- (a) Security-sensitive details of critical assets may be withheld, with the reason recorded and published (Clauses 10.17.3, 11.10.2). The flood hazard maps and the model shall still be published; only the sensitive attributes are removed.
- (b) Personal data shall not be published (Clause 10.17.3). Flood evidence collected from residents shall be published without names or contact details unless the person consents.

11D.5 Licence, viewer and versions

- (a) Published data and models shall be released under the Government Open Data Licence – India or an equivalent open licence (Clause 10.17.4).
- (b) The hazard maps, regional facility sites and CIP shall also be shown on a public map viewer (Clause 11.10.2).
- (c) Each approved BSMP shall carry a version number and date. Superseded versions shall stay available, marked as superseded, so that designs approved under them can be checked.
- (d) The published model package shall allow a third party with the stated software version to reproduce the published results. Designers may use its boundary conditions for site designs in the basin (Clause 11.10, Commentary).

Form 11-1 — Annual implementation report

Supports Clause 11.11.3 of Chapter 11, with Clauses 4.5.6.3 and 4.13.4 of Chapter 4.

Draft form — Bihar Stormwater Design Manual, Draft v1.0. Published by the Lead Authority for each basin with an approved BSMP before each south-west monsoon, by **31 May** (Clause 11.11.3).

Table 11F.1 — Form 11-1, Section A: Basin and plan

No.	Field	Entry
A1	Basin; Lead Authority; partners	_____
A2	BSMP version and date of approval	_____
A3	Reporting year (1 June to 31 May)	_____
A4	Date of publication (by 31 May) and web address	_____

Table 11F.2 — Form 11-1, Section B: CIP progress

CIP rank	Work	Agency	Cost in CIP (₹)	Spent this year (₹)	Spent to date (₹)	Status	Expected completion
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.3 — Form 11-1, Section C: Fee-in-lieu ledger (Clauses 4.5.6.3(c) and 4.13.4)

Regional facility or tank	Volume credited to sites (m³)	Volume delivered (m³)	Fees received (₹)	Fees spent (₹)	Fees held, with year received
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Basin total: volume owed and delivered	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.4 — Form 11-1, Section D: Maintenance completed (Clause 11.8.4(f))

No.	Item	Planned	Done	Date completed
D1	Desilting of drains and canals (length, km; volume, m³)	_____	_____	_____
D2	Tank and pokhar desilting and restoration (tanks, number; storage restored, m³)	_____	_____	_____
D3	Gate tests (number of gates)	_____	_____	_____
D4	Pump station duty tests (number of stations)	_____	_____	_____
D5	Tank operating rules reviewed with the custodian (number)	_____	_____	_____
D6	Monitoring added: rain gauges, level sensors, flood-mark points (Clause 11.8.4(g))	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.5 — Form 11-1, Section E: Flooding against the levels of service

Event (dates)	Rainfall compared with the design depths (Clause 10.16.2(a))	Level-of-service element (Table 11.2)	Location	Met (yes / no)	Event report reference (Clause 10.16.2)
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

Table 11F.6 — Form 11-1, Section F: Review triggers and sign-off

No.	Field	Entry
F1	Event exceeding the 1% AEP design depth in the basin this year (yes / no). If yes, review due within 2 years (Clause 11.11.2)	_____
F2	Statutory land-use plan revised this year (yes / no) (Clause 11.11.2)	_____
F3	Next 10-year review due (date)	_____
F4	Officer of the Lead Authority: name, designation, signature, date	_____